GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 57

The Anabasis of Alexander

Arrian

ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ ΙΝΔΙΚΗ

The Anabasis of Alexander

Part Two: Books V–VII, with the Indica

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

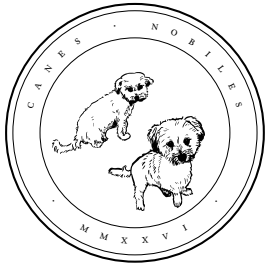


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is used under a Creative Commons
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License
creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0



Volume 57 of the Canes Nobiles Greek interlinear texts

The Greek text follows Roos's Teubner Anabasis
and Hercher and Eberhard's Teubner Indica

Set from the Perseus Digital Library, with corrections

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Words the editors seclude are not printed; words they supply
are printed without their brackets; ∗∗∗ marks a gap in the text.

CONTENTS

THE ANABASIS OF ALEXANDER

BOOK V

I · Nysa 9
II · The Indus and the Rivers of Asia 18
III · The Hydaspes 31
IV · The Crossing 38
V · Porus' Son, and the Battle Line 45
VI · The Battle with Porus 52
VII · The Acesines and Sangala 64
VIII · Sangala Taken, and the Speech at the Hyphasis 77
IX · The Turning Back 88

BOOK VI

I · Down the Hydaspes 97
II · Against the Malli 110
III · The Wound 119
IV · Alexander Shows Himself 129
V · The Lower Indus 137
VI · Patala and the Sea 145
VII · The Oreitae and the Gadrosian Desert 154

THE ANABASIS OF ALEXANDER

(continued)

BOOK VI

(continued)

VIII · The March Through the Desert 163
IX · Carmania and the Tomb of Cyrus 172

BOOK VII

I · Ambitions, and the Indian Sages 187
II · The Weddings at Susa 195
III · The Rivers, and the Mutiny at Opis 203
IV · The Reconciliation 216
V · The Death of Hephaestion 224
VI · The Warning of the Chaldaeans 235
VII · Arabia, the Pallacopas, and the Diadem 247
VIII · The Last Illness 262
IX · Arrian's Verdict 269

INDICA

I · India and Its Rivers 279
II · The Peoples and Kings of India 296
III · The Seven Classes, and the Elephant Hunt 307
IV · Elephants, Beasts, and the Indian Way of Life 317
V · Nearchus Sets Out 328
VI · Along the Coast of the Oreitae 341
VII · The Fish-Eaters 352
VIII · Whales, the Island of the Sun, and Carmania 364
IX · Nearchus Finds Alexander 375
X · Along Persis to Susa 386

ARRIAN

ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

The Anabasis of Alexander

BOOK V

I · NYSA

Between the Cophen and the Indus Alexander comes to Nysa, which its people say Dionysus founded. Their envoys, led by Acuphis, find him still dusty in his armor and ask him to leave the god's city free. Glad to believe that he has come as far as Dionysus and beyond, he grants it and asks for three hundred horsemen and the hundred best men; Acuphis smiles and asks how a city can be governed without its best, and Alexander takes only the cavalry, with Acuphis' son and grandson. The Macedonians crown themselves with the ivy of Mount Meros. Arrian does not wholly agree with Eratosthenes, who calls such stories Macedonian flattery, and leaves them open. At the Indus Alexander finds Hephaestion's bridge and gifts from Taxiles, who surrenders Taxila, and sacrifices and holds games before crossing.

ἐν δὲ τῇ χώρᾳ ταύτῃ, ἥντινα μεταξὺ τοῦ τε Κωφῆνος 1.1
in and the country this which between — both Cophen
καὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπῆλθεν Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ Νῦσαν
and the Indus river traversed Alexander also Nysa
πόλιν ᾠκίσθαι λέγουσι· τὸ δὲ κτίσμα εἶναι Διονύσου·
city to-have-been-founded they-say the and foundation to-be of-Dionysus
Διόνυσον δὲ κτίσαι τὴν Νῦσαν ἐπεί τε Ἰνδοὺς
Dionysus and to-have-founded — Nysa when — Indians
ἐχειρώσατο, ὅστις δὴ οὗτος ὁ Διόνυσος καὶ ὁπότε ἢ
he-subdued whoever indeed this — Dionysus and when or
ὅθεν ἐπ᾽ Ἰνδοὺς ἐστράτευσεν·
whence against Indians he-marched
οὐ γὰρ ἔχω συμβαλεῖν εἰ ὁ Θηβαῖος Διόνυσος ἐκ 1.2
not for I-can to-infer whether the Theban Dionysus from
Θηβῶν ἢ ἐκ Τμώλου τοῦ Λυδίου ὁρμηθεὶς ἐπὶ Ἰνδοὺς
Thebes or from Tmolus the Lydian having-set-out against Indians
ἦκε στρατιὰν ἄγων, τοσαῦτα μὲν ἔθνη μάχιμα καὶ
came an-army leading so-many indeed nations warlike and

ἄγνωστα τοῖς τότε Ἕλλησιν ἐπελθών, οὐδὲν δὲ αὐτῶν
unknown to-the then Greeks having-traversed nothing but of-them
ἄλλο ὅτι μὴ τὸ Ἰνδῶν βίᾳ χειρωσάμενος· πλήν γε
other except — the of-Indians by-force having-subdued except at-least
δὴ ὅτι οὐκ ἀκριβῆ ἐξεταστὴν χρὴ εἶναι τῶν ὑπὲρ
indeed that not exact examiner it-is-necessary to-be of-the about
τοῦ θείου ἐκ παλαιοῦ μεμυθευμένων. τὰ γάρ τοι
the divine from of-old told-in-myth the-things for surely
κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ξυντιθέντι οὐ πιστά, ἐπειδὰν τὸ
according-to the likely for-one-putting-together not credible whenever the
θεῖόν τις προσθῇ τῷ λόγῳ, οὐ πάντῃ ἄπιστα φαίνεται.
divine one adds to-the story not wholly incredible appear

1.3 ὡς δὲ ἐπέβη τῇ Νύσῃ Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐκπέμπουσι παρ᾽
when and set-foot-in — Nysa Alexander send to
αὐτὸν οἱ Νυσαῖοι τὸν κρατιστεύοντα σφῶν, ὄνομα δὲ ἦν
him the Nysaeans the most-powerful of-them name and was
αὐτῷ Ἄκουφις, καὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ πρέσβεις τῶν δοκιμωτάτων
to-him Acuphis and with him envoys of-the most-esteemed
τριάκοντα, δεησομένους Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀφεῖναι τῷ θεῷ τὴν
thirty about-to-ask Alexander to-leave to-the god the
πόλιν.
city

1.4 παρελθεῖν τε δὴ ἐς τὴν σκηνὴν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου τοὺς
to-have-come both indeed into the tent the of-Alexander the
πρέσβεις καὶ καταλαβεῖν καθήμενον κεκονιμένον ἔτι ἐκ
envoys and to-have-found-him sitting dusty still from
τῆς ὁδοῦ ξὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις τοῖς τε ἄλλοις καὶ τὸ κράνος
the road with the arms the both other and the helmet
περικείμενον καὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχοντα· θαμβῆσαί τε ἰδόντας
having-put-on and the spear holding to-have-been-astonished both having-seen
τὴν ὄψιν καὶ πεσόντας ἐς γῆν ἐπὶ πολὺ σιγὴν ἔχειν.
the sight and having-fallen to ground for long silence to-keep

ὡς δὲ ἐξανέστησέ τε αὐτοὺς Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ θαρρεῖν
when and raised-up both them Alexander and to-take-heart
ἐκέλευσε, τότε δὴ τὸν Ἄκουφιν ἀρξάμενον λέγειν ὧδε.
bade then indeed — Acuphis having-begun to-speak thus
ὦ βασιλεῦ, δέονταί σου Νυσαῖοι ἐâσαι σφᾶς ἐλευθέρους 1.5
O king ask you Nysaeans to-let them free
τε καὶ αὐτονόμους αἰδοῖ τοῦ Διονύσου. Διόνυσος γὰρ
both and independent from-reverence — for-Dionysus Dionysus for
ἐπειδὴ χειρωσάμενος τὸ Ἰνδῶν ἔθνος ἐπὶ θάλασσαν ὀπίσω
when having-subdued the of-Indians nation to sea back
κατῄει τὴν Ἑλληνικήν, ἐκ τῶν ἀπομάχων στρατιωτῶν,
was-going-down the Greek from the unfit-for-battle soldiers
οἳ δὴ αὐτῷ καὶ βάκχοι ἦσαν, κτίζει τὴν πόλιν τήνδε
who indeed for-him also bacchants were founds the city this
μνημόσυνον τῆς αὑτοῦ πλάνης τε καὶ νίκης τοῖς ἔπειτα
a-memorial of-the his wandering both and victory for-the hereafter
ἐσόμενον, καθάπερ οὖν καὶ σὺ αὐτὸς Ἀλεξάνδρειάν τε
about-to-be as then also you yourself Alexandria both
ἔκτισας τὴν πρὸς Καυκάσῳ ὄρει καὶ ἄλλην Ἀλεξάνδρειαν
founded the by Caucasus mountain and another Alexandria
ἐν τῇ Αἰγυπτίων γῇ, καὶ ἄλλας πολλὰς τὰς μὲν
in the of-Egyptians land and others many the-ones indeed
ἔκτικας ἤδη, τὰς δὲ καὶ κτίσεις ἀνὰ χρόνον, οἷα
you-have-founded already the-others and also you-will-found in time as
δὴ πλείονα Διονύσου ἔργα ἀποδειξάμενος.
indeed more than-Dionysus deeds having-displayed
Νῦσάν τε οὖν ἐκάλεσε τὴν πόλιν Διόνυσος ἐπὶ τῆς τροφοῦ 1.6
Nysa both then called the city Dionysus after the nurse
τῆς Νύσης καὶ τὴν χώραν Νυσαίαν· τὸ δὲ ὄρος ὅ τι
— Nysa and the country Nysaean the and mountain what ever
περ πλησίον ἐστὶ τῆς πόλεως καὶ τοῦτο Μηρὸν ἐπωνόμασε
indeed near is of-the city also this Meros named

Διόνυσος, ὅτι δὴ κατὰ τὸν μῦθον ἐν μηρῷ τῷ τοῦ Διὸς
Dionysus because indeed according-to the myth in thigh the — of-Zeus
ηὐξήθη. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐλευθέραν τε οἰκοῦμεν τὴν Νῦσαν
he-was-reared and from this free both we-inhabit — Nysa
καὶ αὐτοὶ αὐτόνομοι καὶ ἐν κόσμῳ πολιτεύοντες· τῆς δὲ ἐκ
and ourselves independent and in order governing-ourselves of-the and from
Διονύσου οἰκίσεως καὶ τόδε σοι γενέσθω τεκμήριον· κιττὸς
Dionysus founding also this to-you let-be proof ivy
γὰρ οὐκ ἄλλῃ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς φυόμενος παρ᾽ ἡμῖν φύεται.
for not elsewhere of-the of-Indians land growing among us grows
2.1 καὶ ταῦτα πάντα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πρὸς θυμοῦ ἐγίγνετο ἀκούειν
and these-things all to-Alexander to heart were to-hear
καὶ ἤθελε πιστὰ εἶναι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ Διονύσου τῆς πλάνης
and he-wished credible to-be the-things about — Dionysus' the wandering
μυθευόμενα· καὶ κτίσμα εἶναι Διονύσου τὴν Νῦσαν ἤθελεν,
told-in-myth and foundation to-be of-Dionysus — Nysa he-wished
ὡς ἤδη τε ἥκειν αὐτὸς ἔνθα ἦλθε Διόνυσος καὶ ἐπέκεινα
since already both to-have-come himself where came Dionysus and beyond
ἂν ἐλθεῖν Διονύσου· οὐδ᾽ ἂν Μακεδόνας τὸ πρόσω ἀπαξιῶσαι
— to-go than-Dionysus nor — Macedonians the further to-refuse
συμπονεῖν οἱ ἔτι κατὰ ζῆλον τῶν Διονύσου ἔργων.
to-toil-with him still in emulation of-the of-Dionysus deeds
2.2 καὶ δίδωσιν ἐλευθέρους τε εἶναι τοὺς οἰκήτορας τῆς Νύσης
and he-grants free both to-be the inhabitants — of-Nysa
καὶ αὐτονόμους. ὡς δὲ καὶ τοὺς νόμους ἐπύθετο αὐτῶν
and independent when and also the laws he-learned of-them
καὶ ὅτι πρὸς τῶν ἀρίστων τὸ πολίτευμα ἔχεται, ταῦτά
and that by the best the government is-held these-things
τε ἐπῄνεσε καὶ ἠξίωσε τῶν τε ἱππέων οἱ ξυμπέμψαι
both he-praised and he-asked of-the both cavalry to-him to-send-with
ἐς τριακοσίους καὶ τῶν προεστώτων τοῦ πολιτεύματος,
about three-hundred and of-the presiding-over the government

ἦσαν δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ τριακόσιοι, ἑκατὸν τοὺς ἀρίστους
were and also themselves three-hundred hundred the best
ἐπιλεξαμένους· Ἄκουφιν δὲ εἶναι τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον, ὅντινα
having-chosen Acuphis and to-be the one-choosing whom
καὶ ὕπαρχον τῆς χώρας τῆς Νυσαίας κατέστησεν αὐτός.
also hyparch of-the country the Nysaean appointed he-himself
τὸν δὲ Ἄκουφιν ταῦτα ἀκούσαντα ἐπιμειδιᾶσαι λέγεται 2.3
— and Acuphis these-things having-heard to-have-smiled is-said
τῷ λόγῳ· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἐρέσθαι ἐφ' ὅτῳ ἐγέλασεν·
at-the speech and Alexander to-have-asked at what he-laughed
ὑποκρίνασθαι δ' Ἄκουφιν· καὶ πῶς ἄν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, μία
to-have-answered and Acuphis and how — O king one
πόλις ἑκατὸν ἀνδρῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐρημωθεῖσα ἔτι καλῶς
city hundred of-men good bereft still well
πολιτεύοιτο; ἀλλὰ σύ, εἴ σοι μέλει Νυσαίων, τοὺς
could-be-governed but you if for-you it-matters of-Nysaeans the
ἱππέας μὲν ἄγεσθαι τοὺς τριακοσίους καὶ εἰ βούλει ἔτι
cavalry indeed to-take the three-hundred and if you-wish still
τούτων πλείονας, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν ἑκατόν, οὕστινας τοὺς
of-these more instead-of but the hundred whom the
ἀρίστους ἐπιλέξαι σὺ κελεύεις, διπλασίους τῶν ἄλλων τῶν
best to-choose you bid double of-the others the
κακῶν ἄγεσθαι, ἵνα σοι καὶ αὖθις ἀφικομένῳ δεῦρο ἐν
bad to-take so-that to-you also again having-come here in
τῷ αὐτῷ τούτῳ κόσμῳ φανείη ἡ πόλις.
the same this order may-appear the city
ταῦτα λέγοντα, λέγειν γὰρ δόξαι φρόνιμα, πεῖσαι 2.4
these-things saying to-speak for to-have-seemed sensible to-have-persuaded
Ἀλέξανδρον. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας ξυμπέμπειν οἱ ἐκέλευσε,
Alexander and the indeed cavalry to-send-with to-him he-ordered
τοὺς δὲ ἑκατὸν τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους μηκέτι αἰτῆσαι, ἀλλὰ μηδὲ
the and hundred the picked no-longer to-ask-for but not-even

ἀντ᾽ αὐτῶν ἄλλους· τὸν δὲ παῖδα ἄρα τοῦ Ἀκούφιος
in-place-of them others the and son then — of-Acuphis
καὶ τῆς θυγατρὸς τὸν παῖδα ξυμπέμψαι αὐτῷ Ἄκουφιν.
and of-the daughter the son to-send-with him Acuphis
2.5 Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ πόθος ἔλαβεν ἰδεῖν τὸν χῶρον, ὅπου τινα
Alexander and longing seized to-see the place where some
ὑπομνήματα τοῦ Διονύσου οἱ Νυσαῖοι ἐκόμπαζον. ἐλθεῖν
memorials — of-Dionysus the Nysaeans boasted to-go
τε ἐς τὸ ὄρος τὸν Μηρὸν ξὺν τοῖς ἑταίροις τοῖς ἱππεῦσι
both to the mountain — Meros with the companions the cavalry
καὶ τῷ πεζικῷ ἀγήματι καὶ ἰδεῖν κισσοῦ τε ἀνάπλεων καὶ
and the infantry agema and to-see of-ivy both full and
δάφνης τὸ ὄρος καὶ ἄλση παντοῖα· καὶ ἰδεῖν σύσκιον,
of-laurel the mountain and groves of-every-kind and to-see shady
καὶ θήρας ἐν αὐτῷ εἶναι θηρίων παντοδαπῶν.
and hunting in it to-be of-beasts of-all-kinds
2.6 καὶ τοὺς Μακεδόνας ἡδέως τὸν κισσὸν ἰδόντας, οἷα δὴ
and the Macedonians gladly the ivy having-seen as indeed
διὰ μακροῦ ὀφθέντα οὐ γὰρ εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν χώρᾳ
after long seen not for to-be in the of-Indians country
κισσόν, οὐδὲ ἵναπερ αὐτοῖς ἄμπελοι ἦσαν στεφάνους
ivy not-even where for-them vines were garlands
σπουδῇ ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ ποιεῖσθαι, ὡς καὶ στεφανώσασθαι
eagerly from it to-make as also to-crown-themselves
εἶχον, ἐφυμνοῦντας τὸν Διόνυσόν τε καὶ τὰς ἐπωνυμίας
they-could hymning — Dionysus both and the names
τοῦ θεοῦ ἀνακαλοῦντας. θῦσαι τε αὐτοῦ Ἀλέξανδρον
of-the god invoking to-have-sacrificed both there Alexander
τῷ Διονύσῳ καὶ εὐωχηθῆναι ὁμοῦ τοῖς ἑταίροις.
— to-Dionysus and to-have-feasted together-with the companions

οἱ δὲ καὶ τάδε ἀνέγραψαν, εἰ δή τῳ πιστὰ 2.7
the-others and also these-things recorded if indeed to-anyone credible
καὶ ταῦτα, πολλοὺς τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν τῶν οὐκ ἠμελημένων
also these-things many of-the around him of-the not insignificant
Μακεδόνων τῷ τε κισσῷ στεφανωσαμένους καὶ ὑπὸ τῇ
Macedonians with-the both ivy having-crowned-themselves and at the
κατακλήσει τοῦ θεοῦ κατασχεθῆναί τε πρὸς τοῦ Διονύσου
invocation of-the god to-have-been-possessed both by — Dionysus
καὶ ἀνευάσαι τὸν θεὸν καὶ βακχεῦσαι.
and to-have-cried-evoe the god and to-have-run-bacchic-riot
καὶ ταῦτα ὅπως τις ἐθέλει ὑπολαβὼν ἀπιστείτω ἢ 3.1
and these-things as one wishes having-taken let-him-disbelieve or
πιστευέτω. οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγε Ἐρατοσθένει τῷ Κυρηναίῳ
let-him-believe not for I-at-least with-Eratosthenes the Cyrenaean
πάντῃ ξυμφέρομαι, ὃς λέγει πάντα ὅσα ἐς τὸ θεῖον
wholly agree who says all-things as-many-as to the divine
ἀναφέρεται ἐκ Μακεδόνων πρὸς χάριν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου
are-referred by Macedonians for favor the of-Alexander
ἐς τὸ ὑπέρογκον ἐπιφημισθῆναι.
to the overweening to-have-been-spread-abroad
καὶ γὰρ καὶ σπήλαιον λέγει ἰδόντας ἐν Παραπαμισάδαις 3.2
and for also a-cave he-says having-seen among Parapamisadae
τοὺς Μακεδόνας καί τινα μῦθον ἐπιχώριον ἀκούσαντας
the Macedonians and some myth native having-heard
ἢ καὶ αὐτοὺς ξυνθέντας φημίσαι, ὅτι τοῦτο ἄρα
or also themselves having-put-together to-have-spread-the-report that this then
ἦν τοῦ Προμηθέως τὸ ἄντρον ἵνα ἐδέδετο, καὶ ὁ
was — of-Prometheus the cave where he-had-been-bound and the
ἀετὸς ὅτι ἐκεῖσε ἐφοίτα δαισόμενος τῶν σπλάγχνων τοῦ
eagle that there came about-to-feast on-the entrails —

Προμηθέως, καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ὅτι ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενος τόν τε
of-Prometheus and — Heracles that there having-come the both
ἀετὸν ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τὸν Προμηθέα τῶν δεσμῶν ἀπέλυσε.
eagle killed and — Prometheus from-the bonds loosed
3.3 τὸν δὲ Καύκασον τὸ ὄρος ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ἐς τὰ
— and Caucasus the mountain from — Pontus to the
πρὸς ἕω μέρη τῆς γῆς καὶ τὴν Παραπαμισαδῶν χώραν
toward dawn parts of-the earth and the of-Parapamisadae country
ὡς ἐπὶ Ἰνδοὺς μετάγειν τῷ λόγῳ τοὺς Μακεδόνας,
as toward Indians to-transfer in-the story the Macedonians
Παραπάμισον ὄντα τὸ ὄρος αὐτοὺς καλοῦντας Καύκασον
Parapamisus being the mountain themselves calling-it Caucasus
τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἕνεκα δόξης, ὡς ὑπὲρ τὸν Καύκασον
of-the of-Alexander for-the-sake glory as over — Caucasus
ἄρα ἐλθόντα Ἀλέξανδρον.
then having-gone Alexander
3.4 ἔν τε αὐτῇ τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ βοῦς ἰδόντας ἐγκεκαυμένας
in both the-very the of-Indians land cattle having-seen branded
ῥόπαλον τεκμηριοῦσθαι ἐπὶ τῷδε, ὅτι Ἡρακλῆς ἐς Ἰνδοὺς
with-a-club to-infer from this that Heracles to Indians
ἀφίκετο. ὅμοια δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ Διονύσου τῆς πλάνης ἀπιστεῖ
came similar-things and also about Dionysus' the wandering disbelieves
Ἐρατοσθένης· ἐμοὶ δ' ἐν μέσῳ κείσθων οἱ ὑπὲρ τούτων λόγοι.
Eratosthenes for-me but in middle let-lie the about these accounts
3.5 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἀφίκετο ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν,
Alexander and when be-arrived at the Indus river
καταλαμβάνει γέφυράν τε ἐπ' αὐτῷ πεποιημένην πρὸς
finds a-bridge both over it made by
Ἡφαιστίωνος καὶ πλοῖα πολλὰ μὲν σμικρότερα, δύο δὲ
Hephaestion and boats many indeed smaller two and
τριακοντόρους, καὶ παρὰ Ταξίλου τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ δῶρα ἥκοντα
thirty-oared-ships and from Taxiles the Indian gifts having-come

ἀργυρίου μὲν τάλαντα ἐς διακόσια, ἱερεῖα δὲ βοῦς μὲν
of-silver indeed talents about two-hundred victims and cattle indeed
τρισχιλίας, πρόβατα δὲ ὑπὲρ μύρια, ἐλέφαντας δὲ ἐς
three-thousand sheep and over ten-thousand elephants and about
τριάκοντα·
thirty
καὶ ἱππεῖς δὲ ἑπτακόσιοι αὐτῷ Ἰνδῶν ἐς ξυμμαχίαν παρὰ 3.6
and cavalry and seven-hundred to-him of-Indians for alliance from
Ταξίλου ἦκον· καὶ τὴν πόλιν Τάξιλα, τὴν μεγίστην μεταξὺ
Taxiles came and the city Taxila the greatest between
Ἰνδοῦ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ὑδάσπου, ὅτι αὐτῷ Ταξίλης
Indus both river and Hydaspes that to-him Taxiles
ἐνδίδωσιν. ἐνταῦθα θύει Ἀλέξανδρος τοῖς θεοῖς ὅσοις
surrenders there sacrifices Alexander to-the gods to-whom
αὐτῷ νόμος καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιεῖ γυμνικὸν καὶ ἱππικὸν ἐπὶ τῷ
for-him custom and a-contest makes gymnastic and equestrian by the
ποταμῷ· καὶ γίγνεται αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῇ διαβάσει τὰ ἱερά.
river and come-out-favorably for-him for the crossing the sacrifices

II · THE INDUS AND THE RIVERS OF ASIA

The Indus is the greatest river of Asia and Europe after the Ganges, and its tributaries outdo the other rivers of Asia. Arrian leaves India's laws and marvels to a separate book drawn from Nearchus, Megasthenes, and Eratosthenes, but notes that Alexander's men found the Indians they met without gold, plain in their way of life, tall, dark, and the best fighters in Asia. The Taurus and the Caucasus cut Asia from west to east, its great rivers flow north or south from them, and India is the largest of its southern parts, its plains built by its rivers as Herodotus says Egypt's were. How the Indus was bridged no source says; Arrian guesses boats and describes the Romans' method.

4.1 ὁ δὲ Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς ὅτι μέγιστος ποταμῶν ἐστι τῶν
the and Indus river that greatest of-rivers is of-the
κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν τε καὶ τὴν Εὐρώπην, πλὴν Γάγγου, καὶ
in — Asia both and — Europe except Ganges and
τούτου Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ὅτι αἱ πηγαί εἰσιν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ
this Indian river and that the springs are for-it on
τάδε τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Παραπαμίσου ἢ Καυκάσου, καὶ ὅτι
this-side of-the mountain — Parapamisus or Caucasus and that
ἐκδίδωσιν ἐς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν τὴν κατὰ Ἰνδοὺς
it-discharges into the great sea the by Indians
ὡς ἐπὶ νότον ἄνεμον, καὶ ὅτι δίστομός ἐστιν ὁ Ἰνδὸς
as toward south wind and that two-mouthed is — Indus
καὶ αἱ ἐκβολαὶ αὐτοῦ ἀμφότεραι τεναγώδεις, καθάπερ αἱ
and the outlets its both shoaly as the
πέντε τοῦ Ἴστρου, καὶ ὅτι Δέλτα ποιεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τῇ
five — of-Ister and that a-Delta it-makes also itself in the
Ἰνδῶν γῇ τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ Δέλτα παραπλήσιον καὶ τοῦτο
of-Indians land to-the Egyptian Delta similar and this

Πάταλα καλεῖται τῇ Ἰνδῶν φωνῇ, ταῦτα μὲν ὑπὲρ τοῦ
Patala is-called in-the of-Indians tongue these-things indeed about —
Ἰνδοῦ τὰ μάλιστα οὐκ ἀμφίλογα καὶ ἐμοὶ ἀναγεγράφθω.
Indus the most not disputed also by-me let-be-recorded
ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ Ὑδάσπης καὶ Ἀκεσίνης καὶ Ὑδραώτης καὶ 4.2
since also — Hydaspes and Acesines and Hydraotes and
Ὕφασις, καὶ οὗτοι Ἰνδοὶ ποταμοὶ ὄντες, τῶν μὲν ἄλλων τῶν
Hyphasis also these Indian rivers being of-the indeed other the
Ἀσιανῶν ποταμῶν πολύ τι κατὰ μέγεθος ὑπερφέρουσι,
Asian rivers by-much somewhat in size surpass
τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ δὲ μείονές εἰσιν καὶ πολὺ δὴ μείονες, ὅπου καὶ
— than-Indus but smaller are and much indeed smaller where also
αὐτὸς ὁ Ἰνδὸς τοῦ Γάγγου. Κτησίας μὲν δή, εἰ δή τῳ
itself — Indus — than-Ganges Ctesias indeed indeed if indeed to-anyone
ἱκανὸς καὶ Κτησίας ἐς τεκμηρίωσιν, ἵνα μὲν στενότατος
sufficient also Ctesias for proof where indeed narrowest
αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ ὁ Ἰνδός ἐστι, τεσσαράκοντα σταδίους λέγει
itself than-itself — Indus is forty stades he-says
ὅτι διέχουσιν αὐτῷ αἱ ὄχθαι, ἵνα δὲ πλατύτατος, καὶ
that are-apart for-it the banks where and broadest also
ἑκατόν· τὸ πολὺ δὲ εἶναι αὐτοῦ τὸ μέσον τούτοιν.
hundred the most and to-be of-it the mean of-these-two
τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἰνδὸν ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω διέβαινε ξὺν 4.3
this the river — Indus toward the dawn crossed with
τῇ στρατιᾷ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς τῶν Ἰνδῶν τὴν γῆν· ὑπὲρ ὧν
the army Alexander into of-the Indians the land about whom
ἐγὼ οὔτε οἵστισι νόμοις διαχρῶνται ἐν τῇδε τῇ συγγραφῇ
I neither with-what laws they-live in this the history
ἀνέγραψα, οὔτε ζῷα εἰ δή τινα ἄτοπα ἡ χώρα αὐτοῖς
have-recorded nor animals if indeed any strange the country for-them
ἐκφέρει, οὔτε ἰχθύας ἢ κήτη ὅσα ἢ οἷα ὁ Ἰνδὸς
produces nor fish or sea-monsters how-many or what-kind — Indus

ἢ ὁ Ὑδάσπης ἢ ὁ Γάγγης ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἰνδῶν ποταμοὶ
or — Hydaspes or — Ganges or the other of-Indians rivers
φέρουσιν, οὐδὲ τοὺς μύρμηκας τοὺς τὸν χρυσόν σφισιν
carry nor the ants the the gold for-them
ἐργαζομένους, οὐδὲ τοὺς γρῦπας τοὺς φύλακας, οὐδὲ ὅσα
working nor the griffins the guardians nor as-many-as
ἄλλα ἐφ' ἡδονῇ μᾶλλόν τι πεποίηται ἢ ἐς
other-things for pleasure more somewhat have-been-composed than for
ἀφήγησιν τῶν ὄντων, ὡς τά γε κατ' Ἰνδοὺς ὅσα
narrative of-the things-being since the-things at-least about Indians as-many-as
ἂν ἄτοπα ψεύσωνται, οὐκ ἐξελεγχθησόμενα πρὸς οὐδαμῶν.
— strange they-may-lie not about-to-be-refuted by anyone
4.4 ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρος γὰρ καὶ οἱ ξὺν τούτῳ στρατεύσαντες τὰ
but Alexander for and the with him having-campaigned the
πολλὰ ἐξήλεγξαν, ὅσα γε μὴ καὶ αὐτῶν ἔστιν οἳ
most refuted as-many-as at-least not also of-them there-are who
ἐψεύσαντο· ἀχρύσους τε εἶναι Ἰνδοὺς ἐξήλεγξαν, ὅσους
lied goldless both to-be Indians they-proved as-many-as
γε δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐπῆλθε, πολλοὺς
at-least indeed Alexander with the army visited many
δὲ ἐπῆλθε, καὶ ἥκιστα χλιδῶντας κατὰ τὴν δίαιταν, ἀλλὰ
and be-visited and least living-luxuriously in the way-of-life but
μεγάλους μὲν τὰ σώματα, οἵους μεγίστους τῶν κατὰ τὴν
large indeed the bodies such-as largest of-the in —
Ἀσίαν, πενταπήχεις τοὺς πολλοὺς ἢ ὀλίγον ἀποδέοντας,
Asia five-cubit the most or little falling-short
καὶ μελαντέρους τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων, πλὴν Αἰθιόπων,
and darker than-the other men except Ethiopians
καὶ τὰ πολέμια πολύ τι γενναιοτάτους τῶν γε
and the warlike-things by-much somewhat noblest of-the at-least
δὴ τότε ἐποίκων τῆς Ἀσίας.
indeed then inhabitants — of-Asia

τὸ γὰρ Περσῶν τῶν πάλαι, ξὺν οἷς ὁρμηθεὶς Κῦρος 4.5
the for of-Persians the of-old with whom having-set-out Cyrus
ὁ Καμβύσου Μήδους τε τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Ἀσίας ἀφείλετο
the (son)-of-Cambyses the-Medes both the rule — of-Asia took-from
καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη τὰ μὲν κατεστρέψατο, τὰ δὲ
and other nations the-ones indeed subdued the-others and
προσχωρήσαντά οἱ ἑκόντα κατέσχεν, οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκῶς
having-come-over to-him willing held not I-can exactly
ὥς γε δὴ πρὸς τὰ Ἰνδῶν ξυμβαλεῖν. καὶ γὰρ
as at-least indeed with the-things of-Indians to-compare and for
καὶ Πέρσαι τότε πένητές τε ἦσαν καὶ χώρας τραχείας
also Persians then poor both were and of-land rough
οἰκήτορες, καὶ νόμιμά σφισιν ἦν οἷα ἐγγυτάτω εἶναι
inhabitants and customs to-them were such-as nearest to-be
τῇ Λακωνικῇ παιδεύσει. τὸ δὲ τραῦμα τὸ γενόμενον
to-the Laconian discipline the and wound the inflicted
Πέρσαις ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ γῇ οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἔχω ἀτρεκῶς
on-Persians in the Scythian land nor this I-can exactly
ξυμβαλεῖν πότερα δυσχωρίαις ξυνενεχθεῖσιν ἤ τινι ἄλλῃ
to-infer whether to-difficult-ground encountered or to-some other
Κύρου ἁμαρτίᾳ ξυνέβη ἢ Σκυθῶν γε τῶν ταύτῃ
of-Cyrus error it-happened or than-Scythians at-least the there
κακίους τὰ πολέμια Πέρσαι ἦσαν.
worse in-the warlike-things Persians were
ἀλλὰ ὑπὲρ Ἰνδῶν ἰδίᾳ μοι γεγράψεται ὅσα 5.1
but about Indians separately by-me will-have-been-written as-much-as
πιστότατα ἐς ἀφήγησιν οἵ τε ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στρατεύσαντες
most-credible for narrative the both with Alexander having-campaigned
καὶ ὁ ἐκπεριπλεύσας τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης τὸ κατ᾽
and the having-sailed-around of-the great sea the by
Ἰνδοὺς Νέαρχος, ἐπὶ δὲ ὅσα Μεγασθένης τε καὶ
Indians Nearchus besides and as-much-as Megasthenes both and

Ἐρατοσθένης, δοκίμω ἄνδρε, ξυνεγραψάτην, καὶ νόμιμα
Eratosthenes esteemed two-men wrote and customs
ἄττα Ἰνδοῖς ἐστι καὶ εἰ δή τινα ἄτοπα ζῷα αὐτόθι
whatever to-Indians are and if indeed any strange animals there
φύεται καὶ τὸν παράπλουν αὐτὸν τῆς ἔξω θαλάσσης.
grow and the coasting itself of-the outer sea

5.2 νῦν δὲ ὅσον ἐς τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργα ἀποχρῶν ἐφαίνετο,
now but as-much-as for the of-Alexander deeds sufficient appeared
τοσόνδε μοι ἀναγεγράφθω· τὸν Ταῦρον τὸ ὄρος
so-much by-me let-be-recorded — Taurus the mountain
ἀπείργειν τὴν Ἀσίαν, ἀρχόμενον μὲν ἀπὸ Μυκάλης τοῦ
to-bound — Asia beginning indeed from Mycale the
καταντικρὺ Σάμου τῆς νήσου ὄρους, ἀποτεμνόμενον δὲ
opposite Samos the island mountain cutting-off and
τήν τε Παμφύλων καὶ Κιλίκων γῆν ἔνθεν μὲν ὡς ἐς
the both of-Pamphylians and Cilicians land thence indeed as to
Ἀρμενίαν παρήκειν, ἀπὸ δὲ Ἀρμενίων ὡς ἐπὶ Μηδίαν
Armenia to-extend from and Armenians as toward Media
παρὰ Παρθυαίους τε καὶ Χορασμίους, κατὰ δὲ Βακτρίους
past Parthyaeans both and Chorasmians in and Bactrians
ξυμβάλλειν τῷ Παραπαμίσῳ ὄρει,
to-join — Parapamisus mountain

5.3 ὃ δὴ Καύκασον ἐκάλουν οἱ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ξυστρατεύσαντες
which indeed Caucasus called the with-Alexander having-campaigned
Μακεδόνες, ὡς μὲν λέγεται τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου αὔξοντες,
Macedonians as indeed it-is-said the-things of-Alexander magnifying
ὅτι δὴ καὶ ἐπέκεινα ἄρα τοῦ Καυκάσου κρατῶν τοῖς
that indeed also beyond then — Caucasus prevailing with-the
ὅπλοις ἦλθεν Ἀλέξανδρος· τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ξυνεχὲς τυγχάνει
arms came Alexander perhaps and also continuous happens
ὂν τοῦτο τὸ ὄρος τῷ ἄλλῳ τῷ Σκυθικῷ Καυκάσῳ,
being this the mountain with-the other the Scythian Caucasus

καθάπερ οὖν αὐτῷ τούτῳ ὁ Ταῦρος· καὶ ἐμοὶ αὐτῷ
as then with-it this — Taurus also by-me myself
πρότερόν ποτε ἐπὶ τῷδε λέλεκται Καύκασος τὸ ὄρος
earlier once for this has-been-said Caucasus the mountain
τοῦτο καὶ ὕστερον τῷδε τῷ ὀνόματι κληθήσεται·
this and later by-this the name will-be-called
τὸν δὲ Καύκασον τοῦτον καθήκειν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην 5.4
— and Caucasus this to-extend as-far to the great
τὴν πρὸς ἕω τε καὶ Ἰνδοὺς θάλασσαν. τοὺς οὖν
the toward dawn both and Indians sea the then
ποταμούς, ὅσοι κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν λόγου ἄξιοι, ἐκ τοῦ
rivers as-many-as in — Asia of-account worthy from —
Ταύρου τε καὶ τοῦ Καυκάσου ἀνίσχοντας τοὺς μὲν ὡς
Taurus both and — Caucasus rising the-ones indeed as
ἐπ᾽ ἄρκτον τετραμμένον ἔχειν τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ τούτων
toward north turned to-have the water and of-these
τοὺς μὲν ἐς τὴν λίμνην ἐκδιδόναι τὴν Μαιῶτιν, τοὺς
the-ones indeed into the lake to-discharge — Maeotis the-others
δὲ ἐς τὴν Ὑρκανίαν καλουμένην θάλασσαν, καὶ ταύτην
and into the Hyrcanian called sea and this
κόλπον οὖσαν τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης,
a-gulf being of-the great sea
τοὺς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ νότον ἄνεμον τὸν Εὐφράτην τε εἶναι 5.5
the-others and as toward south wind — Euphrates both to-be
καὶ τὸν Τίγρητα καὶ τὸν Ἰνδόν τε καὶ τὸν Ὑδάσπην καὶ
and — Tigris and — Indus both and — Hydaspes and
Ἀκεσίνην καὶ Ὑδραώτην καὶ Ὕφασιν καὶ ὅσοι ἐν μέσῳ
Acesines and Hydraotes and Hyphasis and as-many-as in between
τούτων τε καὶ τοῦ Γάγγου ποταμοῦ ἐς θάλασσαν καὶ
these both and the Ganges river into sea also

οὗτοι ἐσβάλλουσιν ἢ εἰς τενάγη ἀναχεόμενοι ἀφανίζονται,
these discharge or into shallows spreading-out disappear
καθάπερ ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς ἀφανίζεται.
as the Euphrates river disappears

6.1 ὅτῳ δὴ τὰ τῆς Ἀσίας ὧδε ἔχει ὡς πρὸς τοῦ Ταύρου
for-whom indeed the-things — of-Asia so are as by — Taurus
τε καὶ τοῦ Καυκάσου τέμνεσθαι ἀπὸ ἀνέμου ζεφύρου ὡς
both and — Caucasus to-be-cut from wind west as
ἐπὶ ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον τὴν Ἀσίαν, τούτῳ δύο μὲν αὗται
toward east wind — Asia for-him two indeed these
μέγισται πρὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ταύρου τῆς Ἀσίας μοῖραι γίγνονται,
greatest by itself — Taurus — of-Asia parts become
ἡ μὲν ἐς μεσημβρίαν τε καὶ πρὸς νότον ἄνεμον
the-one indeed toward midday both and toward south wind
κεκλιμένη, ἡ δὲ ἐπ᾽ ἄρκτον τε καὶ ἄνεμον βορρᾶν.
inclined the-other and toward north both and wind north

6.2 τῆς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ νότον Ἀσίας τετραχῇ αὖ τεμνομένης
of-the and as toward south Asia in-four again being-divided
μεγίστην μὲν μοῖραν τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν ποιεῖ Ἐρατοσθένης
greatest indeed part the of-Indians land makes Eratosthenes
τε καὶ Μεγασθένης, ὃς ξυνῆν μὲν Σιβυρτίῳ τῷ σατράπῃ
both and Megasthenes who was-with indeed Sibyrtius the satrap
τῆς Ἀραχωσίας, πολλάκις δὲ λέγει ἀφικέσθαι παρὰ
— of-Arachosia many-times and he-says to-have-come to
Σανδράκοττον τὸν Ἰνδῶν βασιλέα, ἐλαχίστην δὲ ὅσην
Sandracottus the of-Indians king smallest and as-much-as
ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς ἀπείργει ὡς πρὸς τὴν ἐντὸς τὴν
the Euphrates river bounds as toward the inner the
ἡμετέραν θάλασσαν. δύο δὲ αἱ μεταξὺ Εὐφράτου τε
our sea two and the between Euphrates both

ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἀπειργόμεναι αἱ δύο ξυντεθεῖσαι
river and — Indus bounded the two put-together
μόλις ἄξιαι τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ ξυμβαλεῖν.
scarcely worthy to-the of-Indians land to-compare
ἀπείργεσθαι δὲ τὴν Ἰνδῶν χώραν πρὸς μὲν ἕω τε 6.3
to-be-bounded and the of-Indians country toward indeed dawn both
καὶ ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον ἔστε ἐπὶ μεσημβρίαν τῇ μεγάλῃ
and east wind as-far to midday by-the great
θαλάσσῃ· τὸ πρὸς βορρᾶν δὲ αὐτῆς ἀπείργειν τὸν
sea the toward north and of-it to-bound —
Καύκασον τὸ ὄρος ἔστε ἐπὶ τοῦ Ταύρου τὴν ξυμβολήν·
Caucasus the mountain as-far to — of-Taurus the junction
τὴν δὲ ὡς πρὸς ἑσπέραν τε καὶ ἄνεμον Ἰάπυγα ἔστε ἐπὶ
the and as toward evening both and wind Iapyx as-far to
τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς ἀποτέμνεται.
the great sea the Indus river cuts-off
καὶ ἔστι πεδίον ἡ πολλὴ αὐτῆς, καὶ τοῦτο, ὡς εἰκάζουσιν,
and is plain the most of-it and this as they-conjecture
ἐκ τῶν ποταμῶν προσκεχωσμένον.
from the rivers silted-up
εἶναι γὰρ οὖν καὶ τῆς ἄλλης χώρας ὅσα πεδία οὐ 6.4
to-be for then also of-the other country as-many-as plains not
πρόσω θαλάσσης τὰ πολλὰ τῶν ποταμῶν παρ᾽ ἑκάστοις
far from-sea the most of-the rivers among each
ποιήματα· ὡς δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τοῖς
products so and also of-the country the name to-the
ποταμοῖς ἐκ παλαιοῦ προσκεῖσθαι, καθάπερ Ἕρμου τέ
rivers from of-old to-be-attached as of-Hermus both
τι πεδίον λέγεσθαι, ὃς κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν γῆν ἀνίσχων ἐξ
some plain to-be-called which in — Asia land rising from
ὄρους Μητρὸς Δινδυμήνης παρὰ Σμύρναν πόλιν Αἰολικὴν
mountain of-Mother Dindymene past Smyrna city Aeolian

ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν, καὶ ἄλλο Καΰστρου, πεδίον Λύδιον
discharges into sea and another of-Cayster plain Lydian
καὶ Λυδίου ποταμοῦ, καὶ Καΐκου ἄλλο ἐν Μυσίᾳ καὶ
and of-Lydian river and of-Caicus another in Mysia and
Μαιάνδρου τὸ Καρικὸν ἔστε ἐπὶ Μίλητον πόλιν Ἰωνικήν.
of-Maeander the Carian as-far to Miletus city Ionian
6.5 Αἴγυπτόν τε Ἡρόδοτός τε καὶ Ἑκαταῖος οἱ λογοποιοί, ἢ
Egypt both Herodotus both and Hecataeus the chroniclers or
εἰ δή του ἄλλου ἢ Ἑκαταίου ἐστὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ τῇ γῇ
if indeed of-some other than of-Hecataeus are the-things about the land
τῇ Αἰγυπτίᾳ ποιήματα, δῶρόν τε τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀμφότεροι
the Egyptian works gift both of-the river both
ὡσαύτως ὀνομάζουσιν καὶ οὐκ ἀμαυροῖς τεκμηρίοις ὅτι
likewise name and not with-obscure proofs that
ταύτῃ ἔχει Ἡροδότῳ ἐπιδέδεικται, ὡς καὶ τὴν γῆν αὐτὴν
so it-is by-Herodotus has-been-shown so-that also the land itself
τυχὸν τοῦ ποταμοῦ εἶναι ἐπώνυμον. Αἴγυπτος γὰρ τὸ
perhaps from-the river to-be named Egypt for the
παλαιὸν ὁ ποταμὸς ὅτι ἐκαλεῖτο, ὅντινα νῦν Νεῖλον
of-old the river that was-called which now Nile
Αἰγύπτιοί τε καὶ οἱ ἔξω Αἰγύπτου ἄνθρωποι ὀνομάζουσιν,
Egyptians both and the outside Egypt men name
ἱκανὸς τεκμηριῶσαι Ὅμηρος, λέγων ἐπὶ τῇ ἐκβολῇ τοῦ
sufficient to-prove Homer saying at the outlet of-the
Αἰγύπτου ποταμοῦ τὸν Μενέλεων στῆσαι τὰς νέας.
Egypt river — Menelaus to-have-stationed the ships
6.6 εἰ δὴ οὖν εἷς τε ποταμὸς παρ' ἑκάστοις καὶ οὐ μεγάλοι
if indeed then one both river among each and not great
οὗτοι ποταμοὶ ἱκανοὶ γῆν πολλὴν ποιῆσαι ἐς θάλασσαν
these rivers sufficient land much to-make into sea
προχεόμενοι, ὁπότε ἰλὺν καταφέροιεν καὶ πηλὸν ἐκ τῶν ἄνω
pouring-forth whenever silt they-carried-down and mud from the upper

τόπων ἔνθενπερ αὐτοῖς αἱ πηγαί εἰσιν, οὐδὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἰνδῶν
places whence-indeed for-them the springs are not-even about the of-Indians
ἄρα χώρας ἐς ἀπιστίαν ἰέναι ἄξιον, ὅπως πεδίον τε ἡ πολλή
then country to disbelief to-go worthy how plain both the most
ἐστι καὶ ἐκ τῶν ποταμῶν τὸ πεδίον ἔχει προσκεχωσμένον.
is and from the rivers the plain has silted-up
Ἕρμον μὲν γὰρ καὶ Κάϋστρον καὶ Κάϊκόν τε καὶ 6.7
Hermus indeed for and Cayster and Caicus both and
Μαίανδρον ἢ ὅσοι πολλοὶ ποταμοὶ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐς
Maeander or as-many-as many rivers — of-Asia into
τήνδε τὴν ἐντὸς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοῦσιν οὐδὲ σύμπαντας
this the inner sea discharge not-even all
ξυντεθέντας ἑνὶ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμῶν ἄξιον ξυμβαλεῖν
put-together with-one of-the Indian rivers worthy to-compare
πλήθους ἕνεκα τοῦ ὕδατος, μὴ ὅτι τῷ Γάγγῃ τῷ
in-volume for-the-sake of-the water not to-say — with-Ganges the
μεγίστῳ, ὅτῳ οὔτε τὸ τοῦ Νείλου ὕδωρ τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου
greatest with-which neither the — of-Nile water the Egyptian
οὔτε ὁ Ἴστρος ὁ κατὰ τὴν Εὐρώπην ῥέων ἄξιοι ξυμβαλεῖν,
nor — Ister the in — Europe flowing worthy to-compare
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τῷ Ἰνδῷ ποταμῷ ἐκεῖνοί γε πάντες 6.8
but not-even with-the Indus river those at-least all
ξυμμιχθέντες ἐς ἴσον ἔρχονται, ὃς μέγας τε εὐθὺς ἀπὸ
mingled to equality come which great both at-once from
τῶν πηγῶν ἀνίσχει καὶ πεντεκαίδεκα ποταμοὺς πάντας
the springs rises and fifteen rivers all
τῶν Ἀσιανῶν μείζονας παραλαβὼν καὶ τῇ ἐπωνυμίᾳ
than-the Asian greater having-received and in-the name
κρατήσας οὕτως ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν. ταῦτά μοι ἐν
having-prevailed so discharges into sea these-things by-me in

τῷ παρόντι περὶ Ἰνδῶν τῆς χώρας λελέχθω· τὰ δὲ
the present about of-Indians the country let-be-said the and
ἄλλα ἀποκείσθω ἐς τὴν Ἰνδικὴν ξυγγραφήν.
other-things let-be-reserved for the Indian history

7.1 τὸ δὲ ζεῦγμα τὸ ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅπως μὲν
the and bridge the over the Indus river how indeed
ἐποιήθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὔτε Ἀριστόβουλος οὔτε Πτολεμαῖος,
was-made for-Alexander neither Aristobulus nor Ptolemy
οἷς μάλιστα ἐγὼ ἕπομαι, λέγουσιν· οὐδὲ αὐτὸς ἔχω
whom most I follow say nor myself I-can
ἀτρεκῶς εἰκάσαι, πότερα πλοίοις ἐζεύχθη ὁ πόρος,
exactly to-conjecture whether with-boats was-bridged the crossing
καθάπερ οὖν ὁ Ἑλλήσποντός τε πρὸς Ξέρξου καὶ ὁ
as then — Hellespont both by Xerxes and —
Βόσπορός τε καὶ ὁ Ἴστρος πρὸς Δαρείου, ἢ γέφυρα
Bosporus both and — Ister by Darius or a-bridge
κατὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ διηνεκὴς ἐποιήθη αὐτῷ· δοκεῖ δ'
across the river continuous was-made for-him seems but
ἔμοιγε πλοίοις μᾶλλον ζευχθῆναι· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δέξασθαι
to-me-at-least with-boats rather to-have-been-bridged not for — to-admit
γέφυραν τὸ βάθος τοῦ ὕδατος, οὐδ' ἂν ἐν τοσῷδε χρόνῳ
a-bridge the depth of-the water nor — in so-short time
ἔργον οὕτως ἄτοπον ξυντελεσθῆναι.
a-work so extraordinary to-have-been-completed

7.2 εἰ δὲ δὴ πλοίοις ἐζεύχθη ὁ πόρος, πότερα ξυντεθεῖσαι
if but indeed with-boats was-bridged the crossing whether joined
αἱ νῆες σχοίνοις καὶ κατὰ στοῖχον ὁρμισθεῖσαι ἐς τὸ
the ships with-ropes and in row moored for the
ζεῦγμα ἀπήρκεσαν, ὡς λέγει Ἡρόδοτος ζευχθῆναι τὸν
bridging sufficed as says Herodotus to-have-been-bridged —
Ἑλλήσποντον, ἢ ὅτῳ τρόπῳ Ῥωμαίοις ἐπὶ τῷ Ἴστρῳ
Hellespont or in-what manner by-Romans on the Ister

ποταμῷ ζεῦγμα ποιεῖται καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ Ῥήνῳ τῷ Κελτικῷ,
river a-bridge is-made and on — Rhine the Celtic
καὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην καὶ τὸν Τίγρητα, ὁσάκις κατέλαβεν
and — Euphrates and — Tigris as-often-as overtook
αὐτοὺς ἀνάγκη, ἐγεφύρωσαν, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἔχω ξυμβαλεῖν.
them necessity they-bridged not-even this I-can to-infer
καίτοι ταχυτάτη γε ὢν ἐγὼ οἶδα Ῥωμαίοις ἡ 7.3
and-yet swiftest at-least of-those-which I know for-Romans the
γεφύρωσις ἡ διὰ τῶν νεῶν γίγνεται, καὶ ταύτην ἐγὼ
bridging the by the ships takes-place and this I
ἀφηγήσομαι ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ὅτι λόγου ἀξία. αἱ νῆες αὐτοῖς
will-describe in the present because of-account worthy the ships for-them
κατὰ πόρου ἀφίενται ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος, οὐκ ἐπ᾽ εὐθύ, ἀλλὰ
down stream are-let-go at signal not on straight but
καθάπερ αἱ πρύμναν κρουόμεναι. ταύτας ὑποφέρει μέν, οἷα
as the-ones by-the-stern being-backed these carries-down indeed as
εἰκός, ὁ ῥοῦς, ἀνέχει δὲ κελήτιον ἐπῆρες, ἔστ᾽ ἂν καταστήσῃ
likely the current holds-back but a-skiff oared until — it-sets-them
ἐς τὸ τεταγμένον χωρίον· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἤδη καθίεται
in the appointed place and there already are-let-down
πλέγματα ἐκ λύγου πυραμοειδῆ πλήρη λίθων λογάδων ἀπὸ
wickerworks of osier pyramid-shaped full of-stones unhewn from
πρώρας ἑκάστης νεώς, τοῦ ἀνέχειν τὴν ναῦν πρὸς τὸν ῥοῦν.
prow each ship for-the to-hold the ship against the current
ἅμα δὲ δὴ μία τις τῶν νεῶν ἐσχέθη, καὶ ἄλλη 7.4
at-the-same-time and indeed one some of-the ships was-held and another
ἀπὸ ταύτης διέχουσα ὅσον ξύμμετρον πρὸς ἰσχὺν τῶν
from this standing-apart as-much-as proportionate for strength of-the
ἐπιβαλλομένων ἀντίπρωρος πρὸς τὸ ῥεῦμα ὁρμίζεται· καὶ
things-laid-on prow-facing toward the current is-moored and
ἀπ᾽ ἀμφοῖν ξύλα τε ἐς εὐθὺ ὀξέως ἐπιβάλλεται καὶ σανίδες
from both timbers both in straight quickly are-laid-on and planks

ἐγκάρσιαι ἐς τὸ ξυνδεῖν. καὶ διὰ πασῶν οὕτω τῶν νεῶν,
crosswise for the to-bind and through all so the ships
ὅσαι ἱκαναὶ γεφυρῶσαι τὸν πόρον, χωρεῖ τὸ ἔργον.
as-many-as sufficient to-bridge the crossing goes-on the work
7.5 ἑκατέρωθεν δὲ τοῦ ζεύγματος κλίμακες προβάλλονται
on-either-side and of-the bridge ladders are-thrown-forward
καταπηγνύμεναι, τοῦ ἀσφαλεστέραν τοῖς τε ἵπποις καὶ
being-fixed for-the safer for-the both horses and
τοῖς ζεύγεσι τὴν ἔφοδον γίγνεσθαι, καὶ ἅμα ὡς
the teams the approach to-be and at-the-same-time as
σύνδεσμος εἶναι τοῦ ζεύγματος. δι᾽ ὀλίγου τε ξυντελεῖται
a-binding to-be of-the bridge in short-time both is-completed
ἅπαν καὶ ξὺν πολλῷ θορύβῳ, καὶ τὸ τεταγμένον ἐν τῷ
all and with much noise and the orderly in the
δρωμένῳ ὅμως οὐκ ἄπεστιν, οἵ τε παρακελευσμοὶ ὡς
being-done nevertheless not is-absent the both exhortations as
τύχοιεν κατὰ ναῦν ἑκάστην καὶ αἱ ἐπιτιμήσεις τοῦ
they-may-happen at ship each and the rebukes of-the
ἐκλιποῦς οὔτε τὴν κατάκουσιν τῶν παραγγελμάτων οὔτε
slack neither the hearing of-the orders nor
τὴν ὀξύτητα τοῦ ἔργου ἀφαιροῦνται.
the quickness of-the work take-away

Arrian cannot say how the Indus was bridged, since even Alexander's companions do not tell. Alexander crosses, sacrifices, and reaches Taxila, where Taxiles and the Indians of the region receive him as friends and he adds land to theirs; envoys come from Abisares and from Doxares. He sacrifices, holds games, leaves Philip son of Machatas as satrap with a garrison and the sick, and marches for the Hydaspes. Learning that Porus holds the far bank with his whole army and his elephants, he has the Indus boats cut up and carried overland. The river is in flood after the summer solstice and the horses will not face the elephants, so Alexander moves his troops up and down the bank, gathers grain as if to wait for the winter, and night after night raises a din of cavalry and war cries until Porus stops answering the feints.

Ῥωμαίοις μὲν δὴ οὕτω ταῦτα ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἐπήσκηται· 8.1
by-Romans indeed indeed so these-things from of-old have-been-practiced
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ ὅπως ἐζεύχθη ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς οὐκ ἔχω
by-Alexander but how was-bridged the Indus river not I-can
εἰπεῖν, ὅτι μηδὲ οἱ συστρατεύσαντες αὐτῷ εἶπον. ἀλλά
to-say because not-even the having-campaigned-with him said but
μοι δοκεῖ ὡς ἐγγυτάτω τούτων ἐζεῦχθαι, ἢ εἰ δή
to-me it-seems as nearest to-these to-have-been-bridged or if indeed
τινι ἄλλῃ μηχανῇ, ἐκείνῃ ἐχέτω.
by-some other device in-that-way let-it-be
ὡς δὲ διέβη πέραν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐνταῦθα αὖ 8.2
when and he-crossed beyond the Indus river also there again
θύει κατὰ νόμον Ἀλέξανδρος. ἄρας δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ
sacrifices according-to custom Alexander having-set-out and from —
Ἰνδοῦ ἐς Τάξιλα ἀφίκετο, πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα,
Indus to Taxila arrived a-city great and prosperous
τὴν μεγίστην τῶν μεταξὺ Ἰνδοῦ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ὑδάσπου.
the greatest of-the between Indus both river and Hydaspes

καὶ ἐδέχετο αὐτὸν Ταξίλης ὁ ὕπαρχος τῆς πόλεως
and received him Taxiles the hyparch of-the city
καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ τῇδε Ἰνδοὶ φιλίως. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
and themselves the there Indians in-friendly-fashion and Alexander
προστίθησιν αὐτοῖς χώραν τῆς ὁμόρου ὅσης ἐδέοντο.
adds to-them land of-the neighboring as-much-as they-asked
8.3 ἦκον δὲ ἐνταῦθα παρ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ παρὰ Ἀβισάρου πρέσβεις
came and there to him also from Abisares envoys
τοῦ τῶν ὀρείων Ἰνδῶν βασιλέως ὅ τε ἀδελφὸς τοῦ
the of-the mountain Indians king the both brother —
Ἀβισάρου καὶ ἄλλοι ξὺν αὐτῷ οἱ δοκιμώτατοι, καὶ παρὰ
of-Abisares and others with him the most-esteemed and from
Δοξάρεως νομάρχου ἄλλοι, δῶρα φέροντες. καὶ ἐνταῦθα αὖ
Doxares a-nomarch others gifts bringing and there again
Ἀλέξανδρος ἐν Ταξίλοις θύει ὅσα οἱ νόμος καὶ ἀγῶνα
Alexander in Taxila sacrifices as-much-as for-him custom and a-contest
ποιεῖ γυμνικόν τε καὶ ἱππικόν. καὶ ἀποδείξας σατράπην
makes gymnastic both and equestrian and having-appointed satrap
τῶν ταύτῃ Ἰνδῶν Φίλιππον τὸν Μαχάτα φρουράν τε
of-the there Indians Philip the (son)-of-Machatas a-garrison both
ἀπολείπει ἐν Ταξίλοις καὶ τοὺς ἀπομάχους τῶν στρατιωτῶν
leaves in Taxila and the unfit-for-battle of-the soldiers
διὰ νόσον· αὐτὸς δὲ ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμόν.
through illness he-himself and led as toward the Hydaspes river
8.4 ἐπέκεινα γὰρ τοῦ Ὑδάσπου Πῶρος αὐτῷ εἶναι ἐξηγγέλλετο
beyond for — Hydaspes Porus to-him to-be was-reported
ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάσῃ ἐγνωκὼς εἴργειν τοῦ πόρου αὐτὸν
with the army whole having-resolved to-bar from-the crossing him
ἢ περῶντι ἐπιτίθεσθαι. ταῦτα ὡς ἔγνω Ἀλέξανδρος,
or for-him-crossing to-attack these-things when learned Alexander
Κοῖνον μὲν τὸν Πολεμοκράτους πέμψας ὀπίσω ἐπὶ τὸν
Coenus indeed the (son)-of-Polemocrates having-sent back to the

Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν τὰ πλοῖα ὅσα παρεσκεύαστο αὐτῷ ἐπὶ
Indus river the boats as-many-as had-been-prepared for-him for
τοῦ πόρου τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ξυντεμόντα κελεύει φέρειν ὡς ἐπὶ
the crossing — of-Indus having-cut-up he-orders to-carry as toward
τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμόν.
the Hydaspes river
καὶ ξυνετμήθη τε τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἐκομίσθη αὐτῷ, ὅσα 8.5
and were-cut-up both the boats and were-carried for-him as-many-as
μὲν βραχύτερα διχῇ διατμηθέντα, αἱ τριακόντοροι δὲ
indeed shorter in-two cut the thirty-oared-ships and
τριχῇ ἐτμήθησαν, καὶ τὰ τμήματα ἐπὶ ζευγῶν διεκομίσθη
in-three were-cut and the sections on wagons were-carried
ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ὄχθην τοῦ Ὑδάσπου κἀκεῖ ξυμπηχθέντα
as-far to the bank — of-Hydaspes and-there fitted-together
ναυτικὸν αὖθις δὴ ὁμοῦ ὤφθη ἐν τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ. αὐτὸς
a-fleet again indeed together was-seen on — Hydaspes he-himself
δὲ ἀναλαβὼν ἥν τε δύναμιν ἔχων ἧκεν ἐς Τάξιλα
and having-taken the-which both force having he-came to Taxila
καὶ πεντακισχιλίους τῶν Ἰνδῶν, οὓς Ταξίλης τε καὶ οἱ
and five-thousand of-the Indians whom Taxiles both and the
ταύτῃ ὕπαρχοι ἦγον, ᾖει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμόν.
there hyparchs led went as toward the Hydaspes river
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρός τε κατεστρατοπέδευσεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ 9.1
and Alexander both encamped on the bank
τοῦ Ὑδάσπου, καὶ Πῶρος κατὰ τὴν ἀντιπέρας ὄχθην
— of-Hydaspes and Porus on the opposite bank
ὤφθη ξὺν πάσῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ τῶν ἐλεφάντων τῷ
was-seen with whole the army and of-the elephants with-the
στίφει. ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ ᾗ κατεστρατοπεδευκότα εἶδεν
mass there indeed indeed where encamped he-saw
Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτὸς μένων ἐφύλαττε τὸν πόρον· ὅσα
Alexander himself staying guarded the crossing as-many-as

δὲ ἄλλα τοῦ ποταμοῦ εὐπορώτερα, ἐπὶ ταῦτα φρουρὰς
and other of-the river more-passable to these garrisons
διαπέμψας καὶ ἡγεμόνας ἐπιστήσας ἑκάστοις εἴργειν
having-sent and commanders having-set-over each to-bar
ἐπενόει τοῦ πόρου τοὺς Μακεδόνας.
he-intended from-the crossing the Macedonians

9.2 ταῦτα δὲ ὁρῶντι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ κινητέα καὶ αὐτῷ
these-things and seeing for-Alexander must-be-moved also for-him
ἐδόκει ἡ στρατιὰ πολλαχῇ, ὡς τὸν Πῶρον ἀμφίβολον
it-seemed the army in-many-places so-that — Porus beset-on-both-sides
γίνεσθαι. διελὼν δὴ ἐς πολλὰ τὸν στρατὸν τοὺς μὲν
to-become having-divided indeed into many the army the-ones indeed
αὐτὸς ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ἦγε τῆς χώρας τὰ μὲν πορθῶν
himself here and there led of-the country partly indeed ravaging
ὅσα πολέμια, τὰ δὲ σκοπῶν ὅπῃ εὐπορώτερος αὐτῷ
as-many-as hostile partly and observing where more-passable for-him
ὁ ποταμὸς φανεῖται, τοὺς δέ, τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἄλλοις
the river will-appear the-others and of-the commanders to-different
ἄλλους ἐπιτάξας, καὶ αὐτοὺς πολλαχῇ διέπεμπε.
different having-assigned also them in-many-places he-sent-about

9.3 σῖτος δὲ αὐτῷ πάντοθεν ἐκ τῆς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ὑδάσπου
grain and for-him from-every-side from the on this-side — of-Hydaspes
χώρας ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ξυνεκομίζετο, ὡς δῆλον
country into the camp was-brought-together so-that evident
εἶναι τῷ Πώρῳ ὅτι ἐγνωκὼς εἴη προσλιπαρεῖν τῇ
to-be — to-Porus that resolved he-was to-persist by-the
ὄχθῃ, ἔστε τὸ ὕδωρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μεῖον γενόμενον τοῦ
bank until the water of-the river less having-become in-the
χειμῶνος πολλαχῇ παραδοῦναί οἱ τὸν πόρον· τά τε
winter in-many-places to-yield to-him the crossing the both
πλοῖα αὐτῷ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ παραπλέοντα καὶ αἱ διφθέραι
boats for-him here and there sailing-along and the hides

τῆς κάρφης ἐμπιπλάμεναι καὶ ἡ ὄχθη πᾶσα πλήρης
with-the chaff being-filled and the bank all full
φαινομένη τῇ μὲν ἱππέων, τῇ δὲ πεζῶν, οὐκ
appearing in-one-part indeed of-cavalry in-another and of-infantry not
εἶα ἠρεμεῖν τὸν Πῶρον, οὐδὲ ἕν τι ἐπιλεξάμενον ἐς
allowed to-rest — Porus nor one some having-chosen for
φυλακὴν ξύμφορον ἐς τοῦτο ἐκ πάντων παρασκευάζεσθαι.
guarding suitable to this from all to-prepare
ἄλλως τε ἐν μὲν τῷ τότε οἱ ποταμοὶ πάντες οἱ Ἰνδικοὶ 9.4
besides both in indeed the then the rivers all the Indian
πολλοῦ τε ὕδατος καὶ θολεροῦ ἔρρεον καὶ ὀξέος τοῦ
of-much both water and turbid flowed and swift the
ῥεύματος· ἦν γὰρ ὥρα ἔτους ᾗ μετὰ τροπὰς μάλιστα
current was for the-season of-year when after solstice most
τὰς ἐν θέρει τρέπεται ὁ ἥλιος· ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ ὥρᾳ ὕδατά
the in summer turns the sun in-this and the season waters
τε ἐξ οὐρανοῦ ἀθρόα τε καταφέρεται ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν
both from heaven in-floods both are-borne-down onto the land the
Ἰνδικὴν καὶ αἱ χιόνες αἱ τοῦ Καυκάσου, ἔνθενπερ τῶν
Indian and the snows the — of-Caucasus whence-indeed of-the
πολλῶν ποταμῶν αἱ πηγαί εἰσι, κατατηκόμεναι αὔξουσιν
many rivers the springs are melting increase
αὐτοῖς τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ μέγα· χειμῶνος δὲ ἔμπαλιν ἴσχουσιν
for-them the water to great in-winter and contrariwise they-abate
ὀλίγοι τε γίγνονται καὶ καθαροὶ ἰδεῖν καὶ ἔστιν ὅπου
few both they-become and clear to-see and there-is where
περάσιμοι, πλήν γε δὴ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ Γάγγου καὶ τυχὸν
fordable except at-least indeed — Indus and Ganges and perhaps
καὶ ἄλλου του· ἀλλ᾽ ὅ γε Ὑδάσπης περατὸς γίνεται.
also other some but — at-least Hydaspes fordable becomes

10.1 ταύτην οὖν τὴν ὥραν τοῦ ἔτους προσμένειν ἐς τὸ
this then the season of-the year to-wait-for to the
φανερὸν ἔφασκεν, εἰ ἐν τῷ τότε εἴργοιτο· ὁ δὲ
open he-said if in the then he-were-barred he but
οὐδὲν μεῖον ἐφεδρεύων ἔμενεν, εἴ πῃ λάθοι
nothing less lying-in-wait waited if somehow he-might-escape-notice
ὑφαρπάσας ὀξέως τὸν πόρον. ᾗ μὲν δὴ αὐτὸς Πῶρος
having-snatched quickly the crossing where indeed indeed himself Porus
κατεστρατοπεδεύκει πρὸς τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ Ὑδάσπου, ἔγνω
had-encamped by the bank — of-Hydaspes he-knew
ἀδύνατος ὢν περᾶσαι ὑπὸ πλήθους τε τῶν ἐλεφάντων καὶ
unable being to-cross by number both of-the elephants and
ὅτι πολλὴ στρατιὰ καὶ αὐτὴ τεταγμένη τε καὶ ἀκριβῶς
because a-great army also itself drawn-up both and exactly
ὡπλισμένη ἐκβαίνουσιν αὐτοῖς ἐπιθήσεσθαι ἔμελλεν·
armed coming-out them to-be-going-to-attack was-about
10.2 οἵ τε ἵπποι οὐκ ἂν ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ ἐθελῆσαι οὐδὲ ἐπιβῆναι
the both horses not — seemed to-him to-be-willing not-even to-mount
τῆς ὄχθης τῆς πέραν, προσκειμένων σφίσιν εὐθὺς τῶν
the bank the across pressing-upon them at-once the
ἐλεφάντων καὶ τῇ τε ὄψει ἅμα καὶ τῇ
elephants and with-the both sight at-the-same-time and with-the
φωνῇ φοβούντων, οὐδ' ἂν ἔτι πρόσθεν μεῖναι ἐπὶ τῶν
sound frightening nor — still before to-stay on the
διφθερῶν κατὰ τὸν πόρον, ἀλλ' ἐκπηδᾶν γὰρ ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ
hides along the crossing but to-leap-off for into the water
ἀφορῶντες πέραν τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἔκφρονες γιγνόμενοι.
looking-across beyond the elephants frantic becoming
10.3 κλέψαι οὖν ἐπενόει τὴν διάβασιν ὧδε πράττων. νύκτωρ
to-steal then he-intended the crossing thus doing by-night
παραγαγὼν ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τῆς ὄχθης τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν
having-led-along here and there of-the bank the many of-the

ἱππέων βοήν τε ἐποίει καὶ ἠλαλάζετο τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ καὶ
cavalry shouting both he-made and raised-the-war-cry — to-Enyalius and
τἆλλα ὅσα ἐπὶ διαβάσει συσκευαζομένων θόρυβος
the-other-things as-many-as for crossing of-men-preparing din
παντοδαπὸς ἐγίγνετο. καὶ ὁ Πῶρός τε ἀντιπαρῄει
of-all-kinds arose and — Porus both moved-along-opposite
πρὸς τὴν βοὴν ἐπάγων τοὺς ἐλέφαντας καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
toward the shout bringing-up the elephants and Alexander
ἐς ἔθος αὐτὸν τῆς ἀντιπαραγωγῆς καθίστη.
to habit him of-the moving-opposite brought
ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ τοῦτο ἐγίγνετο καὶ βοὴ μόνον καὶ 10.4
when and for long this went-on and shouting only and
ἀλαλαγμὸς ἦν, οὐκέτι ὁ Πῶρος μετεκινεῖτο πρὸς τὰς
war-cry was no-longer — Porus moved at the
ἐκδρομὰς τῶν ἱππέων, ἀλλὰ κενὸν γὰρ γνοὺς τὸν
sallies of-the cavalry but empty for having-judged the
φόβον κατὰ χώραν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου ἔμενε· σκοποὶ δὲ
fear in place in camp remained scouts and
αὐτῷ πολλαχοῦ τῆς ὄχθης καθειστήκεσαν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ
for-him in-many-places of-the bank had-been-posted Alexander and
ὡς ἐξείργαστο αὐτῷ ἄφοβον τὸ τοῦ Πώρου εἰς τὰς
when had-been-made by-him fearless the — of-Porus toward the
νυκτερινὰς ἐπιχειρήσεις μηχανᾶταί τι τοιόνδε.
nightly attempts devises something such

A wooded headland and an island about a hundred and fifty stades from the main camp hide Alexander's preparations, while guards along the bank keep up shouts and fires night after night. Craterus stays in the camp with orders not to cross until Porus marches against Alexander or flees, or takes all his elephants against him; Meleager, Attalus, and Gorgias wait between with the mercenaries. A violent night storm hides the work, and toward dawn, when it has fallen still, the cavalry on stuffed hides and as much infantry as the boats hold cross past the island, Alexander with Ptolemy, Perdiccas, Lysimachus, and Seleucus. They land on another island and find the ford with difficulty, the water above the infantry's chests. On the far bank he draws up the best cavalry on the right, the shield-bearers beside them, and the archers and Agrianians at either end.

11.1 ἄκρα ἦν ἀνέχουσα τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ Ὑδάσπου, ἵνα
a-headland there-was projecting from-the bank — of-Hydaspes where
ἐπέκαμπτεν ὁ ποταμὸς λόγου ἀξίως, αὐτή τε δασεῖα
bent the river of-account worthily itself both thick
ὕλῃ παντοίων δένδρων καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτὴν νῆσος ἐν τῷ
with-wood of-every-kind of-trees and opposite it an-island in the
ποταμῷ ὑλώδης τε καὶ ἀστιβὴς ὑπ᾽ ἐρημίας. ταύτην
river wooded both and untrodden through desolation this
καταμαθὼν τὴν νῆσον καταντικρὺ τῆς ἄκρας, ἀμφότερα
having-observed the island opposite the headland both
ὑλώδη τὰ χωρία καὶ οἷα κρύψαι τῆς διαβάσεως τὴν
wooded the places and such-as to-hide of-the crossing the
ἐπιχείρησιν, ταύτῃ ἔγνω διαβιβάζειν τὸν στρατόν.
attempt there he-decided to-carry-across the army

11.2 ἀπέχει δὲ ἥ τε ἄκρα καὶ ἡ νῆσος τοῦ μεγάλου
is-distant and the both headland and the island from-the great
στρατοπέδου ἐς πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίους. παρὰ
camp about fifty and hundred stades along

πᾶσαν δὴ τὴν ὄχθην φυλακαί τε αὐτῷ καθεστηκυῖαι
all indeed the bank guards both for-him posted
ἦσαν, διαλείπουσαι ὅσον ξύμμετρον ἐς τὸ ξυνορᾶν
were standing-apart as-much-as proportionate for the to-see
τε ἀλλήλους καὶ κατακούειν εὐπετῶς ὁπόθεν τι
both one-another and to-hear easily whence anything
παραγγέλλοιτο, καὶ πανταχόθεν βοαί τε νύκτωρ ἐπὶ
should-be-ordered and from-every-side shouts both by-night for
πολλὰς νύκτας ἐγίγνοντο καὶ πυρὰ ἐκαίετο.
many nights arose and fires were-burned
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔγνω ἐπιχειρεῖν τῷ πόρῳ, κατὰ μὲν 11.3
when and he-decided to-attempt the crossing at indeed
τὸ στρατόπεδον φανερῶς αὐτῷ τὰ τῆς διαβάσεως
the camp openly for-him the-things of-the crossing
παρεσκευάζετο. καὶ Κρατερὸς ὑπελέλειπτο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου
were-prepared and Craterus had-been-left in camp
τήν τε αὑτοῦ ἔχων ἱππαρχίαν καὶ τοὺς ἐξ Ἀραχωτῶν
the both his-own having hipparchy and the from Arachotians
καὶ Παραπαμισαδῶν ἱππέας καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος τῶν
and Parapamisadae cavalry and of-the phalanx of-the
Μακεδόνων τήν τε Ἀλκέτου καὶ τὴν Πολυπέρχοντος
Macedonians the both of-Alcetas and the of-Polyperchon
τάξιν καὶ τοὺς νομάρχας τῶν ἐπὶ τάδε Ἰνδῶν καὶ τοὺς
battalion and the nomarchs of-the on this-side Indians and the
ἅμα τούτοις τοὺς πεντακισχιλίους.
together-with these the five-thousand
παρηγγέλλετο δὲ Κρατερῷ μὴ πρὶν διαβαίνειν τὸν πόρον 11.4
it-was-ordered and to-Craterus not before to-cross the ford
πρὶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι Πῶρον ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει ὡς ἐπὶ σφᾶς
before to-have-departed Porus with the force as against them
ἢ φεύγοντα μαθεῖν, αὐτοὺς δὲ νικῶντας· ἢν δὲ μέρος
or fleeing to-learn them and victorious if but part

μέν τι τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀναλαβὼν Πῶρος ἐπ᾽ ἐμὲ ἄγῃ,
indeed some of-the army having-taken Porus against me should-lead
μέρος δέ τι ὑπολειφθῇ αὐτῷ ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου καὶ
part and some be-left for-him in camp and
ἐλέφαντες, σὺ δὲ δὴ καὶ ὡς μένειν κατὰ χώραν· εἰ
elephants you but indeed even so to-remain in place if
δὲ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ξύμπαντας ἅμα οἷ ἄγοι Πῶρος
but the elephants all together-with him should-lead Porus
ἐπ᾽ ἐμέ, τῆς δὲ ἄλλης στρατιᾶς ὑπολείποιτό τι ἐπὶ
against me of-the and other army should-be-left any in
στρατοπέδου, σὺ δὲ διαβαίνειν σπουδῇ· οἱ γὰρ ἐλέφαντες
camp you and to-cross with-haste the for elephants
μόνοι, ἔφη, ἄποροί εἰσι πρὸς τοὺς ἐκβαίνοντας ἵππους,
alone he-said unmanageable are against the coming-out horses
ἡ δὲ ἄλλη στρατιὰ εὔπορος.
the and other army easy-to-deal-with

12.1 ταῦτα μὲν Κρατερῷ ἐνετέλλετο. ἐν μέσῳ δὲ τῆς νήσου
these-things indeed to-Craterus he-enjoined in middle and of-the island
τε καὶ τοῦ μεγάλου στρατοπέδου, ἵνα αὐτῷ Κρατερὸς
both and the great camp where for-him Craterus
ὑπελέλειπτο, Μελέαγρός τε καὶ Ἄτταλος καὶ Γοργίας ξὺν
had-been-left Meleager both and Attalus and Gorgias with
τοῖς μισθοφόροις ἱππεῦσί τε καὶ πεζοῖς ἐτετάχατο· καὶ
the mercenary cavalry both and infantry had-been-posted and
τούτοις διαβαίνειν παρηγγέλλετο κατὰ μέρος, διελόντας
to-these to-cross it-was-ordered by parts having-divided
τὸν στρατόν, ὁπότε ξυνεχομένους ἤδη ἐν τῇ μάχῃ τοὺς
the army when engaged already in the battle the
Ἰνδοὺς ἴδοιεν.
Indians they-should-see

αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπιλεξάμενος τῶν τε ἑταίρων τὸ ἄγημα καὶ 12.2
he-himself and having-selected of-the both companions the agema and
τὴν Ἡφαιστίωνος ἱππαρχίαν καὶ τὴν Περδίκκου τε καὶ
the of-Hephaestion hipparchy and the of-Perdiccas both and
Δημητρίου καὶ τοὺς ἐκ Βάκτρων καὶ Σογδιανῶν καὶ
of-Demetrius and the from Bactra and Sogdians and
τοὺς Σκύθας ἱππέας καὶ Δάας τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας καὶ τῆς
the Scythian cavalry and Daae the mounted-archers and of-the
φάλαγγος τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τὴν Κλείτου τε καὶ
phalanx the both shield-bearers and the of-Cleitus both and
Κοίνου τάξιν καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τε καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας
of-Coenus battalion and the archers both and the Agrianians
ἦγεν ἀφανῶς πολύ τι ἀπέχων τῆς ὄχθης, τοῦ μὴ
led unseen far somewhat being-distant from-the bank for-the not
καταφανὴς εἶναι ἄγων ἐπὶ τὴν νῆσον καὶ τὴν ἄκραν,
visible to-be leading toward the island and the headland
ἔνθεν διαβαίνειν αὐτῷ ἦν ἐγνωσμένον.
whence to-cross for-him it-was resolved
καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐπληροῦντο τῆς νυκτὸς αἱ διφθέραι 12.3
and there were-filled in-the night the hides
τῆς κάρφης, ἐκ πολλοῦ ἤδη παρενηνεγμέναι, καὶ
with-the chaff from long already brought-along and
κατερράπτοντο ἐς ἀκρίβειαν· ὕδωρ τε ἐξ οὐρανοῦ τῆς
were-sewn-up to tightness rain both from heaven in-the
νυκτὸς λάβρον ἐπιγίγνεται. ταύτῃ καὶ μᾶλλόν τι
night violent comes-on thereby also more somewhat
ἡ παρασκευή τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ ἐπιχείρησις ἡ ἐς τὴν
the preparation both his and the attempt the at the
διάβασιν οὐ φανερὰ κατέστη, τῷ κτύπῳ τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν
crossing not apparent became by-the clatter the from the

ὅπλων καὶ τῷ θορύβῳ τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν παραγγελμάτων
arms and by-the din the from the orders
τῶν τε βροντῶν καὶ τοῦ ὄμβρου ἀντιπαταγούντων.
the both thunders and the rain clattering-against
12.4 καὶ τῶν πλοίων δὲ τὰ πολλὰ αὐτῷ ξυντετμημένα
and of-the boats and the most for-him cut-up
παρεκεκόμιστο ἐς τὸν χῶρον τοῦτον καὶ ἀφανῶς αὖθις
had-been-brought to the place this and unseen again
ξυμπεπηγμένα ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ ἐκρύπτετο, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ αἱ
fitted-together in the wood were-hidden the both others and the
τριακόντοροι. ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω ὅ τε ἄνεμος καὶ ὁ ὄμβρος
thirty-oared-ships toward and the dawn the both wind and the rain
κεκοίμητο. καὶ ἡ μὲν ἄλλη στρατιὰ αὐτῷ ἡ ἱππικὴ τῶν
had-ceased and the indeed other army his the cavalry the
διφθερῶν ἐπιβᾶσα καὶ ὅσους τῶν πεζῶν τὰ πλοῖα
hides having-mounted and as-many-as of-the infantry the boats
ἐδέχετο ἐπέρα κατὰ τὴν νῆσον, ὡς μὴ πρόσθεν ὀφθεῖεν
took crossed by the island so-that not before they-might-be-seen
πρὸς τῶν σκοπῶν τῶν ἐκ Πώρου καθεστηκότων πρὶν
by the scouts the from Porus posted before
παραλλάξαντας τὴν νῆσον ὀλίγον ἔτι ἀπέχειν τῆς ὄχθης.
having-passed the island little still to-be-distant from-the bank
13.1 αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπιβὰς τριακοντόρου ἐπέρα καὶ ἅμα
he-himself and having-embarked on-a-thirty-oared-ship crossed and together-with
αὐτῷ Πτολεμαῖός τε καὶ Περδίκκας καὶ Λυσίμαχος οἱ
him Ptolemy both and Perdiccas and Lysimachus the
σωματοφύλακες καὶ Σέλευκος τῶν ἑταίρων, ὁ βασιλεύσας
bodyguards and Seleucus of-the companions the having-reigned
ὕστερον, καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν οἱ ἡμίσεες· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους
later and of-the shield-bearers the half the and other
ὑπασπιστὰς ἄλλαι τριακόντοροι ἔφερον. ὡς δὲ τὴν νῆσον
shield-bearers other thirty-oared-ships carried when and the island

παρήλλαξεν ἡ στρατιά, φανερῶς ἤδη ἐπεῖχον τῇ ὄχθῃ·
passed the army openly already they-held-for the bank
καὶ οἱ σκοποὶ κατιδόντες αὐτῶν τὴν ὁρμὴν ὡς ἑκάστοις
and the scouts having-seen their the movement as to-each
τάχους οἱ ἵπποι εἶχον ἤλαυνον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Πῶρον.
of-speed the horses had rode as toward — Porus
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος πρῶτος αὐτὸς ἐκβὰς καὶ 13.2
in this and Alexander first himself having-disembarked and
τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων τριακοντόρων ἀναλαβὼν ξυνέταττε
the from the other thirty-oared-ships having-taken drew-up
τοὺς ἀεὶ ἐκβαίνοντας τῶν ἱππέων. οἱ γὰρ ἱππεῖς
the continually disembarking of-the cavalry the for cavalry
πρῶτοι ἐτετάχατο αὐτῷ ἐκβαίνειν· καὶ τούτους ἄγων
first had-been-assigned by-him to-disembark and these leading
προῄει ἐν τάξει. ἔλαθε δὲ οὐκ ἐς βέβαιον χωρίον
he-advanced in order he-was-unaware and not onto firm ground
ἐκβὰς ἀγνοίᾳ τῶν τόπων, ἀλλὰ ἐς νῆσον γὰρ
having-disembarked through-ignorance of-the places but onto an-island for
καὶ αὐτὴν μὲν μεγάλην, ᾗ δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον νῆσος
also itself indeed great whereby indeed also more an-island
οὖσα ἔλαθεν, οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕδατι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
being it-escaped-notice not with-much but water from the river
ἀποτεμνομένην ἀπὸ τῆς ἄλλης γῆς.
cut-off from the other land
καὶ ἅμα ηὐξήκει τὸ ὕδωρ ὁ ὄμβρος λάβρος τε καὶ 13.3
and at-the-same-time had-increased the water the rain violent both and
ἐπὶ πολὺ τῆς νυκτὸς κατασχών, ὥστε οὐκ ἐξεύρισκον αὐτῷ οἱ
for long of-the night having-held so-that not could-find for-him the
ἱππεῖς τὸν πόρον, καὶ δέος ἦν αὖθις ἄλλου δεῆσαι αὐτῷ ἐπὶ
cavalry the ford and fear was again another to-be-needed for-him for
τῇ διαβάσει ἴσου τῷ πρώτῳ πόνου. ὡς δὲ ἐξευρέθη ποτὲ ὁ
the crossing equal to-the first toil when and was-found at-last the

πόρος, ἦγε κατ᾽ αὐτὸν χαλεπῶς· ἦν γὰρ τῶν μὲν πεζῶν ὑπὲρ
ford he-led by it with-difficulty was for of-the indeed infantry above
τοὺς μαστοὺς τὸ ὕδωρ ἵναπερ τὸ βαθύτατον αὐτοῦ, τῶν
the breasts the water where-indeed the deepest of-it of-the
δὲ ἵππων ὅσον τὰς κεφαλὰς ὑπερίσχειν τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
and horses only-so-much-as the heads to-be-above the river
13.4 ὡς δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἐπεπέρατο αὐτῷ τὸ ὕδωρ, ἐπὶ μὲν
when and also this had-been-crossed by-him the water on indeed
τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας παρήγαγε τό τε ἄγημα τῶν ἱππέων καὶ
the right wing he-brought-up the both agema of-the cavalry and
τῶν ἄλλων ἱππαρχιῶν τοὺς κρατίστους ἐπιλεξάμενος· τοὺς
of-the other hipparchies the best having-selected the
δὲ ἱπποτοξότας τῆς πάσης ἵππου προέταξε· τῶν δὲ
and mounted-archers of-the whole horse he-posted-in-front of-the and
πεζῶν πρώτους μὲν τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς τοὺς βασιλικούς,
infantry first indeed the shield-bearers the royal
ὧν ἡγεῖτο Σέλευκος, ἐπέταξε τῇ ἵππῳ· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις
whom led Seleucus he-posted-next-to the horse next and to-these
τὸ ἄγημα τὸ βασιλικόν· ἐχομένους δὲ τούτων τοὺς
the agema the royal adjoining and these the
ἄλλους ὑπασπιστάς, ὡς ἑκάστοις αἱ ἡγεμονίαι ἐν τῷ τότε
other shield-bearers as to-each the commands in the then
ξυνέβαινον· κατὰ δὲ τὰ ἄκρα τῆς φάλαγγος οἱ τοξόται
fell on and the ends of-the phalanx the archers
αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ Ἀγριᾶνες οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ ἑκατέρωθεν ἐπέστησαν.
for-him and the Agrianians the javelin-men on-either-side stood

Alexander rides ahead with about five thousand horsemen. The accounts of Porus' son differ: Aristobulus says he came with sixty chariots and might have stopped the crossing, others that he fought at the landing, wounded Alexander, and killed Bucephalas; Ptolemy, whom Arrian follows, gives him two thousand horsemen and a hundred and twenty chariots, routed by the mounted archers and the cavalry, with the son killed. Porus leaves a few elephants against Craterus and marches with four thousand horse, three hundred chariots, two hundred elephants, and thirty thousand foot. On level, sandy ground he sets the elephants at intervals before the infantry, with more infantry, the cavalry, and the chariots on the wings.

οὕτως ἐκτάξας τὸν μὲν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἐν κόσμῳ 14.1
so having-drawn-up the indeed infantry army in order
βάδην ἕπεσθαι ἐκέλευσεν, οὐ πολὺ ἀποδέοντας τῶν
at-a-walk to-follow he-ordered not much falling-short of-the
ἑξακισχιλίων· αὐτὸς δέ, ὅτι κρατεῖν ἐδόκει τῇ ἵππῳ,
six-thousand he-himself and because to-be-superior he-thought in-the horse
τοὺς ἱππέας μόνους ἀναλαβὼν σπουδῇ ἡγεῖτο, ὄντας ἐς
the cavalry alone having-taken in-haste led being about
πεντακισχιλίους. Ταύρωνι δὲ τῷ τοξάρχῃ προσέταξε
five-thousand to-Tauron and the archer-commander he-ordered
τοὺς τοξότας ἐπάγειν τῇ ἵππῳ καὶ αὐτοὺς σπουδῇ.
the archers to-lead-on after-the horse also them in-haste
γνώμην δὲ ἐπεποίητο, ὡς εἰ μὲν προσμίξειαν αὐτῷ οἱ ἀμφὶ 14.2
judgment and he-had-formed that if indeed should-engage him the around
τὸν Πῶρον ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει ἁπάσῃ, ἢ κρατήσειν
— Porus with the force whole either to-be-going-to-prevail-over
αὐτῶν οὐ χαλεπῶς τῇ ἵππῳ προσβαλὼν ἢ ἀπομαχεῖσθαί
them not with-difficulty with-the horse having-attacked or to-be-going-to-hold-off
γε ἔστε τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ ἐπιγενέσθαι· εἰ δὲ πρὸς
at-least until the infantry in the action to-come-up if but at

τὴν τόλμαν τῆς διαβάσεως ἄτοπον γενομένην οἱ Ἰνδοὶ
the daring of-the crossing extraordinary having-been the Indians
ἐκπλαγέντες φεύγοιεν, οὐ πόρρωθεν ἕξεσθαι αὐτῶν
astounded should-flee not from-far to-be-going-to-keep-close-to them
κατὰ τὴν φυγήν, ὡς πλείονα ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει τὸν
in the flight so-that more in the retreat the
φόνον γενόμενον ὀλίγον ἔτι ὑπολείπεσθαι αὐτῷ τὸ ἔργον.
slaughter having-been little still to-be-left for-him the work
14.3 Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ λέγει τὸν Πώρου παῖδα φθάσαι
Aristobulus and says the of-Porus son to-have-anticipated
ἀφικόμενον σὺν ἅρμασιν ὡς ἑξήκοντα πρὶν τὸ ὕστερον
having-arrived with chariots about sixty before the later
ἐκ τῆς νήσου τῆς μικρᾶς περᾶσαι Ἀλέξανδρον· καὶ
from the island the small to-have-crossed Alexander and
τοῦτον δυνηθῆναι ἂν εἶρξαι Ἀλέξανδρον τῆς διαβάσεως
this-one to-have-been-able — to-bar Alexander from-the crossing
χαλεπῶς καὶ μηδενὸς εἴργοντος περαιωθέντα, εἴπερ οὖν
with-difficulty even nobody hindering having-crossed if-indeed then
καταπηδήσαντες οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἐκ τῶν ἁρμάτων προσέκειντο τοῖς
having-leapt-down the Indians from the chariots had-pressed the
πρώτοις τῶν ἐκβαινόντων· ἀλλὰ παραλλάξαι γὰρ ξὺν τοῖς
first of-the coming-out but to-have-passed-by for with the
ἅρμασι καὶ ἀκίνδυνον ποιῆσαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὴν διάβασιν·
chariots and safe to-have-made for-Alexander the crossing
καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους ἀφεῖναι Ἀλέξανδρον τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας,
and against these to-have-sent Alexander the mounted-archers
καὶ τραπῆναι αὐτοὺς οὐ χαλεπῶς, πληγὰς λαμβάνοντας.
and to-have-been-routed them not with-difficulty blows receiving
14.4 οἱ δὲ καὶ μάχην λέγουσιν ἐν τῇ ἐκβάσει γενέσθαι
the-others and also a-battle say at the landing to-have-taken-place
τῶν Ἰνδῶν τῶν ξὺν τῷ παιδὶ τῷ Πώρου ἀφιγμένων
of-the Indians the with the son the of-Porus having-come

πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρόν τε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ ἱππέας. καὶ
against Alexander both and the with him cavalry and
γὰρ καὶ ἀφικέσθαι ξὺν μείζονι δυνάμει τὸν Πώρου παῖδα,
for also to-have-come with greater force the of-Porus son
καὶ αὐτόν τε Ἀλέξανδρον τρωθῆναι πρὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ
and himself both Alexander to-have-been-wounded by him and
τὸν ἵππον αὐτοῦ ἀποθανεῖν τὸν Βουκεφάλαν, φίλτατον
the horse his to-have-died — Bucephalas dearest
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὄντα τὸν ἵππον, καὶ τοῦτον τρωθέντα ὑπὸ
to-Alexander being the horse also this wounded by
τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ Πώρου. ἀλλὰ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου,
the son — of-Porus but Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
ὅτῳ καὶ ἐγὼ ξυμφέρομαι, ἄλλως λέγει.
with-whom also I agree otherwise says
ἐκπεμφθῆναι μὲν γὰρ τὸν παῖδα ὑπὸ τοῦ Πώρου λέγει 14.5
to-have-been-sent indeed for the son by — Porus says
καὶ οὗτος, ἀλλ' οὐχ ἑξήκοντα μόνα ἅρματα ἄγοντα.
also this-one but not sixty only chariots leading
οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰκὸς Πῶρον ἀκούσαντα ἐκ τῶν σκοπῶν, ὅτι
nor for likely Porus having-heard from the scouts that
δὴ ἢ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος διαβέβηκεν τοῦ Ὑδάσπου τὸν
indeed either himself Alexander has-crossed — of-Hydaspes the
πόρον ἢ μέρος γέ τι τῆς στρατιᾶς, ξὺν ἑξήκοντα
ford or part at-least some of-the army with sixty
ἅρμασι μόνοις ἐκπέμψαι τὸν αὑτοῦ παῖδα·
chariots alone to-have-sent the his-own son
ἃ δὴ ὡς μὲν ἐπὶ κατασκοπὴν ἐκπεμπόμενα πολλά τε 14.6
which indeed as indeed for reconnaissance being-sent many both
καὶ οὐκ εὔζωνα ἐς τὴν ἀποχώρησιν ἦν, ὡς δὲ εἰς τὸ εἶρξαί
and not easily-moving for the retreat were as but for the to-bar
τε τοὺς οὔπω πεπερακότας τῶν πολεμίων καὶ τοῖς ἤδη
both the not-yet having-crossed of-the enemy and the already

ἐκβεβηκόσιν ἐπιθέσθαι οὐδαμῇ ἀξιόμαχα. ἀλλὰ δισχιλίους
landed to-attack in-no-way a-match but two-thousand
γὰρ λέγει ἱππέας ἄγοντα ἀφικέσθαι τοῦ Πώρου τὸν παῖδα,
for he-says cavalry leading to-have-arrived — of-Porus the son
ἅρματα δὲ ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι· φθάσαι δὲ περάσαντα
chariots and hundred and twenty to-have-anticipated and having-crossed
Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου τὸν τελευταῖον πόρον.
Alexander and the from the island the last ford

15.1 καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐκπέμψαι Ἀλέξανδρον
and against these at-the indeed first to-have-sent Alexander
καὶ οὗτος λέγει τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας, αὐτὸν δὲ ἄγειν τοὺς
also this-one says the mounted-archers himself and to-lead the
ἱππέας· προσάγειν γὰρ οἰηθῆναι Πῶρον ξὺν τῇ πάσῃ
cavalry to-be-approaching for to-have-thought Porus with the whole
δυνάμει· τὴν δὲ ἵππον ταύτην προτεταγμένην αὐτῷ
force the and horse this posted-in-front for-him
προπορεύεσθαι πρὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατοῦ.
to-go-ahead before the other army

15.2 ὡς δὲ κατέμαθεν ἀτρεκῶς τὸ πλῆθος τὸ τῶν Ἰνδῶν, ἐνταῦθα
when and he-learned exactly the number the of-the Indians there
δὴ ὀξέως ἐπιπεσεῖν αὐτοῖς ξὺν τῇ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἵππῳ· τοὺς
indeed swiftly to-have-fallen-upon them with the around him horse they
δὲ ἐγκλῖναι, ὡς Ἀλέξανδρόν τε αὐτὸν κατεῖδον καὶ τὸ
and to-have-given-way when Alexander both himself they-saw and the
στῖφος ἀμφ' αὐτὸν τῶν ἱππέων οὐκ ἐπὶ μετώπου, ἀλλὰ κατ'
mass around him of-the cavalry not on front but by
ἴλας ἐμβεβληκός. καὶ τούτων ἱππέας μὲν πεσεῖν ἐς
squadrons having-charged and of-these cavalry indeed to-have-fallen about
τετρακοσίους, πεσεῖν δὲ καὶ τοῦ Πώρου τὸν παῖδα· τὰ δὲ
four-hundred to-have-fallen and also — of-Porus the son the and

ἅρματα αὐτοῖς ἵπποις ἁλῶναι ἔν τε τῇ ἀποχωρήσει
chariots with-the-very horses to-have-been-taken in both the retreat
βαρέα γενόμενα καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἔργῳ ὑπὸ πηλοῦ ἀχρεῖα.
heavy having-become and in the-very the action by mud useless
Πῶρος δέ, ὡς αὐτῷ ὅσοι ἱππεῖς ἐκ τῆς φυγῆς 15.3
Porus and when to-him as-many-as cavalry from the flight
διεσώζοντο Ἀλέξανδρόν τε αὐτὸν πεπερακότα ξὺν τῇ
got-safe-away Alexander both himself having-crossed with the
στρατιᾷ ἐς τὸ καρτερώτατον καὶ τὸν παῖδα ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
army in the greatest-strength and the son in the battle
τετελευτηκότα ἤγγειλαν, ἐγίγνετο μὲν καὶ ὣς ἀμφίβολος
having-died reported was indeed even so in-doubt
τῇ γνώμῃ, ὅτι καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ καταντικρὺ τοῦ μεγάλου
in-the judgment because also the from the opposite the great
στρατοπέδου οἱ ξὺν Κρατερῷ ὑπολελειμμένοι ἐπιχειροῦντες
camp the with Craterus left-behind attempting
τῇ διαβάσει ἐφαίνοντο·
the crossing appeared
εἵλετο δ' οὖν ἐπ' αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐλάσας ξὺν τῇ 15.4
chose and then against himself Alexander having-marched with the
στρατιᾷ πάσῃ πρὸς τὸ καρτερώτατόν τε τῶν Μακεδόνων
army whole against the strongest both of-the Macedonians
καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα διαγωνίσασθαι. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὣς
and himself the king to-fight-it-out but even so
ὀλίγους τῶν ἐλεφάντων σὺν οὐ πολλῇ στρατιᾷ αὐτοῦ
few of-the elephants with not great army there
ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἀπέλιπεν, ὡς φοβεῖν ἀπὸ τῆς
at the camp he-left so-as to-frighten from the
ὄχθης τοὺς ξὺν Κρατερῷ ἱππέας. αὐτὸς δὲ τήν τε
bank the with Craterus cavalry he-himself and the both
ἵππον ἀναλαβὼν πᾶσαν, ἐς τετρακισχιλίους ἱππέας, καὶ
horse having-taken whole about four-thousand cavalry and

τὰ ἅρματα πάντα, τριακόσια ὄντα, καὶ τῶν ἐλεφάντων
the chariots all three-hundred being and of-the elephants
διακοσίους καὶ τῶν πεζῶν ὅ τι περ ὄφελος, ἐς
two-hundred and of-the infantry what ever indeed worth-anything about
τρισμυρίους, ἤλαυνεν ὡς ἐπ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον.
thirty-thousand rode as against Alexander

15.5 ὡς δὲ ἐνέτυχε χωρίῳ, ἵνα οὐ πηλὸς αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο,
when and he-came-upon a-place where not mud to-him appeared
ἀλλὰ ὑπὸ ψάμμου γὰρ ξύμπαν ἦν ἄπεδον καὶ στερεὸν
but with sand for whole was level and firm
ἐς τὰς ἐφόδους τε καὶ ἀναστροφὰς τῶν ἵππων, ἐνταῦθα
for the charges both and wheelings of-the horses there
ἔτασσε τὴν στρατιάν, πρώτους μὲν τοὺς ἐλέφαντας
he-drew-up the army first indeed the elephants
ἐπὶ μετώπου, διέχοντα ἐλέφαντα ἐλέφαντος οὐ μεῖον
on front standing-apart elephant from-elephant not less
πλέθρου, ὡς πρὸ πάσης τε τῆς φάλαγγος τῶν πεζῶν
than-a-plethron so-that before whole both the phalanx of-the infantry
παραταθῆναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἐπὶ μετώπου καὶ
to-be-extended for-him the elephants on front and
φόβον πάντῃ παρέχειν τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἱππεῦσιν.
fear on-every-side to-cause to-the around Alexander cavalry

15.6 ἄλλως τε οὐδὲ ᾠήθη ἐς τὰ διαλείποντα τῶν ἐλεφάντων
besides both nor did-he-think into the gaps of-the elephants
τολμῆσαι ἄν τινα ὥσασθαι τῶν πολεμίων, οὔτε ξὺν ἵπποις
to-dare — any to-push of-the enemy neither with horses
διὰ τὸν φόβον τῶν ἵππων, πεζούς τε ἔτι μεῖον· κατὰ
through the fear of-the horses infantry both still less in
στόμα τε γὰρ ἂν πρὸς τῶν ὁπλιτῶν προσβαλλόντων
front both for — by the hoplites attacking

εἴργεσθαι καὶ καταπατηθήσεσθαι ἐπιστρεψάντων ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς
to-be-barred and to-be-going-to-be-trampled having-turned on them
τῶν ἐλεφάντων.
the elephants
ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ οἱ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ ἐτετάχατο, οὐκ ἴσον 15.7
behind these and the infantry by-him had-been-posted not equal
τὸ μέτωπον τοῖς θηρίοις ἐπέχοντες, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν δευτέρῳ
the front with-the beasts holding but in second
μετώπῳ μετὰ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας, ὅσον ἐς τὰ διαλείποντα
front behind the elephants so-much-as into the gaps
ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγον ἐμβεβλῆσθαι τοὺς λόχους. ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ
for-a little-way to-have-been-thrown the companies were and for-him
καὶ κατὰ τὰ κέρατα ἔτι ὑπὲρ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας πεζοὶ
also on the wings still beyond the elephants infantry
ἐφεστηκότες, ἑκατέρωθεν δὲ τῶν πεζῶν ἡ ἵππος αὐτῷ
standing on-either-side and of-the infantry the horse for-him
ἐτέτακτο καὶ πρὸ ταύτης τὰ ἅρματα ἑκατέρωθεν.
had-been-posted and before this the chariots on-either-side

Seeing the elephants in the center, Alexander attacks the Indian left with his cavalry and sends Coenus toward the right, to fall on the Indian horse from behind. The Indian horse, caught on two fronts, fall back on the elephants, which trample friend and foe while the phalanx shoots their drivers. Craterus crosses and joins the pursuit; some twenty thousand Indian infantry and three thousand cavalry die, with two of Porus' sons, against a few hundred of Alexander's men. Porus fights until he is wounded and then withdraws; he turns on Taxiles, sent to call him in, but Meroes persuades him to come. Asked how he wishes to be treated, he answers "like a king," and Alexander gives him back his kingdom and more. Two cities are founded, Nicaea for the victory and Bucephala for the horse, who died there of heat and age.

16.1 αὕτη μὲν ἡ Πώρου τάξις ἦν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἤδη
this indeed the of-Porus order was Alexander and when already
καθεώρα τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς ἐκτασσομένους, ἐπέστησε τοὺς
he-saw the Indians deploying halted the
ἱππέας τοῦ πρόσω, ὡς ἀναλαμβάνειν τῶν πεζῶν τοὺς
cavalry from-the forward so-as to-pick-up of-the infantry the
ἀεὶ προσάγοντας. ὡς δὲ καὶ ἡ φάλαγξ αὐτῷ δρόμῳ
continually arriving when and also the phalanx for-him at-a-run
συνάψασα ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἦν, ὁ δὲ οὐκ εὐθὺς ἐκτάξας
having-joined together already was he and not at-once having-deployed
ἐπῆγεν, ὡς μὴ καματηρούς τε καὶ πνευστιῶντας ἀκμῆσι
led-on so-that not tired both and panting to-fresh
παραδοῦναι τοῖς βαρβάροις, ἀλλὰ ἐς κύκλους παριππεύων
to-hand-over to-the barbarians but in circles riding-around
ἀνέπαυε τοὺς πεζοὺς ἔστε καταστῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸν θυμόν.
he-rested the infantry until to-be-settled for-them the spirit

ὡς δὲ τὴν τάξιν κατεῖδε τῶν Ἰνδῶν, κατὰ μέσον μέν, 16.2
when and the order he-observed of-the Indians in center indeed
ἵνα οἱ ἐλέφαντες προεβέβληντο καὶ πυκνὴ ἡ φάλαγξ
where the elephants had-been-placed-in-front and dense the phalanx
κατὰ τὰ διαλείποντα αὐτῶν ἐπετέτακτο, οὐκ ἔγνω
at the gaps of-them had-been-posted not he-decided
προάγειν, αὐτὰ ἐκεῖνα ὀκνήσας ἅπερ ὁ Πῶρος
to-lead-forward the-very those-things having-shrunk-from which-very — Porus
τῷ λογισμῷ ξυνθεὶς ταύτῃ ἔταξεν· ἀλλὰ αὐτὸς μὲν
by-the reasoning having-put-together so arranged but he-himself indeed
ἅτε ἱπποκρατῶν τὴν πολλὴν τῆς ἵππου ἀναλαβὼν
inasmuch-as superior-in-cavalry the most of-the horse having-taken
ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶν πολεμίων παρήλαυνεν, ὡς
to the left wing of-the enemy rode-along so-as
ταύτῃ ἐπιθησόμενος.
there about-to-attack
Κοῖνον δὲ πέμπει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, τὴν Δημητρίου 16.3
Coenus and he-sends as toward the right the of-Demetrius
καὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ ἔχοντα ἱππαρχίαν, κελεύσας, ἐπειδὰν τὸ
and the his-own having hipparchy having-ordered whenever the
κατὰ σφᾶς στῖφος τῶν ἱππέων ἰδόντες οἱ βάρβαροι
opposite them mass of-the cavalry having-seen the barbarians
ἀντιπαριππεύωσιν, αὐτὸν κατόπιν ἔχεσθαι αὐτῶν· τῶν
ride-along-against him behind to-keep-close-to them of-the
πεζῶν δὲ τὴν φάλαγγα Σελεύκῳ καὶ Ἀντιγένει καὶ
infantry and the phalanx to-Seleucus and Antigenes and
Ταύρωνι προσέταξεν ἄγειν, μὴ πρόσθεν δὲ ἅπτεσθαι τοῦ
Tauron he-ordered to-lead not before but to-lay-hold-on the
ἔργου πρὶν ὑπὸ τῆς ἵππου τῆς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν τεταραγμένην
action until by the horse the around himself thrown-into-confusion
τήν τε φάλαγγα τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας κατίδωσιν.
the both phalanx of-the infantry and the cavalry they-should-see

16.4 ἤδη τε ἐντὸς βέλους ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐφῆκεν ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας
already both within missile-range he-was and he-sent-in against the wing
τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἰνδῶν τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας, ὄντας ἐς
the left of-the Indians the mounted-archers being about
χιλίους, ὡς ταράξαι τοὺς ταύτῃ ἐφεστηκότας τῶν
thousand so-as to-throw-into-confusion the there posted of-the
πολεμίων τῇ πυκνότητί τε τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ τῶν
enemy by-the density both of-the arrows and of-the
ἵππων τῇ ἐπελάσει. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑταίρους ἔχων
horses by-the charge and himself and the companions having
τοὺς ἱππέας παρήλαυνεν ὀξέως ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν
the cavalry rode-along swiftly toward the left of-the
βαρβάρων, κατὰ κέρας ἔτι τεταραγμένοις ἐμβαλεῖν σπουδὴν
barbarians on flank still thrown-into-confusion to-charge effort
ποιούμενος, πρὶν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἐκταθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὴν ἵππον.
making before into phalanx to-be-deployed for-them the horse
17.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ οἵ τε Ἰνδοὶ τοὺς ἱππέας πάντοθεν
in this and the both Indians the cavalry from-every-side
ξυναλίσαντες παρίππευον Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀντιπαρεξάγοντες
having-collected rode-along with-Alexander moving-out-opposite
τῇ ἐλάσει, καὶ οἱ περὶ Κοῖνον, ὡς παρήγγελτο, κατόπιν
to-the charge and the around Coenus as had-been-ordered behind
αὐτοῖς ἐπεφαίνοντο. ταῦτα ξυνιδόντες οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἀμφίστομον
them appeared these-things having-perceived the Indians double-fronted
ἠναγκάσθησαν ποιῆσαι τὴν τάξιν τῆς ἵππου, τὴν μὲν ὡς
were-compelled to-make the order of-the horse the-one indeed as
ἐπ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον τὴν πολλήν τε καὶ κρατίστην, οἱ
against Alexander the most both and strongest the-others
δὲ ἐπὶ Κοῖνόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἅμα τούτῳ ἐπέστρεφον.
and against Coenus both and the with him turned

τοῦτό τε οὖν εὐθὺς ἐτάραξε τὰς τάξεις τε καὶ τὰς 17.2
this both then at-once confused the formations both and the
γνώμας τῶν Ἰνδῶν καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἰδὼν τὸν καιρὸν
minds of-the Indians and Alexander having-seen the moment
ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ ἐπὶ θάτερα ἐπιστροφῇ τῆς ἵππου ἐπιτίθεται
in the-very the to the-other-side turning of-the horse attacks
τοῖς καθ᾽ αὑτόν, ὥστε οὐδὲ τὴν ἐμβολὴν ἐδέξαντο τῶν
the opposite himself so-that not-even the charge did-they-await of-the
ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἱππέων οἱ Ἰνδοί, ἀλλὰ κατηράχθησαν
around Alexander cavalry the Indians but were-driven
ὥσπερ εἰς τεῖχός τι φίλιον τοὺς ἐλέφαντας.
as into a-wall of-a-sort friendly the elephants
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οἱ ἐπιστάται τῶν ἐλεφάντων ἀντεπῆγον 17.3
and in this the drivers of-the elephants led-against
τῇ ἵππῳ τὰ θηρία, καὶ ἡ φάλαγξ αὐτὴ τῶν Μακεδόνων
the horse the beasts and the phalanx itself of-the Macedonians
ἀντεπήει πρὸς τοὺς ἐλέφαντας, ἔς τε τοὺς ἐπιβάτας
went-against toward the elephants at both the riders
αὐτῶν ἀκοντίζοντες καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ θηρία περισταδὸν
of-them hurling-javelins and the-very the beasts standing-around
πάντοθεν βάλλοντες. καὶ ἦν τὸ ἔργον οὐδενὶ τῶν πρόσθεν
from-all-sides shooting and was the action to-none of-the former
ἀγώνων ἐοικός· τά τε γὰρ θηρία ἐπεκθέοντα ἐς τὰς
contests like the both for beasts running-out into the
τάξεις τῶν πεζῶν, ὅπῃ ἐπιστρέψειεν, ἐκεράϊζε καίπερ
ranks of-the infantry wherever they-turned ravaged although
πυκνὴν οὖσαν τὴν τῶν Μακεδόνων φάλαγγα, καὶ οἱ
dense being the of-the Macedonians phalanx and the
ἱππεῖς οἱ τῶν Ἰνδῶν τοῖς πεζοῖς ἰδόντες ξυνεστηκὸς τὸ
cavalry the of-the Indians by-the infantry having-seen engaged the
ἔργον ἐπιστρέψαντες αὖθις καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπήλαυνον τῇ ἵππῳ.
action having-turned again also themselves rode-against the horse

17.4 ὡς δὲ πάλιν ἐκράτησαν αὐτῶν οἱ ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον τῇ
when and again prevailed over-them the around Alexander in-the
τε ῥώμῃ καὶ τῇ ἐμπειρίᾳ πολὺ προέχοντες, ὡς ἐπὶ
both strength and the experience far excelling as toward
τοὺς ἐλέφαντας αὖθις κατειλήθησαν. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ πᾶσα
the elephants again they-were-driven and in this all
ἡ ἵππος Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς μίαν ἴλην ἤδη ξυνηγμένη, οὐκ
the horse for-Alexander into one squadron already gathered not
ἐκ παραγγέλματος, ἀλλὰ ἐν τῷ ἀγῶνι αὐτῷ ἐς τήνδε
from order but in the struggle itself into this
τὴν τάξιν καταστᾶσα, ὅπῃ προσπέσοι τῶν Ἰνδῶν ταῖς
the order having-come wherever it-fell-upon of-the Indians the
τάξεσι, ξὺν πολλῷ φόνῳ ἀπελύοντο.
ranks with much slaughter they-drew-off

17.5 καὶ ἐς στενὸν ἤδη κατειλημένων τῶν θηρίων οὐ μείω
and into narrow already pent-up the beasts not less
πρὸς αὐτῶν οἱ φίλιοι ἤπερ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐβλάπτοντο ἐν ταῖς
by them the friends than the enemy were-harmed in the
ἐπιστροφαῖς τε καὶ τοῖς ὠθισμοῖς καταπατούμενοι. τῶν
turnings both and the pushings being-trampled of-the
τε οὖν ἱππέων, οἷα δὴ ἐν στενῷ περὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας
both then cavalry as indeed in narrow around the elephants
εἰλουμένων, πολὺς φόνος ἐγίγνετο καὶ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν
being-pent-in great slaughter arose and the leaders of-the
ἐλεφάντων οἱ πολλοὶ κατηκοντισμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ αὐτοὶ
elephants the most shot-down were and themselves
οἱ ἐλέφαντες τὰ μὲν τιτρωσκόμενοι, τὰ δὲ ὑπό τε
the elephants partly indeed being-wounded partly and by both
τῶν πόνων καὶ ἐρημίᾳ ἡγεμόνων οὐκέτι διακεκριμένοι ἐν
the toils and by-lack of-leaders no-longer distinct in
τῇ μάχῃ ἦσαν,
the battle were

ἀλλ᾽ οἷα δὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ κακοῦ ἔκφρονες φιλίοις τε ὁμοῦ καὶ 17.6
but as indeed by the trouble frantic friends both alike and
πολεμίοις προσφερόμενοι πάντα τρόπον ἐξώθουν τε καὶ
enemies attacking every way they-pushed both and
κατεπάτουν καὶ κατέκαινον. ἀλλ᾽ οἱ μὲν Μακεδόνες, ἅτε
trampled and killed but the indeed Macedonians inasmuch-as
ἐν εὐρυχωρίᾳ τε καὶ κατὰ γνώμην τὴν σφῶν προσφερόμενοι
in open-space both and by judgment the their attacking
τοῖς θηρίοις, ὅπῃ μὲν ἐπιφέροιντο εἶκον, ἀποστραφέντων
the beasts where indeed they-charged gave-way having-turned
δὲ εἴχοντο ἐσακοντίζοντες· οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς
and they-kept-close shooting-at-them the and Indians among them
ἀναστρεφόμενοι τὰ πλείω ἤδη πρὸς ἐκείνων ἐβλάπτοντο.
turning the more already by those were-harmed
ὡς δὲ καματηρά τε ἦν τὰ θηρία καὶ οὐκέτι αὐτοῖς 17.7
when and tired both were the beasts and no-longer for-them
ἐρρωμέναι αἱ ἐκδρομαὶ ἐγίγνοντο, ἀλλὰ συριγμῷ μόνον
vigorous the charges were but with-trumpeting only
διαχρώμενα ὥσπερ αἱ πρύμναν κρουόμεναι νῆες ἐπὶ
using as the by-the-stern being-backed ships at
πόδα ὑπεχώρουν, αὐτὸς μὲν Ἀλέξανδρος περιβάλλει ἐν
foot withdrew himself indeed Alexander throws-around in
κύκλῳ τὴν ἵππον τῇ πάσῃ τάξει, τοὺς πεζοὺς δὲ
circle the horse to-the whole formation the infantry and
ξυνασπίσαντας ὡς ἐς πυκνοτάτην ξύγκλεισιν ἐπάγειν τὴν
having-locked-shields as into densest close-order to-lead-on the
φάλαγγα ἐσήμηνε. καὶ οὕτως οἱ μὲν ἱππεῖς τῶν Ἰνδῶν
phalanx signaled and so the indeed cavalry of-the Indians
πλὴν ὀλίγων κατεκόπησαν ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ· ἐκόπτοντο
except few were-cut-down in the action were-being-cut-down
δὲ καὶ οἱ πεζοὶ πανταχόθεν ἤδη προσκειμένων σφίσι
and also the infantry from-every-side already pressing on-them

τῶν Μακεδόνων. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἵνα διέσχεν ἡ ἵππος ἡ
the Macedonians and in this where opened the horse the
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐς φυγὴν πάντες ἐπεστράφησαν.
of-Alexander to flight all turned

18.1 καὶ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ Κρατερός τε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι
and in the same-time Craterus both and the other as-many-as
τῆς στρατιᾶς τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ Ὑδάσπου
of-the army — of-Alexander on the bank — of-Hydaspes
ὑπολελειμμένοι ἡγεμόνες ἦσαν, ὡς νικῶντα λαμπρῶς
left-behind commanders were when winning brilliantly
κατεῖδον Ἀλέξανδρον, ἐπέρων καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸν πόρον.
they-saw Alexander crossed also themselves the ford
καὶ οὗτοι οὐ μείονα τὸν φόνον ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει τῶν
and these not less the slaughter in the retreat of-the
Ἰνδῶν ἐποίησαν, ἀκμῆτες ἀντὶ κεκμηκότων τῶν ἀμφ᾽
Indians made fresh instead-of tired the around
Ἀλέξανδρον ἐπιγενόμενοι τῇ διώξει.
Alexander having-come-up for-the pursuit

18.2 ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν Ἰνδῶν πεζοὶ μὲν ὀλίγον ἀποδέοντες
died and of-the Indians infantry indeed little falling-short
τῶν δισμυρίων, ἱππεῖς δὲ ἐς τρισχιλίους, τὰ δὲ ἅρματα
of-the twenty-thousand cavalry and about three-thousand the and chariots
ξύμπαντα κατεκόπη· καὶ Πώρου δύο παῖδες ἀπέθανον
all were-cut-to-pieces and of-Porus two sons died
καὶ Σπιτάκης ὁ νομάρχης τῶν ταύτῃ Ἰνδῶν καὶ τῶν
and Spitaces the nomarch of-the there Indians and of-the
ἐλεφάντων καὶ ἁρμάτων οἱ ἡγεμόνες καὶ οἱ ἱππάρχαι
elephants and chariots the commanders and the cavalry-commanders
καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς τῆς Πώρου ξύμπαντες
and the generals of-the army — of-Porus all

*** ἐλήφθησαν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐλέφαντες, ὅσοι γε
(lacuna) were-taken and also the elephants as-many-as at-least
αὐτῶν μὴ αὐτοῦ ἀπέθανον.
of-them not there died
τῶν δὲ ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον πεζοὶ μὲν ἀπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων τῶν 18.3
of-the and around Alexander infantry indeed out-of six-thousand the
ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ προσβολῇ γενομένων ἐς ὀγδοήκοντα μάλιστα
in the first attack having-been about eighty about
ἀπέθανον· ἱππεῖς δὲ τῶν μὲν ἱπποτοξοτῶν, οἳ δὴ καὶ
died cavalry and of-the indeed mounted-archers who indeed also
πρῶτοι τοῦ ἔργου ἥψαντο, δέκα· τῆς δὲ ἑταιρικῆς ἵππου
first the action laid-hold-of ten of-the and companion horse
ἀμφὶ τοὺς εἴκοσι· τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ἱππέων ὡς διακόσιοι.
about the twenty of-the and other cavalry about two-hundred
Πῶρος δὲ μεγάλα ἔργα ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀποδειξάμενος 18.4
Porus and great deeds in the battle having-displayed
μὴ ὅτι στρατηγοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ στρατιώτου γενναίου, ὡς
not only of-a-general but also of-a-soldier noble when
τῶν τε ἱππέων τὸν φόνον κατεῖδε καὶ τῶν ἐλεφάντων
of-the both cavalry the slaughter he-saw and of-the elephants
τοὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ πεπτωκότας, τοὺς δὲ ἐρήμους τῶν
the-ones indeed there fallen the-others and bereft of-the
ἡγεμόνων λυπηροὺς πλανωμένους, τῶν δὲ πεζῶν αὐτῷ
leaders grievous wandering of-the and infantry for-him
οἱ πλείους ἀπολώλεσαν, οὐχ ἧπερ Δαρεῖος ὁ μέγας
the most had-perished not as Darius the great
βασιλεὺς ἐξάρχων τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν τῆς φυγῆς ἀπεχώρει,
king leading for-the around himself of-the flight withdrew
ἀλλὰ ἔστε γὰρ ὑπέμενέ τι τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
but as-long-as for remained any of-the Indians in the battle
ξυνεστηκός, ἐς τοσόνδε ἀγωνισάμενος,
holding-together to so-great having-fought

18.5 τετρωμένος δὲ τὸν δεξιὸν ὦμον, ὃν δὴ γυμνὸν μόνον
wounded and in-the right shoulder which indeed bare alone
ἔχων ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀνεστρέφετο ἀπὸ γὰρ τοῦ ἄλλου σώματος
having in the battle he-moved-about from for the other body
ἤρκει αὐτῷ τὰ βέλη ὁ θώραξ περιττὸς ὢν κατά τε τὴν
kept-off for-him the missiles the breastplate exceptional being in both the
ἰσχὺν καὶ τὴν ἁρμονίαν, ὡς ὕστερον καταμαθεῖν θεωμένοις
strength and the fitting as later to-learn for-those-viewing
ἦν, τότε δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπεχώρει ἐπιστρέψας τὸν ἐλέφαντα.
was then indeed also himself withdrew having-turned the elephant
18.6 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος μέγαν τε αὐτὸν καὶ γενναῖον ἄνδρα ἰδὼν
and Alexander great both him and noble man having-seen
ἐν τῇ μάχῃ σῶσαι ἐπεθύμησε. πέμπει δὴ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
in the battle to-save desired sends indeed to him
πρῶτα μὲν Ταξίλην τὸν Ἰνδόν· καὶ Ταξίλης προσιππεύσας
first indeed Taxiles the Indian and Taxiles having-ridden-up
ἐφ᾽ ὅσον οἱ ἀσφαλὲς ἐφαίνετο τῷ ἐλέφαντι ὃς ἔφερε
as-far as to-him safe appeared to-the elephant which carried
τὸν Πῶρον ἐπιστῆσαί τε ἠξίου τὸ θηρίον, οὐ γὰρ εἶναί οἱ
— Porus to-stop both he-asked the beast not for to-be for-him
ἔτι φεύγειν, καὶ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου λόγων.
any-longer to-flee and to-hear the from Alexander words
18.7 ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν ἄνδρα ἐχθρὸν ἐκ παλαιοῦ τὸν Ταξίλην
he and having-seen a-man hostile from of-old — Taxiles
ἐπιστρέψας ἀνήγετο ὡς ἀκοντίσων· καὶ ἂν καὶ κατέκανε
having-turned rose-up as about-to-hurl-a-javelin and — also would-have-killed
τυχόν, εἰ μὴ ὑποφθάσας ἐκεῖνος ἀπήλασεν ἀπὸ τοῦ Πώρου
perhaps if not having-anticipated he drove from — Porus
πρόσω τὸν ἵππον. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ οὐδὲ ἐπὶ τῷδε τῷ Πώρῳ
forward the horse Alexander but not-even for this — to-Porus
χαλεπὸς ἐγένετο, ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλους τε ἐν μέρει ἔπεμπε καὶ δὴ καὶ
angry became but others both in turn sent and indeed also

Μερόην ἄνδρα Ἰνδόν, ὅτι φίλον εἶναι ἐκ παλαιοῦ τῷ Πώρῳ
Meroes a-man Indian because friend to-be from of-old — to-Porus
τὸν Μερόην ἔμαθεν. Πῶρος δὲ ὡς τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Μερόου
— Meroes he-learned Porus and when the-things from — Meroes
ἤκουσε καὶ ἐκ τοῦ δίψους ἅμα ἐκρατεῖτο, ἐπέστησέ τε
he-heard and by the thirst at-the-same-time was-overcome stopped both
τὸν ἐλέφαντα καὶ κατέβη ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ· ὡς δὲ ἔπιέ τε καὶ
the elephant and dismounted from it when and he-drank both and
ἀνέψυξεν, ἄγειν αὑτὸν σπουδῇ ἐκέλευσεν παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον.
revived to-lead himself in-haste he-bade to Alexander
καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤγετο· Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς προσάγοντα ἐπύθετο, 19.1
and he indeed was-led Alexander and when approaching he-learned
προσιππεύσας πρὸ τῆς τάξεως ξὺν ὀλίγοις τῶν ἑταίρων
having-ridden-up before the line with few of-the companions
ἀπαντᾷ τῷ Πώρῳ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸν ἵππον τό τε
meets — Porus and having-halted the horse the both
μέγεθος ἐθαύμαζεν, ὑπὲρ πέντε πήχεις μάλιστα ξυμβαῖνον,
size admired over five cubits about coming-to
καὶ τὸ κάλλος τοῦ Πώρου καὶ ὅτι οὐ δεδουλωμένος τῇ
and the beauty — of-Porus and that not enslaved in-the
γνώμῃ ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλ᾽ ὥσπερ ἂν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἀνδρὶ
spirit he-appeared but as — a-man good to-a-man
ἀγαθῷ προσέλθοι ὑπὲρ βασιλείας τῆς αὑτοῦ πρὸς βασιλέα
good might-approach about kingdom the his-own against king
ἄλλον καλῶς ἠγωνισμένος.
another nobly having-contended
ἔνθα δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος πρῶτος προσειπὼν αὐτὸν λέγειν 19.2
there indeed Alexander first having-addressed him to-speak
ἐκέλευσεν ὅ τι οἱ γενέσθαι ἐθέλοι. Πῶρον δὲ
bade what ever for-him to-happen he-wished Porus and
ἀποκρίνασθαι λόγος ὅτι· βασιλικῶς μοι χρῆσαι, ὦ
to-have-answered the-story-goes that royally me treat O

Ἀλέξανδρε. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἡσθεὶς τῷ λόγῳ, τοῦτο μὲν
Alexander and Alexander pleased at-the word this indeed
ἔσται σοι, ἔφη, ὦ Πῶρε, ἐμοῦ ἕνεκα· σὺ δὲ σαυτοῦ ἕνεκα
will-be for-you he-said O Porus of-me for-the-sake you but of-yourself for-the-sake
ὅ τι σοὶ φίλον ἀξίου. ὁ δὲ πάντα ἔφη ἐν τούτῳ ἐνεῖναι.
what ever to-you dear ask he and all-things he-said in this to-be-contained
19.3 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος τούτῳ ἔτι μᾶλλον τῷ λόγῳ ἡσθεὶς τήν τε
and Alexander at-this still more the word pleased the both
ἀρχὴν τῷ Πώρῳ τῶν τε αὐτῶν Ἰνδῶν ἔδωκεν καὶ ἄλλην
rule — to-Porus of-the both same Indians gave and other
ἔτι χώραν πρὸς τῇ πάλαι οὔσῃ πλείονα τῆς πρόσθεν
still country in-addition-to the former being greater than-the before
προσέθηκεν· καὶ οὕτως αὐτός τε βασιλικῶς κεχρημένος
added and so himself both royally having-treated
ἦν ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ καὶ ἐκείνῳ ἐκ τούτου ἐς ἅπαντα πιστῷ
was a-man good and him from this for all-things as-faithful
ἐχρήσατο. τοῦτο τὸ τέλος τῇ μάχῃ τῇ πρὸς Πῶρόν
he-used this the end to-the battle the against Porus
τε καὶ τοὺς ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ὑδάσπου ποταμοῦ Ἰνδοὺς
both and the beyond the Hydaspes river Indians
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐγένετο ἐπ᾽ ἄρχοντος Ἀθηναίοις Ἡγήμονος
for-Alexander came under archon at-Athens Hegemon
μηνὸς Μουνυχιῶνος.
in-the-month Munychion
19.4 ἵνα δὲ ἡ μάχη ξυνέβη καὶ ἔνθεν ὁρμηθεὶς ἐπέρασε
where and the battle happened and whence having-set-out he-crossed
τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμὸν πόλεις ἔκτισεν Ἀλέξανδρος. καὶ
the Hydaspes river cities founded Alexander and
τὴν μὲν Νίκαιαν τῆς νίκης τῆς κατ᾽ Ἰνδῶν ἐπώνυμον
— indeed Nicaea of-the victory the over Indians named-after

ὠνόμασε, τὴν δὲ Βουκεφάλαν ἐς τοῦ ἵππου τοῦ Βουκεφάλα
named — and Bucephala for of-the horse — Bucephalas
τὴν μνήμην, ὃς ἀπέθανεν αὐτοῦ, οὐ βληθεὶς πρὸς οὐδενός,
the memory who died there not struck by anyone
ἀλλὰ ὑπὸ καύματος τε καὶ ἡλικίας ἦν γὰρ ἀμφὶ 19.5
but by heat both and age he-was for about
τὰ τριάκοντα ἔτη καματηρὸς γενόμενος, πολλὰ δὲ
the thirty years worn-out having-become many and
πρόσθεν ξυγκαμών τε καὶ συγκινδυνεύσας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ,
before having-shared-toils both and having-shared-dangers with-Alexander
ἀναβαινόμενός τε πρὸς μόνου Ἀλεξάνδρου, ὅτι τοὺς ἄλλους
being-mounted both by alone Alexander because the others
πάντας ἀπηξίου ἀμβάτας, καὶ μεγέθει μέγας καὶ τῷ θυμῷ
all he-disdained as-riders and in-size great and in-the spirit
γενναῖος. σημεῖον δέ οἱ ἦν βοὸς κεφαλὴ ἐγκεχαραγμένη,
noble mark and for-him was of-an-ox a-head branded
ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ καὶ τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο λέγουσιν ὅτι ἔφερεν· οἱ
on which also the name this they-say that he-bore the-others
δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι λευκὸν σῆμα εἶχεν ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς,
and say that white mark he-had on the head
μέλας ὢν αὐτός, ἐς βοὸς κεφαλὴν μάλιστα εἰκασμένον.
black being himself to of-an-ox head most likened
οὗτος ὁ ἵππος ἐν τῇ Οὐξίων χώρᾳ ἀφανὴς ἐγένετο 19.6
this the horse in the of-Uxians country missing became
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος προεκήρυξεν ἀνὰ τὴν
for-Alexander and Alexander proclaimed throughout the
χώραν πάντας ἀποκτενεῖν Οὐξίους, εἰ μὴ ἀπάξουσιν αὐτῷ
country all to-be-going-to-kill Uxians if not they-bring-back to-him
τὸν ἵππον· καὶ ἀπήχθη εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τῷ κηρύγματι.
the horse and he-was-brought-back at-once at the proclamation
τοσήδε μὲν σπουδὴ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἦν, τόσος δὲ
so-great indeed concern for-Alexander about him was so-great and

Ἀλεξάνδρου φόβος τοῖς βαρβάροις. καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐς τοσόνδε
of-Alexander fear among-the barbarians and by-me to so-great
τετιμήσθω ὁ Βουκεφάλας οὗτος Ἀλεξάνδρου ἕνεκα.
let-be-honored — Bucephalas this of-Alexander for-the-sake

VII · THE ACESINES AND SANGALA

After sacrifices and games on the Hydaspes, Alexander receives the surrender of the Glauganicae, gives their land to Porus, and reconciles him with Taxiles. Abisares submits, envoys come in, and the Assacenians' revolt is answered. The Acesines, fifteen stades wide and fierce, wrecks many boats. Porus is sent home for troops, Hephaestion goes to take over the land of the other Porus, who has fled, and Alexander crosses the Hydraotes. The Cathaeans and other free Indians hold a hill before Sangala behind three rings of wagons. Alexander dismounts, leads the phalanx through them, and shuts them in the city. His cavalry turns back a night breakout by the lake, and when deserters warn of another, he posts Ptolemy at the gap.

20.1 Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ ἐπειδὴ οἱ ἀποθανόντες ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
for-Alexander and when the having-died in the battle
κεκόσμηντο τῷ πρέποντι κόσμῳ, ὁ δὲ τοῖς θεοῖς τὰ
had-been-adorned with-the fitting adornment he and to-the gods the
νομιζόμενα ἐπινίκια ἔθυε, καὶ ἀγὼν ἐποιεῖτο αὐτῷ
customary victory-sacrifices sacrificed and contest was-held by-him
γυμνικὸς καὶ ἱππικὸς αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ Ὑδάσπου,
gymnastic and equestrian there on the bank — of-Hydaspes
ἵναπερ τὸ πρῶτον διέβη ἅμα τῷ στρατῷ.
where-indeed the first he-crossed together-with the army
20.2 Κρατερὸν μὲν δὴ ξὺν μέρει τῆς στρατιᾶς ὑπελείπετο
Craterus indeed indeed with part of-the army he-left-behind
τὰς πόλεις ἅστινας ταύτῃ ἔκτιζεν ἀναστήσοντά τε καὶ
the cities which there he-was-founding about-to-raise both and

ἐκτειχιοῦντα· αὐτὸς δὲ ἤλαυνεν ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς προσχώρους
about-to-fortify himself and marched as against the neighboring
τῇ Πώρου ἀρχῇ Ἰνδούς. ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῷ ἔθνει
to-the of-Porus rule Indians name and was for-the people
Γλαυγανῖκαι, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος, ὡς δὲ Πτολεμαῖος,
Glauganicae as says Aristobulus as and Ptolemy
Γλαῦσαι. ὁποτέρως δὲ ἔχει τὸ ὄνομα οὔ μοι μέλει.
Glausae in-whichever-way and holds the name not to-me it-matters
ἐπῄει δὲ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν Ἀλέξανδρος τῶν τε ἑταίρων 20.3
he-invaded and the country of-them Alexander of-the both companion
ἱππέων ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεας καὶ τῶν πεζῶν ἀπὸ φάλαγγος
cavalry having the half and of-the infantry from phalanx
ἑκάστης ἐπιλέκτους καὶ τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας σύμπαντας καὶ
each picked-men and the mounted-archers all and
τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς τοξότας· καὶ προσεχώρουν αὐτῷ
the Agrianians and the archers and came-over to-him
ὁμολογίᾳ πάντες.
by-agreement all
καὶ ἔλαβε πόλεις μὲν ἐς τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτά, ὧν ἵνα 20.4
and he-took cities indeed about thirty and seven of-which where
ὀλίγιστοι ἦσαν οἰκήτορες πεντακισχιλίων οὐκ ἐλάττους
fewest were inhabitants five-thousand not fewer
ἦσαν, πολλῶν δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τοὺς μυρίους· καὶ κώμας
were of-many and even over the ten-thousand and villages
πλήθει τε πολλὰς ἔλαβε καὶ πολυανθρώπους οὐ μεῖον
in-number both many he-took and populous not less
τῶν πόλεων. καὶ ταύτης τῆς χώρας Πώρῳ ἄρχειν
than-the cities and of-this the country to-Porus to-rule
ἔδωκεν. καὶ Ταξίλῃ δὲ διαλλάττει Πῶρον καὶ Ταξίλην
he-gave and with-Taxiles and reconciles Porus and Taxiles
ἀποπέμπει ὀπίσω ἐς τὰ ἤθη τὰ αὑτοῦ.
sends-away back to the abodes the his-own

20.5 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ παρά τε Ἀβισάρου πρέσβεις ἦκον, ἐνδιδόντες
in this and from both Abisares envoys came surrendering
αὐτόν τε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ Ἀβισάρην καὶ τὴν χώραν ὅσης
himself both to-Alexander Abisares and the country as-much-as
ἦρχε. καίτοι πρό γε τῆς μάχης τῆς πρὸς Πῶρον
he-ruled although before at-least the battle the against Porus
γενομένης Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐπενόει Ἀβισάρης καὶ αὐτὸς ξὺν
having-happened to-Alexander intended Abisares also himself with
Πώρῳ τάττεσθαι· τότε δὲ καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν τὸν αὑτοῦ ξὺν
Porus to-be-ranged then and also the brother the his-own with
τοῖς ἄλλοις πρέσβεσι παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἔπεμψε, χρήματά τε
the other envoys to Alexander he-sent money both
κομίζοντα καὶ ἐλέφαντας τεσσαράκοντα δῶρον Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
bringing and elephants forty a-gift to-Alexander
20.6 ἦκον δὲ καὶ παρὰ τῶν αὐτονόμων Ἰνδῶν πρέσβεις
came and also from the independent Indians envoys
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ παρὰ Πώρου ἄλλου του ὑπάρχου
to Alexander and from Porus another a-certain hyparch
Ἰνδῶν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ Ἀβισάρην διὰ τάχους ἰέναι παρ᾽
of-Indians Alexander and Abisares with speed to-come to
αὐτὸν κελεύει ἐπαπειλήσας, εἰ μὴ ἔλθοι, ὅτι αὐτὸν
himself orders having-threatened if not he-should-come that himself
ὄψεται ἥκοντα ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἵνα οὐ χαιρήσει ἰδών.
he-will-see coming with the army where not he-will-rejoice having-seen
20.7 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Φραταφέρνης τε ὁ Παρθυαίων καὶ
in this and Phrataphernes both the of-Parthyaeans and
Ὑρκανίας σατράπης τοὺς καταλειφθέντας παρὰ οἱ Θρᾷκας
of-Hyrcania satrap the having-been-left-behind with him Thracians
ἄγων ἦκεν ὡς Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ παρὰ Σισικόττου τοῦ
leading came to Alexander and from Sisicottus the
Ἀσσακηνῶν σατράπου ἄγγελοι, ὅτι τόν τε ὕπαρχον
of-Assacenians satrap messengers that the both hyparch

σφῶν ἀπεκτονότες εἶεν οἱ Ἀσσακηνοὶ καὶ ἀπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου
their having-killed were the Assacenians and from Alexander
ἀφεστηκότες. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους Φίλιππον ἐκπέμπει καὶ
having-revolted and against these Philip he-sends-out and
Τυρίεσπιν σὺν στρατιᾷ τὰ περὶ τὴν Ἀσσακηνῶν χώραν
Tyriespis with an-army the-things about the of-Assacenians country
καταστησομένους καὶ κοσμήσοντας.
about-to-settle and about-to-order
αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ποταμὸν προὐχώρει. 20.8
himself and as toward the Acesines river advanced
τούτου τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου τὸ μέγεθος μόνου τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμῶν
of-this — of-Acesines the size alone of-the Indian rivers
Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου ἀνέγραψεν· εἶναι γὰρ ἵνα ἐπέρασεν
Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus recorded to-be for where crossed
αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ τῶν πλοίων τε καὶ τῶν διφθερῶν ξὺν
it Alexander on the boats both and the hides with
τῇ στρατιᾷ τὸ μὲν ῥεῦμα ὀξὺ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου πέτραις μεγάλαις
the army the indeed current swift — of-Acesines with-rocks great
καὶ ὀξείαις, καθ᾽ ὧν φερόμενον βίᾳ τὸ ὕδωρ κυμαίνεσθαί
and sharp against which carried by-force the water to-surge
τε καὶ καχλάζειν, τὸ δὲ εὖρος σταδίους ἐπέχειν πεντεκαίδεκα.
both and to-roar the and breadth stades to-extend fifteen
τοῖς μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τῶν διφθερῶν περῶσιν εὐμαρῆ 20.9
for-those indeed indeed on the hides crossing easy
γενέσθαι τὸν πόρον, τοὺς δὲ ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις διαβάλλοντας
to-have-become the passage the and in the boats crossing-over
ἐποκειλάντων πολλῶν πλοίων ἐπὶ ταῖς πέτραις καὶ
having-run-aground many boats on the rocks and
συναραχθέντων οὐκ ὀλίγους αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι
having-been-dashed-together not few there in the water
διαφθαρῆναι.
to-have-perished

20.10 εἴη ἂν οὖν ἐκ τοῦδε τοῦ λόγου ξυντιθέντι
it-would-be — then from this the account for-one-putting-together
τεκμηριοῦσθαι, ὅτι οὐ πόρρω τοῦ ἀληθοῦς ἀναγέγραπται
to-infer that not far from-the truth has-been-recorded
τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ μέγεθος, ὅσοις ἐς τεσσαράκοντα
the of-Indus river the size for-those-who about forty
σταδίους δοκεῖ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ εἶναι τὸ εὖρος, ἵνα μέσως ἔχει
stades it-seems — of-Indus to-be the breadth where moderately is
αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ ὁ Ἰνδός· ἵνα δὲ στενότατός τε καὶ διὰ
itself of-itself — Indus where and narrowest both and through
στενότητα βαθύτατος ἐς τοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα ξυνάγεσθαι·
narrowness deepest to the fifteen to-be-contracted
καὶ ταῦτα πολλαχῇ εἶναι τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ. καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦ
and these-things in-many-places to-be — of-Indus and for also —
Ἀκεσίνου τεκμαίρομαι ἐπιλέξασθαι Ἀλέξανδρον, ἵναπερ
of-Acesines I-infer to-have-chosen Alexander where-indeed
τὸ πλατύτατον ἦν τοῦ πόρου, ὡς σχολαιτέρῳ χρήσασθαι
the widest was of-the crossing so-as more-slack to-use
τῷ ῥεύματι.
the current

21.1 περάσας δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν Κοῖνον μὲν ξὺν τῇ αὑτοῦ τάξει
having-crossed and the river Coenus indeed with the his-own battalion
ἀπολείπει αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ προστάξας ἐπιμελεῖσθαι
he-leaves there on the bank having-ordered to-take-care-of
τῆς ὑπολελειμμένης στρατιᾶς τῆς διαβάσεως, οἳ τόν τε
the left-behind army of-the crossing who the both
σῖτον αὐτῷ τὸν ἐκ τῆς ἤδη ὑπηκόου τῶν Ἰνδῶν χώρας
grain for-him the from the already subject of-the Indians country
καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐπιτήδεια παρακομίζειν ἔμελλον.
and the other provisions to-convey were-about

Πῶρον δὲ ἐς τὰ αὑτοῦ ἤθη ἀποπέμπει, κελεύσας Ἰνδῶν 21.2
Porus and to the his-own abodes he-sends-away having-ordered of-Indians
τε τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους ἐπιλεξάμενον καὶ εἴ τινας παρ᾽
both the most-warlike having-chosen and if any with
αὑτῷ ἔχοι ἐλέφαντας, τούτους δὲ ἀναλαβόντα ἰέναι
himself he-should-have elephants these and having-taken to-come
παρ᾽ αὑτόν. αὐτὸς δὲ Πῶρον τὸν ἕτερον τὸν κακόν, ὅτι
to himself himself and Porus the other the bad because
ἐξηγγέλθη πεφευγέναι ἀπολιπὼν τὴν χώραν ἧς ἦρχεν,
it-was-reported to-have-fled having-left the country which he-ruled
ἐπενόει διώκειν σὺν τοῖς κουφοτάτοις τῆς στρατιᾶς.
intended to-pursue with the lightest of-the army
ὁ γὰρ Πῶρος οὗτος, ἔστε μὲν πολέμια ξυνειστήκει 21.3
— for Porus this while indeed hostile stood
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὰ πρὸς τὸν ἄλλον Πῶρον, πρέσβεις παρ᾽
to-Alexander the-relations toward the other Porus envoys to
Ἀλέξανδρον πέμπων αὑτόν τε καὶ τὴν ὑπὸ οἱ χώραν
Alexander sending himself both and the under him country
ἐνεδίδου Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, κατὰ ἔχθος τὸ Πώρου μᾶλλον ἢ
surrendered to-Alexander through enmity the of-Porus rather than
φιλίᾳ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου· ὡς δὲ ἀφειμένον τε ἐκεῖνον καὶ
friendship the of-Alexander when and released both him and
πρὸς τῇ αὑτοῦ καὶ ἄλλης πολλῆς ἄρχοντα ἔμαθε, τότε δὴ
over the his-own also other much ruling he-learned then indeed
φοβηθείς, οὐχ οὕτω τι Ἀλέξανδρον, ὡς τὸν Πῶρον
having-been-frightened not so at-all Alexander as — Porus
ἐκεῖνον τὸν ὁμώνυμον, φεύγει τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀναλαβὼν ὅσους
that the namesake flees the his-own having-taken as-many-as
τῶν μαχίμων ξυμπεῖσαι ἠδυνήθη μετασχεῖν οἱ τῆς φυγῆς.
of-the fighting-men to-persuade he-was-able to-share with-him of-the flight

21.4 ἐπὶ τοῦτον ἐλαύνων Ἀλέξανδρος ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸν
against this-one marching Alexander arrives at the
Ὑδραώτην ποταμόν, ἄλλον αὖ τοῦτον Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν, τὸ
Hydraotes river another again this Indian river in-the
μὲν εὖρος οὐ μείονα τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου, ὀξύτητι δὲ τοῦ ῥοῦ
indeed breadth not less — than-Acesines in-swiftness but of-the current
μείονα. ὅσην δὲ τῆς χώρας ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑδραώτην
less as-much-as and of-the country as-far to — Hydraotes
ἐπῆλθε, φυλακὰς ὑπέλιπεν ἐν τοῖς ἐπικαιροτάτοις χωρίοις,
he-went-over garrisons he-left in the most-opportune places
ὅπως οἱ ἀμφὶ Κρατερόν τε καὶ Κοῖνον δι᾽ ἀσφαλείας
so-that the around Craterus both and Coenus in safety
ἐπέρχοιντο τῆς χώρας τὴν πολλὴν προνομεύοντες.
might-go-over of-the country the most foraging

21.5 ἐνταῦθα Ἡφαιστίωνα μὲν ἐκπέμπει δοὺς αὐτῷ μέρος
there Hephaestion indeed he-sends-out having-given to-him part
τῆς στρατιᾶς, πεζῶν μὲν φάλαγγας δύο, ἱππέων δὲ τήν
of-the army of-infantry indeed battalions two of-cavalry and the
τε αὑτοῦ καὶ τὴν Δημητρίου ἵππαρχίαν καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν
both his-own and the of-Demetrius hipparchy and of-the archers
τοὺς ἡμίσεας, ἐς τὴν Πώρου τοῦ ἀφεστηκότος χώραν,
the half into the of-Porus the having-revolted country
κελεύσας παραδιδόναι ταύτην Πώρῳ τῷ ἄλλῳ, καὶ εἰ δή
having-ordered to-hand-over this to-Porus the other and if indeed
τινα πρὸς ταῖς ὄχθαις τοῦ Ὑδραώτου ποταμοῦ αὐτόνομα
any along the banks of-the Hydraotes river independent
ἔθνη Ἰνδῶν νέμεται, καὶ ταῦτα προσαγαγόμενον τῷ
peoples of-Indians dwell also these having-won-over —
Πώρῳ ἄρχειν ἐγχειρίσαι. αὐτὸς δ᾽ ἐπέρα τὸν Ὑδραώτην
to-Porus to-rule to-entrust himself and crossed the Hydraotes
ποταμόν, οὐ καθάπερ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην χαλεπῶς.
river not as — Acesines with-difficulty

προχωροῦντι δὲ αὐτῷ ἐπέκεινα τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ Ὑδραώτου 21.6
advancing and for-him beyond the bank — of-Hydraotes
τοὺς μὲν πολλοὺς καθ᾽ ὁμολογίαν προσχωρεῖν ξυνέβαινεν,
the indeed most by agreement to-come-over it-happened
ἤδη δέ τινας ξὺν ὅπλοις ἀπαντήσαντας, τοὺς δὲ καὶ
already and some with arms having-met the-others and also
ὑποφεύγοντας ἑλὼν βίᾳ κατεστρέψατο.
fleeing having-caught by-force he-subdued
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐξαγγέλλεται Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῶν αὐτονόμων 22.1
in this and is-reported to-Alexander of-the independent
Ἰνδῶν ἄλλους τέ τινας καὶ τοὺς καλουμένους Καθαίους
Indians others both some and the called Cathaeans
αὐτούς τε παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς πρὸς μάχην, εἰ προσάγοι
themselves both to-be-preparing as for battle if he-should-lead-up
τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ ὅσα ὅμορά σφισιν
to-the country of-them Alexander and as-many-as bordering on-them
ἔθνη ὡσαύτως αὐτόνομα, καὶ ταῦτα παρακαλεῖν ἐς τὸ ἔργον·
peoples likewise independent also these to-be-summoning to the action
εἶναι δὲ τήν τε πόλιν ὀχυρὰν πρὸς ἣ ἐπενόουν 22.2
to-be and the both city strong at which they-intended
ἀγωνίσασθαι, Σάγγαλα ἦν τῇ πόλει ὄνομα, καὶ αὐτοὶ
to-fight Sangala was to-the city name and themselves
οἱ Καθαῖοι εὐτολμότατοί τε καὶ τὰ πολέμια κράτιστοι
the Cathaeans most-daring both and the warlike-things strongest
ἐνομίζοντο, καὶ τούτοις κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ Ὀξυδράκαι, ἄλλο
were-considered and with-these in the same-way Oxydracae another
Ἰνδῶν ἔθνος, καὶ Μαλλοί, ἄλλο καὶ τοῦτο· ἐπεὶ καὶ
of-Indians people and Malli another also this since also
ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν στρατεύσαντας ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς Πῶρόν τε
a-little before having-marched against them Porus both
καὶ Ἀβισάρην ξύν τε τῇ σφετέρᾳ δυνάμει καὶ πολλὰ
and Abisares with both the their-own force and many

ἄλλα ἔθνη τῶν αὐτονόμων Ἰνδῶν ἀναστήσαντας οὐδὲν
other peoples of-the independent Indians having-roused nothing
πράξαντας τῆς παρασκευῆς ἄξιον ξυνέβη ἀπελθεῖν.
having-done of-the preparation worthy it-happened to-depart

22.3 ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, σπουδῇ ἤλαυνεν ὡς
these-things when was-reported to-Alexander with-haste he-marched as
ἐπὶ τοὺς Καθαίους. καὶ δευτεραῖος μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
against the Cathaeans and on-the-second-day indeed from the river
τοῦ Ὑδραώτου πρὸς πόλιν ἦκεν ᾗ ὄνομα Πίμπραμα· τὸ
— *Hydraotes to a-city came whose name Pimprama the*
δὲ ἔθνος τοῦτο τῶν Ἰνδῶν Ἀδραϊσταὶ ἐκαλοῦντο. οὗτοι
and people this of-the Indians Adraïstae were-called these
μὲν δὴ προσεχώρησαν ὁμολογίᾳ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
indeed indeed came-over by-agreement to-Alexander

22.4 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἀναπαύσας τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τὴν στρατιὰν
and Alexander having-rested on-the next-day the army
τῇ τρίτῃ προὐχώρει ἐπὶ τὰ Σάγγαλα, ἵνα οἱ Καθαῖοί
on-the third advanced to — Sangala where the Cathaeans
τε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρόσχωροι αὐτοῖς ξυνεληλυθότες πρὸ
both and the other neighbors to-them having-come-together before
τῆς πόλεως παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ γηλόφου οὐ πάντῃ
the city drawn-up were on a-hill not on-all-sides
ἀποτόμου· κύκλῳ δὲ τοῦ γηλόφου ἁμάξας περιστήσαντες
steep in-circle and of-the hill wagons having-set-around
ἐντὸς αὐτῶν ἐστρατοπέδευον, ὡς τριπλοῦν χάρακα
within them they-encamped so-as triple palisade
προβεβλῆσθαι τῶν ἁμαξῶν.
to-be-thrown-before of-the wagons

22.5 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τό τε πλῆθος κατιδὼν τῶν βαρβάρων
Alexander and the both multitude having-observed of-the barbarians
καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τὴν φύσιν, ὡς μάλιστα πρὸς τὰ
and of-the ground the nature as most toward the

παρόντα ἐν καιρῷ οἱ ἐφαίνετο παρετάσσετο· καὶ
present-circumstances in season to-him seemed drew-up and
τοὺς μὲν ἱπποτοξότας εὐθὺς ὡς εἶχεν ἐκπέμπει ἐπ᾽
the indeed mounted-archers at-once as he-was sends-out against
αὐτούς, ἀκροβολίζεσθαι κελεύσας παριππεύοντας, ὡς μήτε
them to-skirmish having-ordered riding-along so-that neither
ἐκδρομήν τινα ποιήσασθαι τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς πρὶν ξυνταχθῆναι
sally any to-make the Indians before to-be-drawn-up
αὐτῷ τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ ὡς πληγὰς γίγνεσθαι αὐτοῖς
for-him the army and so-that wounds to-happen to-them
καὶ πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἐντὸς τοῦ ὀχυρώματος.
even before the battle within the fortification
αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως τῶν ἱππέων τὸ ἄγημα 22.6
himself and on indeed the right wing of-the cavalry the agema
κατέστησε καὶ τὴν Κλείτου ἵππαρχίαν, ἐχομένους δὲ τούτων
he-posted and the of-Cleitus hipparchy next and to-these
τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας· κατὰ
the shield-bearers and beside these the Agrianians on
δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον Περδίκκας αὐτῷ ἐτέτακτο τήν τε αὑτοῦ
and the left Perdiccas for-him had-been-posted the both his-own
ἔχων ἱππαρχίαν καὶ τὰς τῶν πεζεταίρων τάξεις· ἐπὶ κέρως
having hipparchy and the of-the foot-companions battalions on wing
δὲ ἑκατέρου οἱ τοξόται αὐτῷ διχῇ διακριθέντες ἐτάχθησαν.
and each the archers for-him in-two divided were-posted
ἐκτάσσοντι δὲ αὐτῷ παρεγένοντο καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς 22.7
drawing-up and for-him arrived also the from the
ὀπισθοφυλακίας πεζοί τε καὶ ἱππεῖς. καὶ τούτων τοὺς
rearguard infantry both and cavalry and of-these the
μὲν ἱππέας ἐπὶ τὰ κέρατα διελὼν παρήγαγεν, ἀπὸ δὲ
indeed cavalry to the wings having-divided he-led-along from and
τῶν πεζῶν τῶν προσγενομένων πυκνοτέραν τὴν ξύγκλεισιν
the infantry the having-come-up denser the close-order

τῆς φάλαγγος ποιήσας αὐτὸς ἀναλαβὼν τὴν ἵππον τὴν
of-the phalanx having-made himself having-taken the cavalry the
ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ τεταγμένην παρήγαγεν ἐπὶ τὰς κατὰ τὸ
on the right posted led-along against the at the
εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἁμάξας. ταύτῃ γὰρ εὐπροσοδώτερον
left of-the Indians wagons there for more-accessible
αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο τὸ χωρίον καὶ οὐ πυκναὶ ὡσαύτως αἱ
to-him seemed the ground and not dense likewise the
ἅμαξαι ἐφειστήκεσαν.
wagons stood

23.1 ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν ἵππον προσαγαγοῦσαν οὐκ ἐξέδραμον
when and against the cavalry advancing not sallied-out
οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἔξω τῶν ἁμαξῶν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπιβεβηκότες αὐτῶν ἀφ᾽
the Indians outside the wagons but having-mounted them from
ὑψηλοῦ ἠκροβολίζοντο, γνοὺς Ἀλέξανδρος ὅτι οὐκ
high-ground shot-from-afar having-recognized Alexander that not
εἴη τῶν ἱππέων τὸ ἔργον καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
was of-the cavalry the work having-leapt-down from the horse
πεζὸς ἐπῆγε τῶν πεζῶν τὴν φάλαγγα.
on-foot led-on of-the infantry the phalanx

23.2 καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν τῶν πρώτων ἁμαξῶν οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐβιάσαντο
and from indeed the first wagons not with-difficulty forced
οἱ Μακεδόνες τοὺς Ἰνδούς· πρὸ δὲ τῶν δευτέρων οἱ Ἰνδοὶ
the Macedonians the Indians before and the second the Indians
παραταξάμενοι ῥᾷον ἀπεμάχοντο, οἷα δὴ πυκνότεροί
having-drawn-up more-easily fought-back as indeed denser
τε ἐφεστηκότες ἐλάττονι τῷ κύκλῳ καὶ τῶν Μακεδόνων
both standing in-a-smaller the circle and the Macedonians
οὐ κατ᾽ εὐρυχωρίαν ὡσαύτως προσαγόντων σφίσιν, ἐν
not in open-space likewise advancing on-them while
ᾧ τάς τε πρώτας ἁμάξας ὑπεξῆγον καὶ κατὰ
which the both first wagons they-were-drawing-away and through

τὰ διαλείμματα αὐτῶν ὡς ἑκάστοις προὐχώρει ἀτάκτως
the gaps of-them as to-each it-went-well in-disorder
προσέβαλλον· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπὸ τούτων ὅμως ἐξώσθησαν
attacked but also from these nevertheless were-thrust-out
οἱ Ἰνδοὶ βιασθέντες πρὸς τῆς φάλαγγος.
the Indians having-been-forced by the phalanx
οἱ δὲ οὐκέτι ἐπὶ τῶν τρίτων ἔμενον, ἀλλὰ ὡς τάχους 23.3
they and no-longer at the third stayed but as of-speed
εἶχον φυγῇ εἰς τὴν πόλιν κατεκλείσθησαν. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
they-had in-flight into the city were-shut-up and Alexander
ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιεστρατοπέδευσε τοῖς πεζοῖς
this indeed the day encamped-around with-the infantry
τὴν πόλιν ὅσα γε ἠδυνήθη αὐτῷ περιβαλεῖν ἡ
the city as-much-as at-least was-able for-him to-surround the
φάλαγξ· ἐπὶ πολὺ γὰρ ἐπέχον τὸ τεῖχος τῷ στρατοπέδῳ
phalanx over much for extending the wall with-the camp
κυκλώσασθαι οὐ δυνατὸς ἐγένετο·
to-encircle not able he-was
κατὰ δὲ τὰ διαλείποντα αὐτοῦ, ἵνα καὶ λίμνη οὐ μακρὰν 23.4
at and the gaps of-it where also a-lake not far
τοῦ τείχους ἦν, τοὺς ἱππέας ἐπέταξεν ἐν κύκλῳ τῆς
from-the wall was the cavalry he-posted in circle of-the
λίμνης, γνοὺς οὐ βαθεῖαν οὖσαν τὴν λίμνην καὶ
lake having-learned not deep being the lake and
ἅμα εἰκάσας ὅτι φοβεροὶ γενόμενοι οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἀπὸ
at-the-same-time having-guessed that frightened having-become the Indians from
τῆς προτέρας ἥττης ἀπολείψουσι τῆς νυκτὸς τὴν πόλιν.
the former defeat will-abandon in-the night the city
καὶ συνέβη οὕτως ὅπως εἴκασεν· ἀμφὶ γὰρ δευτέραν 23.5
and it-happened so as he-guessed about for second
φυλακὴν ἐκπίπτοντες ἐκ τοῦ τείχους οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν
watch falling-out from the wall the most of-them

ἐνέκυρσαν ταῖς προφυλακαῖς τῶν ἱππέων· καὶ οἱ μὲν
fell-in-with the outposts of-the cavalry and the indeed
πρῶτοι αὐτῶν κατεκόπησαν πρὸς τῶν ἱππέων, οἱ
first of-them were-cut-down by the cavalry the-others
δὲ ἐπὶ τούτοις αἰσθόμενοι ὅτι φυλάσσεται ἐν κύκλῳ ἡ
and behind these having-perceived that is-guarded in circle the
λίμνη ἐς τὴν πόλιν αὖθις ἀνεχώρησαν.
lake into the city again withdrew

23.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ χάρακί τε διπλῷ περιβάλλει ἵναπερ μὴ
Alexander and with-palisade both double surrounds where-indeed not
εἶργεν ἡ λίμνη τὴν πόλιν καὶ φυλακὰς ἐν κύκλῳ τῆς λίμνης
shut-in the lake the city and guards in circle of-the lake
ἀκριβεστέρας κατέστησεν. αὐτὸς δὲ μηχανὰς προσάγειν τῷ
more-strict he-posted himself and engines to-bring-up to-the
τείχει ἐπενόει, ὡς κατασείειν τὸ τεῖχος. αὐτομολήσαντες
wall intended so-as to-batter-down the wall having-deserted
δὲ αὐτῷ τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεώς τινες φράζουσιν, ὅτι ἐν νῷ
and to-him of-those from the city some tell that in mind
ἔχοιεν αὐτῆς ἐκείνης τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκπίπτειν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως οἱ
they-had of-it that-very the night to-break-out from the city the
Ἰνδοὶ κατὰ τὴν λίμνην, ἵναπερ τὸ ἐκλιπὲς ἦν τοῦ χάρακος.
Indians by the lake where-indeed the gap was of-the palisade

23.7 ὁ δὲ Πτολεμαῖον τὸν Λάγου ἐπιτάττει ἐνταῦθα,
he and Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus posts there
τῶν τε ὑπασπιστῶν αὐτῷ δοὺς χιλιαρχίας τρεῖς
of-the both shield-bearers to-him having-given chiliarchies three
καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας ξύμπαντας καὶ μίαν τάξιν τῶν
and the Agrianians all and one battalion of-the
τοξοτῶν, ἀποδείξας τὸ χωρίον, ᾗπερ μάλιστα εἴκαζε
archers having-pointed-out the place where most he-guessed
βιάσεσθαι τοὺς βαρβάρους· σὺ δὲ ἐπειδὰν αἴσθῃ,
to-be-going-to-force-their-way the barbarians you and whenever you-perceive

ἔφη, βιαζομένους ταύτῃ, αὐτὸς μὲν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ
he-said forcing-through there yourself indeed with the army
εἴργειν τοὺς βαρβάρους τοῦ πρόσω, τὸν δὲ σαλπιγκτὴν
to-hold-back the barbarians from-the forward the and trumpeter
κέλευε σημαίνειν· ὑμεῖς δέ, ἄνδρες ἡγεμόνες, ἐπειδὰν
order to-signal you and men leaders whenever
σημανθῇ, ξὺν τοῖς καθ' αὑτοὺς ἕκαστοι ξυντεταγμένοι
it-is-signaled with the by themselves each drawn-up
ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν θόρυβον, ἵνα ἂν ἡ σάλπιγξ παρακαλῇ.
to-go to the uproar wherever — the trumpet calls
ἀποστατήσω δὲ οὐδὲ ἐγὼ τοῦ ἔργου.
I-will-stand-aloof and not-even I from-the action

VIII · SANGALA TAKEN, AND THE SPEECH AT THE HYPHASIS

Ptolemy blocks the breakout with wagons and stakes, and five hundred Indians die. When Porus arrives, the Macedonians undermine the brick wall and take Sangala; seventeen thousand Indians die and over seventy thousand are captured. The two cities that revolted with it flee and are pursued; Sangala is razed, and Porus garrisons the towns that came over. Beyond the Hyphasis lies a rich land, but the Macedonians, weary of toil on toil, grumble and refuse to go on. Alexander calls the officers together and argues that the end of the earth is near, that the conquered lands are theirs, that Heracles won his godhead by toil, and that those who stay will be envied.

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα παρήγγειλεν· Πτολεμαῖος δὲ ἁμάξας τε 24.1
he indeed these-things ordered Ptolemy and wagons both
ἐκ τῶν ἀπολελειμμένων ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ φυγῇ ἁμαξῶν
from the left-behind in the first flight wagons
ταύτῃ ξυναγαγὼν ὡς πλείστας κατέστησεν ἐγκαρσίας,
there having-collected as most he-set crosswise
ἵνα πολλὰ ἐν νυκτὶ τὰ ἄπορα φαίνηται τοῖς
so-that many in night the impassable-things might-appear to-those

φεύγουσι, καὶ τοῦ χάρακος τοῦ κεκομμένου τε καὶ οὐ
fleeing and of-the palisade the cut both and not
καταπηχθέντος συννῆσαι ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ἐκέλευσεν ἐν
fixed to-pile-together here and there he-ordered in
μέσῳ τῆς τε λίμνης καὶ τοῦ τείχους. καὶ ταῦτ' αὐτῷ
middle of-the both lake and of-the wall and these for-him
οἱ στρατιῶται ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ ἐξειργάσαντο.
the soldiers in the night accomplished

24.2 ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ τετάρτην φυλακὴν καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι,
already and it-was about fourth watch and the barbarians
καθάπερ ἐξηγγέλλετο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ἀνοίξαντες τὰς ὡς ἐπὶ
just-as was-reported to-Alexander having-opened the as toward
τὴν λίμνην πύλας δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτὴν ἐφέροντο. οὐ μὴν
the lake gates at-a-run against it were-rushing not however
ἔλαθον τὰς ταύτῃ φυλακὰς οὐδὲ Πτολεμαῖον τὸν
they-escaped-notice-of the there guards nor Ptolemy the
ἐπ' αὐταῖς τεταγμένον, ἀλλὰ ἐν τούτῳ οἵ τε σαλπιγκταὶ
over them posted but in this the both trumpeters
ἐσήμαινον αὐτῷ καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν στρατιὰν ὡπλισμένην τε
signaled for-him and he-himself the army armed both
καὶ συντεταγμένην ἔχων ἐχώρει ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους.
and drawn-up having advanced against the barbarians

24.3 τοῖς δὲ αἵ τε ἅμαξαι ἐμποδὼν ἦσαν καὶ ὁ χάραξ ἐν
for-them and the both wagons in-the-way were and the palisade in
μέσῳ καταβεβλημένος· ὡς δὲ ἥ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγξατο
middle thrown-down when and the both trumpet sounded
καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Πτολεμαῖον προσέκειντο αὐτοῖς τοὺς ἀεὶ
and the around Ptolemy pressed-upon them the continually
ἐκπίπτοντας διὰ τῶν ἁμαξῶν κατακαίνοντες, ἐνταῦθα
falling-out through the wagons cutting-down there

δὴ ἀποστρέφονται αὖθις ἐς τὴν πόλιν. καὶ ἀπέθανον
indeed they-turn-back again into the city and died
αὐτῶν ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει ἐς πεντακοσίους.
of-them in the retreat about five-hundred
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Πῶρος ἀφίκετο τούς τε ὑπολοίπους 24.4
in this and also Porus arrived the both remaining
ἐλέφαντας ἅμα οἳ ἄγων καὶ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἐς
elephants together-with himself leading and of-the Indians about
πεντακισχιλίους, αἵ τε μηχαναὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ξυμπεπηγμέναι
five-thousand the both engines for-Alexander fixed-together
ἦσαν καὶ προσήγοντο ἤδη τῷ τείχει. ἀλλὰ οἱ Μακεδόνες,
were and were-being-brought-up already to-the wall but the Macedonians
πρὶν καὶ κατασεισθῆναί τι τοῦ τείχους, ὑπορύττοντές
before even to-be-battered-down any of-the wall undermining
τε αὐτοὶ πλίνθινον ὂν τὸ τεῖχος καὶ τὰς κλίμακας ἐν
both themselves of-brick being the wall and the ladders in
κύκλῳ πάντῃ προσθέντες αἱροῦσι κατὰ κράτος τὴν πόλιν.
circle everywhere having-set-against take by force the city
καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσι μὲν ἐν τῇ καταλήψει τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἐς 24.5
and die indeed in the capture of-the Indians about
μυρίους καὶ ἑπτακισχιλίους, ἑάλωσαν δὲ ὑπὲρ τὰς ἑπτὰ
ten-thousand and seven-thousand were-taken and over the seven
μυριάδας καὶ ἅρματα τριακόσια καὶ ἵπποι πεντακόσιοι.
myriads and chariots three-hundred and horses five-hundred
τῆς δὲ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στρατιᾶς ἀπέθανον μὲν ὀλίγον
of-the and with Alexander army died indeed a-little
ἀποδέοντες τῶν ἑκατὸν ἐν τῇ πάσῃ πολιορκίᾳ, τραυματίαι
falling-short-of the hundred in the whole siege wounded
δὲ οὐ κατὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν νεκρῶν ἐγένοντο, ἀλλὰ
and not in-proportion-to the number of-the dead were but

ὑπὲρ τοὺς χιλίους καὶ διακοσίους, καὶ ἐν τούτοις τῶν
over the thousand and two-hundred and among these of-the
ἡγεμόνων ἄλλοι τε καὶ Λυσίμαχος ὁ σωματοφύλαξ.
leaders others both and Lysimachus the bodyguard
24.6 θάψας δὲ ὡς νόμος αὐτῷ τοὺς τελευτήσαντας
having-buried and as custom for-him the having-died
Εὐμενῆ τὸν γραμματέα ἐκπέμπει ἐς τὰς δύο πόλεις τὰς
Eumenes the secretary he-sends-out to the two cities the
ξυναφεστώσας τοῖς Σαγγάλοις δοὺς αὐτῷ τῶν ἱππέων
having-revolted-together-with — Sangala having-given to-him of-the cavalry
ἐς τριακοσίους, φράσοντα τοῖς ἔχουσι τὰς πόλεις τῶν τε
about three-hundred about-to-tell to-those holding the cities — both
Σαγγάλων τὴν ἅλωσιν καὶ ὅτι αὐτοῖς οὐδὲν ἔσται χαλεπὸν
of-Sangala the capture and that for-them nothing will-be harsh
ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ὑπομένουσί τε καὶ δεχομένοις φιλίως
from Alexander remaining both and receiving in-friendly-fashion
Ἀλέξανδρον· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ ἄλλοις τισὶ γενέσθαι τῶν
Alexander not-even for even to-others any to-have-happened of-the
αὐτονόμων Ἰνδῶν ὅσοι ἑκόντες σφᾶς ἐνέδοσαν.
independent Indians as-many-as willingly themselves surrendered
24.7 οἱ δὲ ἤδη γὰρ ἐξήγγελτο αὐτοῖς κατὰ κράτος
they and already for had-been-reported to-them by force
ἑαλωκότα πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου τὰ Σάγγαλα φοβεροὶ
having-been-taken by Alexander — Sangala frightened
γενόμενοι ἔφευγον ἀπολιπόντες τὰς πόλεις. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος,
having-become fled having-left the cities and Alexander
ἐπειδὴ ἐξηγγέλθη αὐτῶν ἡ φυγή, σπουδῇ ἐδίωκεν· ἀλλὰ
when was-reported of-them the flight with-haste pursued but
οἱ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν ἔφθασαν ἀποφυγόντες, διὰ μακροῦ
the most indeed of-them got-ahead having-escaped over long
γὰρ ἡ δίωξις ἐγίγνετο, ὅσοι δὲ κατὰ τὴν ἀποχώρησιν
for the pursuit was as-many-as and during the retreat

ἀσθενείᾳ ὑπελείποντο, οὗτοι ἐγκαταληφθέντες πρὸς τῆς
from-weakness were-left-behind these having-been-caught by the
στρατιᾶς ἀπέθανον ἐς πεντακοσίους μάλιστα.
army died about five-hundred about
ὡς δὲ ἀπέγνω διώκειν τοῦ πρόσω τοὺς φεύγοντας, 24.8
when and he-gave-up to-pursue the forward the fleeing
ἐπανελθὼν ἐς τὰ Σάγγαλα τὴν πόλιν μὲν κατέσκαψε, τὴν
having-returned to — Sangala the city indeed he-razed the
χώραν δὲ τῶν Ἰνδῶν τοῖς πάλαι μὲν αὐτονόμοις, τότε δὲ
country and of-the Indians to-the formerly indeed independent then and
ἑκουσίως προσχωρήσασι προσέθηκεν. καὶ Πῶρον μὲν ξὺν
willingly having-come-over he-added and Porus indeed with
τῇ δυνάμει τῇ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐκπέμπει ἐπὶ τὰς πόλεις αἳ
the force the around him sends-out to the cities which
προσκεχωρήκεσαν, φρουρὰς εἰσάξοντα εἰς αὐτάς, αὐτὸς δὲ
had-come-over garrisons about-to-bring-in into them himself and
ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐπὶ τὸν Ὕφασιν ποταμὸν προὐχώρει, ὡς
with the army toward the Hyphasis river advanced so-that
καὶ τοὺς ἐπέκεινα Ἰνδοὺς καταστρέψαιτο. οὐδὲ ἐφαίνετο αὐτῷ
also the beyond Indians he-might-subdue nor appeared to-him
πέρας τι τοῦ πολέμου ἔστε ὑπελείπετό τι πολέμιον.
end any of-the war as-long-as remained anything hostile
τὰ δὲ δὴ πέραν τοῦ Ὑφάσιος εὐδαίμονά τε τὴν χώραν 25.1
the-things and indeed beyond — Hyphasis prosperous both the country
εἶναι ἐξηγγέλλετο καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἀγαθοὺς μὲν γῆς ἐργάτας,
to-be was-reported and men good indeed of-earth workers
γενναίους δὲ τὰ πολέμια καὶ ἐς τὰ ἴδια δὲ σφῶν ἐν
noble and the warlike-things and in the private-affairs and their in
κόσμῳ πολιτεύοντας πρὸς γὰρ τῶν ἀρίστων ἄρχεσθαι τοὺς
order governing by for the best to-be-ruled the
πολλούς, τοὺς δὲ οὐδὲν ἔξω τοῦ ἐπιεικοῦς ἐξηγεῖσθαι, πλῆθός
many those and nothing beyond the reasonable to-lead number

τε ἐλεφάντων εἶναι τοῖς ταύτῃ ἀνθρώποις πολύ τι ὑπὲρ
both of-elephants to-be for-the there men much somewhat beyond
τοὺς ἄλλους Ἰνδούς, καὶ μεγέθει μεγίστους καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ.
the other Indians and in-size greatest and in-courage

25.2 ταῦτα δὲ ἐξαγγελλόμενα Ἀλέξανδρον μὲν παρώξυνεν ἐς
these-things and being-reported Alexander indeed stirred into
ἐπιθυμίαν τοῦ πρόσω ἰέναι· οἱ Μακεδόνες δὲ ἐξέκαμνον
desire of-the forward to-go the Macedonians and were-wearying
ἤδη ταῖς γνώμαις, πόνους τε ἐκ πόνων καὶ κινδύνους ἐκ
already in-the spirits toils both from toils and dangers from
κινδύνων ἐπαναιρούμενον ὁρῶντες τὸν βασιλέα· ξύλλογοί
dangers taking-up seeing the king gatherings
τε ἐγίγνοντο κατὰ τὸ στρατόπεδον τῶν μὲν
both were-forming throughout the camp of-those-some indeed
τὰ σφέτερα ὀδυρομένων, ὅσοι ἐπιεικέστατοι, τῶν
the their-own lamenting as-many-as most-reasonable of-the-others
δὲ οὐκ ἀκολουθήσειν, οὐδ' ἢν ἄγῃ Ἀλέξανδρος,
and not to-be-going-to-follow not-even if he-should-lead Alexander
ἀπισχυριζομένων. ταῦτα ὡς ἐπύθετο Ἀλέξανδρος, πρὶν
insisting these-things when learned Alexander before
καὶ ἐπὶ μεῖζον προελθεῖν τὴν ταραχὴν τοῖς στρατιώταις
even to greater to-advance the disorder for-the soldiers
καὶ τὴν ἀθυμίαν, ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων
and the despondency having-called-together the leaders of-the battalions
ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
spoke thus

25.3 ὁρῶν ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες Μακεδόνες τε καὶ ξύμμαχοι, οὐχ
seeing you O men Macedonians both and allies not
ὁμοίᾳ ἔτι τῇ γνώμῃ ἑπομένους μοι ἐς τοὺς κινδύνους,
with-like any-longer the spirit following me into the dangers
ξυνήγαγον ἐς ταὐτό, ὡς ἢ πείσας ἄγειν τοῦ
I-brought-together to the-same-place so-that either having-persuaded to-lead the

πρόσω ἢ πεισθεὶς ὀπίσω ἀποστρέφεσθαι. εἰ μὲν δὴ
forward or having-been-persuaded back to-turn if indeed indeed
μεμπτοί εἰσιν ὑμῖν οἱ μέχρι δεῦρο πονηθέντες πόνοι καὶ
blameworthy are to-you the as-far-as here having-been-toiled toils and
αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ἡγούμενος, οὐδὲν ἔτι προὔργου λέγειν μοί ἐστιν.
myself I leading nothing more of-use to-say for-me is
εἰ δὲ Ἰωνία τε πρὸς ἡμῶν διὰ τούσδε τοὺς πόνους 25.4
if and Ionia both by us through these the toils
ἔχεται καὶ Ἑλλήσποντος καὶ Φρύγες ἀμφότεροι καὶ
is-held and Hellespont and Phrygians both and
Καππαδόκαι καὶ Παφλαγόνες καὶ Λυδοὶ καὶ Κᾶρες καὶ
Cappadocians and Paphlagonians and Lydians and Carians and
Λύκιοι καὶ Παμφυλία δὲ καὶ Φοινίκη καὶ Αἴγυπτος ξὺν
Lycians and Pamphylia and and Phoenicia and Egypt with
τῇ Λιβύῃ τῇ Ἑλληνικῇ καὶ Ἀραβίας ἔστιν ἃ καὶ
— Libya the Greek and of-Arabia there-are which-(parts) and
Συρία ἥ τε κοίλη καὶ ἡ μέση τῶν ποταμῶν,
Syria the both hollow and the middle-of the rivers
καὶ Βαβυλὼν δὲ ἔχεται καὶ τὸ Σουσίων ἔθνος καὶ Πέρσαι 25.5
and Babylon and is-held and the of-Susians people and Persians
καὶ Μῆδοι καὶ ὅσων Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι ἐπῆρχον, καὶ
and Medes and of-as-many-as Persians and Medes ruled and
ὅσων δὲ οὐκ ἦρχον, τὰ ὑπὲρ τὰς Κασπίας πύλας,
of-as-many-as and not they-ruled the beyond the Caspian gates
τὰ ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Καυκάσου, ὁ Τάναϊς, τὰ πρόσω ἔτι τοῦ
the beyond — Caucasus — Tanais the beyond still —
Τανάϊδος, Βακτριανοί, Ὑρκάνιοι, ἡ θάλασσα ἡ Ὑρκανία,
Tanais Bactrians Hyrcanians the sea the Hyrcanian
Σκύθας τε ἀνεστείλαμεν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ἔρημον, ἐπὶ
Scythians both we-drove-back as-far to the desert in-addition-to
τούτοις μέντοι καὶ ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς διὰ τῆς ἡμετέρας ῥεῖ,
these however also the Indus river through the our flows

ὁ Ὑδάσπης διὰ τῆς ἡμετέρας, ὁ Ἀκεσίνης, ὁ Ὑδραώτης,
— *Hydaspes through the our — Acesines — Hydraotes*
τί ὀκνεῖτε καὶ τὸν Ὕφασιν καὶ τὰ ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ὑφάσιος
why do-you-hesitate also — Hyphasis and the beyond — Hyphasis
γένη προσθεῖναι τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ Μακεδόνων τε ἀρχῇ; ἢ
races to-add to-the our of-Macedonians both rule or
δέδιτε μὴ δέξωνται ὑμᾶς ἔτι ἄλλοι βάρβαροι ἐπιόντας;
do-you-fear lest may-receive you still other barbarians coming-against
25.6 ὧν γε οἱ μὲν προσχωροῦσιν ἑκόντες, οἱ δὲ
of-whom at-least the-ones indeed come-over willingly the-others and
φεύγοντες ἁλίσκονται, οἱ δὲ ἀποφυγόντες τὴν χώραν
fleeing are-captured the-others and having-escaped the country
ἡμῖν ἔρημον παραδιδόασιν, ἣ δὴ τοῖς ξυμμάχοις τε
to-us deserted hand-over which indeed to-the allies both
καὶ τοῖς ἑκοῦσι προσχωρήσασι προστίθεται.
and to-the willingly having-come-over is-added
26.1 πέρας δὲ τῶν πόνων γενναίῳ μὲν ἀνδρὶ οὐδὲν δοκῶ ἔγωγε
end and of-the toils for-a-noble indeed man none I-think I-at-least
ὅτι μὴ αὐτοὺς τοὺς πόνους, ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἐς καλὰ ἔργα
except — themselves the toils as-many-as of-them to fine deeds
φέρουσιν. εἰ δέ τις καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ πολεμεῖν ποθεῖ ἀκοῦσαι ὅ
lead if and anyone also itself the to-make-war longs to-hear what
τι περ ἔσται πέρας, μαθέτω ὅτι οὐ πολλὴ ἔτι ἡμῖν ἡ λοιπή
ever indeed will-be end let-him-learn that not much still for-us the remaining
ἐστιν ἔστε ἐπὶ ποταμόν τε Γάγγην καὶ τὴν ἑῴαν θάλασσαν·
is as-far to river both Ganges and the eastern sea
ταύτῃ δέ, λέγω ὑμῖν, ξυναφὴς φανεῖται ἡ Ὑρκανία θάλασσα·
there and I-say to-you joined will-appear the Hyrcanian sea
ἐκπεριέρχεται γὰρ γῆν πέρι πᾶσαν ἡ μεγάλη θάλασσα.
encircles for earth around all the great sea

καὶ ἐγὼ ἐπιδείξω Μακεδόσι τε καὶ τοῖς ξυμμάχοις τὸν μὲν 26.2
and I will-show to-Macedonians both and to-the allies the indeed
Ἰνδικὸν κόλπον ξύρρουν ὄντα τῷ Περσικῷ, τὴν δὲ
Indian gulf flowing-together being with-the Persian the and
Ὑρκανίαν θάλασσαν τῷ Ἰνδικῷ· ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Περσικοῦ
Hyrcanian sea with-the Indian from and the Persian
εἰς Λιβύην περιπλευσθήσεται στόλῳ ἡμετέρῳ τὰ μέχρι
into Libya will-be-sailed-around by-fleet our the-parts as-far-as
Ἡρακλέους Στηλῶν· ἀπὸ δὲ Στηλῶν ἡ ἐντὸς Λιβύη πᾶσα
of-Heracles Pillars from and Pillars the inner Libya all
ἡμετέρα γίγνεται καὶ ἡ Ἀσία δὴ οὕτω πᾶσα, καὶ ὅροι
ours becomes and — Asia indeed so all and boundaries
τῆς ταύτῃ ἀρχῆς οὕσπερ καὶ τῆς γῆς ὅρους ὁ θεὸς ἐποίησε.
of-the here rule which-very also of-the earth boundaries the god made
νῦν δὲ δὴ ἀποτρεπομένων πολλὰ μὲν μάχιμα ὑπολείπεται 26.3
now and indeed (of-you)-turning-back many indeed warlike are-left
γένη ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ὑφάσιος ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ἑῴαν θάλασσαν,
races beyond — Hyphasis as-far to the eastern sea
πολλὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτων ἔτι ἐπὶ τὴν Ὑρκανίαν ὡς
many and from these still toward the Hyrcanian as
ἐπὶ βορρᾶν ἄνεμον, καὶ τὰ Σκυθικὰ γένη οὐ πόρρω
toward north wind and the Scythian races not far
τούτων, ὥστε δέος μὴ ἀπελθόντων ὀπίσω καὶ τὰ
from-these so-that fear lest (us)-having-gone-away back also the-things
νῦν κατεχόμενα οὐ βέβαια ὄντα ἐπαρθῇ πρὸς ἀπόστασιν
now held not secure being be-stirred to revolt
πρὸς τῶν μήπω ἐχομένων.
by those not-yet held
καὶ τότε δὴ ἀνόνητοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται οἱ πολλοὶ πόνοι ἢ ἄλλων 26.4
and then indeed useless to-us will-be the many toils or of-others
αὖθις ἐξ ἀρχῆς δεήσει πόνων τε καὶ κινδύνων. ἀλλὰ
again from beginning there-will-be-need toils both and dangers but

παραμείνατε, ἄνδρες Μακεδόνες καὶ ξύμμαχοι. πονούντων
stay-on men Macedonians and allies of-those-toiling
τοι καὶ κινδυνευόντων τὰ καλὰ ἔργα, καὶ ζῆν τε ξὺν
surely and running-risks the fine deeds and to-live both with
ἀρετῇ ἡδὺ καὶ ἀποθνήσκειν κλέος ἀθάνατον ὑπολειπομένους.
valor sweet and to-die glory immortal leaving-behind
26.5 ἢ οὐκ ἴστε ὅτι ὁ πρόγονος ὁ ἡμέτερος οὐκ ἐν Τίρυνθι
or not do-you-know that the ancestor the our not in Tiryns
οὐδὲ Ἄργει, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ ἢ Θήβαις μένων
nor Argos but not-even in Peloponnese or Thebes remaining
ἐς τοσόνδε κλέος ἦλθεν ὡς θεὸς ἐξ ἀνθρώπου γενέσθαι
to so-great glory came as god from man to-become
ἢ δοκεῖν; οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ Διονύσου, ἁβροτέρου τούτου
or to-seem not indeed indeed even of-Dionysus more-delicate this
θεοῦ ἢ καθ᾽ Ἡρακλέα, ὀλίγοι πόνοι. ἀλλὰ ἡμεῖς γε
god than compared-to Heracles few toils but we at-least
καὶ ἐπέκεινα τῆς Νύσης ἀφίγμεθα καὶ ἡ Ἄορνος πέτρα
even beyond — of-Nysa have-arrived and — Aornus rock
ἡ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἀνάλωτος πρὸς ἡμῶν ἔχεται.
the — for-Heracles impregnable by us is-held
26.6 ὑμεῖς δὲ καὶ τὰ ἔτι ὑπόλοιπα τῆς Ἀσίας πρόσθετε
you and also the-things still remaining — of-Asia add
τοῖς ἤδη ἐκτημένοις καὶ τὰ ὀλίγα τοῖς πολλοῖς. ἐπεὶ
to-the-things already acquired and the few to-the many since
καὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς τί ἂν μέγα καὶ καλὸν κατεπέπρακτο,
also for-us ourselves what — great and fine would-have-been-accomplished
εἰ ἐν Μακεδονίᾳ καθήμενοι ἱκανὸν ἐποιούμεθα ἀπόνως
if in Macedonia sitting sufficient we-were-considering without-toil
τὴν οἰκείαν διασώζειν, Θρᾷκας τοὺς ὁμόρους ἢ Ἰλλυριούς
the own-land to-preserve Thracians the bordering or Illyrians

ἢ Τριβαλλοὺς ἢ καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὅσοι οὐκ ἐπιτήδειοι
or Triballians or even of-the Greeks as-many-as not friendly
ἐς τὰ ἡμέτερα, ἀναστέλλοντες;
to the our-affairs checking
εἰ μὲν δὴ ὑμᾶς πονοῦντας καὶ κινδυνεύοντας αὐτὸς 26.7
if indeed indeed you toiling and running-risks myself
ἀπόνως καὶ ἀκινδύνως ἐξηγούμενος ἦγον, οὐκ ἀπεικότως
without-toil and without-danger leading I-were-leading not unreasonably
ἂν προεκάμνετε ταῖς γνώμαις, τῶν μὲν πόνων μόνοις
— you-would-be-weary in-the spirits of-the indeed toils alone
ὑμῖν μετόν, τὰ δὲ ἆθλα αὐτῶν ἄλλοις περιποιοῦντες·
for-you there-being-a-share the and prizes of-them for-others procuring
νῦν δὲ κοινοὶ μὲν ἡμῖν οἱ πόνοι, ἴσον δὲ μέτεστι τῶν
now but common indeed to-us the toils equal and is-the-share of-the
κινδύνων, τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται ξύμπασιν.
dangers the and prizes in middle lie for-all
ἥ τε χώρα ὑμετέρα καὶ ὑμεῖς αὐτῆς σατραπεύετε. καὶ 26.8
the both country yours and you it are-satraps and
τῶν χρημάτων τὸ μέρος νῦν τε ἐς ὑμᾶς τὸ πολὺ ἔρχεται
of-the money the part now both to you the most comes
καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἐπεξέλθωμεν τὴν Ἀσίαν, τότε οὐκ ἐμπλήσας
and when we-have-gone-through — Asia then not having-filled
μὰ Δί᾽ ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑπερβαλὼν ὅσα ἕκαστος ἐλπίζει
by Zeus you but also having-exceeded what each hopes
ἀγαθὰ ἔσεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε ἐθέλοντας εἰς
good to-be-going-to-be those indeed to-go-away home wishing to
τὴν οἰκείαν ἀποπέμψω ἢ ἐπανάξω αὐτός, τοὺς δὲ αὐτοῦ
the own-land I-will-send-away or I-will-lead-back myself those and here
μένοντας ζηλωτοὺς τοῖς ἀπερχομένοις ποιήσω.
remaining enviable to-those going-away I-will-make

After a long silence Coenus speaks for the army: the men who set out are few, worn by wounds and disease, and longing for home; let Alexander lead them back, raise a fresh army for new wars, and remember that what comes from the gods cannot be guarded against. Many weep. Alexander dismisses them in anger, says next day that he will go on with whoever follows, and keeps to his tent for three days. When, Ptolemy says, the sacrifices for the crossing prove unfavorable, he announces the return, and the army cheers. Twelve towering altars are raised, and the land to the Hyphasis goes to Porus. Back at the Acesines he settles Hephaestion's city and makes Abisares satrap, with Arsaces' province added, and at the Hydaspes he repairs the rain damage to Nicaea and Bucephala.

27.1 ταῦτα καὶ τοιαῦτα εἰπόντος Ἀλεξάνδρου πολὺν μὲν χρόνον
these-things and such-things having-spoken Alexander for-much indeed time
σιωπὴ ἦν οὔτε ἀντιλέγειν τολμώντων πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
silence was neither to-speak-against daring to the king
ἐκ τοῦ εὐθέος οὔτε ξυγχωρεῖν ἐθελόντων. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ
from the open nor to-agree wishing in and this
πολλάκις μὲν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκέλευε λέγειν τὸν βουλόμενον,
often indeed Alexander bade to-speak the one-wishing
εἰ δή τις τὰ ἐναντία τοῖς ὑπ' αὐτοῦ λεχθεῖσι
if indeed anyone the opposite to-the-things by him having-been-said
γιγνώσκει· ἔμενε δὲ καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ πολὺ ἡ σιωπή· ὀψὲ δέ
thinks remained but even so for long the silence late and
ποτε θαρσήσας Κοῖνος ὁ Πολεμοκράτους ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
at-length having-taken-courage Coenus the (son)-of-Polemocrates spoke such-things

27.2 ἐπειδὴ αὐτός, ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὐ κατὰ πρόσταγμα ἐθέλεις
since yourself O king not by command you-wish
Μακεδόνων ἐξηγεῖσθαι, ἀλλὰ πείσας μὲν ἄξειν
Macedonians to-lead but having-persuaded indeed to-be-going-to-lead
φῄς, πεισθεὶς δὲ οὐ βιάσεσθαι, οὐχ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν
you-say having-been-persuaded and not to-be-going-to-compel not on-behalf-of us

τῶνδε ποιήσομαι ἐγὼ τοὺς λόγους, οἳ καὶ προτιμώμενοι τῶν
these-here I-shall-make I the words who both being-honored-above the
ἄλλων καὶ τὰ ἆθλα τῶν πόνων οἱ πολλοὶ ἤδη κεκομισμένοι
others and the prizes of-the toils the most already having-carried-off
καὶ τῷ κρατιστεύειν παρὰ τοὺς ἄλλους πρόθυμοί σοι
and in-the excelling beyond the others eager for-you
ἐς πάντα ἐσμέν, ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ τῆς στρατιᾶς τῆς πολλῆς.
for everything we-are but on-behalf-of the army the most
οὐδὲ ὑπὲρ ταύτης τὰ καθ' ἡδονὴν ἐκείνοις ἐρῶ, 27.3
nor on-behalf-of this the-things for pleasure to-them I-shall-say
ἀλλὰ ἃ νομίζω σύμφορά τέ σοι ἐς τὰ παρόντα καὶ ἐς
but what I-consider advantageous both for-you for the present and for
τὰ μέλλοντα μάλιστα ἀσφαλῆ εἶναι. δίκαιος δέ εἰμι καθ'
the future most safe to-be justified and I-am by
ἡλικίαν τε μὴ ἀποκρύπτεσθαι τὰ δοκοῦντα βέλτιστα
age both not to-conceal the-things seeming best
καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐκ σοῦ μοι οὖσαν καὶ ἐς τοὺς ἄλλους
and by the from you to-me being and toward the others
ἀξίωσιν καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐν τοῖς πόνοις τε καὶ κινδύνοις
esteem and by the in the toils both and dangers
ἐς τόδε ἀπροφάσιστον τόλμαν.
to this-point unhesitating daring
ὅσῳ γάρ τοι πλεῖστα καὶ μέγιστα σοί τε ἡγουμένῳ 27.4
by-as-much-as for surely most and greatest by-you both leading
καταπέπρακται καὶ τοῖς ἅμα σοὶ οἴκοθεν ὁρμηθεῖσι,
has-been-accomplished and by-those together-with you from-home having-set-out
τοσῷδε μᾶλλόν τι ξύμφορόν μοι δοκεῖ πέρας τι
by-so-much more somewhat advantageous to-me seems end some
ἐπιθεῖναι τοῖς πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις. αὐτὸς γάρ τοι ὁρᾷς,
to-set to-the toils and dangers yourself for surely you-see

ὅσοι μὲν Μακεδόνων τε καὶ Ἑλλήνων ἅμα σοὶ
how-many indeed of-Macedonians both and of-Greeks together-with you
ὡρμήθημεν, ὅσοι δὲ ὑπολελείμμεθα·
we-set-out how-many and we-are-left

27.5 ὧν Θετταλοὺς μὲν ἀπὸ Βάκτρων εὐθὺς οὐ προθύμους
of-whom Thessalians indeed from Bactra at-once not eager
ἔτι ἐς τοὺς πόνους αἰσθόμενος οἴκαδε, καλῶς ποιῶν,
any-longer for the toils having-perceived home rightly doing
ἀπέπεμψας· τῶν δὲ ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων οἱ μὲν ἐν ταῖς
you-sent-away of-the and other Greeks the-ones indeed in the
πόλεσι ταῖς πρὸς σοῦ οἰκισθείσαις κατῳκισμένοι οὐδὲ
cities the by you founded settled not-even
οὗτοι πάντῃ ἑκόντες μένουσιν· οἱ δὲ ξυμπονοῦντές τε
these wholly willingly remain the-others and toiling-with both
ἔτι καὶ ξυγκινδυνεύοντες, αὐτοί τε καὶ ἡ Μακεδονικὴ
still and sharing-the-danger themselves both and the Macedonian
στρατιά, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ἀπολωλέκασιν, οἱ
army some indeed in the battles they-have-lost the-others
δὲ ἐκ τραυμάτων ἀπόμαχοι γεγενημένοι ἄλλοι ἄλλῃ
and from wounds unfit-for-service having-become others elsewhere
τῆς Ἀσίας ὑπολελειμμένοι εἰσίν,
— of-Asia left-behind are

27.6 οἱ πλείους δὲ νόσῳ ἀπολώλασιν, ὀλίγοι δὲ ἐκ πολλῶν
the most and by-disease have-perished few and out-of many
ὑπολείπονται, καὶ οὔτε τοῖς σώμασιν ἔτι ὡσαύτως
remain and neither in-the bodies any-longer likewise
ἐρρωμένοι, ταῖς τε γνώμαις πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον προκεκμηκότες.
strong in-the both minds much still more worn-out-beforehand
καὶ τούτοις ξύμπασιν πόθος μὲν γονέων ἐστίν, ὅσοις
and to-these all longing indeed for-parents is for-as-many-as
ἔτι σώζονται, πόθος δὲ γυναικῶν καὶ παίδων, πόθος δὲ δὴ
still are-alive longing and for-wives and children longing and indeed

τῆς γῆς αὐτῆς τῆς οἰκείας, ἣν ξὺν τῷ ἐκ σοῦ πορισθέντι
for-the land itself the own which with the from you provided
σφίσιν κόσμῳ μεγάλοι τε ἀντὶ μικρῶν καὶ πλούσιοι ἐκ
for-them adornment great both instead-of small and rich from
πενήτων ἀναστρέφοντες ξύγγνωστοί εἰσιν ἐπιδεῖν ποθοῦντες.
poor returning pardonable are to-see longing
σὺ δὲ νῦν μὴ ἄγειν ἄκοντας· οὐδὲ γὰρ ὁμοίοις ἔτι 27.7
you and now not to-lead unwilling-men not-even for like-men any-longer
χρήσῃ ἐς τοὺς κινδύνους, οἷς τὸ ἑκούσιον ἐν τοῖς
you-will-use for the dangers from-whom the willingness in the
ἀγῶσιν ἀπέσται· ἐπανελθὼν δὲ αὐτός, εἰ δοκεῖ, ἐς τὴν
contests will-be-absent having-returned and yourself if it-seems-good to the
οἰκείαν καὶ τὴν μητέρα τὴν σαυτοῦ ἰδὼν καὶ τὰ
own-land and the mother the your-own having-seen and the-affairs
τῶν Ἑλλήνων καταστησάμενος καὶ τὰς νίκας ταύτας
of-the Greeks having-settled and the victories these
τὰς πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἐς τὸν πατρῷον οἶκον κομίσας
the many and great to the ancestral house having-brought
οὕτω δὴ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἄλλον στόλον στέλλεσθαι, εἰ μὲν
so indeed from beginning another expedition to-fit-out if indeed
βούλει, ἐπ᾽ αὐτὰ ταῦτα τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἕω ᾠκισμένα
you-wish against themselves these the toward the dawn settled
Ἰνδῶν γένη, εἰ δὲ βούλει, ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον, εἰ
of-Indians races if and you-wish to the Euxine sea if
δέ, ἐπὶ Καρχηδόνα καὶ τὰ ἐπέκεινα Καρχηδονίων τῆς
and against Carthage and the beyond of-Carthaginians —
Λιβύης. ταῦτα δὲ σὸν ἤδη ἐξηγεῖσθαι.
Libya these-things and yours already to-lead
ἕψονται δέ σοι ἄλλοι Μακεδόνες καὶ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες, 27.8
will-follow and you other Macedonians and other Greeks
νέοι τε ἀντὶ γερόντων καὶ ἀκμῆτες ἀντὶ κεκμηκότων,
young both instead-of old and unwearied instead-of wearied

καὶ οἷς τὰ τοῦ πολέμου διὰ τὸ ἀπείρατον ἔς
and to-whom the-things of-the war through the inexperience for
τε τὸ παραυτίκα οὐ φοβερὰ καὶ κατὰ τὴν τοῦ
both the immediate not fearful and according-to the of-the
μέλλοντος ἐλπίδα ἐν σπουδῇ ἔσται· οὓς καὶ ταύτῃ
future hope in eagerness will-be whom also in-this-way
ἔτι προθυμότερον ἀκολουθήσειν σοι εἰκός, ὁρῶντας τοὺς
still more-eagerly to-be-going-to-follow you it-is-likely seeing the
πρότερον ξυμπονήσαντάς τε καὶ ξυγκινδυνεύσαντας ἐς
earlier having-toiled-with both and having-shared-the-danger to
τὰ σφέτερα ἤθη ἐπανεληλυθότας, πλουσίους τε ἀντὶ
the their-own abodes having-returned rich both instead-of
πενήτων καὶ ἀντὶ ἀφανῶν τῶν πάλαι εὐκλεεῖς.
poor and instead-of obscure the formerly renowned

27.9 καλὸν δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἴπερ τι καὶ ἄλλο, καὶ ἡ ἐν
fine and O king if-indeed anything also other also the in
τῷ εὐτυχεῖν σωφροσύνη. σοὶ γὰρ αὐτῷ ἡγουμένῳ καὶ
the prospering self-control for-you for yourself leading and
στρατιὰν τοιαύτην ἄγοντι ἐκ μὲν πολεμίων δέος οὐδέν,
an-army such leading from indeed enemies fear none
τὰ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ δαιμονίου ἀδόκητά τε καὶ ταύτῃ καὶ
the-things and from the divine unexpected both and in-this-way also
ἀφύλακτα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐστί.
unguarded-against for-the men are

28.1 τοιαῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ Κοίνου θόρυβον γενέσθαι ἐκ τῶν
such-things having-spoken — Coenus uproar to-have-arisen from those
παρόντων ἐπὶ τοῖς λόγοις· πολλοῖς δὲ δὴ καὶ δάκρυα
present at the words for-many and indeed also tears
προχυθέντα ἔτι μᾶλλον δηλῶσαι τό τε ἀκούσιον τῆς
having-been-shed still more to-have-shown the both unwillingness of-the
γνώμης ἐς τοὺς πρόσω κινδύνους καὶ τὸ καθ' ἡδονήν
spirit toward the further dangers and the for pleasure

σφισιν εἶναι τὴν ἀποχώρησιν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τότε μὲν
to-them to-be the retreat Alexander and then indeed
ἀχθεσθεὶς τοῦ τε Κοίνου τῇ παρρησίᾳ καὶ τῷ ὄκνῳ
having-been-vexed — both of-Coenus at-the frankness and at-the hesitation
τῶν ἄλλων ἡγεμόνων διέλυσε τὸν ξύλλογον·
of-the other leaders dissolved the assembly
ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν ξυγκαλέσας αὖθις ξὺν ὀργῇ τοὺς 28.2
on and the next-day having-called-together again in anger the
αὐτοὺς αὐτὸς μὲν ἰέναι ἔφη τοῦ πρόσω, βιάσεσθαι
same he-himself indeed to-go said the forward to-be-going-to-compel
δὲ οὐδένα ἄκοντα Μακεδόνων ξυνέπεσθαι· ἔξειν
but no-one unwilling of-Macedonians to-follow to-be-going-to-have
γὰρ τοὺς ἀκολουθήσοντας τῷ βασιλεῖ σφῶν ἑκόντας·
for those about-to-follow the king their willingly
τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε ἐθέλουσιν ὑπάρχειν ἀπιέναι
to-those and also to-go-away home wishing to-be-allowed to-go-away
καὶ ἐξαγγέλλειν τοῖς οἰκείοις, ὅτι τὸν βασιλέα σφῶν ἐν
and to-report to-the kinsmen that the king their in
μέσοις τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπανήκουσιν ἀπολιπόντες.
middle of-the enemy they-come-back having-abandoned
ταῦτα εἰπόντα ἀπελθεῖν ἐς τὴν σκηνὴν μηδέ τινα 28.3
these-things having-said to-have-gone-away into the tent nor any
τῶν ἑταίρων προσέσθαι αὐτῆς τε ἐκείνης τῆς ἡμέρας καὶ
of-the companions to-have-admitted itself both that the day and
ἐς τὴν τρίτην ἔτι ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης, ὑπομένοντα, εἰ δή τις
to the third still from that waiting if indeed some
τροπὴ ταῖς γνώμαις τῶν Μακεδόνων τε καὶ ξυμμάχων,
change in-the minds of-the Macedonians both and allies
οἷα δὴ ἐν ὄχλῳ στρατιωτῶν τὰ πολλὰ φιλεῖ γίγνεσθαι,
as indeed in a-crowd of-soldiers the many-times is-wont to-happen
ἐμπεσοῦσα εὐπειθεστέρους παρέξει αὐτούς.
having-fallen more-obedient will-make them

28.4 ὡς δὲ σιγὴ αὖ πολλὴ ἦν ἀνὰ τὸ στρατόπεδον
when and silence again much was throughout the camp
καὶ ἀχθόμενοι μὲν τῇ ὀργῇ αὐτοῦ δῆλοι ἦσαν, οὐ
and being-vexed indeed at-the anger of-him plain were not
μὴν μεταβαλλόμενοι γε ὑπ᾽ αὐτῆς, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει
however changing-their-minds at-least by it there indeed says
Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου, ὅτι ἐπὶ τῇ διαβάσει οὐδὲν μεῖον
Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus that for the crossing nothing less
ἐθύετο, θυομένῳ δὲ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο αὐτῷ τὰ ἱερά.
he-sacrificed for-him-sacrificing but not came-out-favorably for-him the victims
28.5 τότε δὴ τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τε τῶν ἑταίρων καὶ τοὺς
then indeed the oldest both of-the companions and the
μάλιστα ἐπιτηδείους αὐτῷ συναγαγών, ὡς πάντα ἐς
most friendly to-him having-gathered since everything toward
τὴν ὀπίσω ἀναχώρησιν αὐτῷ ἔφερεν, ἐκφαίνει ἐς τὴν
the back retreat for-him pointed he-declares to the
στρατιάν, ὅτι ἔγνωσται ὀπίσω ἀποστρέφειν.
army that it-has-been-decided back to-turn
29.1 οἱ δὲ ἐβόων τε οἷα ἂν ὄχλος ξυμμιγὴς χαίρων βοήσειε
they and shouted both as — a-crowd mixed rejoicing would-shout
καὶ ἐδάκρυον οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν· οἱ δὲ καὶ τῇ
and wept the most of-them the-others and also to-the
σκηνῇ τῇ βασιλικῇ πελάζοντες ηὔχοντο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πολλὰ
tent the royal approaching prayed for-Alexander many
καὶ ἀγαθά, ὅτι πρὸς σφῶν μόνων νικηθῆναι ἠνέσχετο.
and good-things that by them alone to-be-conquered he-endured
ἔνθα δὴ διελὼν κατὰ τάξεις τὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα
there indeed having-divided by battalions the army twelve
βωμοὺς κατασκευάζειν προστάττει, ὕψος μὲν κατὰ
altars to-build orders in-height indeed according-to
τοὺς μεγίστους πύργους, εὖρος δὲ μείζονας ἔτι ἢ
the greatest towers in-breadth and greater still than

κατὰ πύργους, χαριστήρια τοῖς θεοῖς τοῖς ἐς τοσόνδε
according-to towers thank-offerings to-the gods the to so-far
ἀγαγοῦσιν αὐτὸν νικῶντα καὶ μνημεῖα τῶν αὑτοῦ πόνων.
having-led him victorious and memorials of-the his-own toils
ὡς δὲ κατεσκευασμένοι αὐτῷ οἱ βωμοὶ ἦσαν, θύει 29.2
when and having-been-built for-him the altars were he-sacrifices
δὴ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν ὡς νόμος καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιεῖ γυμνικόν τε
indeed on them as custom and contest holds gymnastic both
καὶ ἱππικόν. καὶ τὴν μὲν χώραν τὴν μέχρι τοῦ Ὑφάσιος
and equestrian and the indeed country the as-far-as the Hyphasis
ποταμοῦ Πώρῳ ἄρχειν προσέθηκεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν
river to-Porus to-rule he-added himself and toward —
Ὑδραώτην ἀνέστρεφε. διαβὰς δὲ τὸν Ὑδραώτην, ἐπὶ
Hydraotes turned-back having-crossed and — Hydraotes to
τὸν Ἀκεσίνην αὖ ἐπανῄει ὀπίσω.
— Acesines again went-back back
καὶ ἐνταῦθα καταλαμβάνει τὴν πόλιν ἐξῳκοδομημένην, 29.3
and there he-finds the city built-up
ἥντινα Ἡφαιστίων αὐτῷ ἐκτειχίσαι ἐτάχθη· καὶ ἐς
which Hephaestion for-him to-fortify was-ordered and into
ταύτην ξυνοικίσας τῶν τε προσχώρων ὅσοι ἐθελονταὶ
this having-settled of-the both neighbors as-many-as volunteers
κατῳκίζοντο καὶ τῶν μισθοφόρων ὅ τι περ ἀπόμαχον,
were-settling and of-the mercenaries what ever indeed unfit-for-service
αὐτὸς τὰ ἐπὶ τῷ κατάπλῳ παρεσκευάζετο τῷ ἐς τὴν
himself the-things for the voyage-down was-preparing the to the
μεγάλην θάλασσαν.
great sea
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πρὸς αὐτὸν Ἀρσάκης τε ὁ τῆς 29.4
in this and arrived to him Arsaces both the of-the
ὁμόρου Ἀβισάρῃ χώρας ὕπαρχος καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς Ἀβισάρου
bordering to-Abisares country hyparch and the brother of-Abisares

καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἰκεῖοι, δῶρά τε κομίζοντες ἃ μέγιστα
and the other kinsmen gifts both bringing which greatest
παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖς καὶ τοὺς παρ᾽ Ἀβισάρου ἐλέφαντας, ἀριθμὸν
among Indians and the from Abisares elephants in-number
ἐς τριάκοντα· Ἀβισάρην γὰρ νόσῳ ἀδύνατον γενέσθαι
about thirty Abisares for by-disease unable to-have-become
ἐλθεῖν. ξυνέβαινον δὲ τούτοις καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου
to-come happened-to-come-with and these also the by Alexander
ἐκπεμφθέντες πρέσβεις πρὸς Ἀβισάρην.
sent envoys to Abisares

29.5 καὶ ταῦτα οὐ χαλεπῶς πιστεύσας οὕτως ἔχειν Ἀβισάρῃ
and these-things not with-difficulty having-believed so to-be to-Abisares
τε τῆς αὑτοῦ χώρας σατραπεύειν ἔδωκεν καὶ Ἀρσάκην
both of-the his-own country to-be-satrap he-gave and Arsaces
τῇ Ἀβισάρου ἐπικρατείᾳ προσέθηκεν· καὶ φόρους οὕστινας
to-the of-Abisares dominion he-added and tributes which
ἀποίσουσι τάξας θύει αὖ καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ Ἀκεσίνῃ ποταμῷ.
they-will-bring-in having-fixed he-sacrifices again also at the Acesines river
καὶ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην αὖ διαβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑδάσπην ἦκεν,
and — Acesines again having-crossed to — Hydaspes came
ἵνα καὶ τῶν πόλεων τῆς τε Νικαίας καὶ τῶν Βουκεφάλων
where also of-the cities — both of-Nicaea and — of-Bucephala
ὅσα πρὸς τῶν ὄμβρων πεπονηκότα ἦν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ
whatever by the rains damaged was with the army
ἐπεσκεύασε καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ κατὰ τὴν χώραν ἐκόσμει.
he-repaired and the other the-things in the country he-ordered

BOOK VI

I · DOWN THE HYDASPES

Alexander readies a fleet of some two thousand vessels on the Hydaspes. Seeing crocodiles in the Indus and Egyptian beans by the Acesines, he once thought he had found the source of the Nile and wrote so to Olympias, but learned that the Indus reaches the sea. Coenus dies, and Porus is made king of the conquered land. Craterus and Hephaestion march down either bank with the elephants, Nearchus commands the fleet, and Alexander pours libations from the prow while the Indians run along the banks singing. At the confluence with the Acesines the eddies damage many ships and wreck two warships. Having repaired the fleet, he divides the army into columns to catch the Malli and Oxydracae, and orders all to meet at the confluence of the Acesines and the Hydraotes.

Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ἐπειδὴ παρεσκευάσθησαν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τοῦ 1.1
Alexander and when had-been-prepared for-him on —
Ὑδάσπου ταῖς ὄχθαις πολλαὶ μὲν τριακόντοροι καὶ
Hydaspes the banks many indeed thirty-oared-ships and
ἡμιόλιαι, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἱππαγωγὰ πλοῖα καὶ ἄλλα ὅσα
hemiolias many and also horse-transport boats and others as-many-as
ἐς παρακομιδὴν στρατιᾶς ποταμῷ εὔπορα, ἔγνω καταπλεῖν
for conveyance of-an-army by-river serviceable he-decided to-sail-down
κατὰ τὸν Ὑδάσπην ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν.
along — Hydaspes as toward the great sea
πρότερον μέν γε ἐν τῷ Ἰνδῷ ποταμῷ κροκοδείλους 1.2
before indeed at-least in the Indus river crocodiles
ἰδών, μόνῳ τῶν ἄλλων ποταμῶν πλὴν Νείλου, πρὸς δὲ
having-seen alone of-the other rivers except the-Nile along and
ταῖς ὄχθαις τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου κυάμους πεφυκότας ὁποίους ἡ γῆ
the banks — of-Acesines beans grown such-as the land

ἐκφέρει ἡ Αἰγυπτία, καὶ ἀκούσας ὅτι ὁ Ἀκεσίνης ἐμβάλλει
produces the Egyptian and having-heard that — Acesines empties
ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν, ἔδοξεν ἐξευρηκέναι τοῦ Νείλου τὰς ἀρχάς,
into — Indus he-thought to-have-found — of-Nile the sources
1.3 ὡς τὸν Νεῖλον ἐνθένδε ποθὲν ἐξ Ἰνδῶν ἀνίσχοντα
as — Nile from-there from-somewhere out-of Indians rising
καὶ δι᾽ ἐρήμου πολλῆς γῆς ῥέοντα καὶ ταύτῃ ἀπολλύοντα
and through desert much land flowing and there losing
τὸν Ἰνδὸν τὸ ὄνομα, ἔπειτα, ὁπόθεν ἄρχεται διὰ τῆς
— Indus the name then from-where it-begins through the
οἰκουμένης χώρας ῥεῖν, Νεῖλον ἤδη πρὸς Αἰθιόπων τε
inhabited country to-flow Nile now by Ethiopians both
τῶν ταύτῃ καὶ Αἰγυπτίων καλούμενον ἤ, ὡς Ὅμηρος
the there and Egyptians being-called or as Homer
ἐποίησεν, ἐπώνυμον τῆς Αἰγύπτου Αἴγυπτον, οὕτω δὴ
made named-after — of-Egypt Aegyptus so indeed
ἐσδιδόναι ἐς τὴν ἐντὸς θάλασσαν.
to-flow-out into the inner sea
1.4 καὶ δὴ καὶ πρὸς Ὀλυμπιάδα γράφοντα ὑπὲρ τῶν Ἰνδῶν
and indeed also to Olympias writing about of-the Indians
τῆς γῆς ἄλλα τε γράψαι καὶ ὅτι δοκοίη αὐτῷ
the land other-things both to-have-written and that it-seemed to-himself
ἐξευρηκέναι τοῦ Νείλου τὰς πηγάς, μικροῖς δή τισι καὶ
to-have-found — of-Nile the springs from-small indeed some and
φαύλοις ὑπὲρ τῶν τηλικούτων τεκμαιρόμενον.
trivial-signs about the such-great-things inferring
1.5 ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἀτρεκέστερον ἐξήλεγξε τὰ ἀμφὶ τῷ ποταμῷ
when however more-exactly he-examined the-things about the river
τῷ Ἰνδῷ, οὕτω δὴ μαθεῖν παρὰ τῶν ἐπιχωρίων τὸν
— Indus so indeed to-have-learned from the natives —
μὲν Ὑδάσπην τῷ Ἀκεσίνῃ, τὸν Ἀκεσίνην δὲ τῷ Ἰνδῷ
indeed Hydaspes — with-Acesines — Acesines and — with-Indus

τό τε ὕδωρ ξυμβάλλοντας καὶ τῷ ὀνόματι ξυγχωροῦντας,
the both water joining and to-the name yielding
τὸν Ἰνδὸν δὲ ἐκδιδόντα ἤδη ἐς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν,
— Indus and emptying already into the great sea
δίστομον τὸν Ἰνδὸν ὄντα, οὐδέν τι αὐτῷ προσῆκον τῆς
two-mouthed — Indus being nothing at-all to-it belonging of-the
γῆς τῆς Αἰγυπτίας· τηνικαῦτα δὲ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς τῆς πρὸς
land the Egyptian then and of-the letter the to
τὴν μητέρα τοῦτο τὸ ἀμφὶ τῷ Νείλῳ γραφὲν ἀφελεῖν.
the mother this the about — Nile written to-have-removed
καὶ τὸν κατάπλουν τὸν κατὰ τοὺς ποταμοὺς ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν 1.6
and the voyage-down the by the rivers as-far to the
μεγάλην θάλασσαν ἐπινοοῦντα παρασκευασθῆναί οἱ ἐπὶ
great sea intending to-be-prepared for-him for
τῷδε κελεῦσαι τὰς ναῦς. αἱ δὲ ὑπηρεσίαι αὐτῷ ἐς τὰς
this to-have-ordered the ships the and crews for-him into the
ναῦς ξυνεπληρώθησαν ἐκ τῶν ξυνεπομένων τῇ στρατιᾷ
ships were-filled-up from the following the army
Φοινίκων καὶ Κυπρίων καὶ Καρῶν καὶ Αἰγυπτίων.
Phoenicians and Cyprians and Carians and Egyptians
ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Κοῖνος μὲν ἐν τοῖς πιστοτάτοις Ἀλεξάνδρῳ 2.1
in and this Coenus indeed among the most-trusted to-Alexander
ὢν τῶν ἑταίρων νόσῳ τελευτᾷ· καὶ τοῦτον θάπτει ἐκ τῶν
being of-the companions by-disease dies and this-one he-buries from the
παρόντων μεγαλοπρεπῶς. αὐτὸς δὲ ξυναγαγὼν τούς τε
means-at-hand magnificently himself and having-gathered the both
ἑταίρους καὶ ὅσοι Ἰνδῶν πρέσβεις παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀφιγμένοι
companions and as-many-as of-Indians envoys to him having-arrived
ἦσαν βασιλέα μὲν τῆς ἑαλωκυίας ἤδη Ἰνδῶν γῆς ἀπέδειξε
were king indeed of-the having-been-taken already of-Indians land he-appointed

Πῶρον, ἑπτὰ μὲν ἐθνῶν τῶν ξυμπάντων, πόλεων δὲ ἐν τοῖς
Porus seven indeed of-peoples of-the all of-cities and in the
ἔθνεσιν ὑπὲρ τὰς δισχιλίας. τὴν στρατιὰν δὲ διένειμεν ὧδε·
peoples over the two-thousand the army and he-distributed thus
2.2 αὐτὸς μὲν τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς τε ἅμα οἳ ξύμπαντας
himself indeed the shield-bearers both together-with himself all
ἐπὶ τὰς ναῦς ἀνεβίβασε καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς
on the ships he-embarked and the archers and the
Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τὸ ἄγημα τῶν ἱππέων. Κρατερὸς δὲ αὐτῷ
Agrianians and the agema of-the cavalry Craterus and for-him
μοῖράν τε τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ἱππέων παρὰ τὴν ὄχθην
part both of-the infantry and of-the cavalry along the bank
τοῦ Ὑδάσπου τὴν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἦγεν· κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἑτέραν
— of-Hydaspes the on right led on and the other
ὄχθην τὸ πλεῖστόν τε καὶ κράτιστον τῆς στρατιᾶς
bank the greatest both and strongest of-the army
καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας Ἡφαιστίων προὐχώρει ἄγων, ἤδη
and the elephants Hephaestion advanced leading already
ὄντας ἐς διακοσίους· τούτοις δὲ ἦν παρηγγελμένον ὡς
being about two-hundred for-these and it-was ordered as
τάχιστα ἄγειν ἵναπερ τὰ Σωπείθου βασίλεια.
quickest to-lead where-indeed the of-Sopeithes palace
2.3 Φιλίππῳ δὲ τῷ σατράπῃ τῆς ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ὡς ἐπὶ
to-Philip and the satrap of-the beyond — Indus as toward
Βακτρίους γῆς διαλιπόντι τρεῖς ἡμέρας παρήγγελτο
Bactrians land having-left-an-interval-of three days it-had-been-ordered
ἕπεσθαι ξὺν τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτόν. τοὺς ἱππέας δὲ τοὺς
to-follow with the around him the cavalry and the
Νυσαίους ὀπίσω ἀποπέμπει ἐς τὴν Νῦσαν. τοῦ μὲν δὴ
Nysaean back he-sends-away to — Nysa of-the indeed indeed
ναυτικοῦ παντὸς Νέαρχος αὐτῷ ἐξηγεῖτο, τῆς δὲ αὐτοῦ
fleet all Nearchus for-him was-leader of-the and his-own

νεὼς κυβερνήτης ἦν Ὀνησίκριτος, ὃς ἐν τῇ ξυγγραφῇ,
ship helmsman was Onesicritus who in the history
ἥντινα ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου ξυνέγραψε, καὶ τοῦτο ἐψεύσατο,
which about Alexander he-wrote also this lied
ναύαρχον ἑαυτὸν εἶναι γράψας, κυβερνήτην ὄντα.
admiral himself to-be having-written helmsman being
ἦν δὲ τὸ ξύμπαν πλῆθος τῶν νεῶν, ὡς λέγει Πτολεμαῖος 2.4
was and the whole number of-the ships as says Ptolemy
ὁ Λάγου, ᾧ μάλιστα ἐγὼ ἕπομαι, τριακόντοροι μὲν
the (son)-of-Lagus whom most I follow thirty-oared-ships indeed
ἐς ὀγδοήκοντα, τὰ δὲ πάντα πλοῖα σὺν τοῖς ἱππαγωγοῖς
about eighty the and all boats with the horse-transports
τε καὶ κερκούροις καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ποτάμια ἢ τῶν
both and light-boats and as-many-as other river-craft either of-those
πάλαι πλεόντων κατὰ τοὺς ποταμοὺς ἢ ἐν τῷ τότε
formerly sailing on the rivers or in the then-(time)
ποιηθέντων οὐ πολὺ ἀποδέοντα τῶν δισχιλίων.
built not much falling-short-of the two-thousand
ὡς δὲ ξύμπαντα αὐτῷ παρεσκεύαστο, ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω ὁ 3.1
when and everything for-him had-been-prepared toward the dawn the
μὲν στρατὸς ἐπέβαινε τῶν νεῶν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἔθυε τοῖς
indeed army embarked-on the ships himself and sacrificed to-the
θεοῖς ὡς νόμος καὶ τῷ ποταμῷ τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ ὅπως οἱ
gods as custom and to-the river — Hydaspes as the
μάντεις ἐξηγοῦντο. καὶ ἐπιβὰς τῆς νεὼς ἀπὸ τῆς
seers directed and having-embarked-on the ship from the
πρώρας ἐκ χρυσῆς φιάλης ἔσπενδεν ἐς τὸν ποταμόν,
prow out-of golden bowl he-poured-libation into the river
τόν τε Ἀκεσίνην ξυνεπικαλούμενος τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ, ὅντινα
— both Acesines invoking-together — with-Hydaspes which
μέγιστον αὖ τῶν ἄλλων ποταμῶν ξυμβάλλειν τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ
greatest again of-the other rivers to-join — with-Hydaspes

ἐπέπυστο καὶ οὐ πόρρω αὐτῶν εἶναι τὰς ξυμβολάς, καὶ τὸν
he-had-learned and not far them to-be the confluences and —
Ἰνδόν, ἐς ὅντινα ὁ Ἀκεσίνης ξὺν τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ ἐμβάλλει.
Indus into which — Acesines with — Hydaspes empties

3.2 ἐπὶ δὲ Ἡρακλεῖ τε τῷ προπάτορι σπείσας καὶ
to and Heracles both the forefather having-poured-libation and
Ἄμμωνι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ὅσοις αὐτῷ νόμος
to-Ammon and to-the other gods to-as-many-as for-him custom
σημῆναι ἐς ἀναγωγὴν κελεύει τῇ σάλπιγγι. ἅμα
to-signal for putting-out he-orders with-the trumpet at-the-same-time
τε δὴ ἐσημάνθη καὶ ἀνήγοντο ἐν κόσμῳ. παρήγγελτο
both indeed it-was-signaled and they-put-out in order it-had-been-ordered
γὰρ ἐφ' ὅσων τε τὰ σκευοφόρα πλοῖα ἐχρῆν
for at what-distances both the baggage boats were-required
τετάχθαι καὶ ἐφ' ὅσων τὰ ἱππαγωγά, ἐφ' ὅσων τε
to-be-posted and at what-distances the horse-transports at what-distances both
τὰς μαχίμους τῶν νεῶν, ὡς μὴ συμπίπτειν ἀλλήλαις
the fighting of-the ships so-that not to-collide with-one-another
κατὰ τὸν πόρον εἰκῇ πλεούσας· καὶ ταῖς ταχυναυτούσαις
in the passage at-random sailing and to-the fast-sailing
φθάνειν οὐκ ἐφίετο ἔξω τῆς τάξεως.
to-get-ahead not it-was-permitted outside of-the formation

3.3 ἦν δὲ ὅ τε κτύπος τῆς εἰρεσίας οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἐοικώς, ἅτε ἀπὸ
was and the both noise of-the rowing to-no other like as from
πολλῶν νεῶν ἐν ταὐτῷ ἐρεσσομένων, καὶ βοὴ ἀπό τε
many ships at the-same-time being-rowed and shouting from both
τῶν κελευστῶν ἐνδιδόντων τὰς ἀρχάς τε καὶ ἀναπαύλας τῇ
the boatswains giving the beginnings both and pauses to-the
εἰρεσίᾳ καὶ τῶν ἐρετῶν ὁπότε ἀθρόοι ἐμπίπτοντες τῷ ῥοθίῳ
rowing and of-the rowers whenever all-together falling-in on-the wash
ἐπαλαλάξειαν· αἵ τε ὄχθαι, ὑψηλότεραι τῶν νεῶν πολλαχῇ

οὖσαι, ἐς στενόν τε τὴν βοὴν ξυνάγουσαι καὶ τῇ ξυναγωγῇ
being into narrow both the shouting gathering and by-the gathering
αὐτῇ ἐπὶ μέγα ηὐξημένην ἐς ἀλλήλας ἀντέπεμπον, καί
itself to great increased to one-another sent-back and
που καὶ νάπαι ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῇ τε ἐρημίᾳ
somewhere also glens on-either-side of-the river by-the both loneliness
καὶ τῇ ἀντιπέμψει τοῦ κτύπου καὶ αὗται ξυνεπελάμβανον·
and by-the echoing of-the noise also these joined-in
οἵ τε ἵπποι διαφαινόμενοι διὰ τῶν ἱππαγωγῶν πλοίων, 3.4
the both horses appearing through the horse-transport boats
οὐ πρόσθεν ἵπποι ἐπὶ νεῶν ὀφθέντες ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ καὶ
not before horses on ships seen in the of-Indians land and
γὰρ καὶ τὸν Διονύσου ἐπ᾽ Ἰνδοὺς στόλον οὐκ ἐμέμνηντο
for also the of-Dionysus against Indians expedition not they-remembered
γενέσθαι ναυτικόν, ἔκπληξιν παρεῖχον τοῖς θεωμένοις
to-have-been naval amazement provided to-those watching
τῶν βαρβάρων, ὥστε οἱ μὲν αὐτόθεν τῇ ἀναγωγῇ
of-the barbarians so-that the-ones indeed thence at-the putting-out
παραγενόμενοι ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐφωμάρτουν,
having-been-present for long followed-along
ἐς ὅσους δὲ τῶν ἤδη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ προσκεχωρηκότων 3.5
to as-many-as and of-the already to-Alexander having-come-over
Ἰνδῶν ἡ βοὴ τῶν ἐρετῶν ἢ ὁ κτύπος τῆς εἰρεσίας
Indians the shout of-the rowers or the noise of-the rowing
ἐξίκετο, καὶ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ κατέθεον καὶ ξυνείποντο
reached also these on the bank ran-down and followed-along
ἐπᾴδοντες βαρβαρικῶς. φιλῳδοὶ γάρ, εἴπερ τινὲς ἄλλοι,
singing barbarically fond-of-song for if-indeed any other
Ἰνδοὶ καὶ φιλορχήμονες ἀπὸ Διονύσου ἔτι καὶ τῶν
Indians and fond-of-dancing from Dionysus still and of-those
ἅμα Διονύσῳ βακχευσάντων κατὰ τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν.
together-with Dionysus having-reveled throughout the of-Indians land

4.1 οὕτω δὴ πλέων τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ κατέσχεν, ἵναπερ
so indeed sailing on-the-third day he-put-in where-indeed
Ἡφαιστίωνί τε καὶ Κρατερῷ κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ στρατοπεδεύειν
to-Hephaestion both and to-Craterus at the same to-encamp
ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀντιπέρας ὄχθαις παρήγγελτο. μείνας δὲ
on the opposite banks it-had-been-ordered having-waited and
ἐνταῦθα ἡμέρας δύο, ὡς καὶ Φίλιππος αὐτῷ ξὺν τῇ
there days two until also Philip to-him with the
λοιπῇ στρατιᾷ ἀφίκετο, τοῦτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην
remaining army arrived this-one indeed to the Acesines
ποταμὸν ἐκπέμπει ξὺν οἷς ἔχων ἦκε, τάξας παρὰ
river he-sends-out with whom having he-came having-ordered along
τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου ποταμοῦ τὴν ὄχθην πορεύεσθαι· τοὺς δὲ
the Acesines river the bank to-march those and
ἀμφὶ Κρατερόν τε καὶ Ἡφαιστίωνα αὖθις ἐκπέμπει,
around Craterus both and Hephaestion again he-sends-out
παραγγείλας ὅπως χρὴ τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι.
having-instructed how it-is-necessary the march to-make

4.2 αὐτὸς δὲ ἔπλει κατὰ τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμὸν οὐδαμοῦ
himself and sailed down the Hydaspes river nowhere
μείονα ἐν τῷ κατάπλῳ εἴκοσι σταδίων τὸ εὖρος.
less in the voyage-down than-twenty stades the breadth
προσορμιζόμενος δὲ ὅπῃ τύχοι ταῖς ὄχθαις τοὺς
putting-in and wherever it-happened at-the banks the
προσοικοῦντας τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ Ἰνδοὺς τοὺς μὲν ἐνδιδόντας
dwelling-by — Hydaspes Indians the-ones indeed surrendering
σφᾶς ὁμολογίαις παρελάμβανεν, ἤδη δέ τινας καὶ ἐς
themselves by-agreements he-received already and some also to
ἀλκὴν χωρήσαντας βίᾳ κατεστρέψατο.
resistance having-gone by-force he-subdued

αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Μαλλῶν τε καὶ Ὀξυδρακῶν γῆν 4.3
himself and as against the of-Malli both and of-Oxydracae land
σπουδῇ ἔπλει, πλείστους τε καὶ μαχιμωτάτους τῶν ταύτῃ
with-haste sailed most both and most-warlike of-the there
Ἰνδῶν πυνθανόμενος καὶ ὅτι ἐξηγγέλλοντο αὐτῷ παῖδας
Indians learning and that they-were-reported to-him children
μὲν καὶ γυναῖκας ἀποτεθεῖσθαι εἰς τὰς ὀχυρωτάτας τῶν
indeed and women to-have-been-deposited in the strongest of-the
πόλεων, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐγνωκέναι διὰ μάχης ἰέναι πρὸς
cities themselves and to-have-decided through battle to-go against
αὐτόν. ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ δὴ καὶ σπουδῇ πλείονι ἐποιεῖτο τὸν
him for which indeed also with-haste greater he-made the
πλοῦν, ὅπως μὴ καθεστηκόσιν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ ἐν τῷ ἐνδεεῖ
voyage so-that not settled them but in the lacking
τε ἔτι τῆς παρασκευῆς καὶ τεταραγμένῳ προσφέρηται.
both still of-the preparation and confused he-might-attack
ἔνθεν δὲ ὡρμήθη τὸ δεύτερον, πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκετο ἐπὶ 4.4
thence and he-set-out the second-time on-the-fifth day he-arrived at
τὴν ξυμβολὴν τοῦ τε Ὑδάσπου καὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου. ἵνα δὲ
the confluence — both of-Hydaspes and — of-Acesines where and
ξυμβάλλουσιν οἱ ποταμοὶ οὗτοι, στενότατος εἷς ποταμὸς
join the rivers these narrowest one river
ἐκ τοῖν δυοῖν γίγνεται καὶ τὸ ῥεῦμα αὐτῷ ὀξὺ ἐπὶ
from the two becomes and the current for-it swift on-account-of
τῇ στενότητι καὶ δῖναι ἄτοποι ὑποστρέφοντος τοῦ ῥοῦ, καὶ
the narrowness and eddies strange turning-back the current and
τὸ ὕδωρ κυμαίνεταί τε καὶ καχλάζει ἐπὶ μέγα, ὡς καὶ
the water surges both and roars to great so-that even
πόρρω ἔτι ὄντων ἐξακούεσθαι τὸν κτύπον τοῦ κύματος.
far still being to-be-heard the noise of-the wave

4.5 καὶ ἦν μὲν προεξηγγελμένα ταῦτα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκ
and had-been indeed reported-beforehand these-things to-Alexander from
τῶν ἐγχωρίων καὶ ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου τῇ στρατιᾷ· ὅμως
the natives and from Alexander to-the army nevertheless
δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλαζεν αὐτῷ ταῖς ξυμβολαῖς ὁ στρατός,
but when approached it the confluences the army
ἐς τοσόνδε ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥοῦ κτύπος κατεῖχεν, ὥστε
to so-great the from the current noise prevailed so-that
ἐπέστησαν τὰς εἰρεσίας οἱ ναῦται, οὐκ ἐκ παραγγέλματος,
stopped the rowing the sailors not from command
ἀλλὰ τῶν τε κελευστῶν ὑπὸ θαύματος ἐκσιωπησάντων
but the both boatswains from amazement having-fallen-silent
καὶ αὐτοὶ μετέωροι πρὸς τὸν κτύπον γενόμενοι.
and themselves in-suspense at the noise having-become

5.1 ὡς δὲ οὐ πόρρω τῶν ξυμβολῶν ἦσαν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
when and not far from-the confluences they-were there indeed
οἱ κυβερνῆται παραγγέλλουσιν ὡς βιαιοτάτῃ εἰρεσίᾳ
the helmsmen order so-that most-violent rowing
χρωμένους ἐξελαύνειν ἐκ τῶν στενῶν, τοῦ μὴ ἐμπιπτούσας
using to-drive-out from the narrows of-the not falling-in
τὰς ναῦς ἐς τὰς δίνας ἀναστρέφεσθαι πρὸς αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ
the ships into the eddies to-be-overturned by them but
κρατεῖν γὰρ τῇ εἰρεσίᾳ τῶν ἐπιστροφῶν τοῦ ὕδατος.
to-master for with-the rowing the whirlings of-the water

5.2 τὰ μὲν δὴ στρογγύλα πλοῖα ὅσα καὶ ἔτυχεν αὐτῶν
the indeed indeed round boats as-many-as also happened of-them
περιστραφέντα πρὸς τοῦ ῥοῦ, οὐδέν τι παθόντα ἐν τῇ
turned-around by the current nothing at-all having-suffered in the
ἐπιστροφῇ ὅτι μὴ ταράξαντα τοὺς ἐμπλέοντας, κατέστη
whirling except — having-confused those sailing-in-them were-set
ἐς εὐθύ, πρὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ ῥοῦ ὀρθωθέντα· αἱ δὲ μακραὶ
into straight by itself the current having-been-righted the but long

νῆες οὐχ ὡσαύτως ἀπαθεῖς ἀπῆλθον ἐν τῇ ἐπιστροφῇ,
ships not likewise unharmed came-off in the whirling
οὔτε μετέωροι ἐπὶ τοῦ ἐπικαχλάζοντος κύματος ὡσαύτως
neither raised on the plashing wave likewise
οὖσαι, ὅσαι τε δίκροτοι αὐτῶν τὰς κάτω κώπας οὐκ
being as-many-as both two-banked of-them the lower oars not
ἐπὶ πολὺ ἔξω ἔχουσαι τοῦ ὕδατος·
to far outside having of-the water
καὶ αἱ κῶπαι δὲ αὐτοῖς πλαγίοις ἐν ταῖς δίναις γενομένοις 5.3
and the oars and for-them sideways in the eddies having-become
συνετρίβοντο, ὅσων γε ἐγκατελήφθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ
were-shattered of-as-many-as at-least were-caught by the
ὕδατος οὐ φθασάντων αὐτὰς μετεωρίσαι, ὡς πολλὰς
water not having-been-in-time them to-raise so-that many
μὲν πονῆσαι τῶν νεῶν, δύο δὲ δὴ περιπεσούσας
indeed to-have-been-damaged of-the ships two and indeed having-fallen-foul-of
ἀλλήλαις αὐτάς τε διαφθαρῆναι καὶ τῶν ἐμπλεόντων
one-another themselves both to-have-been-destroyed and of-those sailing
ἐν αὐταῖς πολλούς. ὡς δὲ ἐς πλάτος ἤδη ὁ ποταμὸς
in them many when and to breadth already the river
διέσχεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὅ τε ῥοῦς οὐκέτι ὡσαύτως χαλεπὸς
widened there indeed the both current no-longer likewise difficult
ἦν καὶ αἱ δῖναι οὐχ ὁμοίᾳ τῇ βίᾳ ἐπέστρεφον.
was and the eddies not with-like the force whirled
προσορμίσας οὖν τῇ ἐν δεξιᾷ ὄχθῃ Ἀλέξανδρος τὸν 5.4
having-moored then on-the at right bank Alexander the
στρατόν, ἵνα σκέπη τε ἦν τοῦ ῥοῦ καὶ προσβολὴ ταῖς
army where shelter both was from-the current and landing for-the
ναυσὶν καί τις καὶ ἄκρα τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπιτηδείως ἀνεῖχεν
ships and some also headland of-the river conveniently projected
ἐς τῶν ναυαγίων τε τὴν ξυναγωγὴν καὶ εἴ τινες ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν
for of-the wrecks both the collection and if any on them

ζῶντες ἔτι ἐφέροντο, τούτους τε διέσωσε καὶ ἐπισκευάσας
alive still were-carried these both he-saved and having-repaired
τὰς πεπονηκυίας τῶν νεῶν Νέαρχον μὲν καταπλεῖν κελεύει
the damaged of-the ships Nearchus indeed to-sail-down he-orders
ἔστ' ἂν ἀφίκηται ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια τοῦ Μαλλῶν ἔθνους, αὐτὸς
until — he-should-arrive at the borders of-the of-Malli people himself
δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων τῶν οὐ προσχωρούντων καταδρομὴν
and of-the barbarians the not coming-over raid
τῆς χώρας ποιησάμενος καὶ κωλύσας ἐπικουρῆσαι αὐτοὺς
of-the country having-made and having-prevented to-help them
τοῖς Μαλλοῖς, οὕτω δὴ αὖθις ξυνέμιξε τῷ ναυτικῷ.
the Malli so indeed again he-joined the fleet
5.5 καὶ ἐνταῦθα Ἡφαιστίων τε αὐτῷ καὶ Κρατερὸς καὶ
and there Hephaestion both for-him and Craterus and
Φίλιππος ξὺν τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τοὺς
Philip with the around them together already were he and the
μὲν ἐλέφαντας καὶ τὴν Πολυπέρχοντος τάξιν καὶ τοὺς
indeed elephants and the of-Polyperchon battalion and the
ἱπποτοξότας καὶ Φίλιππον ξὺν τῇ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν στρατιᾷ
mounted-archers and Philip with the around him army
διαβιβάσας τὸν Ὑδάσπην ποταμὸν Κρατερῷ ἄγειν
having-taken-across the Hydaspes river to-Craterus to-lead
προσέταξε· Νέαρχον δὲ ξὺν τῷ ναυτικῷ πέμπει τρισὶν
he-assigned Nearchus and with the fleet sends by-three
ἡμέραις τὴν στρατιὰν κελεύσας φθάνειν κατὰ τὸν πλοῦν.
days the army having-ordered to-get-ahead along the voyage
5.6 τὸν δὲ ἄλλον στρατὸν τριχῇ διένειμε· καὶ Ἡφαιστίωνα
the and other army in-three he-divided and Hephaestion
μὲν πέντε ἡμέραις προϊέναι ἔταξεν, ὡς εἴ τινες τοὺς
indeed by-five days to-go-ahead he-ordered so-that if any the
ξὺν αὐτῷ τεταγμένους φεύγοντες ἐς τὸ πρόσω κατὰ
with him posted fleeing to the forward in

σπουδὴν ἴοιεν, τοῖς ἀμφὶ Ἡφαιστίωνα ἐμπίπτοντες
haste should-go upon-the around Hephaestion falling
ἁλίσκωνται· Πτολεμαῖον δὲ τὸν Λάγου δοὺς καὶ
might-be-caught Ptolemy and the (son)-of-Lagus having-given also
τούτῳ τῆς στρατιᾶς μέρος τρισὶν ἡμέραις ὑπολειπόμενον
to-this-one of-the army a-part by-three days remaining-behind
ἕπεσθαι ἐκέλευσεν, ὡς ὅσοι τὸ ἔμπαλιν ὑποστρέφοιεν
to-follow ordered so-that as-many-as the back-again should-turn
αὐτὸν φεύγοντες, οὗτοι δὲ ἐς τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὸν Πτολεμαῖον
him fleeing these and into the around — Ptolemy
ἐμπίπτοιεν.
might-fall
ἐπὰν δὲ ἀφίκωνται ἐς τὰς ξυμβολὰς τοῦ τε Ἀκεσίνου καὶ 5.7
when and they-arrive at the confluences — both of-Acesines and
τοῦ Ὑδραώτου ποταμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα δὴ τούς τε φθάνοντας
of-the Hydraotes river there indeed the both arriving-first
ὑπομένειν ἐκέλευσεν, ἔστ᾽ ἂν ἥκῃ αὐτός, καὶ τοὺς
to-wait he-ordered until — should-come himself and the
ἀμφὶ Κρατερὸν καὶ Πτολεμαῖον αὐτῷ ξυμβαλεῖν.
around Craterus and Ptolemy with-him to-join

To fall on the Malli unprepared, Alexander crosses a waterless stretch by night and surprises them outside their city; those who flee into the citadel are killed when it falls, and Perdiccas, pursuing the people of another town, cuts down all who do not reach the marshes. At the Hydraotes Alexander cuts down many at the ford, and Peithon takes a stronghold. The Brahmins' city is stormed and five thousand die. Finding the other Malli towns abandoned, Alexander sends Peithon and Demetrius to kill those hiding in the river woods. When the Malli line the far bank of the Hydraotes, Alexander charges across with his cavalry alone and holds fifty thousand at bay until his light troops arrive; they flee to their strongest city, and he surrounds it at nightfall.

6.1 αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς τε καὶ τοὺς τοξότας
himself and having-taken the shield-bearers both and the archers
καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τῶν πεζεταίρων καλουμένων τὴν
and the Agrianians and of-the foot-companions so-called the
Πείθωνος τάξιν καὶ τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας τε πάντας καὶ τῶν
of-Peithon battalion and the mounted-archers both all and of-the
ἱππέων τῶν ἑταίρων τοὺς ἡμίσεας διὰ γῆς ἀνύδρου ὡς
cavalry the companion the half through land waterless as
ἐπὶ Μαλλοὺς ἦγεν, ἔθνος Ἰνδικὸν Ἰνδῶν τῶν αὐτονόμων.
against Malli he-led a-people Indian of-Indians the independent
6.2 καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ κατεστρατοπέδευσε πρὸς ὕδατι οὐ
and on-the indeed first he-encamped by water not
πολλῷ, ὃ δὴ ἀπεῖχε τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου ποταμοῦ σταδίους
much which indeed was-distant from-the Acesines river stades
ἐς ἑκατόν· δειπνοποιησάμενος δὲ καὶ ἀναπαύσας τὴν
about a-hundred having-dined and and having-rested the
στρατιὰν οὐ πολὺν χρόνον παραγγέλλει ὅ τι τις
army not much time he-orders what ever anyone
ἔχοι ἄγγος ἐμπλῆσαι ὕδατος. διελθὼν δὲ τῆς τε
might-have vessel to-fill with-water having-gone-through and of-the both

ἡμέρας τὸ ἔτι ὑπολειπόμενον καὶ τὴν νύκτα ὅλην ἐς
day the still remaining and the night whole about
τετρακοσίους μάλιστα σταδίους ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς πόλιν
four-hundred about stades with day to a-city
ἀφίκετο, ἐς ἣν ξυμπεφεύγεσαν πολλοὶ τῶν Μαλλῶν.
he-arrived into which had-fled-together many of-the Malli
οἱ δὲ οὔποτ᾽ ἂν οἰηθέντες διὰ τῆς ἀνύδρου ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ 6.3
they and never — having-supposed through the waterless to-come against
σφᾶς Ἀλέξανδρον ἔξω τε τῆς πόλεως οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ ἄνοπλοι
them Alexander outside both the city the most and unarmed
ἦσαν. ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ καὶ δῆλος ἐγένετο ταύτην ἀγαγὼν Ἀλέξανδρος,
were for which also plain he-became this having-led Alexander
ἣν ὅτι αὐτῷ ἀγαγεῖν χαλεπὸν ἦν, ἐπὶ τῷδε οὐδὲ τοῖς
which because for-him to-lead difficult was for this not-even to-the
πολεμίοις ὅτι ἄξει πιστὸν ἐφαίνετο. τούτοις μὲν δὴ
enemy that he-would-lead credible it-seemed upon-these indeed indeed
οὐ προσδοκήσασιν ἐπιπεσὼν τοὺς μὲν πολλοὺς ἀπέκτεινεν
not having-expected having-fallen the indeed most he-killed
αὐτῶν οὐδὲ ἐς ἀλκὴν οἷα δὴ ἀνόπλους τραπέντας· τῶν
of-them not-even to resistance as indeed unarmed having-turned of-the
δὲ ἄλλων εἰς τὴν πόλιν κατειληθέντων κύκλῳ περιστήσας
and others into the city having-been-penned in-a-circle having-set-around
τῷ τείχει τοὺς ἱππέας, ὅτι μήπω ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν πεζῶν
the wall the cavalry because not-yet the phalanx of-the infantry
ἠκολουθήκει αὐτῷ, ἀντὶ χάρακος ἐχρήσατο τῇ ἵππῳ.
had-followed him instead-of palisade he-used the cavalry
ὡς δὲ τάχιστα οἱ πεζοὶ ἀφίκοντο, Περδίκκαν μὲν τήν τε 6.4
when and quickest the infantry arrived Perdiccas indeed the both
αὐτοῦ ἱππαρχίαν ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν Κλείτου καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας
his-own hipparchy having and the of-Cleitus and the Agrianians
πρὸς ἄλλην πόλιν ἐκπέμπει τῶν Μαλλῶν, οἳ ξυμπεφευγότες
to another city he-sends-out of-the Malli where having-fled-together

ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν ταύτῃ Ἰνδῶν, φυλάσσειν τοὺς ἐν τῇ πόλει
were many of-the there Indians to-guard the in the city
κελεύσας, ἔργου δὲ μὴ ἔχεσθαι ἔστ' ἂν ἀφίκηται αὐτός, ὡς
having-ordered action and not to-engage until — should-arrive himself so-that
μηδὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς πόλεως διαφυγόντας τινὰς αὐτῶν
not-even from this the city having-escaped some of-them
ἀγγέλους γενέσθαι τοῖς ἄλλοις βαρβάροις ὅτι προσάγει
messengers to-become to-the other barbarians that approaches
ἤδη Ἀλέξανδρος· αὐτὸς δὲ προσέβαλλεν τῷ τείχει.
already Alexander himself and attacked the wall
6.5 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι τὸ μὲν τεῖχος ἐκλείπουσιν, ὡς οὐκ ἂν
the and barbarians the indeed wall abandon as not —
διαφυλάξαντες αὐτὸ ἔτι, πολλῶν ἐν τῇ καταλήψει
having-defended it any-longer many in the capture
τεθνηκότων, τῶν δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τραυμάτων ἀπομάχων
having-died the-others and also from wounds disabled
γεγενημένων· ἐς δὲ τὴν ἄκραν ξυμφυγόντες χρόνον μέν
having-become into and the citadel having-fled-together time indeed
τινα ἠμύνοντο ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου τε χωρίου καὶ χαλεποῦ
some defended-themselves from commanding both ground and difficult
ἐς προσβολήν, προσκειμένων δὲ πάντοθεν εὐρώστως
for attack pressing and from-all-sides vigorously
τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἄλλοτε ἄλλῃ
the Macedonians and himself Alexander at-one-time elsewhere
ἐπιφαινομένου τῷ ἔργῳ ἥ τε ἄκρα κατὰ κράτος ἑάλω
appearing at-the action the both citadel by force was-taken
καὶ οἱ ξυμφυγόντες ἐς αὐτὴν πάντες ἀπέθανον· ἦσαν δὲ
and the having-fled-together into it all died were and
ἐς δισχιλίους.
about two-thousand

Περδίκκας δὲ ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐφ᾽ ἥντινα ἐστάλη ἀφικόμενος 6.6
Perdiccas and to the city against which he-was-sent having-arrived
τὴν μὲν πόλιν ἐρήμην καταλαμβάνει, μαθὼν δὲ ὅτι οὐ
the indeed city deserted finds having-learned and that not
πρὸ πολλοῦ πεφεύγεσαν ἐξ αὐτῆς οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες δρόμῳ
before much had-fled from it the inhabitants at-a-run
ἤλαυνε κατὰ στίβον τῶν φευγόντων· οἱ δὲ ψιλοὶ ὡς τάχους
marched along track of-the fleeing the and light-troops as of-speed
ποδῶν εἶχον αὐτῷ ἐφείποντο. καταλαβὼν δὲ τῶν φευγόντων
of-feet they-had him followed having-overtaken and of-the fleeing
κατέκοψεν ὅσοι γε μὴ ἔφθασαν ἐς τὰ ἕλη ξυμφυγόντες.
he-cut-down as-many-as at-least not got-ahead to the marshes having-fled-together
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ δειπνοποιησάμενός τε καὶ ἀναπαύσας τοὺς 7.1
Alexander and having-dined both and having-rested the
ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἔστε ἐπὶ πρώτην φυλακὴν ἦει τοῦ πρόσω·
around himself until to first watch went to-the forward
καὶ τὴν νύκτα διελθὼν πολλὴν ὁδὸν ἅμα
and the night having-gone-through long way at-the-same-time-with
ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκετο πρὸς τὸν Ὑδραώτην ποταμόν. ἔνθα δὴ
day arrived at the Hydraotes river there indeed
τῶν Μαλλῶν τοὺς μὲν πολλοὺς διαβεβηκότας ἤδη
of-the Malli the indeed most having-crossed already
ἔμαθεν, τοῖς δὲ καὶ διαβαίνουσιν ἐπιγενόμενος περὶ αὐτὸν
he-learned those and also crossing having-come-upon about itself
τὸν πόρον πολλοὺς αὐτῶν διέφθειρε.
the ford many of-them destroyed
καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς εἶχε ξυνδιαβὰς κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν πόρον 7.2
and himself as he-was having-crossed-with by the same ford
διώκων εἴχετο τῶν φθασάντων ἐς τὴν ἀποχώρησιν.
pursuing kept-close-to those having-gotten-ahead in the retreat
καὶ πολλοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτῶν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ζῶντας
and many indeed he-killed of-them the-others and also alive

ἔλαβεν, οἱ πλείους δὲ κατέφυγον ἔς τι χωρίον ὀχυρὸν
took the more and fled to some place strong
καὶ τετειχισμένον. Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς οἱ πεζοὶ ἀφίκοντο
and walled Alexander and when the infantry arrived
αὐτῷ, ἀποστέλλει ἐπὶ τούτους Πείθωνα τήν τε αὑτοῦ
for-him sends against these Peithon the both his-own
τάξιν ἔχοντα καὶ τῶν ἱππέων δύο ἱπαρχίας.
battalion having and of-the cavalry two hipparchies

7.3 καὶ οὗτοι δὴ ἐξ ἐφόδου προσβαλόντες λαμβάνουσι τὸ
and these indeed from attack having-assaulted take the
χωρίον καὶ τοὺς καταπεφευγότας ἐς αὐτὸ ἠνδραπόδισαν,
place and the having-fled into it enslaved
ὅσοι γε μὴ ἐν τῇ προσβολῇ διεφθάρησαν. ταῦτα
as-many-as at-least not in the assault were-destroyed these-things
δὲ οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Πείθωνα διαπραξάμενοι ἐπανῆλθον αὖθις
and the around — Peithon having-accomplished returned again
ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
to the camp

7.4 αὐτὸς δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς ἐπὶ τῶν Βραχμάνων τινὰ πόλιν
himself and Alexander as against of-the Brahmins a-certain city
ἦγεν, ὅτι καὶ ἐς ταύτην ξυμπεφευγέναι τινὰς τῶν Μαλλῶν
led because also into this to-have-fled-together some of-the Malli
ἔμαθεν. ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο πρὸς αὐτήν, ἐπῆγε τῷ τείχει
he-learned when and he-arrived at it he-led-on to-the wall
πάντοθεν πυκνὴν τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ὑπορυσσόμενα τὰ
from-all-sides dense the phalanx they and being-undermined the
τείχη ἰδόντες καὶ ἐκ τῶν βελῶν ἀναστελλόμενοι τὰ μὲν τείχη
walls having-seen and by the missiles being-driven-back the indeed walls
καὶ οὗτοι ἐκλείπουσιν, ἐς δὲ τὴν ἄκραν ξυμφυγόντες ἐκεῖθεν
also these abandon into and the citadel having-fled-together from-there
ἠμύνοντο· ξυνεισπεσόντων δὲ αὐτοῖς ὀλίγων Μακεδόνων
defended-themselves having-burst-in-with and them few Macedonians

μεταβαλλόμενοι καὶ ξυστραφέντες τοὺς μὲν ἐξέωσαν αὐτῶν,
having-turned and having-rallied the-ones indeed thrust-out of-them
ἀπέκτειναν δὲ ἐν τῇ ὑποστροφῇ ἐς πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι.
they-killed and in the turning-back about five and twenty
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Ἀλέξανδρος τάς τε κλίμακας πάντοθεν 7.5
and in this Alexander the both ladders from-all-sides
κελεύει προστιθέναι τῇ ἄκρᾳ καὶ ὑπορύττειν τὸ τεῖχος. ὡς
orders to-set-against the citadel and to-undermine the wall when
δὲ πύργος τε ἔπεσεν ὑπορυσσόμενος καὶ τοῦ μεταπυργίου
and a-tower both fell being-undermined and of-the curtain-wall
τι παραρραγὲν ἐπιμαχωτέραν ταύτῃ ἐποίησε τὴν ἄκραν,
some having-broken-off more-assailable there made the citadel
πρῶτος Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπιβὰς τοῦ τείχους ὤφθη ἔχων
first Alexander having-mounted the wall was-seen holding
τὸ τεῖχος.
the wall
καὶ τοῦτον ἰδόντες οἱ ἄλλοι Μακεδόνες αἰσχυνθέντες 7.6
and this-one having-seen the other Macedonians having-been-ashamed
ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἀνῄεσαν. εἵχετό τε ἤδη ἡ ἄκρα, καὶ τῶν
one another-way went-up was-held both already the citadel and of-the
Ἰνδῶν οἱ μὲν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνεπίμπρασαν καὶ ἐν αὐταῖς
Indians the-ones indeed the houses set-on-fire and in them
ἐγκαταλαμβανόμενοι ἀπέθνησκον, οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι
being-caught died the most and fighting
αὐτῶν. ἀπέθανον δὲ οἱ πάντες ἐς πεντακισχιλίους,
of-them died and the all about five-thousand
ζῶντες δὲ δι' ἀνδρείαν ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν.
alive and because-of courage few were-taken
μείνας δὲ αὐτοῦ μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀναπαύσας τὴν 8.1
having-remained and there one day and having-rested the
στρατιὰν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
army on-the next-day advanced as against the other

Μαλλούς. καὶ τὰς μὲν πόλεις ἐκλελοιπότας καταλαμβάνει,
Malli and the indeed cities abandoned finds
αὐτοὺς δὲ ἔμαθεν ὅτι πεφευγότες εἶεν ἐς τὴν ἔρημον.
them and he-learned that having-fled they-were into the desert
8.2 καὶ ἐνταῦθα αὖθις μίαν ἡμέραν ἀναπαύσας τὴν στρατιὰν
and there again one day having-rested the army
ἐς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν Πείθωνα μὲν καὶ Δημήτριον τὸν
on the following Peithon indeed and Demetrius the
ἱππάρχην πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν ὀπίσω ἀπέπεμψεν, ὧν τε
hipparch to the river back he-sent-back whom both
αὐτοὶ ἡγοῦντο ἄγοντας καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ψιλῶν
they-themselves commanded leading and in-addition-to these of-light-troops
τάξεις δοὺς αὐτοῖς ὅσαι ἱκαναὶ πρὸς τὸ ἔργον.
battalions having-given to-them as-many-as sufficient for the task
8.3 προσέταξε δὲ παρὰ τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἰόντας, εἴ τισι
he-ordered and along the bank of-the river going if any
περιτυγχάνοιεν τῶν ἐς τὰς ὕλας ξυμπεφευγότων, αἳ
they-should-come-upon of-the into the woods having-fled-together which
δὴ πολλαὶ πρὸς τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἦσαν, τούτους
indeed many by the bank of-the river were these
κτείνειν, ὅσοι μὴ ἐθελονταὶ σφᾶς ἐνδιδοῖεν. καὶ
to-kill as-many-as not voluntarily themselves should-surrender and
πολλοὺς καταλαβόντες ἐν ταῖς ὕλαις οἱ ἀμφὶ Πείθωνά
many having-caught in the woods the around Peithon
τε καὶ Δημήτριον ἀπέκτειναν.
both and Demetrius killed
8.4 αὐτὸς δὲ ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν μεγίστην τῶν Μαλλῶν πόλιν,
himself and led against the greatest of-the Malli city
ἵνα καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων πόλεων πολλοὺς ξυμπεφευγέναι
where also from the other cities many to-have-fled-together
αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο. ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἐξέλιπον οἱ Ἰνδοὶ
to-him it-was-reported but also this abandoned the Indians

ὡς προσάγοντα Ἀλέξανδρον ἔμαθον. διαβάντες δὲ τὸν
when approaching Alexander they-learned having-crossed and the
Ὑδραώτην ποταμὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς ὄχθαις αὐτοῦ, ὅτι ὑψηλαὶ
Hydraotes river on the banks of-it because high
αἱ ὄχθαι ἦσαν, παρατεταγμένοι ἔμενον, ὡς εἴρξοντες
the banks were drawn-up remained so-as about-to-bar-from
τοῦ πόρου Ἀλέξανδρον.
the ford Alexander
καὶ ταῦτα ὡς ἤκουσεν, ἀναλαβὼν τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἅμα αὐτῷ 8.5
and these-things when he-heard having-taken the cavalry the with him
πᾶσαν ᾔει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑδραώτην, ἵναπερ παρατετάχθαι
all went as toward — Hydraotes where-indeed to-have-been-drawn-up
τοὺς Μαλλοὺς ἐξηγγέλλετο. οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ ἕπεσθαι αὐτῷ
the Malli it-was-reported the and infantry to-follow him
ἐτάχθησαν. ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετό τε ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ ἐν τῷ
were-ordered when and he-arrived both at it and on the
πέραν τοὺς πολεμίους τεταγμένους κατεῖδεν, ὡς εἶχεν
opposite-side the enemy drawn-up saw as he-was
ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐμβάλλει ἐς τὸν πόρον ξὺν τῇ ἵππῳ μόνῃ.
from the road he-plunges into the ford with the cavalry alone
οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὄντα ἤδη Ἀλέξανδρον 8.6
they and having-seen in middle of-the river being already Alexander
κατὰ σπουδὴν μέν, ξυντεταγμένοι δὲ ὅμως ἀπεχώρουν
in haste indeed drawn-up and nevertheless withdrew
ἀπὸ τῆς ὄχθης· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ξὺν μόνῃ τῇ ἵππῳ εἵπετο.
from the bank and Alexander with alone the cavalry followed
ὡς δὲ κατεῖδον ἱππέας μόνους, ἐπιστρέψαντες οἱ Ἰνδοὶ
when and they-saw cavalry alone having-turned the Indians
καρτερῶς ἐμάχοντο πλῆθος ὄντες ἐς πέντε μυριάδας. καὶ
stoutly fought in-number being about five myriads and
Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς τήν τε φάλαγγα αὐτῶν πυκνὴν κατεῖδε
Alexander when the both phalanx of-them dense he-saw

καὶ αὐτῷ οἱ πεζοὶ ἀπῆσαν, προσβολὰς μὲν ἐποιεῖτο ἐς
and for-him the infantry were-absent charges indeed he-made in
κύκλους παριππεύων, ἐς χεῖρας δὲ οὐκ ἤει τοῖς Ἰνδοῖς.
circles riding-along to hands and not he-came with-the Indians
8.7 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ παραγίγνονται αὐτῷ οἵ τε Ἀγριᾶνες καὶ
and in this arrive for-him the both Agrianians and
ἄλλαι τάξεις τῶν ψιλῶν, ἃς δὴ ἐπιλέκτους ἅμα
other battalions of-the light-troops which indeed picked together-with
οἱ ἦγε, καὶ οἱ τοξόται· οὐ πόρρω δὲ οὐδὲ ἡ φάλαγξ
himself he-led and the archers not far and not-even the phalanx
ἐφαίνετο τῶν πεζῶν. καὶ οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ὁμοῦ σφισι πάντων τῶν
appeared of-the infantry and the Indians at-once on-them all the
δεινῶν προσκειμένων ἀποστρέψαντες ἤδη προτροπάδην
terrors pressing having-turned already headlong
ἔφευγον ἐς πόλιν ὀχυρωτάτην τῶν πλησίον.
fled to a-city strongest of-the neighboring
8.8 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἑπόμενός τε αὐτοῖς πολλοὺς ἔκτεινε καὶ ὡς
and Alexander following both them many killed and when
ἐς τὴν πόλιν οἱ διαφυγόντες κατειλήθησαν, πρῶτα μὲν τοῖς
into the city the having-escaped were-penned first indeed with-the
ἵπποις ἐξ ἐφόδου ἐκυκλώσατο τὴν πόλιν· ὡς δὲ οἱ πεζοὶ
cavalry from attack he-encircled the city when and the infantry
αὐτῷ παρῆσαν, ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ περιστρατοπεδεύει ἐν
for-him were-present there indeed the day he-encamps-around in
κύκλῳ τοῦ τείχους, ὅτι οὐ πολύ τε τῆς ἡμέρας ὑπελείπετο
circle of-the wall because not much both of-the day remained
ἐς τὴν προσβολὴν καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ αὐτῷ ὑπό τε πορείας
for the assault and the army for-him from both march
μακρᾶς οἱ πεζοὶ καὶ ὑπὸ διώξεως συνεχοῦς οἱ ἵπποι καὶ οὐχ
long the infantry and from pursuit continuous the horses and not
ἥκιστα κατὰ τὸν πόρον τοῦ ποταμοῦ τεταλαιπωρήκεσαν.
least at the ford of-the river had-been-exhausted

The Malli abandon their walls for the citadel. Impatient with the men carrying the ladders, Alexander climbs first, followed by Peucestas and Leonnatus and, up another ladder, Abreas; the ladders break behind them, and he leaps down inside alone, kills the Indian leader, and fights with his back to the wall. Abreas falls, and an arrow pierces Alexander's breastplate into his chest, so that, Ptolemy says, breath escapes with the blood, until he collapses under Peucestas' sacred shield. The Macedonians break in and kill everyone in the city. The arrow is cut out. Arrian corrects the common tales: the wound was among the Malli, not the Oxydracae, Gaugamela not Arbela was the battlefield, and Ptolemy was not there.

τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ διχῇ διελὼν τὸν στρατὸν τοῦ μὲν 9.1
on-the and next-day in-two having-divided the army of-the indeed
ἑτέρου αὐτὸς ἡγούμενος προσέβαλλε τῷ τείχει, τὸ δὲ
one himself leading attacked the wall the and
ἕτερον Περδίκκας προσῆγε. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὐ δεξάμενοι οἱ
other Perdiccas led-up and in this not having-withstood the
Ἰνδοὶ τῶν Μακεδόνων τὴν ὁρμὴν τὰ μὲν τείχη τῆς πόλεως
Indians of-the Macedonians the onset the indeed walls of-the city
λείπουσιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐς τὴν ἄκραν ξυνέφευγον. Ἀλέξανδρος
leave themselves and into the citadel fled-together Alexander
μὲν οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν πυλίδα τινὰ κατασχίσαντες
indeed then and the around him small-gate a-certain having-split-open
παρῆλθον ἐς τὴν πόλιν πολὺ πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων·
went into the city much ahead-of the others
οἱ δὲ ὁμοῦ Περδίκκᾳ τεταγμένοι ὑστέρησαν 9.2
those and together-with Perdiccas posted were-late
ὑπερβαίνοντες κατὰ τὰ τείχη οὐκ εὐπετῶς, οὐδὲ τὰς
climbing over the walls not easily nor the
κλίμακας οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν φέροντες, ὅτι ἑαλωκέναι
ladders the most of-them carrying because to-have-been-taken

αὐτοῖς ἐδόκει ἡ πόλις, ἐρημούμενα τῶν προμαχομένων τὰ
to-them seemed the city deserted of-the defenders the
τείχη ὡς κατεῖδον. ὡς δὲ ἡ ἄκρα ἐχομένη πρὸς τῶν
walls when they-saw when and the citadel held by the
πολεμίων καὶ πρὸ ταύτης τεταγμένοι εἰς τὸ ἀπομάχεσθαι
enemy and before this drawn-up for the fighting-back
πολλοὶ ἐφάνησαν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ μὲν ὑπορύσσοντες
many appeared there indeed the-ones indeed undermining
τὸ τεῖχος, οἱ δὲ προσθέσει ὅπῃ παρείκοι τῶν
the wall the-others and by-setting-up wherever it-allowed of-the
κλιμάκων βιάσασθαι ἐπειρῶντο ἐς τὴν ἄκραν.
ladders to-force tried into the citadel

9.3 Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς βλακεύειν αὐτῷ ἐδόκουν τῶν Μακεδόνων
Alexander and when to-be-slack to-him seemed of-the Macedonians
οἱ φέροντες τὰς κλίμακας, ἁρπάσας κλίμακα ἑνὸς τῶν
those carrying the ladders having-snatched a-ladder of-one of-the
φερόντων προσέθηκε τῷ τείχει αὐτὸς καὶ εἰληθεὶς ὑπὸ
carrying set-against to-the wall himself and having-crouched under
τῇ ἀσπίδι ἀνέβαινεν· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῷ Πευκέστας ὁ τὴν
the shield went-up after and him Peucestas the the
ἱερὰν ἀσπίδα φέρων, ἣν ἐκ τοῦ νεὼ τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς τῆς
sacred shield carrying which from the temple — of-Athena the
Ἰλιάδος λαβὼν ἅμα οἱ εἶχεν Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ πρὸ
Ilian having-taken together-with himself had Alexander and before
αὐτοῦ ἐφέρετο ἐν ταῖς μάχαις· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ Λεοννάτος
him was-carried in the battles after and this-one Leonnatus
ἀνῄει κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν κλίμακα ὁ σωματοφύλαξ· κατὰ δὲ
went-up by the same ladder the bodyguard by and
ἄλλην κλίμακα Ἀβρέας τῶν διμοιριτῶν τις στρατευομένων.
another ladder Abreas of-the double-pay-men one serving

ἤδη τε πρὸς τῇ ἐπάλξει τοῦ τείχους ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦν 9.4
already both at the battlement of-the wall the king was
καὶ ἐρείσας ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ τὴν ἀσπίδα τοὺς μὲν ὤθει εἴσω
and having-rested on it the shield the-ones indeed he-pushed within
τοῦ τείχους τῶν Ἰνδῶν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ τῷ ξίφει
the wall of-the Indians the-others and also there with-the sword
ἀποκτείνας γεγυμνώκει τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος· καὶ οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ
having-killed had-cleared the there wall and the shield-bearers
ὑπέρφοβοι γενόμενοι ὑπὲρ τοῦ βασιλέως σπουδῇ ὠθούμενοι
terrified having-become for the king in-haste pushing
κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν κλίμακα συντρίβουσιν αὐτήν, ὥστε οἱ
by the same ladder shatter it so-that the-ones
μὲν ἤδη ἀνιόντες αὐτῶν κάτω ἔπεσον, τοῖς δὲ ἄλλοις
indeed already going-up of-them down fell for-the and others
ἄπορον ἐποίησαν τὴν ἄνοδον.
impassable they-made the ascent
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους στὰς κύκλῳ τε 9.5
Alexander and as on the wall having-stood in-a-circle both
ἀπὸ τῶν πλησίον πύργων ἐβάλλετο, οὐ γὰρ πελάσαι
from the neighboring towers was-shot-at not for to-approach
γε ἐτόλμα τις αὐτῷ τῶν Ἰνδῶν, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκ
at-least dared anyone him of-the Indians and by those from
τῆς πόλεως, οὐδὲ πόρρω τούτων γε ἐσακοντιζόντων
the city not-even far these at-least hurling-javelins
ἔτυχε γάρ τι καὶ προσκεχωσμένον ταύτῃ πρὸς
there-happened-to-be for something also heaped-up there against
τὸ τεῖχος, δῆλος μὲν ἦν Ἀλέξανδρος ὢν τῶν τε ὅπλων
the wall conspicuous indeed was Alexander being by-the both arms
τῇ λαμπρότητι καὶ τῷ ἀτόπῳ τῆς τόλμης, ἔγνω δὲ
the brilliance and by-the strangeness of-the daring be-perceived and
ὅτι αὐτοῦ μὲν μένων κινδυνεύσει μηδὲν ὅ τι καὶ λόγου
that there indeed remaining he-will-run-risk nothing what ever even of-account

ἄξιον ἀποδεικνύμενος, καταπηδήσας δὲ εἴσω τοῦ τείχους
worthy displaying having-leapt-down and within the wall
τυχὸν μὲν αὐτῷ τούτῳ ἐκπλήξει τοὺς Ἰνδούς, εἰ δὲ μή,
perhaps indeed by-it this he-will-terrify the Indians if and not
καὶ κινδυνεύειν δέοι, μεγάλα ἔργα καὶ τοῖς ἔπειτα
even to-run-risk it-should-be-necessary great deeds and for-those hereafter
πυθέσθαι ἄξια ἐργασάμενος οὐκ ἀσπουδεὶ ἀποθανεῖται —
to-learn worthy having-performed not ingloriously he-will-die
ταῦτα γνοὺς καταπηδᾷ ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἐς τὴν ἄκραν.
these-things having-decided leaps-down from the wall into the citadel
9.6 ἔνθα δὴ ἐρεισθεὶς πρὸς τῷ τείχει τοὺς μέν τινας
there indeed having-set-his-back against the wall the-ones indeed some
ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντας καὶ τόν γε ἡγεμόνα τῶν Ἰνδῶν
to hands having-come and the at-least leader of-the Indians
προσφερόμενόν οἱ θρασύτερον παίσας τῷ ξίφει
rushing-at him too-boldly having-struck with-the sword
ἀποκτείνει· ἄλλον δὲ πελάζοντα λίθῳ βαλὼν ἔσχε
kills another and approaching with-a-stone having-hit he-checked
καὶ ἄλλον λίθῳ, τὸν δὲ ἐγγυτέρω προσάγοντα τῷ
and another with-a-stone the and nearer advancing with-the
ξίφει αὖθις. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι πελάζειν μὲν αὐτῷ οὐκέτι
sword again the and barbarians to-approach indeed him no-longer
ἤθελον, ἔβαλλον δὲ πάντοθεν περιεστηκότες ὅ τι τις
were-willing they-shot and from-all-sides standing-around what ever anyone
ἔχων βέλος ἐτύγχανεν ἢ ἐν τῷ τότε ἔλαβεν.
having missile happened-to-have or in the then-(time) took
10.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Πευκέστας τε καὶ ὁ διμοιρίτης Ἀβρέας
in this and Peucestas both and the double-pay-man Abreas
καὶ ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς Λεοννάτος, οἳ δὴ μόνοι ἔτυχον πρὶν
and after them Leonnatus who indeed alone happened before
ξυντριβῆναι τὰς κλίμακας ἀναβεβηκότες ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος,
to-be-shattered the ladders having-gone-up onto the wall

καταπηδήσαντες καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐμάχοντο.
having-leapt-down also themselves before the king fought
καὶ Ἀβρέας μὲν ὁ διμοιρίτης πίπτει αὐτοῦ τοξευθεὶς
and Abreas indeed the double-pay-man falls there shot
ἐς τὸ πρόσωπον, Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ βάλλεται καὶ αὐτὸς
into the face Alexander and is-struck also himself
διὰ τοῦ θώρακος ἐς τὸ στῆθος τοξεύματι ὑπὲρ τὸν
through the breastplate into the chest by-an-arrow above the
μαστόν, ὥστε λέγει Πτολεμαῖος ὅτι καὶ πνεῦμα ὁμοῦ
breast so-that says Ptolemy that also breath together-with
τῷ αἵματι ἐκ τοῦ τραύματος ἐξεπνεῖτο.
the blood from the wound was-breathed-out
ὁ δέ, ἔστε μὲν ἔτι θερμὸν ἦν αὐτῷ τὸ αἷμα, καίπερ 10.2
he and as-long-as indeed still warm was for-him the blood although
κακῶς ἔχων ἠμύνετο· πολλοῦ δὲ δὴ τοῦ αἵματος καὶ
badly faring defended-himself much and indeed of-the blood and
ἀθρόου οἷα δὴ ξὺν πνεύματι ἐκρυέντος, ἴλιγγός τε
in-a-mass as indeed with breath having-flowed-out dizziness both
αὐτὸν καὶ λειποψυχία κατέσχε καὶ πίπτει αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν
him and fainting seized and falls there upon the
ἀσπίδα ξυννεύσας. Πευκέστας δὲ περιβὰς πεπτωκότι
shield having-bent-over Peucestas and having-stood-over the-fallen
καὶ ὑπερσχὼν τὴν ἱερὰν τὴν ἐξ Ἰλίου ἀσπίδα πρὸ
and having-held-over the sacred the from Ilium shield before
αὐτοῦ, καὶ Λεοννάτος ἐς τὰ ἐπὶ θάτερα, οὗτοί τε
him and Leonnatus on the-parts on the-other-side these both
βάλλονται ἀμφότεροι καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐγγὺς ἦν ἤδη ὑπὸ
are-struck both and Alexander near was already from
τοῦ αἵματος ἐκλιπεῖν.
the blood to-faint

10.3 τοῖς γὰρ Μακεδόσι καὶ ταύτῃ ἐν ἀπόρῳ γεγένητο τὰ
for-the for Macedonians also here in perplexity had-become the-things
τῆς προσβολῆς, ὅτι οἱ τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον βαλλόμενόν τε
of-the assault because those — Alexander being-shot both
ἐπὶ τῷ τείχει ἰδόντες καὶ πηδῶντα ἔσω ἐς τὴν ἄκραν,
on the wall having-seen and leaping inside into the citadel
ὑπὸ σπουδῆς τε καὶ φόβου μή τι αὐτοῖς ὁ βασιλεὺς
from haste both and fear lest something to-them the king
πάθῃ οὐ ξὺν νόῳ κινδυνεύων, τὰς κλίμακας ξυντετριφότες
might-suffer not with reason running-risk the ladders having-shattered
ἄλλοι ἄλλας μηχανὰς ἐς τὸ ἀνελθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος ὡς ἐν
others other devices for the to-go-up onto the wall as in
ἀπόροις ἐμηχανῶντο, οἱ μὲν πασσάλους ἐμπηγνύοντες
straits contrived the-ones indeed pegs fixing
ἐς τὸ τεῖχος γήϊνον ὄν, καὶ κατὰ τούτους ἐκκρεμαννύμενοι
into the wall earthen being and by these hanging-on
χαλεπῶς ἀνεῖρπον, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλους ἐπιβαίνοντες.
with-difficulty crept-up the-others and one upon another mounting

10.4 ὁ δὲ πρῶτος ἀνελθὼν ἐνρίπτει αὑτὸν κατὰ τοῦ τείχους
the and first having-gone-up throws himself down from-the wall
ἐς τὴν πόλιν, ἵναπερ τὸν βασιλέα ἑώρων κείμενον,
into the city where-indeed the king they-saw lying
ξὺν οἰμωγῇ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ πάντες. ἤδη τε ἀμφ᾽ αὐτῷ
with lamentation and war-cry all already both around him
πεπτωκότι καρτερὰ μάχη ξυνειστήκει ἄλλου ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῳ
fallen a-fierce battle had-arisen one over another
τῶν Μακεδόνων προασπίζοντος, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οἱ μὲν
of-the Macedonians holding-his-shield-before and in this the-ones indeed
τὸν μοχλὸν ὅτῳ εἴχετο ἡ κατὰ τὸ μεταπύργιον πύλη
the bar by-which was-held the at the curtain-wall gate
κατασχίσαντες ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγους παρῆεσαν, οἱ δὲ καθ᾽ ὅ
having-split-open in few-at-a-time came-in the-others and at what

τι ἡ πύλη διέσχε τοὺς ὤμους ὑποθέντες καὶ ὦσαντες
ever the gate parted the shoulders having-put-under and having-pushed
ἐς τὸ ἔσω τὸ τεῖχος ἀνεπέτασαν ταύτῃ τὴν ἄκραν.
into the inside the wall opened-up there the citadel
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ οἱ μὲν ἔκτεινον τοὺς Ἰνδούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν 11.1
in this and the-ones indeed were-killing the Indians and they-killed
γε πάντας οὐδὲ γυναῖκα ἢ παῖδα ὑπελείποντο, οἱ δὲ
at-least all not-even woman or child they-left the-others and
ἐξέφερον τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ τῆς ἀσπίδος κακῶς ἔχοντα, οὔπω
carried-out the king on the shield badly faring not-yet
γιγνώσκοντες βιώσιμον ὄντα. τὸ δὲ βέλος ἐξελκύσαι
knowing likely-to-live being the and missile to-have-drawn-out
ἐκ τοῦ τραύματος ἐπιτεμόντα τὴν πληγὴν οἱ μὲν
from the wound having-cut-open the wound the-ones indeed
Κριτόδημον ἀνέγραψαν, ἰατρὸν Κῶον, τὸ γένος τῶν
Critodemus recorded a-physician Coan by race of-the
Ἀσκληπιαδῶν, οἱ δὲ Περδίκκαν τὸν σωματοφύλακα, οὐ
Asclepiads the-others and Perdiccas the bodyguard not
παρόντος ἐν τῷ δεινῷ ἰατροῦ, ἐγκελευσαμένου Ἀλεξάνδρου
being-present in the danger a-physician having-urged Alexander
τῷ ξίφει ἐπιτεμεῖν τὴν πληγὴν καὶ κομίσασθαι τὸ βέλος.
with-the sword to-cut-open the wound and to-take-out the missile
ἐν δὲ τῇ κομιδῇ φορὰ αἵματος πολλοῦ γίγνεται, ὥστε 11.2
in and the extraction a-flow of-blood much happens so-that
λειποψυχῆσαι αὖθις Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ οὕτω σχεθῆναι αὐτῷ τὸ
to-faint again Alexander and so to-be-stopped for-him the
αἷμα ὑπὸ τῇ λειποψυχίᾳ. πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἀναγέγραπται
blood by the fainting many and also other-things have-been-recorded
τοῖς ξυγγραφεῦσιν ὑπὲρ τοῦ παθήματος, καὶ ἡ φήμη
by-the historians about the suffering and the rumor
παραδεξαμένη αὐτὰ κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους ψευσαμένους ἔτι
having-received them from the first liars still

καὶ εἰς ἡμᾶς διασώζει, οὐδὲ ἀφήσει παραδιδοῦσα καὶ ἐφεξῆς
even to us preserves nor will-cease handing-on also in-turn
ἄλλοις τὰ ψευδῆ, εἰ μὴ ὑπὸ τῆσδε τῆς ξυγγραφῆς παύσεται.
to-others the falsehoods if not by this the history it-will-be-stopped
11.3 αὐτίκα ἐν Ὀξυδράκαις τὸ πάθημα τοῦτο γενέσθαι
for-instance among Oxydracae the suffering this to-have-happened
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὁ πᾶς λόγος κατέχει· τὸ δὲ ἐν Μαλλοῖς
to-Alexander the whole tradition holds it and among Malli
ἔθνει αὐτονόμῳ Ἰνδικῷ ξυνέβη, καὶ ἥ τε πόλις Μαλλῶν
a-people independent Indian happened and the both city of-Malli
ἦν καὶ οἱ βαλόντες Ἀλέξανδρον Μαλλοί, οἳ δὴ
was and those having-shot Alexander Malli who indeed
ἐγνώκεσαν μὲν ξυμμίξαντες τοῖς Ὀξυδράκαις οὕτω
had-resolved indeed having-joined with-the Oxydracae so
διαγωνίζεσθαι, ἔφθη δὲ διὰ τῆς ἀνύδρου ἐπ᾽
to-fight-it-out he-got-ahead and through the waterless against
αὐτοὺς ἐλάσας πρίν τινα ὠφέλειαν αὐτοῖς παρὰ τῶν
them having-marched before any help to-them from the
Ὀξυδρακῶν γενέσθαι ἢ αὐτοὺς ἐκείνοις τι ἐπωφελῆσαι.
Oxydracae to-come or themselves to-those anything to-help
11.4 ἐπεὶ καὶ τὴν τελευταίαν μάχην τὴν πρὸς Δαρεῖον γενομένην,
since also the last battle the against Darius having-happened
καθ᾽ ἥντινα ἔφυγε Δαρεῖος οὐδὲ πρόσθεν ἔληξε τῆς φυγῆς
in which fled Darius nor before ceased from-the flight
πρὶν ξυλληφθῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ Βῆσσον καὶ προσάγοντος
before to-be-seized by those around Bessus and approaching
ἤδη Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀποθανεῖν, πρὸς Ἀρβήλοις γενέσθαι
already Alexander to-die at Arbela to-have-happened
ὁ πᾶς λόγος κατέχει, καθάπερ οὖν καὶ τὴν πρὸ ταύτης
the whole tradition holds just-as then also the before this
ἐν Ἰσσῷ καὶ τὴν πρώτην ἱππομαχίαν πρὸς Γρανίκῳ.
at Issus and the first cavalry-battle at Granicus

ἀλλὰ πρὸς Γρανίκῳ μὲν ξυνέβη ἡ μάχη ἡ ἱππικὴ 11.5
but at Granicus indeed happened the battle the cavalry
καὶ πρὸς Ἰσσῷ ἡ αὖθις πρὸς Δαρεῖον μάχη, Ἄρβηλα
and at Issus the again against Darius battle Arbela
δὲ τοῦ χώρου, ἐν ᾧ τὴν ἐσχάτην μάχην Δαρεῖός
and from-the place in which the last battle Darius
τε καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐμαχέσαντο, οἱ μὲν τὰ πλεῖστα
both and Alexander fought those indeed the most
ξυγγράψαντες λέγουσιν ὅτι ἑξακοσίους σταδίους ἀπέχει,
having-written say that six-hundred stades it-is-distant
οἱ δὲ τὰ ἐλάχιστα, ὅτι ἐς πεντακοσίους. ἀλλὰ ἐν
those and the least that about five-hundred but in
Γαυγαμήλοις γὰρ γενέσθαι τὴν μάχην πρὸς ποταμῷ
Gaugamela for to-have-happened the battle by river
Βουμήλῳ λέγει Πτολεμαῖος καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος.
Bumelus says Ptolemy and Aristobulus
πόλις δὲ οὐκ ἦν τὰ Γαυγάμηλα, ἀλλὰ κώμη μεγάλη, οὐδὲ 11.6
city and not was — Gaugamela but village large nor
ὀνομαστὸς ὁ χῶρος οὐδὲ ἐς ἀκοὴν ἡδὺ τὸ ὄνομα· ἔνθεν
famous the place nor to hearing pleasant the name whence
δή μοι δοκεῖ πόλις οὖσα τὰ Ἄρβηλα ἀπηνέγκατο τὴν
indeed to-me it-seems city being — Arbela carried-off the
δόξαν τῆς μεγάλης μάχης. εἰ δὲ πρὸς Ἀρβήλοις χρὴ
fame of-the great battle if and at Arbela one-must
οἴεσθαι γενέσθαι τὸ ἔργον ἐκεῖνο ἐς τοσόνδε Ἀρβήλων
to-think to-have-happened the deed that at so-great from-Arbela
ἀπέχον, καὶ τὴν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι γενομένην ναυμαχίαν πρὸς
being-distant also the at Salamis having-happened sea-battle at
ἰσθμῷ τῷ Κορινθίων ἔξεστι λέγειν ὅτι ἐγένετο, καὶ τὴν
isthmus the of-Corinthians it-is-possible to-say that it-happened and the
ἐπ᾽ Ἀρτεμισίῳ τῆς Εὐβοίας πρὸς Αἰγίνῃ ἢ Σουνίῳ.
at Artemisium — of-Euboea at Aegina or Sunium

11.7 καὶ μὴν ὑπὲρ τῶν ὑπερασπισάντων ἐν τῷ κινδύνῳ
and truly about those having-held-shields-over in the danger
Ἀλεξάνδρου, Πευκέσταν μὲν γενέσθαι ξύμπαντες
Alexander Peucestas indeed to-have-been all
ὁμολογοῦσιν, ὑπὲρ Λεοννάτου δὲ οὐκέτι ξυμφέρονται
agree about Leonnatus and no-longer they-agree
οὐδὲ ὑπὲρ Ἀβρέου τοῦ διμοιρίτου. καὶ οἱ μὲν ξύλῳ
nor about Abreas the double-pay-man and the-ones indeed with-a-club
πληγέντα κατὰ τοῦ κράνους Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ ἰλιγγιάσαντα
struck on the helmet Alexander and having-become-dizzy
πεσεῖν, αὖθις δὲ ἀναστάντα βληθῆναι βέλει διὰ τοῦ
to-have-fallen again and having-risen to-have-been-struck with-a-missile through the
θώρακος ἐς τὸ στῆθος· Πτολεμαῖος δὲ ὁ Λάγου ταύτην
breastplate into the chest Ptolemy and the (son)-of-Lagus this
μόνην τὴν πληγὴν πληγῆναι λέγει τὴν ἐς τὸ στῆθος.
only the blow to-have-been-struck says the into the chest
11.8 τὸ δὲ δὴ μέγιστον πλημμέλημα τῶν ξυγγραψάντων
the and indeed greatest error of-those having-written
τὰ ἀμφὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἐκεῖνο τίθεμαι ἔγωγε. Πτολεμαῖον
the-things about Alexander that I-consider I-at-least Ptolemy
γὰρ τὸν Λάγου ἔστιν οἳ ἀνέγραψαν ξυναναβῆναί
for the (son)-of-Lagus there-are who recorded to-have-gone-up-with
τε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ κατὰ τὴν κλίμακα ὁμοῦ Πευκέστᾳ καὶ
both Alexander by the ladder together-with Peucestas and
ὑπερασπίσαι κειμένου, καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε Σωτῆρα ἐπικληθῆναι
to-have-shielded him-lying and on this Savior to-have-been-surnamed
τὸν Πτολεμαῖον· καίτοι αὐτὸς Πτολεμαῖος ἀναγέγραφεν
— Ptolemy although himself Ptolemy has-recorded
οὐδὲ παραγενέσθαι τούτῳ τῷ ἔργῳ, ἀλλὰ στρατιᾶς
not-even to-have-been-present at-this the action but an-army
γὰρ αὐτὸς ἡγούμενος ἄλλας μάχεσθαι μάχας καὶ πρὸς
for himself leading other to-fight battles and against

ἄλλους βαρβάρους. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐν ἐκβολῇ τοῦ
other barbarians these-things indeed indeed in digression of-the
λόγου ἀναγεγράφθω μοι, ὡς μὴ ἀταλαίπωρον γίγνεσθαι
narrative let-have-been-recorded by-me so-that not careless to-become
τοῖς ἔπειτα ἀνθρώποις τὴν ὑπὲρ τῶν τηλικούτων ἔργων
for-the later men the about the such-great deeds
τε καὶ παθημάτων ἀφήγησιν.
both and sufferings narration

IV · ALEXANDER SHOWS HIMSELF

In the camp a report spreads that Alexander is dead, and the army despairs. To end the rumor he has himself carried by ship to the camp, raises his hand, mounts a horse, and walks to his tent amid tears, applause, and flowers. Nearchus reports friends who reproached him for fighting as a soldier, and an old Boeotian who quoted a verse that doers must suffer. The Malli and the Oxydracae surrender; Alexander asks a thousand hostages, and they add five hundred chariots unasked. Philip is made their satrap. The fleet sails down to the Indus, which takes in the four great rivers.

ἐν ᾧ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος αὐτοῦ μένων τὸ τραῦμα ἐθεραπεύετο, 12.1
in which and Alexander there remaining the wound was-being-treated
ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔνθενπερ ὡρμήθη ἐπὶ τοὺς Μαλλούς,
to the camp whence-very he-had-set-out against the Malli
ὁ μὲν πρῶτος λόγος ἦκεν ὅτι τεθνηκὼς εἴη ἐκ τοῦ
the indeed first report came that having-died he-was from the
τραύματος. καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα οἰμωγὴ ἦν τῆς στρατιᾶς
wound and the indeed first lamentation was of-the army
ξυμπάσης ἄλλου ἄλλῳ παραδιδόντος τὴν φήμην·
whole one to-another handing-on the rumor

12.2 παυσάμενοι δὲ τῆς οἰμωγῆς ἄθυμοί τε καὶ ἄποροι
having-ceased and from-the lamentation despondent both and at-a-loss
ἦσαν, ὅστις μὲν ἐξηγούμενος ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς πολλοῖς
they-were who indeed leading will-be of-the army for-many
γὰρ δὴ ἐν ἴσῳ τὰ τῆς ἀξιώσεως ἐδόκει πρός τε
for indeed in equality the-things of-the esteem seemed by both
αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ πρὸς Μακεδόνων καθεστηκέναι,
himself Alexander and by Macedonians to-have-stood
ὅπως δὲ ἀποσωθήσονται ἐς τὴν οἰκείαν, τοσούτων μὲν
how and they-will-get-safe to the own-land so-many indeed
ἐθνῶν μαχίμων περιειργόντων σφᾶς ἐν κύκλῳ, τῶν μὲν
peoples warlike hemming-in them in circle those indeed
οὔπω προσκεχωρηκότων, ἃ δὴ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίας
not-yet having-come-over who indeed for the freedom
εἴκαζον ἀγωνιεῖσθαι καρτερῶς, τῶν δὲ ἀποστησομένων
they-guessed to-be-going-to-fight stoutly those and about-to-revolt
ἀφαιρεθέντος αὐτοῖς τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου φόβου, ποταμῶν τε
having-been-removed for-them the of-Alexander fear rivers both
ἐν μέσῳ ἀδιαβάτων τότε δὴ ἐδόκουν εἶναι καὶ πάντα
in middle impassable then indeed seemed to-be and everything
σφίσιν ἄπορα καὶ ἀμήχανα ἐρήμοις Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐφαίνετο.
to-them impassable and helpless bereft of-Alexander appeared

12.3 ὡς δὲ ἦκέ ποτε λόγος ὅτι ζῇ Ἀλέξανδρος, τούτῳ
when and came at-length a-report that lives Alexander this
μὲν μόγις ξυνεχώρησαν, εἰ δὲ καὶ βιώσιμός ἐστιν,
indeed hardly they-accepted if and also likely-to-live he-is
οὔπω ἐπιστεύετο. ὡς δὲ καὶ γράμματα παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
not-yet was-believed when and also a-letter from him
ἦκεν ὅτι ὅσον οὔπω κατελεύσεται ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
came that all-but not-yet he-will-come-down to the camp
οὐδὲ ταῦτα τοῖς πολλοῖς ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄγαν δέους πιστὰ
not-even these-things to-the many from the excessive fear credible

ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πλάττεσθαι γὰρ πρὸς τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν
appeared but to-be-fabricated for by those around him
σωματοφυλάκων τε καὶ στρατηγῶν εἰκάζετο.
bodyguards both and generals it-was-guessed
καὶ ταῦτα ἐννοήσας Ἀλέξανδρος, μή τι νεωτερισθείη 13.1
and these-things having-considered Alexander lest something be-stirred-up
ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὅτε πρῶτον ἠδυνήθη κομίζεται ἐπὶ τοῦ
in the army when first he-was-able is-conveyed to of-the
ποταμοῦ τοῦ Ὑδραώτου τὰς ὄχθας· καὶ πλέων κατὰ
river — Hydraotes the banks and sailing down
τὸν ποταμὸν ἦν γὰρ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐπὶ ταῖς ξυμβολαῖς
the river was for the camp at the confluences
τοῦ τε Ὑδραώτου καὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου, ἵνα Ἡφαιστίων
— both of-Hydraotes and — of-Acesines where Hephaestion
τε ἐπὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἦν καὶ Νέαρχος τὸ ναυτικὸν αὐτῷ
both over the army was and Nearchus the fleet for-him
εἶχεν, ὡς ἐπέλαζεν ἡ ναῦς ἤδη τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τὸν
had when approached the ship already to-the camp the
βασιλέα φέρουσα, κελεύει δὴ ἀφελεῖν τὴν σκηνὴν ἀπὸ
king carrying he-orders indeed to-remove the awning from
τῆς πρύμνης, ὡς καταφανὴς εἶναι πᾶσιν.
the stern so-that visible to-be to-all
οἱ δὲ ἔτι ἠπίστουν, ὡς νεκροῦ δῆθεν κομιζομένου 13.2
they and still disbelieved as a-corpse forsooth being-carried
Ἀλεξάνδρου, πρίν γε δὴ προσχούσης τῆς νεὼς τῇ
Alexander until at-least indeed having-put-in the ship to-the
ὄχθῃ ὁ μὲν τὴν χεῖρα ἀνέτεινεν ἐς τὸ πλῆθος· οἱ δὲ
bank he indeed the hand raised to the multitude they and
ἀνεβόησαν, ἐς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἀνασχόντες τὰς χεῖρας, οἱ
shouted to the sky having-raised the hands the-others
δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον· πολλοῖς δὲ καὶ δάκρυα
and to him-himself Alexander for-many and also tears

ἐπὶ τῷ ἀνελπίστῳ προεχύθη ἀκούσια. καὶ οἱ μὲν τῶν
at the unexpected were-shed involuntary and the-ones indeed of-the
ὑπασπιστῶν κλίνην προσέφερον αὐτῷ ἐκκομιζομένῳ ἐκ
shield-bearers a-litter brought-up for-him being-carried-out from
τῆς νεώς, ὁ δὲ τὸν ἵππον προσαγαγεῖν ἐκέλευσεν.
the ship he and the horse to-bring-up ordered

13.3 ὡς δὲ ἐπιβὰς τοῦ ἵππου ὤφθη αὖθις, κρότῳ δὴ
when and having-mounted the horse he-was-seen again with-clapping indeed
πολλῷ ἐπεκτύπησεν ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα, ἐπήχησαν δὲ αἵ τε
much applauded the army whole echoed and the both
ὄχθαι καὶ αἱ πλησίον αὐτῶν νάπαι. προσάγων δὲ ἤδη
banks and the near them glens approaching and already
τῇ σκηνῇ καταβαίνει ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὥστε καὶ βαδίζων
to-the tent he-dismounts from the horse so-that also walking
ὀφθῆναι. οἱ δὲ ἐπέλαζον ἄλλος ἄλλοθεν, οἱ μὲν
to-be-seen they and approached one from-another-side the-ones indeed
χειρῶν, οἱ δὲ γονάτων, οἱ δὲ τῆς ἐσθῆτος αὐτῆς
hands the-others and knees the-others and the clothing itself
ἁπτόμενοι, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἰδεῖν ἐγγύθεν καί τι καὶ
touching the-others and even to-see from-near and something also
ἐπευφημήσαντες ἀπελθεῖν· οἱ δὲ ταινίαις ἔβαλλον, οἱ
having-acclaimed to-go-away the-others and with-ribbons pelted the-others
δὲ ἄνθεσιν, ὅσα ἐν τῷ τότε ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ παρεῖχε.
and with-flowers as-many-as in the then-(time) the of-Indians land provided

13.4 Νέαρχος δὲ λέγει, ὅτι χαλεποὶ αὐτῷ τῶν φίλων ἐγένοντο
Nearchus and says that harsh to-him of-the friends were
ὅσοι ἐκάκιζον, ὅτι αὐτὸς πρὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς κινδυνεύοι·
as-many-as reproached-him that he-himself before the army ran-risks
οὐ γὰρ στρατηγοῦ ταῦτα, ἀλλὰ στρατιώτου εἶναι. καί
not for of-a-general these-things but of-a-soldier to-be and
μοι δοκεῖ ἄχθεσθαι Ἀλέξανδρος τοῖσδε τοῖς λόγοις,
to-me it-seems to-have-been-vexed Alexander at-these the words

ὅτι ἀληθεῖς τε ὄντας ἐγίγνωσκε καὶ αὑτὸν ὑπαίτιον τῇ
because true both being he-knew and himself liable to-the
ἐπιτιμήσει. καὶ ὅμως ὑπὸ μένους τε τοῦ ἐν ταῖς μάχαις
reproach and nevertheless from passion both the in the battles
καὶ τοῦ ἔρωτος τῆς δόξης, καθάπερ οἱ ἄλλης τινὸς ἡδονῆς
and the love of-the glory just-as those by-other some pleasure
ἐξηττώμενοι, οὐ καρτερὸς ἦν ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν κινδύνων.
overcome not able was to-hold-off-from the dangers
ἄνθρωπον δέ τινα πρεσβύτερον λέγει Βοιώτιον, τὸ 13.5
a-man and a-certain elderly he-says Boeotian the
δὲ ὄνομα τοῦ ἀνθρώπου οὐ λέγει, ὡς ἀχθόμενόν τε
and name of-the man not he-says as vexed both
πρὸς τὰς ἐπιτιμήσεις τῶν φίλων κατέμαθεν Ἀλέξανδρον
at the reproaches of-the friends he-perceived Alexander
καὶ ἐσκυθρωπακότα, προσελθόντα τοῦτον βοιωτιάζοντα
and having-become-sullen having-approached this-one speaking-Boeotian
ἅμα τῇ φωνῇ ταῦτα φάναι· ὦ Ἀλέξανδρε,
at-the-same-time with-the speech these-things to-have-said O Alexander
ἀνδρῶν τὰ ἔργα· καί τι καὶ ἰαμβεῖον ὑπειπεῖν, τὸν δὲ νοῦν
of-men the deeds and some also iambic-verse to-have-quoted the and meaning
εἶναι τοῦ ἰαμβείου ὅτι τῷ τι δρῶντι καὶ παθεῖν ἐστιν
to-be of-the iambic that for-the something doing also to-suffer is
ὀφειλόμενον. καὶ τοῦτον ἔν τε τῷ παραυτίκα εὐδοκιμῆσαι
owed and this-one in both the immediate to-have-won-favor
καὶ ἐπιτηδειότερον ἐς τὸ ἔπειτα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ γενέσθαι.
and more-intimate for the future to-Alexander to-have-become
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἀφίκοντο παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον τῶν Μαλλῶν 14.1
in this and arrived to Alexander of-the Malli
τῶν ὑπολειπομένων πρέσβεις ἐνδιδόντες τὸ ἔθνος, καὶ
the remaining envoys surrendering the people and
παρὰ Ὀξυδρακῶν οἵ τε ἡγεμόνες τῶν πόλεων καὶ οἱ
from Oxydracae the both leaders of-the cities and the

νομάρχαι αὐτοὶ καὶ ἄλλοι ἅμα τούτοις ἑκατὸν καὶ
nomarchs themselves and others together-with these hundred and
πεντήκοντα οἱ γνωριμώτατοι αὐτοκράτορες περὶ σπονδῶν
fifty the most-notable with-full-powers about a-treaty
δῶρά τε ὅσα μέγιστα παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖς κομίζοντες καὶ τὸ
gifts both which greatest among Indians bringing and the
ἔθνος καὶ οὗτοι ἐνδιδόντες.
people also these surrendering

14.2 συγγνωστὰ δὲ ἁμαρτεῖν ἔφασαν οὐ πάλαι παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
pardonable and to-have-erred they-said not long-ago to him
πρεσβευσάμενοι· ἐπιθυμεῖν γάρ, ὥσπερ τινὲς ἄλλοι, ἔτι
having-sent-envoys to-desire for as some others still
μᾶλλον αὐτοὶ ἐλευθερίας τε καὶ αὐτόνομοι εἶναι, ἥντινα
more themselves freedom both and independent to-be which
ἐλευθερίαν ἐξ ὅτου Διόνυσος ἐς Ἰνδοὺς ἦκε σώαν σφίσιν
freedom from when Dionysus to Indians came safe for-them
εἶναι ἐς Ἀλέξανδρον· εἰ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δοκοῦν ἐστιν, ὅτι καὶ
to-be until Alexander if and to-Alexander pleasing it-is since also
Ἀλέξανδρον ἀπὸ θεοῦ γενέσθαι λόγος κατέχει, σατράπην
Alexander from a-god to-have-been-born story holds satrap
τε ἀναδέξεσθαι, ὅντινα τάττοι Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ φόρους
both to-be-going-to-accept whomever should-appoint Alexander and tributes
ἀποίσειν τοὺς Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δόξαντας· διδόναι δὲ καὶ
to-be-going-to-pay those to-Alexander having-seemed-good to-give and also
ὁμήρους ἐθέλειν ὅσους ἂν αἰτῇ Ἀλέξανδρος.
hostages to-be-willing as-many-as — should-demand Alexander

14.3 ὁ δὲ χιλίους ᾔτησε τοὺς κρατιστεύοντας τοῦ ἔθνους, οὕς,
he and thousand demanded the strongest of-the people whom
εἰ μὲν βούλοιτο, ἀντὶ ὁμήρων καθέξειν, εἰ δὲ μή,
if indeed he-should-wish instead-of hostages to-be-going-to-hold if and not
ξυστρατεύοντας ἕξειν ἔστ᾽ ἂν διαπολεμηθῇ αὐτῷ
campaigning-with to-be-going-to-have until — should-be-fought-out for-him

πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους Ἰνδούς. οἱ δὲ τούς τε χιλίους ἔπεμψαν,
against the other Indians they and the both thousand sent
τοὺς κρατίστους καὶ μεγίστους σφῶν ἐπιλεξάμενοι, καὶ
the strongest and tallest of-them having-picked and
ἅρματα πεντακόσια οὐκ αἰτηθέντες καὶ τοὺς ἀμβάτας
chariots five-hundred not having-been-asked and the charioteers
τῶν ἁρμάτων. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ σατράπην μὲν τούτοις τε
of-the chariots Alexander and satrap indeed over-these both
καὶ τῶν Μαλλῶν τοῖς ἔτι σωζομένοις ἐπέταξε Φίλιππον·
and of-the Malli the still surviving he-set Philip
τοὺς ὁμήρους δὲ αὐτοῖς ἀφῆκεν, τὰ δὲ ἅρματα ἔλαβεν.
the hostages and to-them he-released the and chariots he-took
ὡς δὲ ταῦτα αὐτῷ κεκόσμητο καὶ πλοῖα ἐπὶ τῇ 14.4
when and these-things for-him had-been-ordered and boats during the
διατριβῇ τῇ ἐκ τοῦ τραύματος πολλὰ προσενεναυπήγητο,
delay the from the wound many had-been-built-in-addition
ἀναβιβάσας ἐς τὰς ναῦς τῶν μὲν ἑταίρων ἱππέας
having-embarked into the ships of-the indeed companions cavalry
ἑπτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, τῶν ψιλῶν δὲ ὅσουσπερ καὶ
seven-hundred and thousand of-the light-troops and as-many-as-very also
πρότερον, πεζοὺς δὲ ἐς μυρίους, ὀλίγον μέν τι
before infantry and about ten-thousand a-little indeed somewhat
τῷ Ὑδραώτῃ ποταμῷ κατέπλευσεν, ὡς δὲ συνέμιξεν
on-the Hydraotes river he-sailed-down when and joined
ὁ Ὑδραώτης τῷ Ἀκεσίνῃ, ὅτι ὁ Ἀκεσίνης κρατεῖ τοῦ
— Hydraotes — with-Acesines because — Acesines prevails-over —
Ὑδραώτου τῇ ἐπωνυμίᾳ, κατὰ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην αὖ ἔπλει,
Hydraotes in-the name down — Acesines again he-sailed
ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ξυμβολὴν τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου καὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἦκεν.
until to the confluence — of-Acesines and — of-Indus he-came

14.5 τέσσαρες γὰρ οὗτοι μεγάλοι ποταμοὶ καὶ ναυσίποροι οἱ
four for these great rivers and navigable the
τέσσαρες εἰς τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν τὸ ὕδωρ ξυμβάλλουσιν, οὐ
four into the Indus river the water join not
ξὺν τῇ σφετέρᾳ ἕκαστος ἐπωνυμίᾳ, ἀλλὰ ὁ Ὑδάσπης μὲν ἐς
with the own each name but — Hydaspes indeed into
τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐμβάλλει, ἐμβαλὼν δὲ τὸ πᾶν ὕδωρ Ἀκεσίνην
— Acesines empties having-emptied and the whole water Acesines
παρέχεται καλούμενον· αὖθις δὲ ὁ Ἀκεσίνης οὗτος ξυμβάλλει
provides called again and — Acesines this joins
τῷ Ὑδραώτῃ, καὶ παραλαβὼν τοῦτον ἔτι Ἀκεσίνης ἐστί· καὶ
— with-Hydraotes and having-taken-in this still Acesines is and
τὸν Ὕφασιν ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ Ἀκεσίνης παραλαβὼν τῷ αὑτοῦ
— Hyphasis after this — Acesines having-taken-in with-the its-own
δὴ ὀνόματι ἐς τὸν Ἰνδὸν ἐμβάλλει· ξυμβαλὼν δὲ ξυγχωρεῖ
indeed name into — Indus empties having-joined and yields
δὴ τῷ Ἰνδῷ. ἔνθεν δὴ ὁ Ἰνδὸς πρὶν ἐς τὸ Δέλτα
indeed — to-Indus thence indeed — Indus before into the Delta
σχισθῆναι οὐκ ἀπιστῶ ὅτι καὶ ἐς ἑκατὸν σταδίους ἔρχεται
to-be-split not I-disbelieve that even to hundred stades it-goes
καὶ ὑπὲρ τοὺς ἑκατὸν τυχόν, ἵναπερ λιμνάζει μᾶλλον.
and over the hundred perhaps where-indeed it-forms-lakes more

At the confluence with the Indus Perdiccas rejoins, the Abastani are subdued, and Alexander founds a city with dockyards. Oxyartes becomes satrap of the Parapamisadae. The prosperous Musicanus submits in haste and is pardoned, and Craterus fortifies the citadel of his city. Oxicanus' cities are stormed, and Sambus flees, though his capital opens its gates. Musicanus revolts, is captured by Peithon, and is hanged with the Brahmins who incited him. Craterus leads the elephants and the veterans west through Arachosia, and at Patala Alexander finds the city deserted and recalls its people.

ἐνταῦθα ἐπὶ ταῖς ξυμβολαῖς τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου καὶ Ἰνδοῦ 15.1
there at the confluences — of-Acesines and Indus
προσέμενεν ἔστε ἀφίκετο αὐτῷ ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ Περδίκκας
he-waited until arrived for-him with the army Perdiccas
καταστρεψάμενος ἐν παρόδῳ τὸ Ἀβαστανῶν ἔθνος
having-subdued on the-way the of-Abastani people
αὐτόνομον. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἄλλαι τε προσγίγνονται
independent in this and other both join
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τριακόντοροι καὶ πλοῖα στρογγύλα ἄλλα, ἃ
Alexander thirty-oared-ships and boats round other which
δὴ ἐν Ξάθροις ἐναυπηγήθη αὐτῷ, καὶ Σόγδοι ἄλλο ἔθνος
indeed in Xathri were-built for-him and Sogdi another people
Ἰνδῶν αὐτόνομον προσεχώρησαν. καὶ παρὰ Ὀσσαδίων,
of-Indians independent came-over and from Ossadii
καὶ τούτου γένους αὐτονόμου Ἰνδικοῦ, πρέσβεις ἦκον,
also this race independent Indian envoys came
ἐνδιδόντες καὶ οὗτοι τοὺς Ὀσσαδίους.
surrendering also these the Ossadii
Φιλίππῳ μὲν δὴ τῆς σατραπείας ὅρους ἔταξε τὰς 15.2
to-Philip indeed indeed of-the satrapy boundaries he-set the
συμβολὰς τοῦ τε Ἀκεσίνου καὶ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ ἀπολείπει
confluences — both of-Acesines and Indus and he-leaves

ξὺν αὐτῷ τούς τε Θρᾷκας πάντας καὶ ἐκ τῶν τάξεων
with him the both Thracians all and from the battalions
ὅσοι ἐς φυλακὴν τῆς χώρας ἱκανοὶ ἐφαίνοντο, πόλιν
as-many-as for guard of-the country sufficient seemed a-city
τε ἐνταῦθα κτίσαι ἐκέλευσεν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ τῇ ξυμβολῇ τοῖν
both there to-found he-ordered at itself the confluence of-the-two
ποταμοῖν, ἐλπίσας μεγάλην τε ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἐπιφανῆ
rivers having-hoped great both to-be-going-to-be and famous
ἐς ἀνθρώπους, καὶ νεωσοίκους ποιηθῆναι.
among men and dockyards to-be-made

15.3 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Ὀξυάρτης ὁ Βάκτριος, ὁ Ῥωξάνης τῆς
in this and also Oxyartes the Bactrian the of-Roxane the
γυναικὸς τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου πατήρ, ἦκε παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον·
wife — of-Alexander father came to Alexander
καὶ προστίθησιν αὐτῷ Παραπαμισαδῶν σατραπεύειν,
and he-adds to-him the-Parapamisadae to-govern-as-satrap
ἀπαλλάξας Τυρίεσπιν τὸν πρόσθεν σατράπην, ὅτι οὐκ
having-removed Tyriespis the former satrap because not
ἐν κόσμῳ ἐξηγεῖσθαι αὐτῷ ὁ Τυρίεσπις ἐξήγγελτο.
in order to-lead for-him — Tyriespis had-been-reported

15.4 ἔνθα δὴ διαβιβάσας Κρατερόν τε καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς
there indeed having-taken-across Craterus both and of-the army
τὴν πολλὴν καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἐπ᾽ ἀριστερὰ τοῦ
the greater-part and the elephants to left of-the
Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὅτι εὐπορώτερά τε ταύτῃ τὰ παρὰ
Indus river because easier both there the-things along
τὸν ποταμὸν στρατιᾷ βαρείᾳ ἐφαίνετο καὶ τὰ ἔθνη τὰ
the river for-an-army heavy seemed and the peoples the
προσοικοῦντα οὐ πάντῃ φίλια ἦν, αὐτὸς κατέπλει ἐς τῶν
dwelling-by not wholly friendly were himself sailed-down to of-the
Σόγδων τὸ βασίλειον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πόλιν τε ἐτείχιζεν
Sogdi the palace and there a-city both he-fortified

ἄλλην καὶ νεωσοίκους ἐποίει ἄλλους καὶ τὰ πλοῖα αὐτῷ τὰ
another and dockyards made other and the boats for-him the
πεπονηκότα ἐπεσκευάσθη. τῆς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ξυμβολῶν τοῦ
damaged were-repaired of-the and from the confluences —
τε Ἰνδοῦ καὶ Ἀκεσίνου χώρας ἔστε ἐπὶ θάλασσαν σατράπην
both of-Indus and Acesines country as-far to sea satrap
ἀπέδειξεν Πείθωνα ξὺν τῇ παραλίᾳ πάσῃ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς.
he-appointed Peithon with the coast all of-the of-Indians land
καὶ Κρατερὸν μὲν ἐκπέμπει αὖθις ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ, αὐτὸς 15.5
and Craterus indeed he-sends-out again with the army himself
δὲ κατέπλει ἐς τὴν Μουσικανοῦ ἐπικράτειαν, ἥντινα
and sailed-down into the of-Musicanus dominion which
εὐδαιμονεστάτην τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς εἶναι ἐξηγγέλλετο, ὅτι
most-prosperous of-the of-Indians land to-be was-reported because
οὔπω οὔτε ἀπηντήκει αὐτῷ Μουσικανὸς ἐνδιδοὺς αὑτόν τε
not-yet neither had-met him Musicanus surrendering himself both
καὶ τὴν χώραν οὔτε πρέσβεις ἐπὶ φιλίᾳ ἐκπέμπει, οὐδέ
and the country nor envoys for friendship sends-out nor
τι οὔτε αὐτὸς ἐπεπόμφει ἃ δὴ μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ
anything neither himself had-sent which indeed for-a-great king
εἰκός, οὔτε τι ᾐτήκει ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου.
fitting nor anything had-asked from Alexander
καὶ γίγνεται αὐτῷ ὁ πλοῦς κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐς τοσόνδε 15.6
and becomes for-him the voyage down the river to such-a-degree
ἐσπουδασμένος ὥστε ἔφθη ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρίοις γενέσθαι τῆς
hastened so-that he-got-ahead at the borders to-be of-the
Μουσικανοῦ χώρας, πρὶν πυθέσθαι Μουσικανὸν ὅτι ὥρμηται
of-Musicanus country before to-learn Musicanus that had-set-out
ὡς ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρος. οὕτω δὴ ἐκπλαγεὶς κατὰ
as against him Alexander so indeed panic-struck in
τάχος ἀπήντα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, δῶρά τε τὰ πλείστου ἄξια παρ᾽
haste met Alexander gifts both the of-most worth among

Ἰνδοῖς κομίζων καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ξύμπαντας ἄγων καὶ τὸ
Indians bringing and the elephants all leading and the
ἔθνος τε καὶ αὐτὸν ἐνδιδοὺς καὶ ὁμολογῶν ἀδικεῖν, ὅπερ
people both and himself surrendering and admitting to-do-wrong which-very
μέγιστον παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἦν ἐς τὸ τυχεῖν ὧν τις δέοιτο.
greatest with Alexander was for the obtaining of-what anyone might-ask
15.7 καὶ οὖν καὶ Μουσικανῷ ἐπὶ τοῖσδε ἄδεια ἐδόθη ἐξ
and then also to-Musicanus upon these-terms amnesty was-given from
Ἀλεξάνδρου, καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἐθαύμασεν Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ τὴν
Alexander and the city admired Alexander and the
χώραν, καὶ ἄρχειν αὐτῆς Μουσικανῷ ἔδωκεν· Κρατερὸς δὲ
country and to-rule it to-Musicanus he-gave Craterus and
ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐτάχθη τὴν ἄκραν ἐκτειχίσαι· καὶ παρόντος
in the city was-assigned the citadel to-fortify and being-present
ἔτι ἐτειχίσθη Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ φυλακὴ κατεστάθη, ὅτι
still it-was-fortified Alexander and a-garrison was-established because
ἐπιτήδειον αὐτῷ ἐφάνη τὸ χωρίον ἐς τὸ κατέχεσθαι τὰ
suitable to-him appeared the place for the to-be-held the
κύκλῳ ἔθνη φυλαττόμενα.
around peoples being-guarded
16.1 ἔνθεν δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας
thence and having-taken the both archers and the Agrianians
καὶ τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἅμα οἱ πλέουσαν ἐξελαύνει ἐπὶ
and the cavalry the with him sailing he-marches against
τὸν νομάρχην τῆς ταύτῃ γῆς, ὄνομα δὲ ἦν Ὀξικανός,
the nomarch of-the there land name and was Oxicanus
ὅτι μήτε αὐτὸς ἀφῖκτο μήτε πρέσβεις παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἦκον
because neither himself had-come nor envoys from him came
ἐνδιδόντες αὐτόν τε καὶ τὴν χώραν.
surrendering himself both and the country

δύο μὲν δὴ τὰς μεγίστας πόλεις τῶν ὑπὸ τῷ Ὀξικανῷ 16.2
two indeed indeed the greatest cities of-those under — Oxicanus
ἐξ ἐφόδου κατὰ κράτος ἔλαβεν, ἐν δὲ τῇ ἑτέρᾳ τούτων
from attack by force he-took in and the other of-these
καὶ αὐτὸς Ὀξικανὸς ἑάλω. ὁ δὲ τὴν μὲν λείαν τῇ
also himself Oxicanus was-taken he and the indeed booty to-the
στρατιᾷ δίδωσι, τοὺς ἐλέφαντας δὲ ἅμα οἱ ἦγε·
army gives the elephants and together-with himself led
καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι δὲ πόλεις αὐτῷ αἱ ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ χώρᾳ
and the other and cities to-him the in the same country
ἐνεδίδοντο ἐπιόντι οὐδέ τις ἐτρέπετο ἐς ἀλκήν· οὕτω
surrendered as-he-approached nor anyone turned to resistance so
καὶ Ἰνδοὶ πάντες ἐδεδούλωντο ἤδη τῇ γνώμῃ πρὸς
also Indians all had-been-enslaved already in-the spirit by
Ἀλεξάνδρου τε καὶ τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου τύχης.
Alexander both and the of-Alexander fortune
ὁ δὲ ἐπὶ Σάμβον αὖ ἦγε τῶν ὀρείων Ἰνδῶν σατράπην 16.3
he and against Sambus again led of-the mountain Indians satrap
ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κατασταθέντα, ὃς πεφευγέναι αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο
by him established who to-have-fled for-him was-reported
ὅτι Μουσικανὸν ἀφειμένον πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπύθετο
because Musicanus released by Alexander he-learned
καὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἄρχοντα· τὰ γὰρ πρὸς
and of-the country the his-own ruling the-relations for with
Μουσικανὸν αὐτῷ πολέμια ἦν.
Musicanus for-him hostile were
ὡς δὲ ἐπέλαζεν ἤδη τῇ πόλει Ἀλέξανδρος, ἥντινα 16.4
when and approached already to-the city Alexander which
μητρόπολιν εἶχεν ἡ τοῦ Σάμβου χώρα, ὄνομα δὲ ἦν
as-capital had the — of-Sambus country name and was
τῇ πόλει Σινδίμανα, αἵ τε πύλαι αὐτῷ ἀνοίγονται
to-the city Sindimana the both gates for-him are-opened

προσάγοντι καὶ οἱ οἰκεῖοι οἱ τοῦ Σάμβου τά τε χρήματα
as-he-approached and the kinsmen those — of-Sambus the both money
ἀπηρίθμησαν καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας μετὰ σφῶν ἄγοντες
counted-out and the elephants with them leading
ἀπήντων· οὐ γὰρ δὴ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ γε πολεμίως ἔχοντα
met-him not for indeed toward-Alexander at-least hostilely being-disposed
Σάμβον φυγεῖν, ἀλλὰ Μουσικανοῦ τὴν ἄφεσιν δείσαντα.
Sambus to-have-fled but of-Musicanus the release having-feared
16.5 ὁ δὲ καὶ ἄλλην πόλιν ἐν τούτῳ ἀποστᾶσαν εἶλεν καὶ τῶν
he and also another city in this having-revolted took and of-the
Βραχμάνων, οἳ δὴ σοφισταὶ τοῖς Ἰνδοῖς εἰσιν, ὅσοι
Brahmins who indeed sages for-the Indians are as-many-as
αἴτιοι τῆς ἀποστάσεως ἐγένοντο ἀπέκτεινεν. ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐγὼ
responsible for-the revolt were he-killed about whose I
τῆς σοφίας, εἰ δή τίς ἐστιν, ἐν τῇ Ἰνδικῇ ξυγγραφῇ δηλώσω.
the wisdom if indeed any there-is in the Indian history will-show
17.1 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Μουσικανὸς αὐτῷ ἀφεστάναι ἐξηγγέλλετο.
and in this Musicanus to-him to-have-revolted was-reported
καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦτον μὲν ἐκπέμπει Πείθωνα τὸν Ἀγήνορος
and against this-one indeed he-sends-out Peithon the (son)-of-Agenor
σατράπην ξὺν στρατιᾷ ἀποχρώσῃ, αὐτὸς δὲ τὰς πόλεις
satrap with army sufficient himself and the cities
τὰς ὑπὸ Μουσικανῷ τεταγμένας ἐπελθὼν τὰς μὲν
the under Musicanus placed having-attacked the-ones indeed
ἐξανδραποδίσας αὐτῶν κατέσκαψεν, εἰς ἃς δὲ φρουρὰς
having-enslaved of-them he-razed into which and garrisons
εἰσήγαγε καὶ ἄκρας ἐξετείχισε. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος
he-led-in and citadels he-fortified these-things and having-accomplished
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδόν τε ἐπανῆκε καὶ τὸν στόλον.
to the camp both he-returned and the fleet

ἔνθα δὴ Μουσικανός τε ξυλληφθεὶς ἄγεται πρὸς Πείθωνος, 17.2
there indeed Musicanus both having-been-seized is-brought by Peithon
καὶ τοῦτον κρεμάσαι κελεύει Ἀλέξανδρος ἐν τῇ αὑτοῦ
and this-one to-hang orders Alexander in the his-own
γῇ, καὶ τῶν Βραχμάνων ὅσοι αἴτιοι τῆς ἀποστάσεως
land and of-the Brahmins as-many-as responsible for-the revolt
τῷ Μουσικανῷ κατέστησαν. ἀφίκετο δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ τῶν
— to-Musicanus had-become arrived and to-him also the —
Πατάλων τῆς χώρας ἄρχων, ὃ δὴ τὸ Δέλτα ἔφην εἶναι
of-Patala the country ruler which indeed the Delta I-said to-be
τὸ πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποιούμενον, μεῖζον ἔτι
the by the river — Indus being-made greater still
τοῦ Δέλτα τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου, καὶ οὗτος τήν τε χώραν αὐτῷ
than-the Delta the Egyptian and this-one the both country to-him
ἐνεδίδου πᾶσαν καὶ αὑτόν τε καὶ τὰ αὑτοῦ ἐπέτρεψεν.
surrendered all and himself both and the his-own entrusted
τοῦτον μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τῇ αὑτοῦ ἀρχῇ ἐκπέμπει αὖθις 17.3
this-one indeed indeed to the his-own rule he-sends-out again
παραγγείλας παρασκευάζειν ὅσα ἐς ὑποδοχὴν τῇ
having-ordered to-prepare whatever for reception for-the
στρατιᾷ· αὐτὸς δὲ Κρατερὸν μὲν τήν τε Ἀττάλου τάξιν
army himself and Craterus indeed the both of-Attalus battalion
ἄγοντα καὶ τὴν Μελεάγρου καὶ Ἀντιγένους καὶ τῶν
leading and the of-Meleager and of-Antigenes and of-the
τοξοτῶν ἔστιν οὓς καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων τε καὶ ἄλλων
archers there-are whom and of-the companions both and other
Μακεδόνων ὅσους ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἀπομάχους ὄντας ἤδη
Macedonians as-many-as to Macedonia unfit-for-service being already
ἔστελλε τὴν ἐπ᾽ Ἀραχωτῶν καὶ Ζαραγγῶν ἔπεμπεν
he-was-sending the through Arachotians and Zarangians he-sent
ἐς Καρμανίαν, καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας τούτῳ ἄγειν ἔδωκεν·
to Carmania and the elephants to-this-one to-lead he-gave

17.4 τὴν δὲ ἄλλην στρατιάν, ὅση γε μὴ ξὺν αὐτῷ
the and other army as-much-as at-least not with him
κατέπλει ὡς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, *** Ἡφαιστίων ἐπετάχθη,
sailed-down as toward sea (lacuna) Hephaestion was-put-in-charge-of
Πείθωνα δὲ τούς τε ἱππακοντιστὰς ἄγοντα καὶ τοὺς
Peithon and the both mounted-javelin-men leading and the
Ἀγριᾶνας ἐς τὴν ἐπέκεινα ὄχθην τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ διαβιβάσας,
Agrianians to the opposite bank — of-Indus having-taken-across
οὐχ ᾗπερ Ἡφαιστίων τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγειν ἤμελλε, τάς τε
not where Hephaestion the army to-lead was-about the both
ἐκτετειχισμένας ἤδη πόλεις ξυνοικίσαι ἐκέλευσε καὶ εἰ δή
fortified already cities to-populate he-ordered and if indeed
τινα νεωτερίζοιτο πρὸς τῶν ταύτῃ Ἰνδῶν καὶ ταῦτα
anything should-be-stirred-up by the there Indians also these-things
ἐς κόσμον καταστήσαντα ξυμβάλλειν οἱ ἐς τὰ Πάταλα.
into order having-settled to-join him at — Patala
17.5 ἤδη δὲ τρίτην ἡμέραν αὐτῷ τοῦ πλοῦ ἔχοντι ἐξαγγέλλεται
already and third day for-him of-the voyage having is-reported
ὅτι ὁ τῶν Πατάλων ὕπαρχος ξυλλαβὼν τῶν Παταλέων
that the — of-Patala hyparch having-gathered of-the Patalians
τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀποδεδρακὼς οἴχοιτο ἀπολιπὼν τὴν χώραν
the most having-run-away is-gone having-left the country
ἔρημον· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ πλείονι ἢ πρόσθεν σπουδῇ
deserted and for this greater than before with-haste
κατέπλει Ἀλέξανδρος. ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο ἐς τὰ Πάταλα,
sailed-down Alexander when and he-arrived at — Patala
τήν τε πόλιν καὶ τὴν χώραν ἔρημον καταλαμβάνει τῶν
the both city and the country deserted finds of-the
ἐνοικούντων τε καὶ ἐπεργαζομένων.
inhabitants both and cultivators

ὁ δὲ κατὰ δίωξιν τῶν φευγόντων ἐκπέμψας τῆς στρατιᾶς 17.6
he and in pursuit of-the fleeing having-sent-out of-the army
τοὺς κουφοτάτους, ἐπεί τινες αὐτῶν ξυνελήφθησαν,
the lightest when some of-them were-captured
ἀποπέμπει τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ἄλλους, ἐντειλάμενος
he-sends these to the others having-instructed
ἐπανιέναι θαρροῦντας· εἶναι γὰρ αὐτοῖς τήν τε πόλιν
to-return confident to-be for for-them the both city
οἰκεῖν ὡς πρόσθεν καὶ τὴν χώραν ἐργάζεσθαι. καὶ
to-inhabit as before and the country to-cultivate and
ἐπανῆλθον οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν.
returned the most of-them

VI · PATALA AND THE SEA

Alexander leaves Hephaestion to fortify a citadel at Patala and sends men to dig wells in the desert around it, where neighboring barbarians attack them. He sails down the right branch of the Indus without guides and loses ships to a storm. The ebb tide, unknown to the Macedonians, strands the fleet on dry ground, and the returning flood wrecks some of the ships. From the island of Cillutas he sails out into the open sea, sacrifices bulls to Poseidon, and throws a golden bowl into the waves, praying for Nearchus' voyage. Back at Patala he explores the left branch, finds it easier, and builds harbors and dockyards for the fleet.

αὐτὸς δὲ Ἡφαιστίωνι προστάξας τειχίζειν ἐν τοῖς 18.1
himself and to-Hephaestion having-ordered to-fortify in —
Πατάλοις ἄκραν ἀποπέμπει ἐς τὴν ἄνυδρον τῆς πλησίον
Patala a-citadel he-sends-away into the waterless of-the neighboring
γῆς φρέατά τε ὀρύξοντας καὶ οἰκήσιμον τὴν χώραν
land wells both about-to-dig and habitable the country
κατασκευάσοντας. καὶ τούτοις ἐπέθεντο τῶν προσχώρων
about-to-make and these attacked of-the neighboring

τινὲς βαρβάρων, καὶ ἔστι μὲν οὓς διέφθειραν αὐτῶν
some barbarians and there-are indeed whom they-destroyed of-them
ἄφνω προσπεσόντες, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ σφῶν ἀποβαλόντες
suddenly having-fallen-upon many and also of-themselves having-lost
ἔφυγον ἐς τὴν ἔρημον, ὥστε ἐπιτελεσθῆναι τοῖς
they-fled into the desert so-that to-be-completed for-those
ἐκπεμφθεῖσι τὰ ἔργα προσγενομένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἄλλης
sent-out the works having-joined them also other
στρατιᾶς, ἣν Ἀλέξανδρος πυθόμενος τῶν βαρβάρων τὴν
army which Alexander having-learned of-the barbarians the
ἐπίθεσιν ἐστάλκει μεθέξοντας τοῦ ἔργου.
attack had-sent about-to-share-in the work

18.2 περὶ δὲ τοῖς Πατάλοις σχίζεται τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὸ ὕδωρ ἐς δύο
around and — Patala splits — of-Indus the water into two
ποταμοὺς μεγάλους, καὶ οὗτοι ἀμφότεροι σώζουσι τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
rivers great and these both preserve — of-Indus
τὸ ὄνομα ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν. ἐνταῦθα ναύσταθμόν τε
the name as-far to the sea there roadstead both
καὶ νεωσοίκους ἐποίει Ἀλέξανδρος· ὡς δὲ προὐκεχωρήκει
and dockyards made Alexander when and had-advanced
αὐτῷ τὰ ἔργα, ὁ δὲ καταπλεῖν ἐπενόει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν
for-him the works he and to-sail-down intended as-far to the
ἐκβολὴν τοῦ ἐν δεξιᾷ ῥέοντος ποταμοῦ ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν.
mouth of-the on right flowing river into the sea

18.3 Λεοννάτον μὲν δὴ δοὺς αὐτῷ τῶν τε ἱππέων
Leonnatus indeed indeed having-given to-him of-the both cavalry
ἐς χιλίους καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν τε καὶ ψιλῶν ἐς
about thousand and of-the hoplites both and light-troops about
ὀκτακισχιλίους κατὰ τὴν νῆσον τὰ Πάταλα ἐκπέμπει
eight-thousand along the island — Patala he-sends-out
ἀντιπαράγειν τῷ στόλῳ, αὐτὸς δὲ τὰς μάλιστα τῶν
to-march-alongside the fleet himself and the most of-the

νεῶν ταχυναυτούσας ἀναλαβὼν ὅσαι τε ἡμιόλιαι καὶ
ships fast-sailing having-taken as-many-as both hemiolias and
τὰς τριακοντόρους πάσας καὶ τῶν κερκούρων ἔστιν οὓς
the thirty-oared-ships all and of-the light-boats there-are which
ἔπλει κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ.
sailed down the river the on right
οὐκ ἔχοντι δὲ αὐτῷ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ πλοῦ, ὅτι πεφεύγεσαν 18.4
not having and to-him a-guide of-the voyage because had-fled
οἱ ταύτῃ Ἰνδοί, ἀπορώτερα τὰ τοῦ κατάπλου ἦν·
the there Indians more-difficult the-things of-the voyage-down were
χειμών τε ἐπιγίγνεται ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίαν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀναγωγῆς
storm both comes-on on the next-day after the putting-out
καὶ ὁ ἄνεμος τῷ ῥόῳ πνέων ὑπεναντίος κοῖλόν τε
and the wind to-the current blowing contrary hollow both
ἐποίει τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τὰ σκάφη διέσειεν, ὥστε ἐπόνησαν
made the river and the hulls shook so-that were-damaged
αὐτῷ αἱ πλεῖσται τῶν νεῶν, τῶν δὲ τριακοντόρων ἔστιν
for-him the most of-the ships of-the and thirty-oared-ships there-are
αἳ καὶ πάντῃ διελύθησαν. ἔφθησαν δὲ ἐποκείλαντες
which also wholly broke-up they-got-ahead but having-beached
αὐτὰς πρὶν παντάπασιν διαπεσεῖν ἐν τῷ ὕδατι.
them before altogether to-fall-apart in the water
ἕτεραι οὖν ξυνεπήγνυντο. καὶ τῶν ψιλῶν τοὺς 18.5
others then were-built and of-the light-troops the
κουφοτάτους ἐκπέμψας ἐς τὴν προσωτέρω τῆς ὄχθης
lightest having-sent-out into the farther of-the bank
χώραν ξυλλαμβάνει τινὰς τῶν Ἰνδῶν, καὶ οὗτοι τὸ ἀπὸ
country he-seizes some of-the Indians and these the from
τοῦδε ἐξηγοῦντο αὐτῷ τὸν πόρον. ὡς δὲ ἦκον ἵναπερ
this-point guided for-him the passage when and they-came where-indeed
ἀναχεῖται ἐς εὖρος ὁ ποταμός, ὡς καὶ διακοσίους ταύτῃ
widens to breadth the river so-that even two-hundred there

σταδίους ἐπέχειν ἦπερ εὐρύτατος αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ ἦν, τό
stades to-extend where widest itself than-itself was the
τε πνεῦμα κατῄει μέγα ἀπὸ τῆς ἔξω θαλάσσης καὶ αἱ
both wind came-down great from the outer sea and the
κῶπαι ἐν κλύδωνι χαλεπῶς ἀνεφέροντο, ξυμφεύγουσιν αὖ
oars in surf with-difficulty were-raised they-flee-together again
ἐς διώρυχα, ἐς ἥντινα οἱ ἡγεμόνες αὐτῷ καθηγήσαντο.
into a-channel into which the guides for-him led
19.1 ἐνταῦθα ὁρμισάντων τὸ πάθημα ἐπιγίγνεται τῆς μεγάλης
there of-them-having-anchored the mishap comes-on of-the great
θαλάσσης ἡ ἄμπωτις, ὥστε ἐπὶ ξηροῦ ἀπελήφθησαν
sea the ebb-tide so-that on dry-land were-left
αὐτοῖς αἱ νῆες. καὶ τοῦτο οὔπω πρότερον ἐγνωκόσι τοῖς
for-them the ships and this not-yet before having-known for-the
ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἔκπληξιν μὲν καὶ αὐτὸ οὐ σμικρὰν
around Alexander amazement indeed also itself not small
παρέσχε, πολὺ δὲ δὴ ἔτι μείζονα, ὁπότε διελθούσης τῆς
provided much and indeed still greater when having-passed the
ὥρας προσῄει τε τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ τὰ σκάφη ἐμετεωρίζοντο.
time came-on both the water and the hulls were-lifted
19.2 ὅσας μὲν δὴ τῶν νεῶν ἐν τῷ πηλῷ ἑδραίας
as-many-as indeed indeed of-the ships in the mud settled
κατέλαβεν, αὗται δὲ ἀβλαβῶς τε ἐμετεωρίσθησαν καὶ
it-had-caught these and unharmed both were-lifted and
οὐδὲν χαλεπὸν παθοῦσαι ἔπλεον αὖθις· ὅσαι δὲ ἐν
nothing grievous having-suffered sailed again as-many-as but on
ξηροτέρᾳ τε τῇ γῇ καὶ οὐ βεβαίως τὴν στάσιν ἔχουσαι
drier both the ground and not firmly the position having
ὑπελείφθησαν, αὗται δὲ ἀθρόου ἐπελθόντος τοῦ κύματος
were-left-behind these and in-a-mass having-come-on the wave

αἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐμπεσοῦσαι ἐς ἀλλήλας, αἱ δὲ
the-ones indeed of-them having-fallen against one-another the-others and
πρὸς τῇ γῇ ἀραχθεῖσαι συνετρίβησαν.
against the ground dashed were-shattered
ταύτας τε οὖν ἐπεσκεύασεν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκ τῶν παρόντων 19.3
these both then repaired Alexander from the means-at-hand
καὶ ἐν κερκούροιν δυοῖν προπέμπει κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν τοὺς
and in light-boats two he-sends-ahead down the river those
κατασκεψομένους τὴν νῆσον, ἐς ἥντινα οἱ ἐπιχώριοι ἔφασκον
about-to-reconnoiter the island at which the natives said
ὁρμιστέα εἶναι αὐτῷ κατὰ τὸν πλοῦν τὸν ἐς τὴν
(a-place)-to-put-in-at to-be for-him on the voyage the to the
θάλασσαν· Κίλλουτα δὲ τῇ νήσῳ τὸ ὄνομα ἔλεγον. ὡς δὲ
sea Cillutas and to-the island the name they-said when and
ἐξηγγέλθη ὅτι ὅρμοι τε ἐν τῇ νήσῳ εἰσὶ καὶ αὐτὴ μεγάλη
it-was-reported that anchorages both in the island are and itself great
καὶ ὕδωρ ἔχουσα, ὁ μὲν ἄλλος αὐτῷ στόλος ἐς τὴν νῆσον
and water having the indeed other for-him fleet to the island
κατέσχεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ταῖς ἄριστα πλεούσαις τῶν νεῶν
put-in himself and with-the best sailing of-the ships
ἐπέκεινα προὐχώρει, ὡς ἀπιδεῖν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν ἐκβολὴν
beyond advanced so-as to-view of-the river the mouth
τὴν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν, εἰ παρέχει τὸν ἔκπλουν εὔπορον.
the into the sea whether it-provides the sailing-out easy
προελθόντες δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου σταδίους ὅσον διακοσίους 19.4
having-gone-forward and from the island stades about two-hundred
ἀφορῶσιν ἄλλην νῆσον, ταύτην ἤδη ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ.
they-descry another island this already in the sea
τότε μὲν δὴ ἐπανῆλθον ἐς τὴν ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ νῆσον,
then indeed indeed they-returned to the in the river island
καὶ πρὸς τοῖς ἄκροις αὐτῆς καθορμισθεὶς θύει τοῖς θεοῖς
and at the headlands of-it having-anchored sacrifices to-the gods

Ἀλέξανδρος ὅσοις ἔφασκεν ὅτι παρὰ τοῦ Ἄμμωνος
Alexander to-as-many-as he-said that from — Ammon
ἐπηγγελμένον ἦν θῦσαι αὐτῷ. ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν
enjoined it-was to-sacrifice for-him on and the next-day
κατέπλει ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν ἄλλην τὴν ἐν τῷ πόντῳ νῆσον,
he-sailed-down as toward the other the in the open-sea island
καὶ προσχὼν καὶ ταύτῃ ἔθυε καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἄλλας αὖ
and having-put-in also to-this-one sacrificed and there other again
θυσίας ἄλλοις τε θεοῖς καὶ ἄλλῳ τρόπῳ· καὶ ταύτας
sacrifices to-other both gods and in-another manner and these
δὲ κατ᾽ ἐπιθεσπισμὸν θύειν ἔφασκε τοῦ Ἄμμωνος.
and according-to oracle to-sacrifice he-said — of-Ammon
19.5 αὐτὸς δὲ ὑπερβαλὼν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ἐς
himself and having-passed of-the Indus river the mouths into
τὸ πέλαγος ἀνέπλει, ὡς μὲν ἔλεγεν, ἀπιδεῖν εἴ πού τις
the open-sea sailed-out as indeed he-said to-look-out if anywhere any
χώρα πλησίον ἀνίσχει ἐν τῷ πόντῳ, ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκεῖ, οὐχ
land near rises-up in the sea to-me and it-seems not
ἥκιστα ὡς πεπλευκέναι τὴν μεγάλην τὴν ἔξω Ἰνδῶν
least so-that to-have-sailed the great the outside of-Indians
θάλασσαν. ἐνταῦθα ταύρους τε σφάξας τῷ Ποσειδῶνι
sea there bulls both having-slaughtered — to-Poseidon
ἀφῆκεν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ σπείσας ἐπὶ τῇ θυσίᾳ
he-let-go into the sea and having-poured-libation at the sacrifice
τήν τε φιάλην χρυσῆν οὖσαν καὶ κρατῆρας χρυσοῦς
the both bowl golden being and mixing-bowls golden
ἐνέβαλεν ἐς τὸν πόντον χαριστήρια, εὐχόμενος σῶόν οἱ
he-threw into the sea thank-offerings praying safe for-him
παραπέμψαι τὸν στρατὸν τὸν ναυτικόν, ὅντινα ξὺν Νεάρχῳ
to-escort the force the naval which with Nearchus

ἐπενόει στέλλειν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικὸν καὶ
he-intended to-send as toward the gulf the Persian and
τὰς ἐκβολὰς τοῦ τε Εὐφράτου καὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος.
the mouths — both of-Euphrates and — of-Tigris
ἐπανελθὼν δὲ ὀπίσω ἐς τὰ Πάταλα τήν τε ἄκραν 20.1
having-returned and back to — Patala the both citadel
τετειχισμένην καταλαμβάνει καὶ Πείθωνα ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ
fortified he-finds and Peithon with the army
ἀφιγμένον καὶ τούτῳ ξύμπαντα καταπεπραγμένα ἐφ᾽
having-arrived and by-this-one everything accomplished for
οἷσπερ ἐστάλη. Ἡφαιστίων μὲν δὴ ἐτάχθη παρασκευάζειν
which-very he-was-sent Hephaestion indeed indeed was-assigned to-prepare
τὰ πρὸς τὸν ἐκτειχισμόν τε τοῦ ναυστάθμου καὶ τῶν
the-things for the fortification both of-the roadstead and of-the
νεωσοίκων τὴν κατασκευήν· καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐπενόει
dockyards the construction and for also there he-intended
στόλον ὑπολείπεσθαι νεῶν οὐκ ὀλίγων πρὸς τῇ πόλει
a-fleet to-leave-behind of-ships not few at the city
τοῖς Πατάλοις, ἵναπερ ἐσχίζετο ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Ἰνδός.
— Patala where-indeed split the river — Indus
αὐτὸς δὲ κατὰ τὸ ἕτερον στόμα τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ κατέπλει 20.2
himself and down the other mouth — of-Indus sailed-down
αὖθις ἐς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν, ὡς καταμαθεῖν, ὅπῃ
again into the great sea so-as to-learn where
εὐπορωτέρα ἡ ἐκβολὴ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἐς τὸν πόντον γίγνεται·
easier the outlet — of-Indus into the sea becomes
ἀπέχει δὲ ἀλλήλων τὰ στόματα τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ
are-distant and from-one-another the mouths of-the river —
Ἰνδοῦ ἐς σταδίους μάλιστα ὀκτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους.
Indus about stades about eight-hundred and thousand

20.3 ἐν δὲ τῷ κατάπλῳ ἀφίκετο τῆς ἐκβολῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
in and the voyage-down he-came of-the mouth of-the river
ἐς λίμνην μεγάλην, ἥντινα ἀναχεόμενος ὁ ποταμός,
to a-lake great which spreading-out the river
τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῶν πέριξ ὑδάτων ἐμβαλλόντων ἐς
perhaps and also from the surrounding waters flowing-in into
αὐτήν, μεγάλην τε ποιεῖ καὶ κόλπῳ θαλάσσης μάλιστα
it great both makes and to-a-gulf of-sea most
ἐοικυῖαν· καὶ γὰρ ἰχθύες ἤδη ἐν αὐτῇ τῶν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
resembling and for fishes already in it of-the from sea
ἐφαίνοντο, μείζονες τῶν ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ θαλάσσῃ.
appeared larger than-those in this the our sea
προσορμισθεὶς οὖν κατὰ τὴν λίμνην ἵναπερ οἱ καθηγεμόνες
having-anchored then at the lake where-indeed the guides
ἐξηγοῦντο, τῶν μὲν στρατιωτῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς καταλείπει
led of-the indeed soldiers the most he-leaves
σὺν Λεοννάτῳ αὐτοῦ καὶ τοὺς κερκούρους ξύμπαντας,
with Leonnatus there and the light-boats all
20.4 αὐτὸς δὲ ταῖς τριακοντόροις τε καὶ ἡμιολίαις ὑπερβαλὼν
himself and with-the thirty-oared-ships both and hemiolias having-passed
τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ προελθὼν καὶ ταύτῃ ἐς
the mouth — of-Indus and having-gone-forward also there into
τὴν θάλασσαν εὐπορωτέραν τε κατέμαθεν τὴν ἐπὶ τάδε
the sea easier both he-learned the on this-side
τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἐκβολὴν καὶ αὐτὸς προσορμισθεὶς τῷ αἰγιαλῷ
— of-Indus mouth and himself having-anchored at-the shore
καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τινὰς ἅμα οἱ ἔχων παρὰ θάλασσαν
and of-the cavalry some together-with himself having along sea
ᾖει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, τήν τε χώραν ὁποία τίς ἐστιν ἡ
went stages three the both country what-sort some it-is the

ἐν τῷ παράπλῳ ἐπισκεπτόμενος καὶ φρέατα ὀρύσσεσθαι
in the coasting-voyage examining and wells to-be-dug
κελεύων, ὅπως ἔχοιεν ὑδρεύεσθαι οἱ πλέοντες.
ordering so-that they-might-be-able to-draw-water the sailing
αὐτὸς μὲν δὴ ἐπανελθὼν ἐπὶ τὰς ναῦς ἀνέπλει ἐς τὰ 20.5
himself indeed indeed having-returned to the ships sailed-up to —
Πάταλα· μέρος δέ τι τῆς στρατιᾶς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα
Patala part and some of-the army the same these-things
ἐργασομένους κατὰ τὴν παραλίαν ἔπεμψεν, ἐπανιέναι καὶ
about-to-do along the coast he-sent to-return also
τούτοις προστάξας ἐς τὰ Πάταλα. αὖθις δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ
to-these having-ordered to — Patala again and as toward
τὴν λίμνην καταπλεύσας ἄλλον ναύσταθμον καὶ ἄλλους
the lake having-sailed-down another roadstead and other
νεωσοίκους ἐνταῦθα κατεσκεύασε, καὶ φυλακὴν καταλιπὼν
dockyards there he-built and a-garrison having-left
τῷ χωρίῳ σῖτόν τε ὅσον καὶ ἐς τέτταρας μῆνας
in-the place grain both as-much-as even for four months
ἐξαρκέσαι τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐσηγάγετο καὶ τἆλλ᾽ ὅσα τῷ
to-suffice for-the army he-brought-in and the-other as-many-as for-the
παράπλῳ παρεσκεύαζεν.
coasting-voyage he-prepared

The fleet waits for the monsoon to end. Alexander marches west with part of the army to dig wells for the fleet. The Arabitae flee into the desert, the Oreitae are cut down, and Hephaestion is left to found a city at Rhambacia. At the narrows the Oreitae surrender; Apollophanes becomes their satrap, and Leonnatus stays in Ora to await the fleet. In Gadrosia Aristobulus describes myrrh, nard, mangroves, and a thorn that holds hares. The road is waterless and mostly inland. The soldiers break the king's seal on grain meant for the fleet, Alexander forgives them, and he sends supplies to the coast.

21.1 ἦν δὲ ἐν μὲν τῷ τότε ἄπορος ἡ ὥρα ἐς τὸν πλοῦν·
was and in indeed the then-(time) impracticable the season for the voyage
οἱ γὰρ ἐτησίαι ἄνεμοι κατεῖχον, οἳ δὴ τῇ ὥρᾳ ἐκείνῃ
the for etesian winds prevailed which indeed in-the season that
οὐ καθάπερ παρ' ἡμῖν ἀπ' ἄρκτου, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῆς μεγάλης
not as with us from north but from the great
θαλάσσης κατὰ νότον μάλιστα ἄνεμον ἵστανται.
sea about south most wind set-in

21.2 ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος τῆς ἀρχῆς τὸ ἀπὸ Πλειάδων
from and the winter of-the beginning the-time from of-Pleiades
δύσεως ἔστε ἐπὶ τροπάς, ἃς ἐν χειμῶνι ὁ ἥλιος
setting as-far to solstice which in winter the sun
ἐπιστρέφει, πλόϊμα εἶναι ταύτῃ ἐξηγγέλλετο. τότε γὰρ
turns navigable to-be there was-reported then for
κατὰ γῆν μᾶλλον οἷα δὴ πολλῷ ὕδατι ἐξ οὐρανοῦ
over land rather as indeed with-much water from sky
βεβρεγμένην αὔρας ἵστασθαι μαλθακὰς καὶ ἐς τὸν
drenched breezes to-arise gentle and for the
παράπλουν ταῖς τε κώπαις καὶ τοῖς ἱστίοις ξυμμέτρους.
coasting-voyage for-the both oars and the sails well-suited

Νέαρχος μὲν δὴ ἐπιταχθεὶς τῷ ναυτικῷ 21.3
Nearchus indeed indeed having-been-put-in-charge-of the fleet
προσέμενε τὴν ὥραν τοῦ παράπλου, αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας
waited-for the season of-the coasting-voyage himself and having-set-out
ἐκ Πατάλων ἔστε μὲν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἀράβιον
from Patala as-far-as indeed to the river — Arabius
ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάσῃ προὐχώρει. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἀναλαβὼν
with the army whole advanced from-there and having-taken
τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν τε καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν τοὺς ἡμίσεας καὶ
of-the shield-bearers both and of-the archers the half and
τῶν πεζεταίρων καλουμένων τὰς τάξεις καὶ τῆς ἵππου τῆς
of-the foot-companions so-called the battalions and of-the cavalry the
ἑταιρικῆς τό τε ἄγημα καὶ ἴλην ἀφ' ἑκάστης ἱππαρχίας
companion the both agema and squadron from each hipparchy
καὶ τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας ξύμπαντας ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν
and the mounted-archers all as toward the sea
ἐς ἀριστερὰ ἐτράπετο, ὕδατά τε ὀρύσσειν, ὡς κατὰ τὸν
to left he-turned waters both to-dig so-that along the
παράπλουν ἄφθονα εἴη τῇ στρατιᾷ τῇ παραπλεούσῃ,
coasting-voyage abundant might-be for-the army the sailing-along
καὶ ἅμα ὡς τοῖς Ὠρείταις τοῖς ταύτῃ Ἰνδοῖς
and at-the-same-time so-that the Oreitae the there Indians
αὐτονόμοις ἐκ πολλοῦ οὖσιν ἄφνω ἐπιπεσεῖν, ὅτι μηδὲν
independent from long-ago being suddenly to-fall-upon because nothing
φίλιον αὐτοῖς ἐς αὐτόν τε καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐπέπρακτο.
friendly by-them toward him both and the army had-been-done
τῆς δὲ ὑπολειφθείσης δυνάμεως Ἡφαιστίων αὐτῷ ἀφηγεῖτο.
of-the and left-behind force Hephaestion for-him was-leading
Ἀραβῖται μὲν δή, ἔθνος καὶ τοῦτο αὐτόνομον τῶν περὶ 21.4
Arabitae indeed indeed a-people also this independent of-those around
τὸν Ἀράβιον ποταμὸν νεμομένων, οὔτε ἀξιόμαχοι δόξαντες
the Arabius river dwelling neither a-match having-thought

εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὔτε ὑποδῦναι ἐθελήσαντες, ὡς προσάγοντα
to-be for-Alexander nor to-submit having-wished when approaching
ἐπύθοντο Ἀλέξανδρον, φεύγουσιν ἐς τὴν ἔρημον. Ἀλέξανδρος
they-learned Alexander flee into the desert Alexander
δὲ διαβὰς τὸν Ἀράβιον ποταμὸν στενόν τε καὶ ὀλίγου
and having-crossed the Arabius river narrow both and of-little
ὕδατος καὶ διελθὼν ἐν νυκτὶ τῆς ἐρήμου τὴν πολλὴν
water and having-gone-through in night of-the desert the most
ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω πρὸς τῇ οἰκουμένῃ ἦν· καὶ τοὺς μὲν πεζοὺς
toward the dawn near the inhabited-land was and the indeed infantry
ἐν τάξει ἐκέλευσεν ἕπεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν
in order he-ordered to-follow the and cavalry having-taken
αὐτὸς καὶ ἐς ἴλας κατανείμας, ὅπως ἐπὶ πλεῖστον τοῦ
himself and into squadrons having-divided so-that over most of-the
πεδίου ἐπέχοιεν, ἐπῄει τὴν χώραν τῶν Ὡρειτῶν.
plain they-might-extend he-invaded the country of-the Oreitae
21.5 ὅσοι μὲν δὴ ἐς ἀλκὴν αὐτῶν ἐτράποντο κατεκόπησαν
as-many-as indeed indeed to resistance of-them turned were-cut-down
πρὸς τῶν ἱππέων, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ἑάλωσαν. ὁ
by the cavalry many and also alive were-taken he
δὲ τότε μὲν κατεστρατοπέδευσε πρὸς ὕδατι οὐ πολλῷ,
and then indeed encamped by water not much
ὡς δὲ καὶ οἱ περὶ Ἡφαιστίωνα αὐτῷ ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἦσαν,
when and also the around Hephaestion with-him together already were
προὐχώρει ἐς τὸ πρόσω. ἀφικόμενος δὲ εἰς κώμην,
he-advanced to the forward having-arrived and at a-village
ἥπερ ἦν μεγίστη τοῦ ἔθνους τοῦ Ὡρειτῶν, Ῥαμβακία
which-very was greatest of-the people of-the Oreitae Rhambacia
ἐκαλεῖτο ἡ κώμη, τόν τε χῶρον ἐπῄνεσε καὶ ἐδόκει ἂν
was-called the village the both place he-praised and it-seemed —

αὐτῷ πόλις ξυνοικισθεῖσα μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων γενέσθαι.
to-him a-city founded great and prosperous to-become
Ἡφαιστίωνα μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὑπελείπετο.
Hephaestion indeed indeed for these-purposes he-left-behind
αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν αὖθις τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν καὶ τῶν 22.1
himself and having-taken again of-the shield-bearers and of-the
Ἀγριάνων τοὺς ἡμίσεας καὶ τὸ ἄγημα τῶν ἱππέων καὶ
Agrianians the half and the agema of-the cavalry and
τοὺς ἱπποτοξότας προῆει ὡς ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια τῶν τε
the mounted-archers advanced as toward the borders of-the both
Γαδρωσῶν καὶ Ὠρειτῶν, ἵναπερ στενή τε ἡ πάροδος
Gadrosians and Oreitae where-indeed narrow both the passage
αὐτῷ εἶναι ἐξηγγέλλετο καὶ οἱ Ὠρεῖται τοῖς Γαδρωσοῖς
for-him to-be was-reported and the Oreitae with-the Gadrosians
ξυντεταγμένοι πρὸ τῶν στενῶν στρατοπεδεύειν, ὡς
having-been-drawn-up-together before the narrows to-encamp so-as
εἴρξοντες τῆς παρόδου Ἀλέξανδρον.
about-to-bar from-the passage Alexander
καὶ ἦσαν μὲν ταύτῃ τεταγμένοι, ὡς δὲ προάγων ἤδη 22.2
and they-were indeed there drawn-up when and advancing already
ἐξηγγέλλετο, οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν στενῶν λιπόντες
he-was-reported the indeed most fled from the narrows having-left
τὴν φυλακήν, οἱ δὲ ἡγεμόνες τῶν Ὠρειτῶν ἀφίκοντο παρ᾽
the guard the and leaders of-the Oreitae came to
αὐτὸν σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὸ ἔθνος ἐνδιδόντες. τούτοις μὲν
him them both selves and the people surrendering to-these indeed
δὴ προστάττει ξυγκαλέσαντας τὸ πλῆθος τῶν Ὠρειτῶν
indeed he-orders having-called-together the multitude of-the Oreitae
πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὰ σφέτερα ἤθη, ὡς δεινὸν οὐδὲν πεισομένους·
to-send to the their-own abodes as terrible nothing about-to-suffer
σατράπην δὲ καὶ τούτοις ἐπιτάσσει Ἀπολλοφάνην·
satrap and also over-these he-sets Apollophanes

22.3 καὶ ξὺν τούτῳ ἀπολείπει Λεοννάτον τὸν σωματοφύλακα
and with this-one he-leaves Leonnatus the bodyguard
ἐν Ὥροις, ἔχοντα τούς τε Ἀγριᾶνας ξύμπαντας καὶ τῶν
in Ora having the both Agrianians all and of-the
τοξοτῶν ἔστιν οὓς καὶ τῶν ἱππέων καὶ ἄλλους πεζούς
archers there-are whom and of-the cavalry and other infantry
τε καὶ ἱππέας Ἕλληνας μισθοφόρους, τό τε ναυτικὸν
both and cavalry Greek mercenaries the both fleet
ὑπομένειν ἔστ' ἂν περιπλεύσῃ τὴν χώραν καὶ τὴν πόλιν
to-wait-for until — it-should-sail-round the country and the city
ξυνοικίζειν καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς Ὠρείτας κοσμεῖν, ὅπως
to-populate and the-affairs among the Oreitae to-order so-that
μᾶλλόν τι προσέχοιεν τῷ σατράπῃ τὸν νοῦν. αὐτὸς
more somewhat they-might-turn to-the satrap the mind himself
δὲ ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ τῇ πολλῇ, καὶ γὰρ καὶ Ἡφαιστίων
and with the army the great and for also Hephaestion
ἀφίκετο ἄγων αὐτῷ τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας, προὐχώρει ὡς
arrived leading for-him the left-behind advanced as
ἐπὶ Γαδρωσοὺς ἔρημον τὴν πολλήν.
toward Gadrosians desert the most-(part)

22.4 καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ ταύτῃ λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος σμύρνης
and in the desert this says Aristobulus of-myrrh
πολλὰ δένδρα πεφυκέναι μείζονα ἢ κατὰ τὴν ἄλλην
many trees to-have-grown larger than according-to the other
σμύρναν, καὶ τοὺς Φοίνικας τοὺς κατ' ἐμπορίαν τῇ στρατιᾷ
myrrh and the Phoenicians the for trade the army
ξυνεπομένους ξυλλέγοντας τὸ δάκρυον τῆς σμύρνης πολὺ
following-along gathering the tear of-the myrrh much
γὰρ εἶναι, οἷα δὴ ἐκ μεγάλων τε τῶν πρέμνων καὶ οὔπω
for to-be as indeed from great both the stems and not-yet
πρόσθεν ξυλλελεγμένον ἐμπλήσαντας τὰ ὑποζύγια ἄγειν.
before gathered having-filled the pack-animals to-carry

ἔχειν δὲ τὴν ἔρημον ταύτην καὶ νάρδου ῥίζαν πολλήν τε 22.5
to-have and the desert this also of-nard root much both
καὶ εὔοδμον καὶ ταύτην ξυλλέγειν τοὺς Φοίνικας· πολὺ
and fragrant and this to-gather the Phoenicians much
δὲ εἶναι αὐτῆς τὸ καταπατούμενον πρὸς τῆς στρατιᾶς,
and to-be of-it the trampled by the army
καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ πατουμένου ὀδμὴν ἡδεῖαν κατέχειν ἐπὶ πολὺ
and from the being-trampled scent sweet to-fill over much
τῆς χώρας. τοσόνδε εἶναι τὸ πλῆθος·
of-the country so-great to-be the quantity
εἶναι δὲ καὶ ἄλλα δένδρα ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ, τὸ μέν τι δάφνῃ 22.6
to-be and also other trees in the desert the-one indeed some to-laurel
ἐοικὸς τὸ φύλλον, καὶ τοῦτο ἐν τοῖς προσκλυζομένοις τῇ
resembling the leaf and this in the washed by-the
θαλάσσῃ χωρίοις πεφυκέναι· καὶ ἀπολείπεσθαι μὲν τὰ
sea places to-have-grown and to-be-left indeed the
δένδρα πρὸς τῆς ἀμπώτεως ἐπὶ ξηροῦ, ἐπελθόντος δὲ τοῦ
trees by the ebb-tide on dry-land having-come-on and the
ὕδατος ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ πεφυκότα φαίνεσθαι· τῶν δὲ
water in the sea grown to-appear of-the-others and
καὶ ἀεὶ τὰς ῥίζας τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἐπικλύζεσθαι, ὅσα ἐν
even always the roots by-the sea to-be-washed as-many-as in
κοίλοις χωρίοις ἐπεφύκει, ἔνθενπερ οὐχ ὑπενόστει τὸ ὕδωρ,
hollow places had-grown whence-very not retreated the water
καὶ ὅμως οὐ διαφθείρεσθαι τὸ δένδρον πρὸς τῆς θαλάσσης.
and nevertheless not to-be-destroyed the tree by the sea
εἶναι δὲ τὰ δένδρα ταύτῃ πήχεων καὶ τριάκοντα ἔστιν 22.7
to-be and the trees there of-cubits even thirty there-are
ἃ αὐτῶν, τυχεῖν τε ἀνθοῦντα ἐκείνῃ τῇ ὥρᾳ, καὶ τὸ
which of-them to-happen both flowering in-that the season and the
ἄνθος εἶναι τῷ λευκῷ μάλιστα ἴῳ προσφερές, τὴν ὀδμὴν
flower to-be to-the white most violet like the scent

δὲ πολύ τι ὑπερφέρον. καὶ ἄλλον εἶναι καυλὸν ἐκ γῆς
but much somewhat surpassing and another to-be stalk from earth
πεφυκότα ἀκάνθης, καὶ τούτῳ ἐπεῖναι ἰσχυρὰν τὴν ἄκανθαν,
grown of-thorn and on-this to-be-on strong the thorn
ὥστε ἤδη τινῶν καὶ παριππευόντων ἐμπλακεῖσαν τῇ
so-that already of-some even riding-past having-been-entangled in-the
ἐσθῆτι κατασπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου μᾶλλόν τι τὸν
clothing to-have-pulled-down from the horse rather somewhat the
ἱππέα ἢ αὐτὴν ἀποσχισθῆναι ἀπὸ τοῦ καυλοῦ.
rider than itself to-be-torn-off from the stalk
22.8 καὶ τῶν λαγῶν λέγεται ὅτι παραθεόντων εἴχοντο ἐν ταῖς
and of-the hares it-is-said that running-past were-held in the
θριξὶν αἱ ἄκανθαι καὶ ὅτι οὕτως ἡλίσκοντο οἱ λαγῶ,
hairs the thorns and that so were-caught the hares
καθάπερ ὑπὸ ἰξοῦ αἱ ὄρνιθες ἢ τοῖς ἀγκίστροις οἱ ἰχθύες,
just-as by birdlime the birds or by-the hooks the fishes
σιδήρῳ δὲ ὅτι διακοπῆναι οὐ χαλεπὴ ἦν· καὶ ὀπὸν ὅτι
by-iron but that to-be-cut-through not difficult it-was and juice that
ἀνίει πολὺν ὁ καυλὸς τῆς ἀκάνθης τεμνομένης, ἔτι
it-gave-off much the stalk of-the thorn being-cut still
πλείονα ἢ αἱ συκαῖ τοῦ ἦρος καὶ δριμύτερον.
more than the fig-trees of-the spring and more-pungent
23.1 ἔνθεν δὲ διὰ τῆς Γαδρωσῶν χώρας ᾔει ὁδὸν χαλεπὴν καὶ
thence and through the of-Gadrosians country he-went a-road difficult and
ἄπορον τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, τῶν τε ἄλλων καὶ ὕδωρ πολλαχοῦ
lacking of-the provisions of-the both other-things and water in-many-places
τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἦν· ἀλλὰ νύκτωρ ἠναγκάζοντο γῆν πολλὴν
for-the army not was but by-night they-were-forced land much
πορεύεσθαι καὶ προσωτέρω ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, ἐπεὶ αὐτῷ γε
to-travel and farther from sea since to-him at-least
ἐν σπουδῇ ἦν ἐλθεῖν τὰ παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν τῆς χώρας
in eagerness it-was to-go the-parts along the sea of-the country

καὶ λιμένας τε ἰδεῖν τοὺς ὄντας καὶ ὅσα γε ἐν παρόδῳ
and harbors both to-see the being and whatever at-least in passing
δυνατὰ γένοιτο τῷ ναυτικῷ παρασκευάσαι, ἢ φρέατα
possible might-become for-the fleet to-prepare either wells
ὀρύξαντας ἢ ἀγορᾶς που ἢ ὅρμου ἐπιμεληθέντας.
having-dug or of-a-market somewhere or of-anchorage having-taken-care
ἀλλὰ ἦν γὰρ ἔρημα παντάπασιν τὰ πρὸς τῇ θαλάσσῃ τῆς 23.2
but was for deserted altogether the-parts by the sea of-the
Γαδρωσῶν γῆς, ὁ δὲ Θόαντα τὸν Μανδροδώρου καταπέμπει
of-Gadrosians land he and Thoas the (son)-of-Mandrodorus sends-down
ἐπὶ θάλασσαν ξὺν ὀλίγοις ἱππεῦσιν, κατασκεψόμενον εἴ
to sea with few horsemen about-to-reconnoiter if
πού τις ὅρμος ὢν τυγχάνει ταύτῃ ἢ ὕδωρ οὐ πόρρω
anywhere some anchorage being happens there or water not far
ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἤ τι ἄλλο τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
from sea or anything other of-the provisions
καὶ οὗτος ἐπανελθὼν ἀπήγγειλεν ἁλιέας τινὰς καταλαβεῖν 23.3
and this-one having-returned reported fishermen some to-have-found
ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἐν καλύβαις πνιγηραῖς· πεποιῆσθαι
on the shore in huts stifling to-have-been-made
δὲ τὰς καλύβας ξυνθέντας τὰς κόγχας· στέγην δὲ
and the huts having-put-together the shells roof and
εἶναι αὐταῖς τὰς ἀκάνθας τῶν ἰχθύων· καὶ τούτους τοὺς
to-be for-them the spines of-the fishes and these the
ἁλιέας ὕδατι ὀλίγῳ διαχρῆσθαι χαλεπῶς διαμωμένους
fishermen with-water little to-make-do with-difficulty digging-through
τὸν κάχληκα, καὶ οὐδὲ τούτῳ πάντῃ γλυκεῖ τῷ ὕδατι.
the shingle and not-even this wholly sweet the water
ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς χωρόν τινα τῆς Γαδρωσίας 23.4
when and arrived Alexander at a-place a-certain — of-Gadrosia
ἵνα ἀφθονώτερος ἦν σῖτος, διανέμει ἐς τὰ ὑποζύγια
where more-abundant was grain he-distributes onto the pack-animals

τὸν καταληφθέντα καὶ τοῦτον σημηνάμενος τῇ ἑαυτοῦ
the seized and this having-sealed with-the his-own
σφραγῖδι κατακομίζεσθαι κελεύει ὡς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν. ἐν ᾧ
seal to-be-carried-down he-orders as toward sea in which
δὲ ᾔει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν σταθμόν, ἔνθενπερ ἐγγυτάτω ἦν ἡ
and he-went as toward the stage whence-very nearest was the
θάλασσα, ἐν τούτῳ ὀλίγα φροντίσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται τῆς
sea in this little having-cared the soldiers for-the
σφραγῖδος αὐτοί τε οἱ φύλακες τῷ σίτῳ ἐχρήσαντο καὶ
seal themselves both the guards the grain used and
ὅσοι μάλιστα λιμῷ ἐπιέζοντο καὶ τούτοις μετέδωκαν.
as-many-as most by-hunger were-pressed also to-these gave-a-share
23.5 ἐς τοσόνδε γὰρ πρὸς τοῦ κακοῦ ἐνικῶντο, ὡς τὸν
to so-great for by the evil they-were-overcome so-that the
πρόδηλον καὶ παρόντα ἤδη ὄλεθρον τοῦ ἀφανοῦς τε καὶ
evident and present already destruction than-the unseen both and
πρόσω ἔτι ὄντος ἐκ τοῦ βασιλέως κινδύνου ξὺν λογισμῷ
far still being from the king danger with reasoning
ἔδοξέ σφισιν ἔμπροσθεν ποιήσασθαι. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
it-seemed to-them before to-put and Alexander
καταμαθὼν τὴν ἀνάγκην ξυνέγνω τοῖς πράξασιν. αὐτὸς δέ,
having-perceived the necessity pardoned those having-done-it himself and
ὅσα ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐπιδραμὼν ξυναγαγεῖν ἠδυνήθη εἰς
as-much-as from the country having-run-over to-collect he-was-able for
ἐπισιτισμὸν τῇ στρατιᾷ τῇ περιπλεούσῃ ξὺν τῷ στόλῳ,
provisioning for-the army the sailing-around with the fleet
ταῦτα κομίσοντα πέμπει Κρηθέα τὸν Καλλατιανόν.
these-things about-to-convey sends Cretheus the Callatian
23.6 καὶ τοῖς ἐγχωρίοις προσετάχθη ἐκ τῶν ἄνω τόπων σῖτόν
and to-the natives it-was-ordered from the upper places grain
τε ὅσον δυνατοὶ ἦσαν κατακομίσαι ἀλέσαντας καὶ τὰς
both as-much-as able they-were to-bring-down having-ground and the

βαλάνους τὰς τῶν φοινίκων καὶ πρόβατα ἐς ἀγορὰν τῷ
dates the of-the palms and sheep for market for-the
στρατῷ. καὶ ἐς ἄλλον αὖ τόπον Τήλεφον κατέπεμψε
army and to other again place Telephus he-sent-down
τῶν ἑταίρων σὺν σίτῳ οὐ πολλῷ ἀληλεσμένῳ.
of-the companions with grain not much ground

VIII · THE MARCH THROUGH THE DESERT

The march from Ora to Pura takes sixty days, and most writers say the army suffered more there than in all the rest of Asia. Nearchus says Alexander went this way to outdo Semiramis and Cyrus, who had lost their armies there, and to supply the fleet. The heat, the sand, and the long night marches kill men and beasts; the soldiers slaughter the pack animals, the sick are left behind, and a flash flood sweeps away the women and children. When a little water is brought to Alexander in a helmet, he pours it out before the army. The guides lose the way, and Alexander finds the sea and water on the shore.

αὐτὸς δὲ προὐχώρει ὡς ἐς τὰ βασίλεια τῶν Γαδρωσῶν, 24.1
himself and advanced as to the palace of-the Gadrosians
ὁ δὲ χῶρος Ποῦρα ὀνομάζεται, ἵναπερ ἀφίκετο ἐξ
the and place Pura is-named where-indeed he-arrived from
Ὥρων ὁρμηθεὶς ἐν ἡμέραις ταῖς πάσαις ἑξήκοντα. καὶ
Ora having-set-out in days the all sixty and
λέγουσιν οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ξυγγραψάντων τὰ ἀμφ᾽
say the most of-those having-written the-things about
Ἀλέξανδρον οὐδὲ τὰ ξύμπαντα ὅσα ἐταλαιπώρησεν
Alexander not-even the all-things as-many-as suffered
αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ἡ στρατιὰ ξυμβληθῆναι ἄξια εἶναι
for-him in — Asia the army to-be-compared worthy to-be
τοῖς τῇδε πονηθεῖσι πόνοις.
with-the here having-been-toiled toils

24.2 οὐ μὴν ἀγνοήσαντα Ἀλέξανδρον τῆς ὁδοῦ τὴν χαλεπότητα
not however being-ignorant Alexander of-the road the difficulty
ταύτῃ ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν μόνος Νέαρχος λέγει ὧδε,
this-way to-have-gone this indeed alone Nearchus says thus
ἀλλὰ ἀκούσαντα γὰρ ὅτι οὔπω τις πρόσθεν διελθὼν
but having-heard for that not-yet anyone before having-gone-through
ταύτῃ ξὺν στρατιᾷ ἀπεσώθη, ὅτι μὴ Σεμίραμις ἐξ
this-way with an-army got-away-safe except — Semiramis from
Ἰνδῶν ἔφυγε. καὶ ταύτην δὲ ἔλεγον οἱ ἐπιχώριοι σὺν
Indians fled and this-one and said the natives with
εἴκοσι μόνοις τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀποσωθῆναι, Κῦρον δὲ τὸν
twenty only of-the army to-have-got-away-safe Cyrus and the
Καμβύσου σὺν ἑπτὰ μόνοις καὶ τοῦτον.
(son)-of-Cambyses with seven only and this-one

24.3 ἐλθεῖν γὰρ δὴ καὶ Κῦρον ἐς τοὺς χώρους τούτους
to-have-come for indeed also Cyrus into the places these
ὡς ἐσβαλοῦντα ἐς τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν, φθάσαι δὲ
so-as about-to-invade into the of-Indians land to-have-anticipated and
ὑπὸ τῆς ἐρημίας τε καὶ ἀπορίας τῆς ὁδοῦ ταύτης
by the desolation both and lack of-the road this
ἀπολέσαντα τὴν πολλὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς. καὶ ταῦτα
having-lost the most of-the army and these-things
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐξαγγελλόμενα ἔριν ἐμβαλεῖν πρὸς Κῦρον καὶ
to-Alexander being-reported rivalry to-have-thrown against Cyrus and
Σεμίραμιν. τούτων τε οὖν ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ὡς
Semiramis of-these both then for-the-sake and at-the-same-time so-that
τῷ ναυτικῷ ἐγγύθεν ἐκπορίζεσθαι τὰ ἀναγκαῖα, λέγει
for-the fleet from-near to-provide the necessities says
Νέαρχος ταύτην τραπῆναι Ἀλέξανδρον.
Nearchus this-way to-have-turned Alexander

τό τε οὖν καῦμα ἐπιφλέγον καὶ τοῦ ὕδατος τὴν ἀπορίαν 24.4
the both then heat blazing and of-the water the lack
πολλὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς διαφθεῖραι καὶ μάλιστα δὴ τὰ
many of-the army to-have-destroyed and most indeed the
ὑποζύγια· ταῦτα μὲν πρὸς τοῦ βάθους τε τῆς ψάμμου καὶ
pack-animals these indeed by the depth both of-the sand and
τῆς θέρμης, ὅτι κεκαυμένη ἦν, τὰ πολλὰ δὲ καὶ δίψει
of-the heat because burned it-was the most and also by-thirst
ἀπόλλυσθαι· καὶ γὰρ καὶ γηλόφοις ἐπιτυγχάνειν ὑψηλοῖς
to-perish and for also with-hills to-meet high
ψάμμου βαθείας, οὐ νεναγμένης, ἀλλ᾽ οἵας δέχεσθαι καθάπερ
of-sand deep not packed but such-as to-receive just-as
ἐς πηλὸν ἢ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐς χιόνα ἀπάτητον ἐπιβαίνοντας.
into mud or still more into snow untrodden those-stepping-on-it
καὶ ἅμα ἐν ταῖς προσβάσεσί τε καὶ καταβαίνοντας 24.5
and at-the-same-time in the ascents both and descending
τούς τε ἵππους καὶ τοὺς ἡμιόνους ἔτι μᾶλλον κακοπαθεῖν
the both horses and the mules still more to-suffer
τῷ ἀνωμάλῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ καὶ ἅμα οὐ βεβαίῳ,
by-the unevenness of-the road and at-the-same-time not firm
τῶν τε σταθμῶν τὰ μήκη πιέσαι οὐχ ἥκιστα τὴν
of-the both stages the lengths to-have-oppressed not least the
στρατιάν· ἀπορία γὰρ ὕδατος οὐ ξύμμετρος οὖσα μᾶλλόν
army lack for of-water not proportioned being more
τι ἦγε πρὸς ἀνάγκην τὰς πορείας ποιεῖσθαι.
somewhat led to necessity the marches to-make
ὁπότε μὲν δὴ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπελθόντες τὴν ὁδὸν ἥντινα 24.6
whenever indeed indeed by-the night having-gone-over the road which
ἀνύσαι ἐχρῆν ἕωθεν πρὸς ὕδωρ ἔλθοιεν, οὐ πάντῃ
to-accomplish it-was-necessary at-dawn to water they-came not wholly
ἐταλαιπωροῦντο· προχωρούσης δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας ὑπὸ μήκους
were-distressed advancing and the day by length

τῆς ὁδοῦ, εἰ ὁδοιποροῦντες ἔτι ἐγκαταληφθείεν, ἐνταῦθα
of-the road if marching still they-were-overtaken there
ἂν ἐταλαιπώρουν πρὸς τοῦ καύματός τε καὶ ἅμα
— they-suffered by the heat both and at-the-same-time
δίψει ἀπαύστῳ συνεχόμενοι.
by-thirst unceasing being-gripped

25.1 τῶν δὲ δὴ ὑποζυγίων πολὺς ὁ φθόρος καὶ ἑκούσιος τῇ
of-the and indeed pack-animals great the destruction and deliberate by-the
στρατιᾷ ἐγίγνετο· ξυνιόντες γάρ, ὁπότε ἐπιλίποι σφᾶς
army happened coming-together for whenever failed them
τὰ σιτία, καὶ τῶν ἵππων τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀποσφάζοντες
the provisions also of-the horses the most slaughtering
καὶ τῶν ἡμιόνων τὰ κρέα ἐσιτοῦντο καὶ ἔλεγον δίψει
and of-the mules the meat they-ate and said by-thirst
ἀποθανεῖν αὐτοὺς ἢ ὑπὸ καμάτου ἐκλιπόντας· καὶ ὁ τὴν
to-have-died them or by fatigue having-given-out and the the
ἀτρέκειαν τοῦ ἔργου ἐξελέγξων ὑπό τε τοῦ πόνου οὐδεὶς
truth of-the deed about-to-test by both the toil no-one
ἦν καὶ ὅτι ξύμπαντες τὰ αὐτὰ ἡμάρτανον.
was and because all the same-things erred

25.2 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον μὲν οὐκ ἐλελήθει τὰ γιγνόμενα,
and Alexander indeed not had-escaped-notice-of the-things happening
ἴασιν δὲ τῶν παρόντων ἑώρα τὴν τῆς ἀγνοίας
remedy but of-the present-circumstances he-saw the of-the ignorance
προσποίησιν μᾶλλόν τι ἢ τὴν ὡς γιγνωσκομένων
pretense more somewhat than the as of-things-known
ἐπιχώρησιν. οὔκουν οὐδὲ τοὺς νόσῳ κάμνοντας τῆς
permission not-therefore even the by-disease suffering of-the
στρατιᾶς οὐδὲ τοὺς διὰ κάματον ὑπολειπομένους ἐν ταῖς
army nor those through fatigue being-left-behind on the
ὁδοῖς ἄγειν ἔτι ἦν εὐμαρῶς ἀπορίᾳ τε τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ
roads to-lead any-longer was easily from-lack both of-the pack-animals and

ὅτι τὰς ἁμάξας αὐτοὶ κατέκοπτον, ἀπόρους οὔσας αὐτοῖς
because the wagons themselves they-broke-up impassable being for-them
ὑπὸ βάθους τῆς ψάμμου ἄγεσθαι καὶ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις
because-of depth of-the sand to-be-drawn and because in the first
σταθμοῖς διὰ ταῦτα ἐξηναγκάζοντο οὐ τὰς βραχυτάτας
stages on-account-of these-things they-were-forced not the shortest
ἰέναι τῶν ὁδῶν, ἀλλὰ τὰς εὐπορωτάτας τοῖς ζεύγεσι.
to-go of-the roads but the easiest for-the teams
καὶ οὕτως οἱ μὲν νόσῳ κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς ὑπελείποντο, 25.3
and so the-ones indeed by-disease along the roads were-left-behind
οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ καμάτου ἢ καύματος ἢ τῷ δίψει οὐκ
the-others and from fatigue or heat or the thirst not
ἀντέχοντες, καὶ οὔτε οἱ ἄξοντες ἦσαν οὔτε οἱ μένοντες
holding-out and neither those about-to-lead were nor those staying
θεραπεύσοντες· σπουδῇ γὰρ πολλῇ ἐγίγνετο ὁ στόλος, καὶ
about-to-tend in-haste for much was the march and
ἐν τῷ ὑπὲρ τοῦ παντὸς προθύμῳ τὸ καθ' ἑκάστους
in the for the whole eagerness the-welfare by each-one
ξὺν ἀνάγκῃ ἠμελεῖτο· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὕπνῳ κάτοχοι κατὰ
with necessity was-neglected the-others and also by-sleep overcome along
τὰς ὁδοὺς γενόμενοι οἷα δὴ νυκτὸς τὸ πολὺ τὰς πορείας
the roads having-become as indeed by-night the most the marches
ποιούμενοι, ἔπειτα ἐξαναστάντες, οἷς μὲν δύναμις ἔτι
making then having-risen to-whom indeed strength still
ἦν κατὰ τὰ ἴχνη τῆς στρατιᾶς ἑφομαρτήσαντες ὀλίγοι
was along the tracks of-the army having-followed few
ἀπὸ πολλῶν ἐσώθησαν, οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ ὥσπερ ἐν πελάγει
out-of many were-saved the most but as-if in sea
ἐκπεσόντες ἐν τῇ ψάμμῳ ἀπώλλυντο.
fallen-overboard in the sand perished

25.4 ξυνηνέχθη δὲ τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ ἄλλο πάθημα, ὃ δὴ
befell and the army also another suffering which indeed
οὐχ ἥκιστα ἐπίεσεν αὐτούς τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ
not least oppressed them both and the horses and the
ὑποζύγια. ὕεται γὰρ ἡ Γαδρωσίων γῆ ὑπ᾽ ἀνέμων τῶν
pack-animals is-rained-on for the of-Gadrosians land by winds the
ἐτησίων, καθάπερ οὖν καὶ ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ, οὐ τὰ πεδία
etesian just-as then also the of-Indians land not the plains
τῶν Γαδρωσίων, ἀλλὰ τὰ ὄρη, ἵναπερ προσφέρονταί
of-the Gadrosians but the mountains where-indeed are-brought
τε αἱ νεφέλαι ἐκ τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ ἀναχέονται, οὐχ
both the clouds from the wind and burst not
ὑπερβάλλουσαι τῶν ὀρῶν τὰς κορυφάς.
overtopping of-the mountains the peaks

25.5 ὡς δὲ ηὐλίσθη ἡ στρατιὰ πρὸς χειμάρρῳ ὀλίγου ὕδατος,
when and bivouacked the army by a-torrent of-little water
αὐτοῦ δὴ ἕνεκα τοῦ ὕδατος, ἀμφὶ δευτέραν φυλακὴν
there indeed for-the-sake of-the water about second watch
τῆς νυκτὸς ἐμπλησθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν ὄμβρων ὁ χειμάρρους
of-the night having-been-filled by the rains the torrent
ὁ ταύτῃ ῥέων ἀφανῶν τῇ στρατιᾷ γεγενημένων τῶν
the there flowing unseen by-the army having-been the
ὄμβρων τοσούτῳ ἐπῆλθε τῷ ὕδατι, ὡς γύναια καὶ
rains with-so-great came-on the water so-that women and
παιδάρια τὰ πολλὰ τῶν ἑπομένων τῇ στρατιᾷ διαφθεῖραι
children the most of-those following the army to-destroy
καὶ τὴν κατασκευὴν τὴν βασιλικὴν ξύμπασαν ἀφανίσαι καὶ
and the equipment the royal all to-sweep-away and
τῶν ὑποζυγίων ὅσα ἀπελείπετο, αὐτοὺς δὲ μόλις καὶ
of-the pack-animals as-many-as were-left themselves and hardly and
χαλεπῶς ξὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις οὐδὲ τούτοις πᾶσιν ἀποσωθῆναι.
with-difficulty with the arms not-even these all to-get-away-safe

οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ πίνοντες, ὁπότε ἐκ καύματός τε καὶ 25.6
the most and also drinking whenever from heat both and
διψους ὕδατι ἀθρόῳ ἐπιτύχοιεν, πρὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἀπαύστου
thirst water abundant they-met-with by itself the unceasing
ποτοῦ ἀπώλλυντο. καὶ τούτων ἕνεκα Ἀλέξανδρος τὰς
drinking perished and of-these for-the-sake Alexander the
στρατοπεδείας οὐ πρὸς τοῖς ὕδασιν αὐτοῖς τὸ πολὺ
encampments not by the waters themselves the most
ἐποιεῖτο, ἀλλὰ ἀπέχων ὅσον εἴκοσι σταδίους μάλιστα, ὡς
made but being-distant about twenty stades about so-that
μὴ ἀθρόους ἐμπίπτοντας τῷ ὕδατι αὐτούς τε καὶ κτήνη
not in-a-mass falling-upon the water themselves both and beasts
ἀπόλλυσθαι καὶ ἅμα τοὺς μάλιστα ἀκράτορας σφῶν
perish and at-the-same-time the most unrestrained of-them
ἐπεμβαίνοντας ἐς τὰς πηγὰς ἢ τὰ ῥεύματα διαφθείρειν
stepping-into into the springs or the streams to-spoil
καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ στρατιᾷ τὸ ὕδωρ.
also for-the other army the water
ἔνθα δὴ ἔργον καλὸν εἴπερ τι ἄλλο τῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου 26.1
there indeed deed fine if-indeed anything other — of-Alexander
οὐκ ἔδοξέ μοι ἀφανίσαι, ἢ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ πραχθὲν
not it-seemed to-me to-conceal either in this the country done
ἢ ἔτι ἔμπροσθεν ἐν Παραπαμισάδαις, ὡς μετεξέτεροι
or still before among Parapamisadae as some
ἀνέγραψαν. ἰέναι μὲν τὴν στρατιὰν διὰ ψάμμου τε
recorded to-go indeed the army through sand both
καὶ τοῦ καύματος ἤδη ἐπιφλέγοντος, ὅτι πρὸς ὕδωρ
and the heat already blazing because to water
ἐχρῆν ἐξανύσαι· τὸ δὲ ἦν πρόσθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ· καὶ
it-was-necessary to-complete-the-march this and was ahead of-the road and
αὐτόν τε Ἀλέξανδρον δίψει κατεχόμενον μόλις μὲν καὶ
himself both Alexander by-thirst gripped hardly indeed and

χαλεπῶς, πεζὸν δὲ ὅμως ἡγεῖσθαι· ὡς δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
with-difficulty on-foot but nevertheless to-lead so and also the other
στρατιώτας, οἷάπερ φιλεῖ ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε, κουφοτέρως
soldiers as-very is-wont in the such more-lightly
φέρειν τοὺς πόνους ἐν ἰσότητι τῆς ταλαιπωρήσεως.
to-bear the toils in equality of-the hardship

26.2 ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῶν ψιλῶν τινας κατὰ ζήτησιν ὕδατος
in and this of-the light-troops some in search of-water
ἀποτραπέντας ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς εὑρεῖν ὕδωρ συλλελεγμένον
having-turned-aside from the army to-find water collected
ἔν τινι χαράδρᾳ οὐ βαθείᾳ, ὀλίγην καὶ φαύλην πίδακα·
in some ravine not deep a-little and poor spring
καὶ τοῦτο οὐ χαλεπῶς συλλέξαντας σπουδῇ ἰέναι παρ'
and this not with-difficulty having-collected in-haste to-go to
Ἀλέξανδρον, ὡς μέγα δή τι ἀγαθὸν φέροντας· ὡς
Alexander as great indeed some good bringing when
δὲ ἐπέλαζον ἤδη, ἐμβαλόντας ἐς κράνος τὸ ὕδωρ
and they-approached already having-poured into helmet the water
προσενεγκεῖν τῷ βασιλεῖ.
to-have-offered to-the king

26.3 τὸν δὲ λαβεῖν μὲν καὶ ἐπαινέσαι τοὺς κομίσαντας, λαβόντα
him and to-take indeed and to-praise those having-brought-it having-taken
δὲ ἐν ὄψει πάντων ἐκχέαι· καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε τῷ ἔργῳ ἐς τοσόνδε
and in sight of-all to-pour-out and on this the deed to so-great
ἐπιρρωσθῆναι τὴν στρατιὰν ξύμπασαν ὥστε εἰκάσαι ἄν τινα
to-be-strengthened the army whole so-that to-guess — anyone
πότον γενέσθαι πᾶσιν ἐκεῖνο τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου
drink to-have-become for-all that the water the by Alexander
ἐκχυθέν. τοῦτο ἐγώ, εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, τὸ ἔργον εἰς
poured-out this I if-indeed anything other the deed for
καρτερίαν τε καὶ ἅμα στρατηγίαν ἐπαινῶ Ἀλεξάνδρου.
endurance both and at-the-same-time generalship praise of-Alexander

ξυνηνέχθη δέ τι καὶ τοιόνδε τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐν τῇ 26.4
befell and something also such for-the army in the
γῇ ἐκείνῃ. οἱ γὰρ ἡγεμόνες τῆς ὁδοῦ τελευτῶντες οὐκέτι
land that the for guides of-the road finally no-longer
μεμνῆσθαι ἔφασκον τὴν ὁδόν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀφανισθῆναι τὰ
to-remember said the road but to-have-been-effaced the
σημεῖα αὐτῆς πρὸς τοῦ ἀνέμου ἐπιπνεύσαντος· καὶ —
marks of-it by the wind having-blown-upon and
οὐ γὰρ εἶναι ἐν τῇ ψάμμῳ πολλῇ τε καὶ ὁμοίᾳ πάντῃ
not for to-be in the sand much both and alike everywhere
νενημένῃ ὅτῳ τεκμηριώσονται τὴν ὁδόν, οὔτ᾽ οὖν δένδρα
heaped whereby they-will-mark the road neither then trees
ξυνήθη παρ᾽ αὐτὴν πεφυκότα, οὔτε τινὰ γήλοφον βέβαιον
customary along it grown nor any hill firm
ἀνεστηκότα· οὐδὲ πρὸς τὰ ἄστρα ἐν νυκτὶ ἢ μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν
standing nor by the stars at night or by day
πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον μεμελετῆσθαί σφισι τὰς πορείας, καθάπερ
by the sun to-have-been-practiced to-them the marches as
τοῖς ναύταις πρὸς τῶν ἄρκτων τὴν μὲν Φοίνιξι, τὴν
to-the sailors by the Bears the-one indeed to-Phoenicians the
ὀλίγην, τὴν δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις, τὴν μείζονα· —
little the-other and to-the other men the greater
ἔνθα δὴ Ἀλέξανδρον ξυνέντα ὅτι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δεῖ 26.5
there indeed Alexander having-perceived that on left it-is-necessary
ἀποκλίναντα ἄγειν, ἀναλαβόντα ὀλίγους ἅμα οἷ
having-turned-aside to-lead having-taken few together-with himself
ἱππέας προχωρῆσαι· ὡς δὲ καὶ τούτων οἱ ἵπποι
cavalry to-advance when and also of-these the horses
ἐξέκαμνον ὑπὸ τοῦ καύματος, ἀπολιπεῖν καὶ τούτων τοὺς
were-exhausted by the heat to-have-left also of-these the
πολλούς, αὐτὸν δὲ ξὺν πέντε τοῖς πᾶσιν ἀφιππάσασθαι
most himself and with five the in-all to-have-ridden-off

καὶ εὑρεῖν τὴν θάλασσαν, διαμησάμενόν τε αὐτὸν ἐπὶ
and to-have-found the sea having-dug-through both himself on
τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ τὸν κάχληκα ἐπιτυχεῖν ὕδατι γλυκεῖ καὶ
the shore the shingle to-have-met-with water sweet and
καθαρῷ καὶ οὕτω μετελθεῖν τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν· καὶ
pure and so to-have-fetched the army all and
ἐς ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας ἰέναι παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν ὑδρευομένους
for seven days to-go along the sea drawing-water
ἐκ τῆς ἠϊόνος. ἔνθεν δέ, ἤδη γὰρ γιγνώσκειν τὴν ὁδὸν
from the beach thence and already for to-know the road
τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, ἐπὶ τῆς μεσογαίας ποιεῖσθαι τὸν στόλον.
the guides into the interior to-make the march

IX · CARMANIA AND THE TOMB OF CYRUS

At the Gadrosian capital Alexander replaces the satrap Apollophanes and learns that Philip has been murdered. Craterus rejoins in Carmania, and governors accused of plundering temples and tombs are put to death. Arrian rejects the story of a Bacchic revel through Carmania. Peucestas is made a bodyguard and Nearchus reports his voyage. At Pasargadae Alexander finds the rich tomb of Cyrus plundered, has Aristobulus restore it, and has the Magi tortured, though they confess nothing. The Mede Baryaxes, who claimed the kingship, is executed, and Orxines is hanged for crimes against the Persians. Peucestas, who adopts Persian dress and speech, becomes satrap of Persis.

27.1 ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο ἐς τῶν Γαδρωσίων τὰ βασίλεια, ἀναπαύει
when and he-arrived at of-the Gadrosians the palace he-rests
ἐνταῦθα τὴν στρατιάν. καὶ Ἀπολλοφάνην μὲν παύει
there the army and Apollophanes indeed removes
τῆς σατραπείας, ὅτι οὐδενὸς ἔγνω ἐπιμεληθέντα
from-the satrapy because of-nothing he-learned having-taken-care
τῶν προεπηγγελμένων, Θόαντα δὲ σατραπεύειν τῶν
of-the things-ordered-beforehand Thoas and to-be-satrap of-those

ταύτῃ ἔταξε· τούτου δὲ νόσῳ τελευτήσαντος Σιβύρτιος
there he-appointed this-one and by-disease having-died Sibyrtius
τὴν σατραπείαν ἐκδέχεται· ὁ αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ Καρμανίας
the satrapy receives the same and also of-Carmania
σατράπης ἦν νεωστὶ ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ταχθείς· τότε δὲ
satrap was newly by Alexander appointed then and
τούτῳ μὲν Ἀραχωτῶν τε καὶ τῶν Γαδρωσίων ἄρχειν
to-this-one indeed of-Arachotians both and of-the Gadrosians to-rule
ἐδόθη, Καρμανίαν δὲ ἔσχε Τληπόλεμος ὁ Πυθοφάνους.
was-given Carmania and got Tlepolemus the (son)-of-Pythophanes
ἤδη τε ἐπὶ Καρμανίας προὐχώρει ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ 27.2
already both toward Carmania advanced the king and
ἀγγέλλεται αὐτῷ Φίλιππον τὸν σατράπην τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς
is-reported to-him Philip the satrap of-the of-Indians land
ἐπιβουλευθέντα πρὸς τῶν μισθοφόρων δόλῳ ἀποθανεῖν,
having-been-plotted-against by the mercenaries by-treachery to-have-died
τοὺς δὲ ἀποκτείναντας ὅτι οἱ σωματοφύλακες τοῦ Φιλίππου
those and having-killed-him that the bodyguards — of-Philip
οἱ Μακεδόνες τοὺς μὲν ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ ἔργῳ, τοὺς δὲ
the Macedonians the-ones indeed in itself the deed the-others and
καὶ ὕστερον λαβόντες ἀπέκτειναν. ταῦτα δὲ ὡς ἔγνω,
also later having-caught killed these-things and when he-learned
ἐκπέμπει γράμματα ἐς Ἰνδοὺς παρὰ Εὔδαμόν τε καὶ
he-sends-out a-letter to Indians to Eudamus both and
Ταξίλην ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς χώρας τῆς πρόσθεν ὑπὸ Φιλίππῳ
Taxiles to-take-care-of the country the before under Philip
τεταγμένης ἔστ' ἂν αὐτὸς σατράπην ἐκπέμψῃ ἐπ' αὐτῆς.
placed until — himself a-satrap should-send-out over it
ἤδη δ' ἐς Καρμανίαν ἥκοντος Ἀλεξάνδρου Κρατερὸς 27.3
already and to Carmania having-come Alexander Craterus
ἀφικνεῖται, τήν τε ἄλλην στρατιὰν ἅμα οἷ ἄγων
arrives the both other army together-with himself leading

καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας καὶ Ὀρδάνην τὸν ἀποστάντα καὶ
and the elephants and Ordanes the having-revolted and
νεωτερίσαντα συνειληφώς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ Στασάνωρ τε
having-rebelled having-seized there and Stasanor both
ὁ Ἀρείων καὶ ὁ Ζαραγγῶν σατράπης ἦκεν καὶ ξὺν
the of-Arians and the of-Zarangians satrap came and with
αὐτοῖς Φαρισμάνης ὁ Φραταφέρνου τοῦ Παρθυαίων καὶ
them Pharismanes the (son)-of-Phrataphernes the of-Parthyaeans and
Ὑρκανίων σατράπου παῖς. ἦκον δὲ καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ οἱ
of-Hyrcanians satrap son came and also the generals the
ὑπολειφθέντες ἅμα Παρμενίωνι ἐπὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς τῆς
having-been-left-behind together-with Parmenion over the army the
ἐν Μηδίᾳ, Κλέανδρός τε καὶ Σιτάλκης καὶ Ἡράκων, τὴν
in Media Cleander both and Sitalces and Heracon the
πολλὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ οὗτοι ἄγοντες.
most of-the army also these leading

27.4 τοὺς μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρόν τε καὶ Σιτάλκην πολλὰ
the indeed indeed around Cleander both and Sitalces many-things
ἐπικαλούντων αὐτοῖς τῶν τε ἐγχωρίων καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς
charging them the both natives and the army
αὐτῆς, ὡς ἱερά τε πρὸς αὐτῶν σεσυλημένα καὶ θήκας
itself as temples both by them plundered and tombs
παλαιὰς κεκινημένας καὶ ἄλλα ἄδικα ἔργα ἐς τοὺς
ancient disturbed and other unjust deeds against the
ὑπηκόους τετολμημένα καὶ ἀτάσθαλα, ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη,
subjects dared and reckless these-things when was-reported
τοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινεν, ὡς καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις δέος εἶναι,
those indeed he-killed so-that also to-the others fear to-be
ὅσοι σατράπαι ἢ ὕπαρχοι ἢ νομάρχαι ἀπολείποιντο,
as-many-as satraps or hyparchs or nomarchs were-left
τὰ ἴσα ἐκείνοις πλημμελοῦντας πείσεσθαι·
the same-things as-those offending to-be-going-to-suffer

καὶ τοῦτο, εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, κατέσχεν ἐν κόσμῳ τὰ ἔθνη 27.5
and this if-indeed anything other held in order the peoples
τὰ ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου δοριάλωτα ἢ ἑκόντα προσχωρήσαντα,
the by Alexander spear-won or willingly having-come-over
τοσαῦτα μὲν πλήθει ὄντα, τόσον δὲ ἀλλήλων
so-great indeed in-number being so-far and from-one-another
ἀφεστηκότα, ὅτι οὐκ ἐξῆν ὑπὸ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου
distant that not it-was-permitted under the of-Alexander
βασιλείᾳ ἀδικεῖσθαι τοὺς ἀρχομένους ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχόντων·
kingship to-be-wronged the ruled by the rulers
Ἡράκων δὲ τότε μὲν ἀφείθη τῆς αἰτίας· ὀλίγον δὲ
Heracon and then indeed was-acquitted of-the charge a-little but
ὕστερον ἐξελεγχθεὶς πρὸς ἀνδρῶν Σουσίων σεσυληκέναι
later having-been-convicted by men Susian to-have-plundered
τὸ ἐν Σούσοις ἱερὸν καὶ οὗτος ἔδωκεν δίκην.
the in Susa temple also this-one paid the-penalty
οἱ δὲ σὺν Στασάνορι καὶ Φραταφέρνῃ πλῆθός τε ὑποζυγίων 27.6
those and with Stasanor and Phrataphernes number both of-pack-animals
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἄγοντες ἦλθον καὶ καμήλους πολλάς, ὡς
to Alexander bringing came and camels many when
ἔμαθον ὅτι τὴν ἐπὶ Γαδρωσίων ἄγει, εἰκάσαντες ὅτι τὰ
they-learned that the through Gadrosians he-leads having-guessed that the
αὐτὰ ἐκεῖνα πείσεται αὐτῷ ἡ στρατιὰ ἃ δὴ ἔπαθε·
same those-things will-suffer for-him the army which indeed it-suffered
καὶ οὖν καὶ ἐν καιρῷ μὲν καὶ οὗτοι ἀφίκοντο, ἐν καιρῷ
and so also in season indeed also these arrived in season
δὲ αἱ κάμηλοί τε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· διένειμε γὰρ ξύμπαντα
and the camels both and the pack-animals he-distributed for all
Ἀλέξανδρος τοῖς μὲν ἡγεμόσι κατ᾽ ἄνδρα, τοῖς δὲ κατ᾽
Alexander to-the indeed leaders by man to-the and by

ἴλας τε καὶ ἑκατοστύας, τοῖς δὲ κατὰ λόχους, ὅπως τὸ
squadrons both and companies to-the and by units so-that the
πλῆθος τῶν ὑποζυγίων τε καὶ καμήλων αὐτῷ ξυνέβαινεν.
number of-the pack-animals both and of-camels for-him allowed

28.1 ἤδη δέ τινες καὶ τοιάδε ἀνέγραψαν, οὐ πιστὰ ἐμοὶ
already and some also such-things recorded not credible to-me
λέγοντες, ὡς συζεύξας δύο ἁρμαμάξας κατακείμενος
saying that having-yoked-together two covered-wagons reclining
ξὺν τοῖς ἑταίροις καταυλούμενος τὴν διὰ Καρμανίας
with the companions being-piped-to the through Carmania
ἦγεν, ἡ στρατιὰ δὲ αὐτῷ ἐστεφανωμένη τε καὶ παίζουσα
he-led the army and him garlanded both and sporting
εἵπετο, προὔκειτο δὲ αὐτῇ σῖτά τε καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα
followed were-set-out and for-it food both and as-many-as other-things
ἐς τρυφὴν παρὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς συγκεκομισμένα πρὸς τῶν
for luxury along the roads collected by the
Καρμανίων, καὶ ταῦτα πρὸς μίμησιν τῆς Διονύσου
Carmanians and these-things in imitation of-the of-Dionysus
βακχείας ἀπεικάσθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ,
revel were-likened by-Alexander

28.2 ὅτι καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐκείνου λόγος ἐλέγετο καταστρεψάμενον
because also about that-one a-story was-told having-subdued
Ἰνδοὺς Διόνυσον οὕτω τὴν πολλὴν τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπελθεῖν,
Indians Dionysus thus the most — of-Asia to-have-traversed
καὶ Θρίαμβόν τε αὐτὸν ἐπικληθῆναι τὸν Διόνυσον καὶ
and Thriambus both himself to-have-been-surnamed — Dionysus and
τὰς ἐπὶ ταῖς νίκαις ταῖς ἐκ πολέμου πομπὰς ἐπὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
the for the victories the from war processions for the same
τούτῳ θριάμβους. ταῦτα δὲ οὔτε Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου
this triumphs these-things but neither Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
οὔτε Ἀριστόβουλος ὁ Ἀριστοβούλου ἀνέγραψαν οὐδέ τις
nor Aristobulus the (son)-of-Aristobulus recorded nor any

ἄλλος ὅντινα ἱκανὸν ἄν τις ποιήσαιτο τεκμηριῶσαι ὑπὲρ
other whom sufficient — anyone would-make to-attest about
τῶν τοιῶνδε, καί μοι ὡς οὐ πιστὰ ἀναγεγράφθαι ἐξήρκεσαν.
the such-things and to-me as not credible to-have-been-recorded they-sufficed
ἀλλὰ ἐκεῖνα ἤδη Ἀριστοβούλῳ ἑπόμενος ξυγγράφω, 28.3
but those-things already Aristobulus following I-write
θῦσαι ἐν Καρμανίᾳ Ἀλέξανδρον χαριστήρια τῆς κατ᾽
to-have-sacrificed in Carmania Alexander thank-offerings for-the over
Ἰνδῶν νίκης καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς στρατιᾶς, ὅτι ἀπεσώθη ἐκ
Indians victory and for the army that it-got-away-safe from
Γαδρωσίων, καὶ ἀγῶνα διαθεῖναι μουσικόν τε καὶ γυμνικόν·
Gadrosians and contest to-have-held musical both and gymnastic
καταλέξαι δὲ καὶ Πευκέσταν ἐς τοὺς σωματοφύλακας,
to-have-enrolled and also Peucestas among the bodyguards
ἤδη μὲν ἐγνωκότα σατράπην καταστῆσαι τῆς Περσίδος,
already indeed having-decided satrap to-appoint — of-Persis
ἐθέλοντα δὲ πρὸ τῆς σατραπείας μηδὲ ταύτης τῆς τιμῆς
wishing but before the satrapy not-even this the honor
καὶ πίστεως ἀπείρατον εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ἐν Μαλλοῖς ἔργῳ·
and trust untried to-be for the in Malli deed
εἶναι δὲ αὐτῷ ἑπτὰ εἰς τότε σωματοφύλακας, Λεοννάτου 28.4
to-be and for-him seven till then bodyguards Leonnatus
Ἀντέου, Ἡφαιστίωνα τὸν Ἀμύντορος, Λυσίμαχον
(son)-of-Anteas Hephaestion the (son)-of-Amyntor Lysimachus
Ἀγαθοκλέους, Ἀριστόνουν Πεισαίου, τούτους μὲν
(son)-of-Agathocles Aristonous (son)-of-Peisaeus these indeed
Πελλαίους, Περδίκκαν δὲ Ὀρόντου ἐκ τῆς Ὀρεστίδος,
Pellaeans Perdiccas and (son)-of-Orontes from — Orestis
Πτολεμαῖον δὲ Λάγου καὶ Πείθωνα Κρατεύα
Ptolemy and (son)-of-Lagus and Peithon (son)-of-Crateuas

Ἐορδαίους· ὄγδοον δὲ προσγενέσθαι αὐτοῖς Πευκέσταν
Eordaeans eighth and to-have-been-added to-them Peucestas
τὸν Ἀλεξάνδρου ὑπερασπίσαντα.
— Alexander having-shielded

28.5 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Νέαρχος περιπλεύσας τὴν Ὥρων τε
in this and also Nearchus having-sailed-round the of-Ora both
καὶ Γαδρωσῶν γῆν καὶ τὴν τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων κατῆρεν
and of-Gadrosians land and the of-the Fish-eaters put-in
ἐς τῆς Καρμανίας τὰ πρὸς θάλασσαν ᾠκισμένα· ἔνθεν δὲ
to — of-Carmania the toward sea settled thence and
ἀνελθὼν σὺν ὀλίγοις Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀπήγγειλε τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν
having-gone-up with few to-Alexander reported the-things about the
περίπλουν τὸν γενόμενον αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν ἔξω θάλασσαν.
circumnavigation the having-happened for-him in the outer sea

28.6 τοῦτον μὲν δὴ καταπέμπει αὖθις ἐκπεριπλεύσοντα ἔστε
this-one indeed indeed he-sends-down again about-to-sail-round as-far
ἐπὶ τὴν Σουσιανῶν τε γῆν καὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ
to the of-Susians both land and of-the Tigris river
τὰς ἐκβολάς· ὅπως δὲ ἐπλεύσθη αὐτῷ τὰ ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
the mouths how and was-sailed by-him the from the Indus
ποταμοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν Περσικὴν καὶ τὸ στόμα
river to the sea the Persian and the mouth
τοῦ Τίγρητος, ταῦτα ἰδίᾳ ἀναγράψω αὐτῷ Νεάρχῳ
— of-Tigris these-things separately I-will-write him-himself Nearchus
ἑπόμενος, ὡς καὶ τήνδε εἶναι ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου Ἑλληνικὴν
following so-that also this to-be about Alexander Greek
τὴν συγγραφήν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐν ὑστέρῳ ἔσται τυχόν,
the history these-things indeed indeed in later will-be perhaps
εἰ ὅ τε θυμός με καὶ ὁ δαίμων ταύτῃ ἄγοι.
if the both spirit me and the divinity this-way should-lead

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ Ἡφαιστίωνα μὲν σύν τε τῇ πλείστῃ μοίρᾳ 28.7
Alexander and Hephaestion indeed with both the greatest part
τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας
of-the army and the pack-animals and the elephants
ἅμα οἷ ἔχοντα τὴν παρὰ θάλασσαν ἀπὸ Καρμανίας
together-with himself having the along sea from Carmania
ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Περσίδα ἄγειν ἐκέλευσεν, ὅτι χειμῶνος ὥρᾳ
as toward — Persis to-lead he-ordered because of-winter in-season
γιγνομένου αὐτῷ τοῦ στόλου τὰ πρὸς τῇ θαλάσσῃ τῆς
happening for-him the march the-parts by the sea —
Περσίδος ἀλεεινά τε ἦν καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀφθόνως ἔχοντα.
of-Persis warm both were and of-the provisions abundantly having
αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τοῖς κουφοτάτοις τῶν πεζῶν καὶ ξὺν 29.1
himself and with the lightest of-the infantry and with
τῶν ἱππέων τοῖς ἑταίροις καὶ μέρει τινὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν
of-the cavalry the companions and part some of-the archers
ᾔει τὴν ἐπὶ Πασαργάδας τῆς Περσίδος. Στασάνορα δὲ
went the toward Pasargadae — of-Persis Stasanor and
καταπέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ.
he-sends-down to the rule the his-own
ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὅροις ἦν τῆς Περσίδος, Φρασαόρτην μὲν 29.2
when and on the borders he-was — of-Persis Phrasaortes indeed
οὐ κατέλαβε σατραπεύοντα ἔτι νόσῳ γὰρ τετελευτηκὼς
not he-found being-satrap still by-disease for having-died
ἐτύγχανεν ἐν Ἰνδοῖς ἔτι Ἀλεξάνδρου ὄντος, Ὀρξίνης
he-happened in India still Alexander being Orxines
δὲ ἐπεμέλετο τῆς Περσίδος, οὐ πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου
and was-taking-care-of — Persis not by Alexander
κατασταθείς, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι οὐκ ἀπηξίωσεν αὐτὸν ἐν κόσμῳ
appointed but because not he-thought-unworthy himself in order
Πέρσας διαφυλάξαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὐκ ὄντος ἄλλου ἄρχοντος.
Persians to-preserve for-Alexander not being another ruler

29.3 ἦλθε δὲ ἐς Πασαργάδας καὶ Ἀτροπάτης ὁ Μηδίας
came and to Pasargadae also Atropates the of-Media
σατράπης, ἄγων Βαρυάξην ἄνδρα Μῆδον συνειλημμένον,
satrap leading Baryaxes a-man Mede seized
ὅτι ὀρθὴν τὴν κίδαριν περιθέμενος βασιλέα προσεῖπεν
because upright the tiara having-put-on king he-called
αὐτὸν Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων, καὶ ξὺν τούτῳ τοὺς
himself of-Persians and of-Medes and with this-one those
μετασχόντας αὐτῷ τοῦ νεωτερισμοῦ τε καὶ τῆς
having-shared with-him of-the rebellion both and of-the
ἀποστάσεως. τούτους μὲν δὴ ἀπέκτεινεν Ἀλέξανδρος.
revolt these indeed indeed killed Alexander

29.4 ἐλύπησε δὲ αὐτὸν ἡ παρανομία ἡ ἐς τὸν Κύρου τοῦ
grieved and him the outrage the against the of-Cyrus of-the
Καμβύσου τάφον, ὅτι διορωρυγμένον τε καὶ σεσυλημένον
(son)-of-Cambyses tomb because dug-through both and plundered
κατέλαβε τοῦ Κύρου τὸν τάφον, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος.
he-found — of-Cyrus the tomb as says Aristobulus
εἶναι γὰρ ἐν Πασαργάδαις ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ τῷ βασιλικῷ
to-be for in Pasargadae in the park the royal
Κύρου ἐκείνου τάφον καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ἄλσος πεφυτεῦσθαι
of-Cyrus that tomb and around it a-grove to-have-been-planted
δένδρων παντοίων καὶ ὕδατι εἶναι κατάρρυτον καὶ πόαν
of-trees all-kinds and with-water to-be well-watered and grass
βαθεῖαν πεφυκέναι ἐν τῷ λειμῶνι, καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν τάφον τὰ
deep to-have-grown in the meadow and itself and the tomb the
κάτω λίθου τετραπέδου ἐς τετράγωνον σχῆμα πεποιῆσθαι,
lower-parts of-stone squared into quadrangular shape to-have-been-made

29.5 ἄνωθεν δὲ οἴκημα ἐπεῖναι λίθινον ἐστεγασμένον, θυρίδα
above and a-chamber to-be-on stone roofed a-door
ἔχον φέρουσαν ἔσω στενήν, ὡς μόλις ἂν εἶναι ἑνὶ ἀνδρὶ
having leading inside narrow so-that hardly — to-be for-one man

οὐ μεγάλῳ πολλὰ κακοπαθοῦντι παρελθεῖν. ἐν δὲ τῷ
not large much suffering to-pass-in in and the
οἰκήματι πύελον χρυσῆν κεῖσθαι, ἵνα τὸ σῶμα τοῦ Κύρου
chamber a-coffin golden to-lie where the body — of-Cyrus
ἐτέθαπτο, καὶ κλίνην παρὰ τῇ πυέλῳ· πόδας δὲ εἶναι
had-been-buried and a-couch beside the coffin feet and to-be
τῇ κλίνῃ χρυσοῦς σφυρηλάτους καὶ τάπητα ἐπίβλημα
for-the couch golden hammered and a-coverlet as-covering
τῶν Βαβυλωνίων καὶ καυνάκας πορφυροῦς ὑποστρώματα.
of-the Babylonians and kaunakai purple as-underlays
ἐπεῖναι δὲ καὶ κάνδυς καὶ ἄλλους χιτῶνας τῆς Βαβυλωνίου 29.6
to-be-on and also kandys and other tunics of-the Babylonian
ἐργασίας. καὶ ἀναξυρίδες Μηδικαὶ καὶ στολαὶ ὑακινθινοβαφεῖς
workmanship and trousers Median and robes hyacinth-dyed
λέγει ὅτι ἔκειντο, αἱ δὲ πορφύρας αἱ δὲ ἄλλης καὶ
he-says that lay the-ones and of-purple the-others and of-one and
ἄλλης χρόας, καὶ στρεπτοὶ καὶ ἀκινάκαι καὶ ἐνώτια χρυσοῦ
another color and necklaces and scimitars and earrings of-gold
τε καὶ λίθων κολλητά, καὶ τράπεζα ἔκειτο. ἐν μέσῳ δὲ
both and of-stones set and a-table lay in middle and
τῆς κλίνης ἡ πύελος ἔκειτο ἡ τὸ σῶμα τὸ Κύρου ἔχουσα.
of-the couch the coffin lay the the body the of-Cyrus holding
εἶναι δὲ ἐντὸς τοῦ περιβόλου πρὸς τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ 29.7
to-be and within the enclosure by the ascent the
ἐπὶ τὸν τάφον φερούσῃ οἴκημα σμικρὸν τοῖς Μάγοις
to the tomb leading a-chamber small for-the Magi
πεποιημένον, οἳ δὴ ἐφύλασσον τὸν Κύρου τάφον ἔτι
made who indeed guarded the of-Cyrus tomb still
ἀπὸ Καμβύσου τοῦ Κύρου, παῖς παρὰ πατρὸς ἐκδεχόμενος
from Cambyses — of-Cyrus son from father receiving
τὴν φυλακήν. καὶ τούτοις πρόβατόν τε ἐς ἡμέραν ἐδίδοτο
the guard and to-these a-sheep both for day was-given

ἐκ βασιλέως καὶ ἀλεύρων τε καὶ οἴνου τεταγμένα καὶ
from the-king and of-wheat-meal both and of-wine fixed-amounts and
ἵππος κατὰ μῆνα ἐς θυσίαν τῷ Κύρῳ.
a-horse by month for sacrifice — to-Cyrus

29.8 ἐπεγέγραπτο δὲ ὁ τάφος Περσικοῖς γράμμασι· καὶ
had-been-inscribed and the tomb with-Persian letters and
ἐδήλου Περσιστὶ τάδε· ὦ ἄνθρωπε, ἐγὼ Κῦρός εἰμι
it-declared in-Persian these-words O man I Cyrus am
ὁ Καμβύσου ὁ τὴν ἀρχὴν Πέρσαις καταστησάμενος
the of-Cambyses the the rule for-Persians having-established
καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας βασιλεύσας. μὴ οὖν φθονήσῃς μοι τοῦ
and — Asia having-ruled not then begrudge me the
μνήματος.
monument

29.9 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπιμελὴς γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ, ὁπότε ἕλοι
Alexander and concern for was to-him whenever he-conquered
Πέρσας, παριέναι ἐς τοῦ Κύρου τὸν τάφον τὰ μὲν
Persians to-go-in into — of-Cyrus the tomb the indeed
ἄλλα καταλαμβάνει ἐκπεφορημένα πλὴν τῆς πυέλου καὶ
other-things finds carried-off except the coffin and
τῆς κλίνης· οἱ δὲ καὶ τὸ σῶμα τοῦ Κύρου ἐλωβήσαντο
the couch they and also the body — of-Cyrus outraged
ἀφελόντες τὸ πῶμα τῆς πυέλου καὶ τὸν νεκρὸν ἐξέβαλον·
having-taken-off the lid of-the coffin and the corpse they-threw-out
αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν πύελον ἐπειρῶντο εὔογκόν σφισι ποιήσασθαι
itself and the coffin they-tried manageable to-them to-make
καὶ ταύτῃ εὔφορον τὰ μὲν παρακόπτοντες, τὰ
and in-this-way portable the-parts indeed cutting-off the-others
δὲ ξυνθλῶντες αὐτῆς. ὡς δὲ οὐ προὐχώρει αὐτοῖς
and crushing of-it when and not it-succeeded for-them

τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον, οὕτω δὴ ἐάσαντες τὴν πύελον
this the work so indeed having-left the coffin
ἀπῆλθον.
they-went-away
καὶ λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος αὐτὸς ταχθῆναι πρὸς 29.10
and says Aristobulus himself to-have-been-assigned by
Ἀλεξάνδρου κοσμῆσαι ἐξ ὑπαρχῆς τῷ Κύρῳ τὸν
Alexander to-put-in-order from beginning — for-Cyrus the
τάφον. καὶ τοῦ μὲν σώματος ὅσαπερ ἔτι σῶα
tomb and of-the indeed body as-much-as-very still intact
ἦν καταθεῖναι ἐς τὴν πύελον καὶ τὸ πῶμα ἐπιθεῖναι,
was to-lay into the coffin and the lid to-put-on
ὅσα δὲ λελώβητο αὐτῆς κατορθῶσαι· καὶ τὴν
as-much-as and had-been-outraged of-it to-set-right and the
κλίνην ἐντεῖναι ταινίαις καὶ τἆλλα ὅσα ἐς κόσμον
couch to-stretch with-ribbons and the-other as-many-as for adornment
ἔκειτο κατὰ ἀριθμόν τε καὶ τοῖς πάλαι ὅμοια
lay according-to number both and to-the old-ones alike
ἀποθεῖναι καὶ τὴν θυρίδα δὲ ἀφανίσαι τὰ μὲν
to-lay-away and the door and to-obliterate the-parts indeed
αὐτῆς λίθῳ ἐνοικοδομήσαντα, τὰ δὲ πηλῷ
of-it with-stone having-built-up the-others and with-clay
ἐμπλάσαντα, καὶ ἐπιβαλεῖν τῷ πηλῷ τὸ σημεῖον τὸ
having-plastered and to-put-on to-the clay the seal the
βασιλικόν.
royal
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ξυλλαβὼν τοὺς Μάγους τοὺς φύλακας 29.11
Alexander and having-seized the Magi the guards
τοῦ τάφου ἐστρέβλωσεν, ὡς κατειπεῖν τοὺς
of-the tomb tortured so-that to-denounce those
δράσαντας, οἱ δὲ οὐδὲν οὔτε σφῶν οὔτε ἄλλου
having-done-it they and nothing neither themselves nor another

κατεῖπον στρεβλούμενοι, οὐδὲ ἄλλῃ πῃ ἐξηλέγχοντο
denounced being-tortured nor otherwise at-all were-convicted
ξυνειδότες τῷ ἔργῳ· καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἀφείθησαν ἐξ
being-privy to-the deed and on this were-released by
Ἀλεξάνδρου.
Alexander

30.1 ἔνθεν δὲ ἐς τὰ βασίλεια ᾔει τὰ Περσῶν, ἃ δὴ πρόσθεν
thence and to the palace went the of-Persians which indeed before
κατέφλεξεν αὐτός, ὥς μοι λέλεκται, ὅτε οὐκ ἐπῄνουν τὸ
burned himself as by-me has-been-said when not I-praised the
ἔργον· ἀλλ᾽ οὐδ᾽ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπανελθὼν ἐπῄνει.
deed but not-even himself Alexander having-returned praised
καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ κατὰ Ὀρξίνου πολλοὶ λόγοι ἐλέχθησαν
and indeed indeed also against Orxines many words were-spoken
πρὸς Περσῶν, ὃς ἦρξε Περσῶν ἐπειδὴ Φρασαόρτης
by Persians who ruled Persians when Phrasaortes
ἐτελεύτησε.
died

30.2 καὶ ἐξηλέγχθη Ὀρξίνης ἱερά τε ὅτι σεσυλήκει
and was-convicted Orxines temples both that he-had-plundered
καὶ τάφους βασιλικούς, καὶ Περσῶν πολλοὺς ὅτι
and tombs royal and of-Persians many that
οὐ ξὺν δίκῃ ἀπέκτεινε. τοῦτον μὲν δὴ οἷς
not with justice he-killed this-one indeed indeed to-whom
ἐτάχθη ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐκρέμασαν, σατράπην δὲ
it-was-assigned by Alexander hanged satrap and
Πέρσαις ἔταξε Πευκέσταν τὸν σωματοφύλακα,
for-Persians he-appointed Peucestas the bodyguard
πιστόν τέ οἱ ἐς τὰ μάλιστα τιθέμενος τά
faithful both to-him to the most considering the
τε ἄλλα καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἐν Μαλλοῖς ἔργῳ, ἵνα
both other-things and for the in Malli deed where

προεκινδύνευσέ τε καὶ συνεξέσωσεν Ἀλέξανδρον, καὶ
he-ran-the-danger-first both and helped-save Alexander and
ἄλλως τῷ βαρβαρικῷ τρόπῳ τῆς διαίτης οὐκ
otherwise to-the barbarian manner of-the life not
ἀξύμφορον·
unsuited
ἐδήλωσε δὲ ἐσθῆτά τε εὐθὺς ὡς κατεστάθη σατραπεύειν 30.3
he-showed and dress both at-once when he-was-appointed to-be-satrap
Περσῶν μόνος τῶν ἄλλων Μακεδόνων μεταβαλὼν τὴν
of-Persians alone of-the other Macedonians having-changed the
Μηδικὴν καὶ φωνὴν τὴν Περσικὴν ἐκμαθὼν καὶ τἆλλα
Median and speech the Persian having-learned and the-other
ξύμπαντα ἐς τρόπον τὸν Περσικὸν κατασκευασάμενος. ἐφ᾽
all to manner the Persian having-arranged at
οἷς Ἀλέξανδρός γε ἐπῄνει αὐτὸν καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ὡς
which Alexander at-least praised him and the Persians as
τὰ παρὰ σφίσι πρὸ τῶν πατρίων προσβεύοντι ἔχαιρον.
the-things among them before the ancestral preferring rejoiced

BOOK VII

I · AMBITIONS, AND THE INDIAN SAGES

At Pasargadae and Persepolis Alexander longs to sail the Euphrates and Tigris to the sea; some say he planned to circle Arabia and Africa or to go against Scythia, or Sicily and Iapygia, as Rome's name was already rising. Arrian says only that he would never have rested. Indian sages tell him each man owns only the ground he stands on and will soon own only his grave; Diogenes asks him to stand out of the sun. Dandamis refuses to come to him, but Calanus does. Taken ill in Persis, Calanus mounts a pyre before the army and burns without moving, while the trumpets sound, the army raises its war cry, and the elephants trumpet.

ὡς δὲ ἐς Πασαργάδας τε καὶ ἐς Περσέπολιν ἀφίκετο 1.1
when and to Pasargadae both and to Persepolis arrived
Ἀλέξανδρος, πόθος λαμβάνει αὐτὸν καταπλεῦσαι κατὰ τὸν
Alexander longing seizes him to-sail-down along —
Εὐφράτην τε καὶ κατὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν
Euphrates both and along — Tigris to the sea the
Περσικὴν καὶ τῶν τε ποταμῶν ἰδεῖν τὰς ἐκβολὰς τὰς ἐς
Persian and of-the both rivers to-see the mouths the into
τὸν πόντον, καθάπερ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ, καὶ τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν.
the sea just-as — of-Indus and the there sea
οἱ δὲ καὶ τάδε ἀνέγραψαν, ὅτι ἐπενόει Ἀλέξανδρος 1.2
some and also these-things recorded that intended Alexander
περιπλεῦσαι τήν τε Ἀραβίαν τὴν πολλὴν καὶ τὴν Αἰθιόπων
to-sail-round — both Arabia the most and the of-Ethiopians
γῆν καὶ τὴν Λιβύην τε καὶ τοὺς Νομάδας ὑπὲρ τὸν Ἄτλαντα
land and — Libya both and the Nomads beyond — Atlas
τὸ ὄρος ὡς ἐπὶ Γάδειρα ἔσω ἐς τὴν ἡμετέραν θάλασσαν
the mountain as toward Gadeira inside into the our sea

καὶ τὴν Λιβύην τε καταστρεψάμενος καὶ Καρχηδόνα οὕτω
and — Libya both having-subdued and Carthage so
δὴ τῆς Ἀσίας πάσης δικαίως ἂν βασιλεὺς καλεῖσθαι·
indeed — of-Asia all justly — king to-be-called
1.3 τοὺς γάρ τοι Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων βασιλέας οὐδὲ τοῦ
the for surely of-Persians and of-Medes kings not-even of-the
πολλοστοῦ μέρους τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπάρχοντας οὐ σὺν δίκῃ
smallest part — of-Asia ruling not with justice
καλεῖν σφᾶς μεγάλους βασιλέας. ἔνθεν δὲ οἱ μέν, ὅτι
to-call themselves great kings thence and the-ones indeed that
ἐς τὸν πόντον τὸν Εὔξεινον ἐσπλεῖν ἐπενόει ἐς Σκύθας
into the sea the Euxine to-sail-in he-intended to Scythians
τε καὶ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Μαιῶτιν, οἱ δέ, ὅτι ἐς
both and the lake — Maeotis the-others and that to
Σικελίαν τε καὶ ἄκραν Ἰαπυγίαν· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ὑποκινεῖν
Sicily both and cape Iapygian already for also to-be-stirring
αὐτὸν τὸ Ῥωμαίων ὄνομα προχωροῦν ἐπὶ μέγα.
him the of-Romans name advancing to great
1.4 ἐγὼ δὲ ὁποῖα μὲν ἦν Ἀλεξάνδρου τὰ ἐνθυμήματα
I and of-what-sort indeed were of-Alexander the designs
οὔτε ἔχω ἀτρεκῶς ξυμβαλεῖν οὔτε μέλει ἔμοιγε
neither am-able exactly to-infer nor is-it-my-concern I-at-least
εἰκάζειν, ἐκεῖνο δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἄν μοι δοκῶ ἰσχυρίσασθαι,
to-guess that and also myself — to-me I-seem to-assert
οὔτε μικρόν τι καὶ φαῦλον ἐπινοεῖν Ἀλέξανδρον
neither small anything and trivial to-intend Alexander
οὔτε μεῖναι ἂν ἀτρεμοῦντα ἐπ᾽ οὐδενὶ τῶν ἤδη
nor to-have-remained — staying-quiet on anything of-the already
κεκτημένων, οὐδὲ εἰ τὴν Εὐρώπην τῇ Ἀσίᾳ προσέθηκεν,
acquired not-even if — Europe — to-Asia he-had-added
οὐδ᾽ εἰ τὰς Βρεττανῶν νήσους τῇ Εὐρώπῃ, ἀλλὰ ἔτι
nor if the of-Britons islands — to-Europe but still

ἂν ἐπέκεινα ζητεῖν τι τῶν ἠγνοημένων, εἰ καὶ μὴ
— beyond to-seek something of-the unknown if even not
ἄλλῳ τῳ, ἀλλὰ αὐτόν γε αὑτῷ ἐρίζοντα.
with-another anyone but himself at-least with-himself vying
καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐπαινῶ τοὺς σοφιστὰς τῶν Ἰνδῶν, ὧν 1.5
and for this I-praise the sages of-the Indians of-whom
λέγουσιν ἔστιν οὓς καταληφθέντας ὑπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου
they-say there-are whom having-been-caught by Alexander
ὑπαιθρίους ἐν λειμῶνι, ἵναπερ αὐτοῖς διατριβαὶ ἦσαν,
in-the-open in a-meadow where-indeed for-them discourses were
ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ποιῆσαι πρὸς τὴν ὄψιν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ
other indeed nothing to-have-done at the sight of-him both and
τῆς στρατιᾶς, κρούειν δὲ τοῖς ποσὶ τὴν γῆν ἐφ᾽ ἧς
of-the army to-strike but with-the feet the ground on which
βεβηκότες ἦσαν. ὡς δὲ ἤρετο Ἀλέξανδρος δι᾽ ἑρμηνέων
having-stepped they-were when and asked Alexander through interpreters
ὅ τι νοοῖ αὐτοῖς τὸ ἔργον, τοὺς δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι ὧδε·
what ever might-mean for-them the action they and to-have-answered thus
βασιλεῦ Ἀλέξανδρε, ἄνθρωπος μὲν ἕκαστος τοσόνδε τῆς 1.6
king Alexander man indeed each so-much of-the
γῆς κατέχει ὅσονπερ τοῦτό ἐστιν ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ βεβήκαμεν·
earth holds as-much-as-very this is on which we-have-stepped
σὺ δὲ ἄνθρωπος ὢν παραπλήσιος τοῖς ἄλλοις, πλήν γε
you and man being like to-the others except at-least
δὴ ὅτι πολυπράγμων καὶ ἀτάσθαλος, ἀπὸ τῆς οἰκείας
indeed that busy and reckless from the (your)-own
τοσαύτην γῆν ἐπεξέρχῃ πράγματα ἔχων τε καὶ παρέχων
so-much earth you-traverse troubles having both and giving
ἄλλοις. καὶ οὖν καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον ἀποθανὼν τοσοῦτον
to-others and then also a-little later having-died so-much
καθέξεις τῆς γῆς ὅσον ἐξαρκεῖ ἐντεθάφθαι τῷ σώματι.
you-will-hold of-the earth as-much-as suffices to-be-buried for-the body

2.1 κἀνταῦθα ἐπῄνεσε μὲν Ἀλέξανδρος τούς τε λόγους
and-there praised indeed Alexander the both words
αὐτοὺς καὶ τοὺς εἰπόντας, ἔπρασσε δὲ ὅμως ἄλλα
themselves and those having-spoken did but nevertheless other-things
καὶ τἀναντία οἷς ἐπῄνεσεν. ἐπεὶ καὶ Διογένην τὸν
and the-opposite to-what he-praised since also Diogenes the
ἐκ Σινώπης θαυμάσαι λέγεται, ἐν Ἰσθμῷ ἐντυχὼν
from Sinope to-have-admired is-said at Isthmus having-met
τῷ Διογένει κατακειμένῳ ἐν ἡλίῳ, ἐπιστὰς σὺν τοῖς
— Diogenes lying in sun having-stood-over with the
ὑπασπισταῖς καὶ τοῖς πεζεταίροις καὶ ἐρόμενος εἴ του
shield-bearers and the foot-companions and having-asked if anything
δέοιτο· ὁ δὲ Διογένης ἄλλου μὲν ἔφη δεῖσθαι οὐδενός, ἀπὸ
he-needed he and Diogenes other indeed he-said to-need nothing from
τοῦ ἡλίου δὲ ἀπελθεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς σὺν
the sun but to-go-away he-bade him both and those with
αὐτῷ. οὕτω τοι οὐ πάντῃ ἔξω τοῦ ἐπινοεῖν τὰ κρείττω
him so surely not wholly outside of-the to-conceive the better-things
ἦν Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀλλ' ἐκ δόξης γὰρ δεινῶς ἐκρατεῖτο.
was Alexander but by glory for terribly he-was-mastered

2.2 ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐς Τάξιλα αὐτῷ ἀφικομένῳ καὶ ἰδόντι τῶν
since also to Taxila for-him having-arrived and having-seen of-the
σοφιστῶν τῶν Ἰνδῶν τοὺς γυμνοὺς πόθος ἐγένετο ξυνεῖναί
sages of-the Indians the naked longing came to-be-with
τινα οἱ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων, ὅτι τὴν καρτερίαν αὐτῶν
one to-him of-the men these because the endurance of-them
ἐθαύμασε· καὶ ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτατος τῶν σοφιστῶν, ὅτου
he-admired and the indeed oldest of-the sages whose
ὁμιληταὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν, Δάνδαμις ὄνομα, οὔτε αὐτὸς
disciples the others were Dandamis by-name neither himself
ἔφη παρ' Ἀλέξανδρον ἥξειν οὔτε τοὺς ἄλλους εἴα,
he-said to Alexander would-come nor the others allowed

ἀλλὰ ὑποκρίνασθαι γὰρ λέγεται ὡς Διὸς υἱὸς καὶ αὐτὸς 2.3
but to-have-answered for is-said that of-Zeus son also himself
εἴη, εἴπερ οὖν καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ ὅτι οὔτε δέοιτό του
was if-indeed then also Alexander and that neither he-needed anything
τῶν παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ἔχειν γάρ οἱ εὖ τὰ παρόντα, καὶ
of-the from Alexander to-have for to-him well the present-things and
ἅμα ὁρᾶν τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ πλανωμένους τοσαύτην
at-the-same-time to-see those with him wandering so-much
γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ οὐδενί, μηδὲ πέρας τι
land and sea for good no and-not end any
αὐτοῖς γινόμενον τῶν πολλῶν πλανῶν. οὔτ᾽ οὖν ποθεῖν
to-them coming-about of-the many wanderings neither then to-long-for
τι αὐτὸς ὅτου κύριος ἦν Ἀλέξανδρος δοῦναι, οὔτε
anything himself of-which master was Alexander to-give nor
αὖ δεδιέναι, ὅτου κρατοίη ἐκεῖνος, ἔστιν οὗ εἴργεσθαι·
again to-fear of-what might-rule that-one there-is where to-be-excluded
ζῶντι μὲν γάρ οἱ τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν ἐξαρκεῖν 2.4
for-living indeed for for-him the of-Indians land to-suffice
φέρουσαν τὰ ὡραῖα, ἀποθανόντα δὲ ἀπαλλαγήσεσθαι
bearing the seasonal-fruits having-died and to-be-going-to-be-freed
οὐκ ἐπιεικοῦς ξυνοίκου τοῦ σώματος. οὔκουν οὐδὲ
not suitable housemate of-the body not-therefore even
Ἀλέξανδρον ἐπιχειρῆσαι βιάσασθαι γνόντα ἐλεύθερον
Alexander to-have-tried to-compel having-recognized free
ὄντα τὸν ἄνδρα, ἀλλὰ Κάλανον γὰρ ἀναπεισθῆναι τῶν
being the man but Calanus for to-have-been-persuaded of-the
ταύτῃ σοφιστῶν, ὅντινα μάλιστα δὴ αὐτοῦ ἀκράτορα
there sages whom most indeed of-himself unrestrained
Μεγασθένης ἀνέγραψεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς σοφιστὰς λέγειν
Megasthenes recorded themselves the sages to-say

κακίζοντας τὸν Κάλανον, ὅτι ἀπολιπὼν τὴν παρὰ σφίσιν
reviling — Calanus because having-left the among them
εὐδαιμονίαν ὁ δὲ δεσπότην ἄλλον ἢ τὸν θεὸν ἐθεράπευε.
happiness he and master other than the god served

3.1 ταῦτα ἐγὼ ἀνέγραψα, ὅτι καὶ ὑπὲρ Καλάνου ἐχρῆν
these-things I recorded because also about Calanus it-was-necessary
εἰπεῖν ἐν τῇ περὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου συγγραφῇ· μαλακισθῆναι γάρ
to-tell in the about Alexander history to-have-weakened for
τι τῷ σώματι τὸν Κάλανον ἐν τῇ Περσίδι γῇ, οὔπω
somewhat in-the body — Calanus in the Persian land not-yet
πρόσθεν νοσήσαντα· οὔκουν οὐδὲ δίαιταν διαιτᾶσθαι θέλειν
before having-been-ill not-therefore even regimen to-follow to-wish
ἀρρώστου ἀνδρός, ἀλλὰ εἰπεῖν γὰρ πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον,
of-an-invalid man but to-have-said for to Alexander
καλῶς αὐτῷ ἔχειν ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε καταστρέψαι, πρίν τινος
well for-him to-be in the such to-end before some
ἐς πεῖραν ἐλθεῖν παθήματος ὅ τι περ ἐξαναγκάσει
to trial to-come suffering what ever indeed will-force
αὐτὸν μεταβάλλειν τὴν πρόσθεν δίαιταν.
him to-change the former regimen

3.2 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀντειπεῖν μὲν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ πολύ· ὡς δ'
and Alexander to-have-argued-against indeed him for long when but
οὐχ ἡττησόμενον ἑώρα, ἀλλὰ ἄλλως ἂν ἀπαλλαγέντα, εἰ μή
not about-to-be-overcome he-saw but otherwise — having-departed if not
τις ταύτῃ ὑπεικάθοι, οὕτω δὴ ὅπῃ ἐπήγγελλεν αὐτός,
anyone in-this-way should-yield so indeed in-what-way directed himself
κελεῦσαι νησθῆναι αὐτῷ πυράν, καὶ ταύτης ἐπιμεληθῆναι
to-have-ordered to-be-heaped-up for-him a-pyre and of-this to-have-taken-charge
Πτολεμαῖον τὸν Λάγου τὸν σωματοφύλακα. οἱ δὲ καὶ
Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus the bodyguard some and also
πομπήν τινα προπομπεῦσαι αὐτοῦ λέγουσιν ἵππους τε
procession some to-have-led-before him say horses both

καὶ ἄνδρας, τοὺς μὲν ὡπλισμένους, τοὺς δὲ θυμιάματα
and men the-ones indeed armed the-others and incenses
παντοῖα τῇ πυρᾷ ἐπιφέροντας· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἐκπώματα
of-all-kinds to-the pyre bringing-on the-others and also cups
χρυσᾶ καὶ ἀργυρᾶ καὶ ἐσθῆτα βασιλικὴν λέγουσιν ὅτι ἔφερον.
golden and silver and clothing royal say that they-carried
αὐτῷ δὲ παρασκευασθῆναι μὲν ἵππον, ὅτι βαδίσαι 3.3
for-him and to-have-been-prepared indeed a-horse because to-walk
ἀδυνάτως εἶχεν ὑπὸ τῆς νόσου· οὐ μὴν δυνηθῆναί
unable he-was from the illness not however to-have-been-able
γε οὐδὲ τοῦ ἵππου ἐπιβῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἐπὶ κλίνης γὰρ
at-least not-even the horse to-mount but on a-litter for
κομισθῆναι φερόμενον, ἐστεφανωμένον τε τῷ Ἰνδῶν
to-have-been-conveyed being-carried garlanded both in-the of-Indians
νόμῳ καὶ ᾄδοντα τῇ Ἰνδῶν γλώσσῃ. οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ
custom and singing in-the of-Indians tongue the and Indians
λέγουσιν ὅτι ὕμνοι θεῶν ἦσαν καὶ αὐτῶν ἔπαινοι.
say that hymns to-gods were and of-them praises
καὶ τὸν μὲν ἵππον τοῦτον ὅτου ἐπιβήσεσθαι ἔμελλε, 3.4
and the indeed horse this which to-mount he-was-about
βασιλικὸν ὄντα τῶν Νησαίων, πρὶν ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὴν
royal being of-the Nesaean before to-go-up onto the
πυρὰν Λυσιμάχῳ χαρίσασθαι, τῶν τινι θεραπευόντων
pyre to-Lysimachus to-have-given of-those some attending
αὐτὸν ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ· τῶν δὲ δὴ ἐκπωμάτων ἢ στρωμάτων
him for wisdom of-the and indeed cups or rugs
ὅσα ἐμβληθῆναι εἰς τὴν πυρὰν κόσμον αὐτῷ τετάχει
as-many-as to-be-thrown into the pyre as-adornment for-him had-ordered
Ἀλέξανδρος, ἄλλα ἄλλοις δοῦναι τῶν ἀμφ' αὑτόν.
Alexander others to-others to-have-given of-those around himself

3.5 οὕτω δὴ ἐπιβάντα τῇ πυρᾷ κατακλιθῆναι μὲν ἐν κόσμῳ,
so indeed having-mounted the pyre to-have-lain-down indeed in order
ὁρᾶσθαι δὲ πρὸς τῆς στρατιᾶς ξυμπάσης. Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
to-be-seen and by the army whole to-Alexander
δὲ οὐκ ἐπιεικὲς φανῆναι τὸ θέαμα ἐπὶ φίλῳ ἀνδρὶ
and not fitting to-have-appeared the sight for friend man
γιγνόμενον· ἀλλὰ τοῖς γὰρ ἄλλοις θαῦμα παρασχέσθαι
happening but to-the for others wonder to-have-provided
οὐδέν τι παρακινήσαντα ἐν τῷ πυρὶ τοῦ σώματος.
not at-all having-moved in the fire of-the body
3.6 ὡς δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐς τὴν πυρὰν ἐνέβαλον οἷς
when and the fire into the pyre they-threw to-whom
προστεταγμένον ἦν, τάς τε σάλπιγγας φθέγξασθαι λέγει
ordered it-was the both trumpets to-have-sounded says
Νέαρχος, οὕτως ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου προστεταγμένον, καὶ
Nearchus so by Alexander ordered and
τὴν στρατιὰν ἐπαλαλάξαι πᾶσαν ὁποῖόν τι καὶ
the army to-have-raised-the-war-cry all of-what-sort some also
ἐς τὰς μάχας ἰοῦσα ἐπηλάλαζε, καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας
into the battles going it-raised-the-war-cry and the elephants
συνεπηχῆσαι τὸ ὀξὺ καὶ πολεμικόν, τιμῶντας Κάλανον.
to-have-trumpeted-with the shrill and warlike honoring Calanus
ταῦτα καὶ τοιαῦτα ὑπὲρ Καλάνου τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἱκανοὶ
these-things and such-things about Calanus the Indian sufficient-writers
ἀναγεγράφασιν, οὐκ ἀχρεῖα πάντα ἐς ἀνθρώπους, ὅτῳ
have-recorded not useless all for men to-whom
γνῶναι ἐπιμελές, ὡς καρτερόν τέ ἐστι καὶ ἀνίκητον
to-know is-a-care how strong both is and unconquerable
γνώμη ἀνθρωπίνη ὅ τι περ ἐθέλοι ἐξεργάσασθαι.
mind human what ever indeed it-might-wish to-accomplish

At Susa Alexander executes Abulites and his son for misgovernment; many satraps had misruled, expecting him never to return from India, and he grows quicker to punish. He marries Darius' eldest daughter and, says Aristobulus, a daughter of Ochus, and gives Persian and Median noblewomen to some eighty companions in Persian rites; more than ten thousand other Macedonians with Asian wives receive gifts. He pays the soldiers' debts at open tables without taking their names and crowns the bravest. Thirty thousand youths trained as Macedonians arrive, and Asian horsemen are enrolled in the companion cavalry, which, with Peucestas' Persian ways, grieves the Macedonians.

ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος Ἀτροπάτην μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ 4.1
in this and Alexander Atropates indeed to the his-own
σατραπείαν ἐκπέμπει παρελθὼν ἐς Σοῦσα, Ἀβουλίτην δὲ
satrapy sends-out having-gone-on to Susa Abulites and
καὶ τὸν τούτου παῖδα Ὀξάθρην, ὅτι κακῶς ἐπεμελεῖτο
and the his son Oxathres because badly he-took-care-of
τῶν Σουσίων, συλλαβὼν ἀπέκτεινε.
of-the Susians having-seized killed
πολλὰ μὲν δὴ ἐπεπλημμέλητο ἐκ τῶν κατεχόντων 4.2
many-things indeed indeed had-been-done-amiss by those holding
τὰς χώρας ὅσαι δορίκτητοι πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐγένοντο
the countries as-many-as spear-won by Alexander had-become
ἔς τε τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τάφους καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς ὑπηκόους,
against both the temples and tombs and themselves the subjects
ὅτι χρόνιος ὁ εἰς Ἰνδοὺς στόλος ἐγεγένητο τῷ βασιλεῖ
because long the into Indians expedition had-become for-the king
καὶ οὐ πιστὸν ἐφαίνετο ἀπονοστήσειν αὐτὸν ἐκ τοσῶνδε
and not credible it-seemed to-be-going-to-return him from so-many

ἐθνῶν καὶ τοσῶνδε ἐλεφάντων, ὑπὲρ τὸν Ἰνδόν τε καὶ
peoples and so-many elephants beyond — Indus both and
Ὑδάσπην καὶ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην καὶ Ὕφασιν φθειρόμενον.
Hydaspes and — Acesines and Hyphasis perishing

4.3 καὶ αἱ ἐν Γαδρωσίοις δὲ αὐτῷ ξυμφοραὶ ξυνενεχθεῖσαι ἔτι
and the in Gadrosians and for-him disasters having-befallen still
μᾶλλον ἐπῆραν τοὺς ταύτῃ σατραπεύοντας καταφρονῆσαι
more encouraged those there being-satraps to-despise
αὐτοῦ τῆς οἴκοι ἀπονοστήσεως. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸς
his of-the homeward return not however but also himself
Ἀλέξανδρος ὀξύτερος λέγεται γενέσθαι ἐν τῷ τότε ἐς
Alexander sharper is-said to-have-become in the then-(time) for
τὸ πιστεῦσαί τε τοῖς ἐπικαλουμένοις ὡς πιθανοῖς δὴ
the to-believe both the things-charged as credible indeed
ἐν παντὶ οὖσι, καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ τιμωρήσασθαι μεγάλως τοὺς
in everything being and for the to-punish greatly those
καὶ ἐπὶ μικροῖς ἐξελεγχθέντας, ὅτι καὶ τὰ μεγάλα ἂν
even on small-matters convicted because also the great-things —
ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ τῇ αὐτῇ γνώμῃ ἐξεργάσασθαι.
they-seemed to-him in-the same spirit to-accomplish

4.4 ὁ δὲ καὶ γάμους ἐποίησεν ἐν Σούσοις αὑτοῦ τε καὶ
he and also weddings held in Susa of-his-own both and
τῶν ἑταίρων· αὐτὸς μὲν τῶν Δαρείου θυγατέρων τὴν
of-the companions himself indeed of-the of-Darius daughters the
πρεσβυτάτην Βαρσίνην ἠγάγετο, ὡς δὲ λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος,
eldest Barsine married as and says Aristobulus
καὶ ἄλλην πρὸς ταύτῃ, τῶν Ὤχου θυγατέρων τὴν
also another besides this of-the of-Ochus daughters the
νεωτάτην Παρύσατιν. ἤδη δὲ ἦν αὐτῷ ἠγμένη καὶ ἡ
youngest Parysatis already and was by-him married also the
Ὀξυάρτου τοῦ Βακτρίου παῖς Ῥωξάνη.
of-Oxyartes the Bactrian daughter Roxane

Δρύπετιν δὲ Ἡφαιστίωνι δίδωσι, Δαρείου παῖδα καὶ 4.5
Drypetis and to-Hephaestion he-gives of-Darius daughter also
ταύτην, ἀδελφὴν τῆς αὐτοῦ γυναικός· ἐθέλειν γάρ οἱ
this-one sister of-the his-own wife to-wish for him
ἀνεψιοὺς τῶν παίδων γενέσθαι τοὺς Ἡφαιστίωνος παῖδας·
cousins of-the children to-become the of-Hephaestion children
Κρατερῷ δὲ Ἀμαστρίνην τὴν Ὀξυάτρου τοῦ Δαρείου
to-Craterus and Amastrine the of-Oxyatres of-the of-Darius
ἀδελφοῦ παῖδα· Περδίκκᾳ δὲ τὴν Ἀτροπάτου τοῦ Μηδίας
brother daughter to-Perdiccas and the of-Atropates of-the of-Media
σατράπου παῖδα ἔδωκεν·
satrap daughter he-gave
Πτολεμαίῳ δὲ τῷ σωματοφύλακι καὶ Εὐμενεῖ τῷ γραμματεῖ 4.6
to-Ptolemy and the bodyguard and to-Eumenes the secretary
τῷ βασιλικῷ τὰς Ἀρταβάζου παῖδας τῷ μὲν Ἀρτακάμαν,
the royal the of-Artabazus daughters to-the-one indeed Artacama
τῷ δὲ Ἄρτωνιν· Νεάρχῳ δὲ τὴν Βαρσίνης τε
to-the-other and Artonis to-Nearchus and the of-Barsine both
καὶ Μέντορος παῖδα· Σελεύκῳ δὲ τὴν Σπιταμένους τοῦ
and of-Mentor daughter to-Seleucus and the of-Spitamenes the
Βακτρίου παῖδα· ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἑταίροις
Bactrian daughter likewise and also to-the other companions
τὰς δοκιμωτάτας Περσῶν τε καὶ Μήδων παῖδας ἐς
the most-distinguished of-Persians both and of-Medes daughters about
ὀγδοήκοντα. οἱ γάμοι δὲ ἐποιήθησαν νόμῳ τῷ Περσικῷ·
eighty the weddings and were-held in-custom the Persian
θρόνοι ἐτέθησαν τοῖς νυμφίοις ἐφεξῆς καὶ μετὰ τὸν 4.7
chairs were-set for-the bridegrooms in-a-row and after the
πότον ἦκον αἱ γαμούμεναι καὶ παρεκαθέζοντο ἑκάστη
drinking came the being-married and sat-down each
τῷ ἑαυτῆς· οἱ δὲ ἐδεξιώσαντό τε αὐτὰς καὶ ἐφίλησαν·
by-the her-own they and took-the-right-hand both them and kissed

πρῶτος δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦρξεν· ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ γὰρ πάντων
first and the king began in the same for of-all
ἐγίγνοντο οἱ γάμοι. καὶ τοῦτο, εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, ἔδοξε
were the weddings and this if-indeed anything other it-seemed
δημοτικόν τε καὶ φιλέταιρον πρᾶξαι Ἀλέξανδρον.
popular both and friendly-to-companions to-have-done Alexander
4.8 οἱ δὲ παραλαβόντες ἀπῆγον τὴν αὑτοῦ ἕκαστος· προῖκας
they and having-received led-away the his-own each dowries
δὲ ξυμπάσαις ἐπέδωκεν Ἀλέξανδρος. καὶ ὅσοι δὲ
and to-all gave Alexander and as-many-as and
ἄλλοι ἠγμένοι ἦσαν Μακεδόνες τῶν Ἀσιανῶν τινας
other married were Macedonians of-the Asian some
γυναικῶν, ἀπογραφῆναι ἐκέλευσε καὶ τούτων τὰ ὀνόματα,
women to-be-registered he-ordered also of-these the names
καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τοὺς μυρίους, καὶ τούτοις δωρεαὶ
and they-were over the ten-thousand and to-these gifts
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐδόθησαν ἐπὶ τοῖς γάμοις.
of-Alexander were-given at the weddings
5.1 καὶ τὰ χρέα ἐπιλύσασθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς ὅσοις χρέα
and the debts to-pay-off of-the army for-as-many-as debts
ἦν ἐν καιρῷ οἱ ἔδοξε, καὶ κελεύει ἀπογράφεσθαι
were in season to-him it-seemed and he-orders to-register
ὁπόσον ὀφείλει ἕκαστος, ὡς ληψομένους. καὶ τὰ μὲν
how-much owes each as about-to-receive and the indeed
πρῶτα ὀλίγοι ἀπέγραψαν σφῶν τὰ ὀνόματα δεδιότες ἐξ
first few registered of-them the names fearing from
Ἀλεξάνδρου μὴ πεῖρα αὖτη εἴη καθειμένη, ὅτῳ οὐκ
Alexander lest a-test this might-be set-down for-whom not
ἀποχρῶσα ἡ μισθοφορὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐστι καὶ ὅτῳ
sufficient the pay of-the soldiers is and for-whom
πολυτελὴς ἡ δίαιτα.
extravagant the living

ὡς δὲ ἐξήγγελτο ὅτι οὐκ ἀπογράφουσι σφᾶς οἱ 5.2
when and it-had-been-reported that not register themselves the
πολλοί, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπικρύπτουσιν ὅτῳ τι εἴη συμβόλαιον,
most but hide whoever any might-have contract
τὴν μὲν ἀπιστίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐκάκισεν· οὐ γὰρ
the indeed distrust of-the soldiers he-reproached not for
χρῆναι οὔτ᾽ οὖν τὸν βασιλέα ἄλλο τι ἢ ἀληθεύειν
to-be-right neither then the king other anything than to-speak-the-truth
πρὸς τοὺς ὑπηκόους, οὔτε τῶν ἀρχομένων τινὰ ἄλλο
to the subjects nor of-the ruled anyone other
τι ἢ ἀληθεύειν δοκεῖν τὸν βασιλέα.
anything than to-speak-the-truth to-think the king
καταθεὶς δὲ τραπέζας ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἐπὶ τούτων 5.3
having-set-up and tables in the camp and on these
χρυσίον καὶ τοὺς ἐπιμελησομένους τῆς δόσεως ἑκάστοις,
gold and those about-to-take-charge of-the giving for-each
ὅστις συμβόλαιον ἐπεδείκνυτο, ἐπιλύεσθαι τὰ χρέα ἐκέλευεν
whoever a-contract showed to-pay-off the debts he-ordered
οὐκ ἀπογραφομένους ἔτι τὰ ὀνόματα. καὶ οὕτω δὴ
not registering any-longer the names and so indeed
ἐπίστευσάν τε ἀληθεύειν Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ σὺν χάριτι
they-believed both to-speak-the-truth Alexander and with gratitude
μείζονι ἐγίγνετο αὐτοῖς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι μᾶλλόν τι
greater became to-them the not to-be-known more somewhat
ἢ τὸ παύσασθαι ὀφείλοντας. λέγεται δὲ γενέσθαι ἡ
than the to-have-ceased owing is-said and to-have-been the
δόσις αὕτη τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐς τάλαντα δισμύρια.
giving this to-the army to talents twenty-thousand
ἔδωκεν δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἄλλοις ἄλλα, ὅπως τις κατ᾽ 5.4
he-gave and also gifts to-others other-things as anyone according-to
ἀξίωσιν ἐτιμᾶτο ἢ κατ᾽ ἀρετὴν εἴ τις ἐπιφανὴς
rank was-honored or according-to valor if anyone conspicuous

ἐγεγόνει ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις. καὶ ἐστεφάνωσε χρυσοῖς
had-become in the dangers and he-crowned with-golden
στεφάνοις τοὺς ἀνδραγαθίᾳ διαπρέποντας, πρῶτον μὲν
crowns those for-bravery distinguished first indeed
Πευκέσταν τὸν ὑπερασπίσαντα, ἔπειτα Λεοννάτον,
Peucestas the having-shielded then Leonnatus
5.5 καὶ τοῦτον ὑπερασπίσαντα, καὶ διὰ τοὺς ἐν Ἰνδοῖς
also this-one having-shielded and because-of the in Indians
κινδύνους καὶ τὴν ἐν Ὄροις νίκην γενομένην, ὅτι
dangers and the at Ora victory having-happened because
παραταξάμενος σὺν τῇ ὑπολειφθείσῃ δυνάμει πρὸς τοὺς
drawn-up with the left-behind force against the
νεωτερίζοντας τῶν τε Ὠρειτῶν καὶ τῶν πλησίον τούτων
rebelling of-the both Oreitae and of-those near these
ᾠκισμένων τῇ τε μάχῃ ἐκράτησε καὶ τὰ ἄλλα καλῶς
settled in-the both battle he-prevailed and the other-things well
ἔδοξε τὰ ἐν Ὄροις κοσμῆσαι.
he-seemed the-affairs at Ora to-have-ordered
5.6 ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ Νέαρχον ἐπὶ τῷ περίπλῳ τῷ ἐκ τῆς
after these and Nearchus for the voyage the from the
Ἰνδῶν γῆς κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν ἐστεφάνωσε· καὶ
of-Indians land through the great sea he-crowned and
γὰρ καὶ οὗτος ἤδη ἀφιγμένος ἐς Σοῦσα ἦν· ἐπὶ τούτοις
for also this-one already having-arrived at Susa was after these
δὲ Ὀνησίκριτον τὸν κυβερνήτην τῆς νεὼς τῆς βασιλικῆς·
and Onesicritus the helmsman of-the ship the royal
ἔτι δὲ Ἡφαιστίωνα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς σωματοφύλακας.
still and Hephaestion and the other the bodyguards
6.1 ἦκον δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ σατράπαι οἱ ἐκ τῶν πόλεών τε τῶν
came and to-him also the satraps the from the cities both the
νεοκτίστων καὶ τῆς ἄλλης γῆς τῆς δοριαλώτου παῖδας
newly-founded and of-the other land the spear-won youths

ἡβάσκοντας ἤδη ἐς τρισμυρίους ἄγοντες τὴν αὐτὴν
coming-of-age already about thirty-thousand leading the same
ἡλικίαν γεγονότας, οὓς Ἐπιγόνους ἐκάλει Ἀλέξανδρος,
age having-reached whom Successors called Alexander
κεκοσμημένους Μακεδονικοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ τὰ πολέμια ἐς
equipped with-Macedonian arms and the warlike-skills in
τὸν τρόπον τὸν Μακεδονικὸν ἠσκημένους.
the manner the Macedonian trained
καὶ οὗτοι ἀφικόμενοι λέγονται ἀνιᾶσαι Μακεδόνας, ὡς 6.2
and these having-arrived are-said to-have-grieved Macedonians as
πάντα δὴ μηχανωμένου Ἀλεξάνδρου ὑπὲρ τοῦ μηκέτι
everything indeed contriving Alexander for the no-longer
ὡσαύτως δεῖσθαι Μακεδόνων· εἶναι γὰρ οὖν καὶ Μηδικὴν
likewise to-need Macedonians to-be for then also Median
τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου στολὴν ἄλγος οὐ σμικρὸν Μακεδόσιν
the of-Alexander dress pain not small to-Macedonians
ὁρωμένην καὶ τοὺς γάμους ἐν τῷ νόμῳ τῷ Περσικῷ
being-seen and the weddings in the custom the Persian
ποιηθέντας οὐ πρὸς θυμοῦ γενέσθαι τοῖς πολλοῖς αὐτῶν,
held not to heart to-have-been to-the most of-them
οὐδὲ τῶν γημάντων ἔστιν οἷς, καίτοι τῇ ἰσότητι τῇ
not-even of-the having-married there-are to-whom although by-the equality the
ἐς τὸν βασιλέα μεγάλως τετιμημένοις.
toward the king greatly honored
Πευκέστας τε ὁ Περσῶν σατράπης τῇ τε σκευῇ καὶ τῇ 6.3
Peucestas both the of-Persians satrap in-the both dress and in-the
φωνῇ περσίζων ἐλύπει αὐτούς, ὅτι τῷ βαρβαρισμῷ
speech playing-the-Persian grieved them because at-the barbarism
αὐτοῦ ἔχαιρεν Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ οἱ Βακτρίων δὲ καὶ οἱ
his rejoiced Alexander and the of-Bactrians and and the
Σογδιανῶν καὶ Ἀραχωτῶν ἱππεῖς καὶ Ζαραγγῶν δὲ καὶ
of-Sogdians and of-Arachotians cavalry and of-Zarangians and and

Ἀρείων καὶ Παρθυαίων καὶ ἐκ Περσῶν οἱ Εὐάκαι καλούμενοι
of-Arians and of-Parthyaeans and from Persians the Euacae called
ἱππεῖς καταλοχισθέντες εἰς τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἑταιρικὴν
cavalry enrolled into the cavalry the companion
ὅσοι αὐτῶν κατ᾽ ἀξίωσιν καὶ κάλλει τοῦ σώματος ἢ
as-many-as of-them in rank and beauty of-the body or
τῇ ἄλλῃ ἀρετῇ ὑπερφέροντες ἐφαίνοντο, καὶ πέμπτη ἐπὶ
in-the other excellence excelling appeared and fifth besides
τούτοις ἱππαρχία προσγενομένη, οὐ βαρβαρικὴ ἡ πᾶσα,
these hipparchy added not barbarian the whole
6.4 ἀλλὰ ἐπαυξηθέντος γὰρ τοῦ παντὸς ἱππικοῦ κατελέγησαν
but having-been-increased for the whole cavalry were-enrolled
ἐς αὐτὸ τῶν βαρβάρων, τῷ τε ἀγήματι προσκαταλεγέντες
into it of-the barbarians to-the both agema enrolled-in-addition
Κωφής τε ὁ Ἀρταβάζου καὶ Ὑδάρνης καὶ Ἀρτιβόλης οἱ
Cophes both the (son)-of-Artabazus and Hydarnes and Artiboles the
Μαζαίου, καὶ Σισίνης καὶ Φραδασμένης οἱ Φραταφέρνου
(sons)-of-Mazaeus and Sisines and Phradasmenes the (sons)-of-Phrataphernes
τοῦ Παρθυαίων καὶ Ὑρκανίας σατράπου παῖδες,
the of-Parthyaeans and of-Hyrcania satrap sons
6.5 καὶ Ἰτάνης Ὀξυάρτου μὲν παῖς, Ῥωξάνης δὲ τῆς γυναικὸς
and Itanes of-Oxyartes indeed son of-Roxane and the wife
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀδελφός, καὶ Αἰγοβάρης καὶ ὁ τούτου ἀδελφὸς
of-Alexander brother and Aegobares and the his brother
Μιθροβαῖος, καὶ ἡγεμὼν ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐπισταθεὶς Ὑστάσπης
Mithrobaeus and commander over these placed Hystaspes
ὁ Βάκτριος, καὶ τούτοις δόρατα Μακεδονικὰ ἀντὶ
the Bactrian and to-these spears Macedonian instead-of
τῶν βαρβαρικῶν μεσαγκύλων δοθέντα, — ταῦτα πάντα
the barbarian thonged-javelins given these-things all
ἐλύπει τοὺς Μακεδόνας, ὡς πάντῃ δὴ βαρβαρίζοντος
grieved the Macedonians as wholly indeed barbarizing

τῇ γνώμῃ Ἀλεξάνδρου, τὰ δὲ Μακεδονικὰ νόμιμά τε
in-the spirit Alexander the and Macedonian customs both
καὶ αὐτοὺς Μακεδόνας ἐν ἀτίμῳ χώρᾳ ἄγοντος.
and themselves Macedonians in dishonored place holding

III · THE RIVERS, AND THE MUTINY AT OPIS

Alexander sails down the Eulaeus and along the coast to the Tigris, and up it to Opis, removing the Persians' weirs. There he announces the discharge of the old and disabled. The Macedonians, already resentful of his Persian ways, shout that he should send them all home and campaign with his father Ammon. He has thirteen ringleaders led away to death and answers them: Philip found them shepherds in skins and made them city-dwellers and masters of their neighbors, and he himself has given them Asia and kept nothing but the purple and the diadem, bears wounds on every part of the front of his body, and has paid their debts and honored their dead. Let them all go, and tell those at home that they deserted their king.

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τῆς μὲν πεζῆς στρατιᾶς τὴν πολλὴν 7.1
Alexander and of-the indeed infantry army the most
Ἡφαιστίωνα ἄγειν κελεύει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν
Hephaestion to-lead orders as-far to the sea the
Περσικήν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναπλεύσαντος αὐτῷ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
Persian himself and having-sailed-up for-him the fleet
ἐς τὴν Σουσίαν γῆν ἐπιβὰς τῶν νεῶν ξὺν τοῖς
into the Susian land having-embarked-on the ships with the
ὑπασπισταῖς τε καὶ τῷ ἀγήματι καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τῶν
shield-bearers both and the agema and of-the cavalry the
ἑταίρων ἀναβιβασάμενος οὐ πολλοὺς κατέπλει κατὰ τὸν
companion having-embarked not many sailed-down down the
Εὐλαῖον ποταμὸν ὡς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν.
Eulaeus river as toward sea

7.2 ἤδη δὲ πλησίον ὢν τῆς ἐκβολῆς τῆς ἐς τὸν πόντον τὰς
already and near being of-the mouth the into the sea the
μὲν πλείονάς τε καὶ πεπονηκυίας τῶν νεῶν καταλείπει
indeed more both and damaged of-the ships he-leaves
αὐτοῦ, αὐτὸς δὲ ταῖς μάλιστα ταχυναυτούσαις παρέπλει
there himself and with-the most fast-sailing coasted
ἀπὸ τοῦ Εὐλαίου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν ὡς ἐπὶ
from the Eulaeus river along the sea as toward
τὰς ἐκβολὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος· αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι αὐτῷ νῆες
the mouths — of-Tigris the and other his ships
ἀνακομισθεῖσαι κατὰ τὸν Εὐλαῖον ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν διώρυχα,
having-been-taken-back down — Eulaeus as-far to the canal
ἣ τέτμηται ἐκ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐς τὸν Εὐλαῖον, ταύτῃ
which has-been-cut from — Tigris into — Eulaeus there
διεκομίσθησαν ἐς τὸν Τίγρητα.
were-conveyed into — Tigris

7.3 τῶν γὰρ δὴ ποταμῶν τοῦ τε Εὐφράτου καὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος,
of-the for indeed rivers — both of-Euphrates and — of-Tigris
οἳ τὴν μέσην σφῶν Ἀσσυρίαν ἀπείργουσιν, ὅθεν καὶ
which the middle between-them Assyria enclose whence also
τὸ ὄνομα Μεσοποταμία πρὸς τῶν ἐπιχωρίων κληΐζεται, ὁ
the name Mesopotamia by the natives it-is-called —
μὲν Τίγρης πολύ τι ταπεινότερος ῥέων τοῦ Εὐφράτου
indeed Tigris much somewhat lower flowing — than-Euphrates
διώρυχάς τε πολλὰς ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ἐς αὑτὸν δέχεται
canals both many from — Euphrates into itself receives
καὶ πολλοὺς ἄλλους ποταμοὺς παραλαβὼν καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν
and many other rivers having-taken-in and from them
αὐξηθεὶς ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὸν πόντον τὸν Περσικόν, μέγας
increased empties into the sea the Persian great

τε καὶ οὐδαμοῦ διαβατὸς ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ἐκβολήν, καθότι
both and nowhere fordable as-far to the mouth because
οὐ καταναλίσκεται αὐτοῦ οὐδὲν ἐς τὴν χώραν.
not is-used-up of-it any on the country
ἔστι γὰρ μετεωροτέρα ἡ ταύτῃ γῆ τοῦ ὕδατος οὐδὲ 7.4
is for higher the there land than-the water nor
ἐκδίδωσιν οὗτος κατὰ τὰς διώρυχας οὐδὲ ἐς ἄλλον
does-it-flow-out this-one through the canals nor into another
ποταμόν, ἀλλὰ δέχεται γὰρ ἐκείνους μᾶλλον, ἄρδεσθαί
river but receives for those rather to-be-irrigated
τε ἀπὸ οὗ τὴν χώραν οὐδαμῇ παρέχει.
both from which the country nowhere it-allows
ὁ δὲ Εὐφράτης μετέωρός τε ῥεῖ καὶ ἰσοχείλης 7.5
— and Euphrates raised both flows and level-with-its-banks
πανταχῇ τῇ γῇ, καὶ διώρυχες δὲ πολλαὶ ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ
everywhere with-the land and canals and many from it
πεποίηνται, αἱ μὲν ἀέναοι, ἀφ᾽ ὧν ὑδρεύονται οἱ
have-been-made the-ones indeed ever-flowing from which draw-water those
παρ᾽ ἑκάτερα ᾠκισμένοι, τὰς δὲ καὶ πρὸς καιρὸν
on either-side settled the-others and also for occasion
ποιοῦνται, ὁπότε σφίσιν ὕδατος ἐνδεῶς ἔχοι, ἐς τὸ
they-make whenever to-them of-water in-want it-should-be for the
ἐπάρδειν τὴν χώραν· οὐ γὰρ ὕεται τὸ πολὺ ἡ γῆ αὕτη
to-irrigate the country not for is-rained-on the most the land this
ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· καὶ οὕτως ἐς οὐ πολὺ ὕδωρ ὁ Εὐφράτης
from sky and thus into not much water — Euphrates
τελευτῶν καὶ τεναγῶδες τοῦτο οὕτως ἀποπαύεται.
ending and marshy this thus ceases
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ περιπλεύσας κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν ὅσον 7.6
Alexander and having-sailed-round along the sea as-much-as
μεταξὺ τοῦ τε Εὐλαίου ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπεῖχεν
between of-the both Eulaeus river and — of-Tigris extended

ὁ αἰγιαλὸς τοῦ κόλπου τοῦ Περσικοῦ ἀνέπλει κατὰ τὸν
the shore of-the gulf of-the Persian sailed-up along —
Τίγρητα ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἵνα Ἡφαιστίων αὐτῷ
Tigris as-far to the camp where Hephaestion for-him
τὴν δύναμιν πᾶσαν ἔχων ἐστρατοπεδεύκει. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ
the force all having had-encamped thence and
αὖθις ἔπλει ἐς Ὦπιν, πόλιν ἐπὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος ᾠκισμένην.
again he-sailed to Opis a-city on — Tigris settled
7.7 ἐν δὲ τῷ ἀνάπλῳ τοὺς καταρράκτας τοὺς κατὰ τὸν
in and the voyage-up the weirs the along the
ποταμὸν ἀφανίζων ὁμαλὸν πάντῃ ἐποίει τὸν ῥοῦν, οἳ δὴ
river removing level everywhere he-made the current which indeed
ἐκ Περσῶν πεποιημένοι ἦσαν τοῦ μή τινα ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
by Persians made had-been for-the not anyone from sea
ἀναπλεῦσαι εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν νηΐτῃ στόλῳ κρατήσαντα.
to-sail-up into the country of-them with-naval force having-prevailed
ταῦτα δὲ μεμηχάνητο ἅτε δὴ οὐ ναυτικοῖς τοῖς Πέρσαις·
these-things and had-been-contrived as indeed not seafaring to-the Persians
οὕτω δὴ συνεχεῖς οἱ καταρράκται πεποιημένοι ἄπορον
so indeed continuous the weirs made impassable
τὸν ἀνάπλουν ἐποίουν τὸν κατὰ τὸν Τίγρητα. Ἀλέξανδρος
the voyage-up made the along — Tigris Alexander
δὲ οὐκ ἔφη τῶν κρατούντων τοῖς ὅπλοις εἶναι τὰ
and not he-said of-those prevailing with-the arms to-be the
τοιαῦτα σοφίσματα· οὔκουν πρὸς αὑτοῦ ἐποιεῖτο ταύτην
such devices not-therefore for himself he-considered this
τὴν ἀσφάλειαν, ἥντινα ἔργῳ οὐδὲ λόγου ἀξίαν ἀπέφηνε
the security which in-fact not-even of-account worthy he-showed
οὐ χαλεπῶς διακόψας τῶν Περσῶν τὰ σπουδάσματα.
not with-difficulty having-broken-through of-the Persians the works

ὡς δὲ ἐς τὴν Ὦπιν ἀφίκετο, συναγαγὼν τοὺς Μακεδόνας 8.1
when and to — Opis he-arrived having-gathered the Macedonians
προεῖπεν ὅτι τοὺς ὑπὸ γήρως ἢ πηρώσεως τοῦ σώματος
he-proclaimed that those by age or maiming of-the body
ἀχρείους ἐς τὰ πολέμια ὄντας παραλύει μὲν τῆς
useless for the war being he-releases indeed from-the
στρατιᾶς, ἀποπέμπει δὲ ἐς τὰ σφέτερα ἤθη, ἐπιδώσει
army he-sends-away and to the their-own abodes he-will-give
δὲ ὅσα αὐτούς τε ζηλωτοτέρους ποιήσει τοῖς οἴκοι
and as-much-as them both more-enviable will-make to-those at-home
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Μακεδόνας ἐξορμήσει ἐς τὸ ἐθέλειν τῶν
and the other Macedonians will-urge to the to-wish of-the
αὐτῶν κινδύνων τε καὶ πόνων μετέχειν.
same dangers both and toils to-share
Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν ὡς χαριούμενος δῆθεν τοῖς Μακεδόσιν 8.2
Alexander indeed as about-to-please forsooth the Macedonians
ταῦτα ἔλεγεν· οἱ δὲ ὡς ὑπερορώμενοί τε ἤδη πρὸς
these-things said they and as being-slighted both already by
Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ ἀχρεῖοι πάντῃ ἐς τὰ πολέμια νομιζόμενοι
Alexander and useless wholly for the war considered
οὐκ ἀλόγως αὖ τῷ λόγῳ ἠχθέσθησαν τῷ πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου
not unreasonably again at-the word were-vexed the by Alexander
λεχθέντι, κατὰ τὴν στρατιὰν ταύτην πᾶσαν πολλοῖς καὶ
spoken during the expedition this all by-many also
ἄλλοις ἀχθεσθέντες, ὅτι πολλάκις ἤδη ἐλύπει αὐτοὺς ἥ
other-things having-been-vexed because often already grieved them the
τε ἐσθὴς ἡ Περσικὴ ἐς τοῦτο φέρουσα καὶ τῶν Ἐπιγόνων
both dress the Persian toward this tending and of-the Successors
τῶν βαρβάρων ἡ ἐς τὰ Μακεδονικὰ ἤθη κόσμησις καὶ
the barbarians the into the Macedonian ways equipment and
ἀνάμιξις τῶν ἀλλοφύλων ἱππέων ἐς τὰς τῶν ἑταίρων τάξεις.
mixing of-the foreign cavalry into the of-the companions ranks

8.3 οὔκουν σιγῇ ἔχοντες ἐκαρτέρησαν, ἀλλὰ πάντας γὰρ
not-therefore in-silence holding they-endured but all for
ἀπαλλάττειν στρατιᾶς ἐκέλευον, αὐτὸν δὲ μετὰ τοῦ
to-release from-the-army they-bade him and with the
πατρὸς στρατεύεσθαι, τὸν Ἄμμωνα δὴ τῷ λόγῳ
father to-campaign — Ammon indeed in-the word
ἐπικερτομοῦντες. ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ἀλέξανδρος ἦν γὰρ δὴ
mocking these-things having-heard Alexander was for indeed
ὀξύτερός τε ἐν τῷ τότε καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς βαρβαρικῆς
sharper both in the then-(time) and from the barbarian
θεραπείας οὐκέτι ὡς πάλαι ἐπιεικὴς ἐς τοὺς Μακεδόνας
service no-longer as of-old reasonable toward the Macedonians
καταπηδήσας σὺν τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἡγεμόσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ
having-leapt-down with the around himself officers from the
βήματος ξυλλαβεῖν τοὺς ἐπιφανεστάτους τῶν ταραξάντων
platform to-seize the most-conspicuous of-those having-stirred-up
τὸ πλῆθος κελεύει, αὐτὸς τῇ χειρὶ ἐπιδεικνύων τοῖς
the multitude orders himself with-the hand pointing-out to-the
ὑπασπισταῖς οὕστινας χρὴ συλλαμβάνειν· καὶ
shield-bearers whom it-was-necessary to-arrest and
ἐγένοντο οὗτοι ἐς τρισκαίδεκα. τούτους μὲν δὴ ἀπάγειν
were these about thirteen these indeed indeed to-lead-away
κελεύει τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ. ὡς δὲ κατεσιώπησαν οἱ ἄλλοι
he-orders the to death when and fell-silent the others
ἐκπλαγέντες, ἀναβὰς αὖθις ἐπὶ τὸ βῆμα ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
panic-struck having-gone-up again onto the platform he-spoke thus
9.1 οὐχ ὑπὲρ τοῦ καταπαῦσαι ὑμῶν, ὦ Μακεδόνες, τὴν
not for the to-stop your O Macedonians the
οἴκαδε ὁρμὴν λεχθήσεταί μοι ὅδε ὁ λόγος, ἔξεστι
homeward impulse will-be-spoken by-me this the speech it-is-permitted
γὰρ ὑμῖν ἀπιέναι ὅποι βούλεσθε ἐμοῦ γε ἕνεκα, ἀλλὰ
for to-you to-go-away wherever you-wish of-me at-least for-the-sake but

ὡς γνῶναι ὑμᾶς πρὸς ὁποίους τινὰς ἡμᾶς ὄντας ὁποῖοί
so-as to-know you toward what-sort-of some us being what-sort-of
τινες αὐτοὶ γενόμενοι ἀπαλλάσσεσθε.
some yourselves having-become you-depart
καὶ πρῶτά γε ἀπὸ Φιλίππου τοῦ πατρός, ἥπερ καὶ 9.2
and first at-least from Philip the father as also
εἰκός, τοῦ λόγου ἄρξομαι. Φίλιππος γὰρ παραλαβὼν
it-is-fitting the speech I-will-begin Philip for having-taken-over
ὑμᾶς πλανήτας καὶ ἀπόρους, ἐν διφθέραις τοὺς πολλοὺς
you wanderers and destitute in hides the most
νέμοντας ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ ὑπὲρ τούτων
pasturing on the mountains sheep few and for these
κακῶς μαχομένους Ἰλλυριοῖς καὶ Τριβαλλοῖς καὶ τοῖς
badly fighting with-Illyrians and Triballians and the
ὁμόροις Θρᾳξίν, χλαμύδας μὲν ὑμῖν ἀντὶ τῶν διφθερῶν
bordering Thracians cloaks indeed to-you instead-of the hides
φορεῖν ἔδωκεν, κατήγαγε δὲ ἐκ τῶν ὀρῶν ἐς τὰ πεδία,
to-wear gave he-led-down and from the mountains to the plains
ἀξιομάχους καταστήσας τοῖς προσχώροις τῶν βαρβάρων,
a-match having-made-you for-the neighboring of-the barbarians
ὡς μὴ χωρίων ἔτι ὀχυρότητι πιστεύοντας μᾶλλον
so-that not of-places any-longer in-the-strength trusting more
ἢ τῇ οἰκείᾳ ἀρετῇ σώζεσθαι, πόλεών τε οἰκήτορας
than in-the own valor to-be-safe of-cities both inhabitants
ἀπέφηνε καὶ νόμοις καὶ ἔθεσι χρηστοῖς ἐκόσμησεν.
he-made-you and with-laws and customs good he-ordered
αὐτῶν δὲ ἐκείνων τῶν βαρβάρων, ὑφ' ὧν πρόσθεν 9.3
of-them and those-very the barbarians by whom before
ἤγεσθε καὶ ἐφέρεσθε αὐτοί τε καὶ τὰ ὑμέτερα,
you-were-plundered and carried-off yourselves both and the yours
ἡγεμόνας κατέστησεν ἐκ δούλων καὶ ὑπηκόων, καὶ τῆς
leaders he-made from slaves and subjects and —

Θρᾴκης τὰ πολλὰ τῇ Μακεδονίᾳ προσέθηκεν, καὶ τῶν
of-Thrace the most — to-Macedonia he-added and of-the
ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ χωρίων τὰ ἐπικαιρότατα καταλαβόμενος τὴν
on sea places the most-strategic having-seized the
ἐμπορίαν τῇ χώρᾳ ἀνεπέτασε, καὶ τῶν μετάλλων τὴν
trade to-the country he-opened and of-the mines the
ἐργασίαν ἀδεῆ παρέσχε, Θεσσαλῶν δὲ ἄρχοντας,
working safe he-provided of-Thessalians and rulers
9.4 οὓς πάλαι ἐτεθνήκειτε τῷ δέει, ἀπέφηνε, καὶ τὸ
whom long-ago you-were-dead-with the fear he-made and the
Φωκέων ἔθνος ταπεινώσας τὴν ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάροδον
of-Phocians people having-humbled the into — Greece passage
πλατεῖαν καὶ εὔπορον ἀντὶ στενῆς τε καὶ ἀπόρου ὑμῖν
broad and easy instead-of narrow both and difficult for-you
ἐποίησεν, Ἀθηναίους τε καὶ Θηβαίους ἐφεδρεύοντας ἀεὶ
he-made Athenians both and Thebans lying-in-wait always
τῇ Μακεδονίᾳ ἐς τοσόνδε ἐταπείνωσεν, ἤδη ταῦτά γε
— for-Macedonia to so-far he-humbled already these-things at-least
καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῷ ξυμπονούντων, ὡς ἀντὶ τοῦ φόρους
also us him helping-in-the-toil so-that instead-of the tributes
τελεῖν Ἀθηναίοις καὶ ὑπακούειν Θηβαίων, παρ᾽ ἡμῶν ἐν
to-pay to-Athenians and to-obey Thebans from us in
τῷ μέρει ἐκείνους τὴν ἀσφάλειάν σφισι πορίζεσθαι.
the turn they the security for-themselves to-obtain
9.5 ἐς Πελοπόννησον δὲ παρελθὼν τὰ ἐκεῖ αὖ ἐκόσμησε
into Peloponnese and having-gone the-affairs there again he-ordered
καὶ ἡγεμὼν αὐτοκράτωρ συμπάσης τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος
and leader with-full-powers of-all the other Greece
ἀποδειχθεὶς τῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Πέρσην στρατιᾶς οὐχ ἑαυτῷ
having-been-appointed of-the against the Persian expedition not to-himself

μᾶλλόν τι τὴν δόξαν τήνδε ἢ τῷ κοινῷ τῶν
more somewhat the glory this than to-the commonwealth of-the
Μακεδόνων προσέθηκεν.
Macedonians he-added

ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἐς ὑμᾶς 9.6
these-things indeed the from the father the my to you
ὑπηργμένα, ὡς μὲν αὐτὰ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν σκέψασθαι μεγάλα,
having-been-begun as indeed them by themselves to-consider great
μικρὰ δὲ ὥς γε δὴ πρὸς τὰ ἡμέτερα ξυμβαλεῖν. ὃς
small but as at-least indeed with the ours to-compare who
παραλαβὼν παρὰ τοῦ πατρὸς χρυσᾶ μὲν καὶ ἀργυρᾶ
having-taken-over from the father golden indeed and silver
ἐκπώματα ὀλίγα, τάλαντα δὲ οὐδὲ ἑξήκοντα ἐν τοῖς
cups few talents and not-even sixty in the
θησαυροῖς, χρεῶν δὲ ὀφειλόμενα ὑπὸ Φιλίππου ἐς
treasuries of-debts and owed by Philip about
πεντακόσια τάλαντα, δανεισάμενος ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς
five-hundred talents having-borrowed in-addition-to these myself
ἄλλα ὀκτακόσια ὁρμηθεὶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας τῆς γε
another eight-hundred having-set-out from the land the at-least
οὐδὲ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς βοσκούσης καλῶς εὐθὺς μὲν τοῦ
not-even you yourselves feeding well at-once indeed —
Ἑλλησπόντου ὑμῖν τὸν πόρον θαλασσοκρατούντων ἐν τῷ
of-Hellespont for-you the passage ruling-the-sea in the
τότε Περσῶν ἀνεπέτασα·
then-(time) Persians I-opened

κρατήσας δὲ τῇ ἵππῳ τοὺς σατράπας τοὺς Δαρείου 9.7
having-prevailed and with-the cavalry over-the satraps the of-Darius
τήν τε Ἰωνίαν πᾶσαν τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ ἀρχῇ προσέθηκα καὶ
— both Ionia all to-the your rule I-added and
τὴν Αἰολίδα πᾶσαν καὶ Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους καὶ Λυδούς,
— Aeolis all and Phrygians both and Lydians

καὶ Μίλητον εἷλον πολιορκίᾳ· τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα
and Miletus I-took by-siege the and other-things all
ἑκόντα προσχωρήσαντα λαβὼν ὑμῖν καρποῦσθαι ἔδωκα·
willingly having-come-over having-taken for-you to-enjoy I-gave
9.8 καὶ τὰ ἐξ Αἰγύπτου καὶ Κυρήνης ἀγαθά, ὅσα
and the from Egypt and Cyrene goods as-many-as
ἀμαχεὶ ἐκτησάμην, ὑμῖν ἔρχεται, ἥ τε κοίλη Συρία
without-battle I-acquired to-you come the both hollow Syria
καὶ ἡ Παλαιστίνη καὶ ἡ μέση τῶν ποταμῶν ὑμέτερον
and — Palestine and the middle-of the rivers your
κτῆμά εἰσι, καὶ Βαβυλὼν καὶ Βάκτρα καὶ Σοῦσα ὑμέτερα,
possession are and Babylon and Bactra and Susa yours
καὶ ὁ Λυδῶν πλοῦτος καὶ οἱ Περσῶν θησαυροὶ καὶ
and the of-Lydians wealth and the of-Persians treasures and
τὰ Ἰνδῶν ἀγαθὰ καὶ ἡ ἔξω θάλασσα ὑμέτερα· ὑμεῖς
the of-Indians goods and the outer sea yours you
σατράπαι, ὑμεῖς στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξιάρχαι.
satraps you generals you taxiarchs
9.9 ὡς ἔμοιγε αὐτῷ τί περίεστιν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν πόνων
as for-me myself what remains from these the toils
ὅτι μὴ αὕτη ἡ πορφύρα καὶ τὸ διάδημα τοῦτο; κέκτημαι
except — this the purple and the diadem this I-possess
δὲ ἰδίᾳ οὐδέν, οὐδὲ ἔχει τις ἀποδεῖξαι θησαυροὺς ἐμοὺς
and privately nothing nor has anyone to-show treasures mine
ὅτι μὴ ταῦτα, ὑμέτερα κτήματα ἢ ὅσα ἕνεκα
except — these yours possessions or as-many-as for-the-sake-of
ὑμῶν φυλάττεται. ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ ἔστιν ἰδίᾳ μοι ἐς ὅ τι
you are-guarded since not-even is privately for-me for what ever
φυλάξω αὐτούς, σιτουμένῳ τε τὰ αὐτὰ ὑμῖν σιτία καὶ
I-should-guard them eating both the same to-you food and
ὕπνον τὸν αὐτὸν αἱρουμένῳ· καίτοι οὐδὲ σιτία ἐμοὶ δοκῶ
sleep the same choosing although not-even food I I-think

τὰ αὐτὰ τοῖς τρυφῶσιν ὑμῶν σιτεῖσθαι· προαγρυπνῶν
the same as-those living-luxuriously of-you to-eat keeping-watch-before
δὲ ὑμῶν οἶδα, ὡς καθεύδειν ἔχοιτε ὑμεῖς.
and you I-know so-that to-sleep you-might-be-able you
ἀλλὰ ταῦτα γὰρ ὑμῶν πονούντων καὶ ταλαιπωρουμένων 10.1
but these-things for you toiling and suffering-hardship
ἐκτησάμην αὐτὸς ἀπόνως καὶ ἀταλαιπώρως ἐξηγούμενος. καὶ
I-acquired myself without-toil and without-hardship leading and
τίς ὑμῶν ἢ πονήσας οἶδεν ἐμοῦ μᾶλλον *** ἢ ἐγὼ ὑπὲρ
who of-you or having-toiled knows than-me more (lacuna) or I for
ἐκείνου; ἄγε δὴ καὶ ὅτῳ τραύματα ὑμῶν ἐστι γυμνώσας
that-one come indeed and to-whom wounds of-you are having-bared
αὐτὰ ἐπιδειξάτω καὶ ἐγὼ τὰ ἐμὰ ἐπιδείξω ἐν μέρει·
them let-him-show and I the mine will-show in turn
ὡς ἔμοιγε οὐκ ἔστιν ὅ τι τοῦ σώματος τῶν γε δὴ 10.2
as for-me not there-is what ever of-the body of-the at-least indeed
ἔμπροσθεν μερῶν ἄτρωτον ὑπολέλειπται, οὐδὲ ὅπλον τι
front parts unwounded has-been-left nor weapon any
ἔστιν ἢ ἐκ χειρὸς ἢ τῶν ἀφιεμένων οὗ γε οὐκ ἴχνη
there-is either from hand or of-the being-hurled of-which at-least not traces
ἐν ἐμαυτῷ φέρω· ἀλλὰ καὶ ξίφει ἐκ χειρὸς τέτρωμαι
on myself I-bear but also by-sword from hand I-have-been-wounded
καὶ τετόξευμαι ἤδη καὶ ἀπὸ μηχανῆς βέβλημαι, καὶ
and I-have-been-shot already and from an-engine I-have-been-struck and
λίθοις πολλαχῇ καὶ ξύλοις παιόμενος ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ
with-stones in-many-places and with-clubs being-beaten for you and
τῆς ὑμετέρας δόξης καὶ τοῦ ὑμετέρου πλούτου νικῶντας
the your glory and the your wealth victorious
ὑμᾶς ἄγω διὰ πάσης γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης καὶ πάντων
you I-lead through all land and sea and all
ποταμῶν καὶ ὀρῶν καὶ πεδίων πάντων,
rivers and mountains and plains all

10.3 γάμους τε ὑμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς γεγάμηκα καὶ πολλῶν ὑμῶν
marriages both to-you the same I-have-married and of-many of-you
οἱ παῖδες συγγενεῖς ἔσονται τοῖς παισὶ τοῖς ἐμοῖς. ἔτι
the children kin will-be to-the children the mine further
δὲ ᾧ χρέα ἦν, οὐ πολυπραγμονήσας ἐφ' ὅτῳ ἐγένετο,
and to-whom debts were not inquiring for what they-arose
τοσαῦτα μὲν μισθοφορούντων, τοσαῦτα δὲ ἁρπαζόντων,
so-much indeed earning-pay so-much and plundering
ὁπότε ἐκ πολιορκίας ἁρπαγὴ γίγνοιτο, διαλέλυμαι ταῦτα.
whenever from siege plunder happened I-have-paid-off these-things
στέφανοί τε χρυσοῖ τοῖς πλείστοις ὑμῶν εἰσι μνημεῖα τῆς
crowns both golden for-the most of-you are memorials of-the
τε ἀρετῆς τῆς ὑμετέρας καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἐμοῦ τιμῆς ἀθάνατα.
both valor the your and of-the from me honor immortal
10.4 ὅστις δὲ δὴ καὶ ἀπέθανεν, εὐκλεὴς μὲν αὐτῷ ἡ τελευτὴ
whoever and indeed also died glorious indeed for-him the end
ἐγένετο, περιφανὴς δὲ ὁ τάφος, χαλκαῖ δὲ αἱ εἰκόνες
became conspicuous and the tomb bronze and the statues
τῶν πλείστων οἴκοι ἑστᾶσιν, οἱ γονεῖς δ' ἔντιμοί εἰσι
of-the most at-home stand the parents and honored are
λειτουργίας τε ξυμπάσης καὶ εἰσφορᾶς ἀπηλλαγμένοι·
from-public-service both all and from-property-tax freed
οὐ γάρ τίς γε φεύγων ὑμῶν ἐτελεύτα ἐμοῦ ἄγοντος.
not for anyone at-least fleeing of-you died me leading
10.5 καὶ νῦν τοὺς ἀπολέμους ὑμῶν ζηλωτοὺς τοῖς οἴκοι
and now the unfit-for-war of-you enviable to-those at-home
ἀποπέμψειν ἤμελλον· ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ πάντες ἀπιέναι βούλεσθε,
to-send-away I-was-about but since all to-go-away you-wish
ἄπιτε πάντες, καὶ ἀπελθόντες οἴκοι ἀπαγγείλατε ὅτι
go-away all and having-gone-away at-home report that

τὸν βασιλέα ὑμῶν Ἀλέξανδρον, νικῶντα μὲν Πέρσας καὶ
the king your Alexander conquering indeed Persians and
Μήδους καὶ Βακτρίους καὶ Σάκας,
Medes and Bactrians and Sacae
καταστρεψάμενον δὲ Οὐξίους τε καὶ Ἀραχωτοὺς καὶ 10.6
having-subdued and Uxians both and Arachotians and
Δράγγας, κεκτημένον δὲ καὶ Παρθυαίους καὶ Χορασμίους
Drangians having-acquired and also Parthyaeans and Chorasmians
καὶ Ὑρκανίους ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν Κασπίαν,
and Hyrcanians as-far to the sea the Caspian
ὑπερβάντα δὲ τὸν Καύκασον ὑπὲρ τὰς Κασπίας πύλας,
having-crossed and — Caucasus beyond the Caspian gates
καὶ περάσαντα Ὄξον τε ποταμὸν καὶ Τάναϊν, ἔτι δὲ τὸν
and having-passed Oxus both river and Tanais further and the
Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν, οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ ὅτι μὴ Διονύσῳ περαθέντα,
Indus river by-no other except — Dionysus crossed
καὶ τὸν Ὑδάσπην καὶ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην καὶ τὸν Ὑδραώτην,
and — Hydaspes and — Acesines and — Hydraotes
καὶ τὸν Ὕφασιν διαπεράσαντα ἄν, εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἀπωκνήσατε, 10.7
and — Hyphasis having-crossed-over — if not you had-shrunk-back
καὶ ἐς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν κατ᾽ ἀμφότερα τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
and into the great sea by both — of-Indus
τὰ στόματα ἐμβαλόντα, καὶ διὰ τῆς Γαδρωσίας τῆς
the mouths having-gone-in and through — Gadrosia the
ἐρήμου ἐλθόντα, ᾗ οὐδείς πω πρόσθεν σὺν στρατιᾷ
desert having-gone where no-one ever before with army
ἦλθε, καὶ Καρμανίαν ἐν παρόδῳ προσκτησάμενον καὶ
went and Carmania on the-way having-acquired-in-addition and
τὴν Ὠρειτῶν γῆν, περιπεπλευκότος δὲ ἤδη αὐτῷ τοῦ
the of-Oreitae land having-sailed-round and already for-him the
ναυτικοῦ τὴν ἀπ᾽ Ἰνδῶν γῆς εἰς Πέρσας θάλασσαν, ὡς
fleet the from Indian land to Persians sea when

εἰς Σοῦσα ἐπανηγάγετε, ἀπολιπόντες οἴχεσθε, παραδόντες
to Susa you-brought-back having-left you-are-gone having-handed-over
φυλάσσειν τοῖς νενικημένοις βαρβάροις. ταῦτα ὑμῖν καὶ
to-guard to-the conquered barbarians these-things for-you both
πρὸς ἀνθρώπων ἴσως εὐκλεᾶ καὶ πρὸς θεῶν ὅσια δήπου
by men perhaps glorious and by gods holy surely
ἔσται ἀπαγγελθέντα. ἄπιτε.
will-be having-been-reported go-away

IV · THE RECONCILIATION

Alexander shuts himself up for two days, and on the third gives the Persians commands, the title of kinsmen, and the right to kiss him. The Macedonians throw down their arms at his doors and beg to be let in. Callines complains that only Persians may kiss the king, and Alexander calls all the Macedonians his kinsmen. At a great feast he prays for harmony between Macedonians and Persians. Ten thousand veterans are sent home under Craterus with a talent each, their Asian children kept to be raised as Macedonians, and Antipater is summoned to bring fresh troops, perhaps so that his quarrel with Olympias does not grow past mending.

11.1 ταῦτα εἰπὼν κατεπήδησέ τε ἀπὸ τοῦ βήματος ὀξέως
these-things having-said he-leapt-down both from the platform swiftly
καὶ ἐς τὰ βασίλεια παρελθὼν οὔτε ἐθεράπευσε τὸ
and into the palace having-gone neither tended the
σῶμα οὔτε τῳ ὤφθη τῶν ἑταίρων· ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ ἐς
body nor by-anyone was-seen of-the companions but not-even on
τὴν ὑστεραίαν ὤφθη. τῇ τρίτῃ δὲ καλέσας εἴσω τῶν
the next-day was-seen on-the third and having-called inside of-the
Περσῶν τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους τάς τε ἡγεμονίας αὐτοῖς τῶν
Persians the picked the both commands to-them of-the

τάξεων διένειμε καὶ ὅσους συγγενεῖς ἀπέφηνε, τούτοις
battalions he-distributed and as-many-as kinsmen he-declared to-these
δὲ νόμιμον ἐποίησε φιλεῖν αὐτὸν μόνοις.
and customary he-made to-kiss him alone
οἱ δὲ Μακεδόνες ἔν τε τῷ παραυτίκα ἀκούσαντες τῶν 11.2
the and Macedonians in both the immediate having-heard the
λόγων ἐκπεπληγμένοι σιγῇ ἔμενον αὐτοῦ πρὸς τῷ βήματι
words panic-struck in-silence remained there by the platform
οὐδέ τις ἠκολούθησε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀπαλλαττομένῳ ὅτι
nor anyone followed the king departing except
μὴ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἑταῖροί τε καὶ οἱ σωματοφύλακες, οἱ
— the around him companions both and the bodyguards the
δὲ πολλοὶ οὔτε μένοντες ὅ τι πράττωσιν ἢ λέγωσιν
and most neither remaining what ever they-should-do or say
εἶχον, οὔτε ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἤθελον.
knew nor to-depart wished
ὡς δὲ τὰ Περσῶν τε καὶ Μήδων αὐτοῖς ἐξηγγέλλετο, 11.3
when and the-affairs of-Persians both and of-Medes to-them were-reported
αἵ τε ἡγεμονίαι Πέρσαις διδόμεναι καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡ
the both commands to-Persians being-given and the army the
βαρβαρικὴ ἐς λόχους τε καταλεγομένη καὶ τὰ Μακεδονικὰ
barbarian into companies both being-enrolled and the Macedonian
ὀνόματα ἄγημά τι Περσικὸν καλούμενον καὶ πεζέταιροι
names agema some Persian called and foot-companions
Πέρσαι καὶ ἀργυρασπίδων τάξις Περσικὴ καὶ ἡ τῶν
Persians and of-silver-shields battalion Persian and the of-the
ἑταίρων ἵππος καὶ ταύτης ἄλλο ἄγημα βασιλικόν, οὐκέτι
companions cavalry and of-this another agema royal no-longer
καρτεροὶ σφῶν ἦσαν,
masters of-themselves they-were

11.4 ἀλλὰ ξυνδραμόντες ὡς πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια τὰ μὲν ὅπλα
but having-run-together as to the palace the indeed arms
αὐτοῦ πρὸ τῶν θυρῶν ἐρρίπτουν, ἱκετηρίας ταύτας τῷ
there before the doors threw supplications these to-the
βασιλεῖ, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐβόων πρὸ τῶν θυρῶν ἑστηκότες
king themselves and shouted before the doors standing
δεόμενοι παρελθεῖν εἴσω· τούς τε αἰτίους τῆς ἐν τῷ
begging to-go-in inside those both responsible for-the in the
τότε ταραχῆς καὶ τοὺς ἄρξαντας τῆς βοῆς ἐκδιδόναι
then-(time) disturbance and those having-begun of-the shouting to-surrender
ἐθέλειν· οὔκουν ἀπαλλαγήσεσθαι τῶν θυρῶν οὔτε ἡμέρας
to-be-willing not-therefore to-be-going-to-depart from-the doors neither by-day
οὔτε νυκτός, εἰ μή τινα οἶκτον σφῶν ἕξει Ἀλέξανδρος.
nor by-night if not some pity on-them will-have Alexander

11.5 ταῦτα ὡς ἀπηγγέλλετο αὐτῷ, ὁ δὲ σπουδῇ ἐξέρχεται
these-things when were-reported to-him he and in-haste comes-out
καὶ ἰδών τε ταπεινῶς διακειμένους καὶ ἀκούσας σὺν
and having-seen both humbly disposed and having-heard with
οἰμωγῇ τῶν πολλῶν βοώντων καὶ αὐτῷ προχεῖται
lamentation of-the many shouting also for-him pour-forth
δάκρυα. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀνήγετο ὥς τι ἐρῶν, οἱ
tears and he indeed was-moving-forward as something about-to-say they
δὲ ἔμενον λιπαροῦντες.
and remained entreating

11.6 καί τις αὐτῶν καθ' ἡλικίαν τε καὶ ἱππαρχίαν τῆς
and a-certain of-them by age both and hipparchy of-the
ἵππου τῆς ἑταιρικῆς οὐκ ἀφανής, Καλλίνης ὄνομα, τοιαῦτα
cavalry the companion not obscure Callines by-name such-things
εἶπεν· ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὰ λυποῦντά ἐστι Μακεδόνας ὅτι
said O king the-things grieving are Macedonians that
σὺ Περσῶν μέν τινας ἤδη πεποίησαι σαυτῷ συγγενεῖς
you of-Persians indeed some already have-made for-yourself kinsmen

καὶ καλοῦνται Πέρσαι συγγενεῖς Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ φιλοῦσί
and are-called Persians kinsmen of-Alexander and kiss
σε, Μακεδόνων δὲ οὔπω τις γέγευται ταύτης τῆς τιμῆς.
you of-Macedonians but not-yet anyone has-tasted of-this the honor
ἔνθα δὴ ὑπολαβὼν Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀλλ᾽ ὑμᾶς τε, ἔφη, 11.7
there indeed having-taken-up Alexander but you both he-said
ξύμπαντας ἐμαυτῷ τίθεμαι συγγενεῖς καὶ τό γε ἀπὸ
all for-myself I-make kinsmen and the at-least from
τούτου οὕτως καλέσω. ταῦτα εἰπόντα προσελθὼν ὁ
this so I-will-call these-things having-said having-approached —
Καλλίνης τε ἐφίλησε καὶ ὅστις ἄλλος φιλῆσαι ἠθέλησε.
Callines both kissed and whoever other to-kiss wished
καὶ οὕτω δὴ ἀναλαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα βοῶντές τε καὶ
and so indeed having-taken-up the arms shouting both and
παιωνίζοντες ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀπῄεσαν.
singing-the-paean to the camp they-went-away
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπὶ τούτοις θυσίαν τε θύει τοῖς θεοῖς οἷς 11.8
Alexander and upon these-things sacrifice both sacrifices to-the gods to-whom
αὐτῷ νόμος καὶ θοίνην δημοτελῆ ἐποίησε, καθήμενός τε
for-him custom and feast public held sitting both
αὐτὸς καὶ πάντων καθημένων, ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν μὲν Μακεδόνων,
himself and all sitting around him indeed Macedonians
ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐφεξῆς τούτων Περσῶν, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις τῶν
in and the next these Persians after and these of-the
ἄλλων ἐθνῶν ὅσοι κατ᾽ ἀξίωσιν ἤ τινα ἄλλην ἀρετὴν
other peoples as-many-as in rank or some other excellence
πρεσβευόμενοι, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κρατῆρος αὐτός τε καὶ
being-preferred and from the same mixing-bowl himself both and
οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀρυόμενοι ἔσπενδον τὰς αὐτὰς σπονδὰς
those around him drawing poured-libation the same libations
καταρχομένων τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων μάντεων καὶ τῶν Μάγων.
beginning the both Greek seers and the Magi

11.9 εὔχετο δὲ τά τε ἄλλα ἀγαθὰ καὶ ὁμόνοιάν τε καὶ
he-prayed and the both other good-things and concord both and
κοινωνίαν τῆς ἀρχῆς Μακεδόσι καὶ Πέρσαις. εἶναι δὲ
partnership of-the rule for-Macedonians and Persians to-be and
κατέχει λόγος τοὺς μετασχόντας τῆς θοίνης ἐννακισχιλίους,
holds story those having-shared the feast nine-thousand
καὶ τούτους πάντας μίαν τε σπονδὴν σπεῖσαι καὶ ἐπ'
and these all one both libation to-have-poured and upon
αὐτῇ παιωνίσαι.
it to-have-sung-the-paean

12.1 ἔνθα δὴ ἐθελονταὶ ἤδη αὐτῷ ἀπῄεσαν τῶν Μακεδόνων
there indeed volunteers already from-him went-away of-the Macedonians
ὅσοι διὰ γῆρας ἤ τινα ἄλλην ξυμφορὰν ἀπόλεμοι
as-many-as because-of age or some other misfortune unfit-for-war
ἦσαν· καὶ οὗτοι αὐτῷ ἐγένοντο ἐς τοὺς μυρίους.
were and these for-him were about the ten-thousand
τούτοις δὲ τήν τε μισθοφορὰν οὐ τοῦ ἐξήκοντος ἤδη
to-these and the both pay not of-the having-elapsed already
χρόνου ἔδωκεν Ἀλέξανδρος μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ ἐς τὴν
time gave Alexander only but also of-the for the
ἀπονόστησιν τὴν οἴκαδε ξυμβαίνοντος.
return the homeward occurring

12.2 ἐπέδωκεν δὲ καὶ τάλαντον ἑκάστῳ ὑπὲρ τὴν
he-gave-in-addition and also a-talent to-each beyond the
μισθοφοράν· παῖδες δὲ εἴ τῳ ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν Ἀσιανῶν
pay children and if to-anyone there-were from the Asian
γυναικῶν, παρὰ οἱ καταλιπεῖν ἐκέλευσε μηδὲ στάσιν
women with himself to-leave he-ordered and-not strife
κατάγειν ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἀλλοφύλους τε καὶ ἐκ τῶν
to-bring-home into Macedonia foreign both and from the
βαρβάρων γυναικῶν παῖδας τοῖς οἴκοι ὑπολελειμμένοις
barbarian women children for-the at-home left-behind

παισί τε καὶ μητράσιν αὐτῶν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπιμελήσεσθαι
children both and mothers of-them himself and to-be-going-to-take-care
ὡς ἐκτρέφοιντο Μακεδονικῶς τά τε ἄλλα καὶ ἐς τὰ
that they-should-be-reared in-Macedonian-fashion the both other-things and for the
πολέμια κοσμούμενοι, γενομένους δὲ ἄνδρας ἄξειν
war being-equipped having-become and men to-be-going-to-lead
αὐτὸς ἐς Μακεδονίαν καὶ παραδώσειν τοῖς πατράσιν.
himself into Macedonia and to-be-going-to-hand-over to-the fathers
ταῦτά τε ἀπαλλαττομένοις ἀστάθμητα καὶ ἀτέκμαρτα 12.3
these-things both to-those-departing unstable and uncertain
ἐπηγγέλλετο, καὶ ὅπως ἔχει φιλίας τε καὶ πόθου
he-promised and how he-holds of-friendship both and longing
ἐς αὐτοὺς τὸ ἀτρεκέστατον τεκμήριον ἐκεῖνο ποιεῖσθαι
toward them the most-exact proof that to-make
ἠξίου, ὅτι τὸν πιστότατόν τε αὐτῷ καὶ ὅντινα ἴσον τῇ
he-thought-fit that the most-faithful both to-him and whom equal to-the
ἑαυτοῦ κεφαλῇ ἄγει, Κρατερόν, ξυμπέμπει αὐτοῖς φύλακά
his-own head he-holds Craterus he-sends-with them guardian
τε καὶ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου. οὕτω δὴ ἀσπασάμενος
both and leader of-the expedition so indeed having-embraced
ξύμπαντας αὐτός τε δακρύων καὶ δακρύοντας ἐκείνους
all himself both weeping and weeping them
ἀπὸ οὗ ἀπήλλαξε.
from himself he-dismissed
Κρατερῷ δὲ τούτους τε ἄγειν ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἀπαγαγόντι 12.4
to-Craterus and these both to-lead he-ordered and having-led-them-back
Μακεδονίας τε καὶ Θρᾴκης καὶ Θετταλῶν ἐξηγεῖσθαι καὶ
of-Macedonia both and Thrace and Thessalians to-lead and
τῶν Ἑλλήνων τῆς ἐλευθερίας· Ἀντίπατρον δὲ διαδόχους
of-the Greeks of-the freedom Antipater and successors
τοῖς ἀποπεμπομένοις ἄγειν Μακεδόνας τῶν ἀκμαζόντων
to-those being-sent-off to-lead Macedonians of-the in-prime

ἐκέλευσεν. ἔστειλε δὲ καὶ Πολυπέρχοντα ὁμοῦ τῷ
he-ordered he-sent and also Polyperchon together-with —
Κρατερῷ, δεύτερον δὲ ἀπὸ Κρατεροῦ ἡγεμόνα, ὡς
Craterus second and after Craterus leader so-that
εἴ τι κατὰ πορείαν Κρατερῷ συμπίπτοι, ὅτι καὶ
if anything on march to-Craterus should-befall because also
μαλακῶς τὸ σῶμα ἔχοντα ἀπέπεμπεν αὐτόν, μὴ
weakly the body being he-was-sending-away him not
ποθῆσαι στρατηγὸν τοὺς ἰόντας.
to-miss a-general those going

12.5 λόγος δέ τις οὗτος ἐφοίτα ἀφανὴς παρὰ τοῖς τὰ βασιλικὰ
story and some this went-around obscure among those the royal
πράγματα, ὅσῳ ἐπικρύπτεται, τοσῷδε φιλοτιμότερον
affairs as-much-as is-concealed by-so-much more-ambitiously
ἐξηγουμένοις, καὶ τὸ πιστὸν ἐς τὸ χεῖρον μᾶλλον, ἢ
relating and the credible to the worse rather where
τὸ εἰκός τε καὶ ἡ αὐτῶν μοχθηρία ἄγει, ἢ πρὸς τὸ
the probable both and the of-them depravity leads than to the
ἀληθὲς ἐκτρέπουσιν, ἐξηττώμενον Ἀλέξανδρον ἤδη τῆς
truth turning overcome Alexander already by-the
μητρὸς τῶν διαβολῶν τῶν ἐς Ἀντίπατρον ἀπαλλάξαι
mother by-the slanders the against Antipater to-remove
ἐθέλειν ἐκ Μακεδονίας Ἀντίπατρον.
to-wish from Macedonia Antipater

12.6 καὶ τυχὸν οὐκ ἐς ἀτιμίαν τὴν Ἀντιπάτρου ἡ μετάπεμψις
and perhaps not for dishonor the of-Antipater the summons
αὐτοῦ ἔφερεν, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς μή τι ἐκ τῆς διαφορᾶς
of-him tended but so-that not something from the quarrel
αὐτοῖς γένοιτο ἄχαρι ἐς ἀλλήλους καὶ οὐδὲ αὐτῷ
to-them might-happen graceless toward one-another and not-even for-him
ἰάσιμον. ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ ἐπαύοντο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ γράφοντες ὁ
curable since not-even ceased to-Alexander writing the-one

μὲν τὴν αὐθάδειάν τε τῆς Ὀλυμπιάδος καὶ ὀξύτητα καὶ
indeed the self-will both — of-Olympias and sharpness and
πολυπραγμοσύνην, ἥκιστα δὴ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου μητρὶ
meddling least indeed for-the of-Alexander mother
εὐσχήμονα, ὥστε καὶ λόγος τις τοιόσδε ἐφέρετο Ἀλεξάνδρου
becoming so-that also saying some such was-reported of-Alexander
ἐφ' οἷς ὑπὲρ τῆς μητρὸς αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο, βαρὺ δὴ τὸ
upon what about the mother to-him was-reported heavy indeed the
ἐνοίκιον τῶν δέκα μηνῶν εἰσπράττεσθαι αὐτοῦ τὴν μητέρα·
rent of-the ten months to-be-exacted of-him the mother
ἡ δέ, ὑπέρογκον εἶναι τῇ τε ἀξιώσει καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ 12.7
she and overbearing to-be in-the both esteem and in-the other
θεραπείᾳ Ἀντίπατρον οὐδὲ μεμνῆσθαι τοῦ καταστήσαντος
service Antipater not-even to-remember of-the-one having-established
ἔτι, ἀλλ' αὐτὸν γὰρ ἀξιοῦν τὰ πρῶτα φέρεσθαι ἐν τοῖς
still but himself for to-think-fit the first-place to-carry-off among the
ἄλλοις Μακεδόσι τε καὶ Ἕλλησι. καὶ ταῦτα μᾶλλόν
other Macedonians both and Greeks and these-things more
τι ἰσχύειν παρ' Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐφαίνετο ὅσα ἐς
somewhat to-prevail with Alexander appeared as-many-as toward
τοῦ Ἀντιπάτρου τὴν διαβολὴν φέροντα ἦν, οἷα δὴ καὶ
— of-Antipater the slander tending were as indeed also
φοβερώτερα ἐν βασιλείᾳ ὄντα. οὐ μέντοι καταφανές γέ
more-fearsome in kingship being not however plain at-least
τι ἢ ἔργον ἢ λόγος ἐξηγγέλλετο Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐφ' ὅτῳ
anything either deed or word was-reported of-Alexander from which
ἄν τις συνέθηκεν οὐχ ὡσαύτως εἶναι αὐτῷ πρὸς θυμοῦ
— anyone might-conclude not likewise to-be to-him to heart
Ἀντίπατρον *** Ἡφαιστίων. τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ ὑποπτήξαντα
Antipater (lacuna) Hephaestion by-this the word having-cowered
Ἡφαιστίωνα συναλλαγῆναι Εὐμενεῖ, οὐχ ἑκόντα ἑκόντι.
Hephaestion to-have-been-reconciled with-Eumenes not willing with-willing

At the Nesaean plain Atropates is said to have given Alexander a hundred women armed as Amazons, which Arrian doubts, since Xenophon met none. At Ecbatana, amid games and drinking, Hephaestion falls ill and dies. Writers differ on Alexander's grief: that he lay on the body, cut his hair, or hanged the doctor; Arrian disbelieves that he razed a shrine of Asclepius. All agree he fasted for three days. He orders a pyre at Babylon, leaves Hephaestion's command unfilled, and by most accounts has him honored as a hero, though some say Ammon refused him worship as a god. He destroys the Cossaeans in winter, and on the way to Babylon receives embassies from Libya, Italy, Carthage, Ethiopia, Scythia, and perhaps Rome.

13.1 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ καὶ τὸ πεδίον λέγεται ἰδεῖν
in this the road also the plain is-said to-have-seen
Ἀλέξανδρον τὸ ἀνειμένον ταῖς ἵπποις ταῖς βασιλικαῖς,
Alexander the set-apart for-the mares the royal
αὐτό τε πεδίον Νησαῖον καλούμενον καὶ αἱ ἵπποι ὅτι
itself both plain Nesaean called and the mares that
Νησαῖαι κληΐζονται λέγει Ἡρόδοτος· εἶναι δὲ πάλαι
Nesaean are-called says Herodotus to-be and long-ago
μὲν ἐς πεντεκαίδεκα μυριάδας τῶν ἵππων, τότε δὲ
indeed about fifteen myriads of-the horses then but
Ἀλέξανδρον οὐ πολὺ πλείονας τῶν πέντε καταλαβεῖν·
Alexander not much more than-the five to-have-found
πρὸς λῃστῶν γὰρ διαρπαγῆναι τὰς πολλὰς αὐτῶν.
by robbers for to-have-been-plundered the most of-them
13.2 ἐνταῦθα λέγουσιν ὅτι Ἀτροπάτης ὁ τῆς Μηδίας σατράπης
there they-say that Atropates the — of-Media satrap
γυναῖκας ἑκατὸν αὐτῷ ἔδωκεν, ταύτας φάσκων εἶναι τῶν
women hundred to-him gave these saying to-be of-the
Ἀμαζόνων, καὶ ταύτας σκευῇ ἀνδρῶν ἱππέων ἐσταλμένας,
Amazons and these in-dress of-men cavalry equipped

πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι πελέκεις ἀντὶ δοράτων ἐφόρουν καὶ
except at-least indeed that axes instead-of spears they-carried and
ἀντὶ ἀσπίδων πέλτας· οἱ δὲ καὶ τὸν μαστὸν λέγουσιν
instead-of shields light-shields some and also the breast say
ὅτι μείονα εἶχον τὸν δεξιόν, ὃν δὴ καὶ ἔξω εἶχον
that smaller they-had the right which indeed also outside they-had
ἐν ταῖς μάχαις.
in the battles

ταύτας μὲν δὴ ἀπαλλάξαι τῆς στρατιᾶς Ἀλέξανδρον, 13.3
these indeed indeed to-have-dismissed from-the army Alexander
μή τι νεωτερισθείη κατ' αὐτὰς ἐς ὕβριν πρὸς τῶν
lest something be-stirred-up against them for outrage by the
Μακεδόνων ἢ βαρβάρων· κελεῦσαι δὲ ἀπαγγεῖλαι πρὸς
Macedonians or barbarians to-have-ordered and to-report to
τὴν βασίλισσαν σφῶν ὅτι αὐτὸς ἥξει πρὸς αὐτὴν
the queen their that he-himself will-come to her
παιδοποιησόμενος. ταῦτα δὲ οὔτε Ἀριστόβουλος οὔτε
about-to-beget-children these-things but neither Aristobulus nor
Πτολεμαῖος οὔτε τις ἄλλος ἀνέγραψεν ὅστις ἱκανὸς ὑπὲρ
Ptolemy nor any other recorded whoever sufficient about
τῶν τηλικούτων τεκμηριῶσαι.
the such-great-things to-attest

οὐδὲ δοκεῖ μοι ἐν τῷ τότε σώζεσθαι τὸ γένος 13.4
nor seems to-me in the then-(time) to-be-surviving the race
τῶν Ἀμαζόνων, οὐδ' ἔτι πρὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ἢ Ξενοφῶν
of-the Amazons nor still before Alexander or Xenophon
ἂν ἐμνήσθη αὐτῶν, Φασιανῶν τε μνησθεὶς καὶ
— would-have-mentioned them Phasians both having-mentioned and
Κόλχων καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἀπὸ Τραπεζοῦντος ὁρμώμενοι ἢ
Colchians and as-many-as other from Trapezus setting-out or
πρὶν ἐς Τραπεζοῦντα κατελθεῖν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπῆλθον ἔθνη
before to Trapezus to-come-down the Greeks visited peoples

βαρβαρικά, ἴναπερ καὶ ταῖς Ἀμαζόσιν ἐντετυχήκεσαν
barbarian where-indeed also with-the Amazons they-would-have-met
ἄν, εἴπερ οὖν ἔτι ἦσαν Ἀμαζόνες.
— if-indeed then still were Amazons
13.5 μὴ γενέσθαι μὲν γὰρ παντελῶς τὸ γένος τούτων τῶν
not to-have-existed indeed for altogether the race of-these the
γυναικῶν οὐ πιστὸν δοκεῖ ἔμοιγε, πρὸς τοσούτων καὶ
women not credible seems to-me by so-many and
τοιούτων ὑμνηθέν. ὡς Ἡρακλέα τε ἐπ᾽ αὐτὰς λόγος
such celebrated as Heracles both against them story
κατέχει ὅτι ἐστάλη καὶ ζωστῆρά τινα Ἱππολύτης τῆς
holds that he-was-sent and girdle some of-Hippolyte the
βασιλίσσης αὐτῶν ὅτι ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐκόμισε, καὶ οἱ
queen of-them that to — Greece he-brought and the
ξὺν Θησεῖ Ἀθηναῖοι ὅτι ἐπιούσας τὰς γυναῖκας ταύτας
with Theseus Athenians that attacking the women these
τὴν Εὐρώπην πρῶτοι μάχῃ νικήσαντες ἀνέστειλαν·
— Europe first by-battle having-conquered drove-back
καὶ γέγραπται ἡ Ἀθηναίων καὶ Ἀμαζόνων μάχη πρὸς
and has-been-painted the of-Athenians and of-Amazons battle by
Μίκωνος οὐ μεῖον ἢπερ ἡ Ἀθηναίων καὶ Περσῶν.
Micon not less than the of-Athenians and of-Persians
13.6 καὶ Ἡροδότῳ πολλάκις περὶ τῶν γυναικῶν τούτων
and by-Herodotus often about the women these
πεποίηται, καὶ ὅσοι Ἀθηναίων τοὺς ἐν πολέμῳ
it-has-been-written and as-many-as of-Athenians those in war
τελευτήσαντας λόγῳ ἐκόσμησαν, καὶ τοῦ πρὸς Ἀμαζόνας
having-died by-speech adorned also of-the against Amazons
ἔργου Ἀθηναίων ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα μνήμην ἐποιήσαντο.
deed of-Athenians among the most memory made
εἰ δὲ ἱππικὰς δή τινας γυναῖκας Ἀτροπάτης ἔδειξεν
if but horse-riding indeed some women Atropates showed

Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, βαρβάρους τινὰς ἄλλας γυναῖκας ἱππεύειν
to-Alexander barbarians some other women to-ride
ἠσκημένας δοκῶ ὅτι ἔδειξεν ἐς τὸν λεγόμενον δὴ τῶν
trained I-think that he-showed in the said indeed of-the
Ἀμαζόνων κόσμον ἐσταλμένας.
Amazons array equipped
ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις δὲ θυσίαν τε ἔθυσεν Ἀλέξανδρος, ὥσπερ 14.1
in Ecbatana and sacrifice both sacrificed Alexander as
αὐτῷ ἐπὶ ξυμφοραῖς ἀγαθαῖς νόμος, καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐπετέλει
for-him upon events good custom and contest held
γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικόν, καὶ πότοι αὐτῷ ἐγίνοντο
gymnastic both and musical and drinking-bouts for-him took-place
παρὰ τοῖς ἑταίροις. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Ἡφαιστίων ἔκαμε τὸ
among the companions and in this Hephaestion fell-ill in-the
σῶμα· ἑβδόμη τε ἡμέρα ἤδη ἦν αὐτῷ τῆς νόσου καὶ
body seventh both day already was for-him of-the illness and
λέγουσι τὸ μὲν στάδιον πλῆρες εἶναι· παίδων γὰρ
they-say the indeed stadium full to-have-been of-boys for
ἀγὼν ἦν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ γυμνικός· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξηγγέλλετο
contest was on-that the day gymnastic when and it-was-reported
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὅτι κακῶς ἔχοι Ἡφαιστίων, ὁ δὲ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
to-Alexander that badly he-fared Hephaestion he and to him
ἐλθὼν σπουδῇ οὐκέτι ζῶντα κατέλαβεν.
having-gone in-haste no-longer alive found
ἔνθα δὴ καὶ ἄλλοι ἄλλα ἀνέγραψαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ πένθους 14.2
there indeed also others other-things recorded about the grief
τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου· μέγα μὲν γενέσθαι αὐτῷ τὸ πένθος,
— of-Alexander great indeed to-have-been for-him the grief
πάντες τοῦτο ἀνέγραψαν, τὰ δὲ πραχθέντα ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ
all this recorded the-things but done for him

ἄλλοι ἄλλα, ὡς ἕκαστος ἢ εὐνοίας πρὸς Ἡφαιστίωνα
others other-things as each either of-goodwill toward Hephaestion
ἢ φθόνου εἶχεν ἢ καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον.
or of-envy had or also toward himself Alexander
14.3 ὧν οἱ τὰ ἀτάσθαλα ἀναγράψαντες οἱ μὲν ἐς
of-whom those the reckless-things having-recorded the-ones indeed to
κόσμον φέρειν μοι δοκοῦσιν οἰηθῆναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὅσα
honor to-bear to-me they-seem to-have-thought for-Alexander whatever
ὑπεραλγήσας ἔδρασεν ἢ εἶπεν ἐπὶ τῷ πάντων δὴ
having-grieved-excessively he-did or said for the of-all indeed
ἀνθρώπων φιλτάτῳ, οἱ δὲ ἐς αἰσχύνην μᾶλλόν τι
men dearest the-others and to shame more somewhat
ὡς οὐ πρέποντα οὔτ᾽ οὖν βασιλεῖ οὔτε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, οἱ
as not befitting neither then for-a-king nor for-Alexander the-ones
μέν, τὸ πολὺ μέρος τῆς ἡμέρας ἐκείνης ἐρριμμένον ἐπὶ τοῦ
indeed the great part of-the day that having-been-flung upon the
σώματος τοῦ ἑταίρου ὀδύρεσθαι οὐδ᾽ ἐθέλειν ἀπαλλαγῆναι,
body of-the companion to-have-wept nor to-have-wished to-be-removed
πρίν γε δὴ πρὸς βίαν ἀπηνέχθη πρὸς τῶν ἑταίρων·
until at-least indeed by force he-was-carried-away by the companions
14.4 οἱ δέ, τήν τε ἡμέραν ὅλην καὶ τὴν νύκτα ὅλην
the-others and the both day whole and the night whole
ἐρρῖφθαι ἐπὶ τῷ σώματι· οἱ δὲ καί, τὸν ἰατρὸν
to-have-been-flung upon the body the-others and also the physician
Γλαυκίαν ὅτι ἐκρέμασε, καὶ τοῦτο ὡς ἐπὶ φαρμάκῳ κακῶς
Glaucias that he-hanged and this as for drug badly
δοθέντι, οἱ δέ, ὅτι οἴνου περιεῖδεν ἐμπλησθέντα
given the-others and that with-wine he-overlooked filled
θεωρῶν αὐτός· καὶ κείρασθαι Ἀλέξανδρον ἐπὶ τῷ νεκρῷ
watching himself and to-have-shorn Alexander over the corpse
τὴν κόμην τά τε ἄλλα οὐκ ἀπεικότα τίθεμαι καὶ κατὰ
the hair the both other-things not unlikely I-consider and in

ζῆλον τὸν Ἀχιλλέως, πρὸς ὅντινα ἐκ παιδὸς φιλοτιμία
rivalry the (one)-of-Achilles toward whom from boyhood rivalry
αὐτῷ ἦν· οἱ δὲ καί, τὸ ἅρμα ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ τὸ σῶμα
for-him was the-others and also the chariot on which the body
ἐφέρετο αὐτὸς ἔστιν ὅτε ὅτι ἡνιόχει,
was-carried himself there-is when that he-drove
τοῦτο οὐδαμῇ πιστὸν ἔμοιγε λέγοντες· ἄλλοι δέ, ὅτι καὶ τοῦ 14.5
this in-no-way credible to-me saying others and that also —
Ἀσκληπιοῦ τὸ ἕδος ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις κατασκάψαι ἐκέλευσε,
of-Asclepius the shrine in Ecbatana to-raze he-ordered
βαρβαρικὸν τοῦτό γε καὶ οὐδαμῇ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πρόσφορον,
barbarian this at-least and in-no-way for-Alexander suitable
ἀλλὰ τῇ Ξέρξου μᾶλλόν τι ἀτασθαλίᾳ τῇ ἐς τὸ
but to-the of-Xerxes more somewhat recklessness the toward the
θεῖον καὶ ταῖς πέδαις ἃς λέγουσιν ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον
divine and to-the fetters which they-say into — Hellespont
καθεῖναι Ξέρξην, τιμωρούμενον δῆθεν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον.
to-have-let-down Xerxes punishing forsooth — Hellespont
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖνο οὐ πάντῃ ἔξω τοῦ εἰκότος ἀναγεγράφθαι 14.6
but also that not wholly outside of-the probable to-have-been-recorded
μοι δοκεῖ, ὡς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος ἤλαυνεν Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐντυχεῖν
to-me seems that toward Babylon marched Alexander to-have-met
αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν πολλὰς πρεσβείας ἀπὸ τῆς Ἑλλάδος,
him along the road many embassies from — Greece
εἶναι δὲ δὴ ἐν τούτοις Ἐπιδαυρίων πρέσβεις· καὶ
to-be and indeed among these of-Epidaurians envoys and
τούτους ὧν τε ἐδέοντο ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου τυχεῖν καὶ ἀνάθημα
these what both they-asked from Alexander to-obtain and an-offering
δοῦναι αὐτοῖς Ἀλέξανδρον κομίζειν τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ, ἐπειπόντα
to-give them Alexander to-carry — to-Asclepius having-added
ὅτι· καίπερ οὐκ ἐπιεικῶς κέχρηταί μοι ὁ Ἀσκληπιός,
that although not fairly has-treated me — Asclepius

οὐ σώσας μοι τὸν ἑταῖρον ὄντινα ἴσον τῇ ἐμαυτοῦ
not having-saved for-me the companion whom equal to-the my-own
κεφαλῇ ἦγον. ἐναγίζειν τε ὅτι ἀεὶ ὡς ἥρωϊ ἐκέλευεν
head I-held to-make-offerings both that always as to-a-hero he-ordered
Ἡφαιστίωνι, τοῦτο μὲν πρὸς τῶν πλείστων ἀναγέγραπται·
to-Hephaestion this indeed by the most has-been-recorded
14.7 οἱ δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι καὶ εἰς Ἄμμωνος ἔπεμψεν ἐρησομένους
some and say that also to of-Ammon he-sent about-to-ask
τὸν θεὸν εἰ καὶ ὡς θεῷ θύειν συγχωρεῖ Ἡφαιστίωνι,
the god if even as to-a-god to-sacrifice he-allows to-Hephaestion
τὸν δὲ οὐ ξυγχωρῆσαι.
him and not to-have-allowed
14.8 ἐκεῖνα δὲ πρὸς πάντων ξυμφωνούμενα, ἐς τρίτην ἀπὸ τοῦ
those-things but by all agreed until the-third from the
θανάτου τοῦ Ἡφαιστίωνος ἡμέραν μήτε σίτου γεύσασθαι
death — of-Hephaestion day neither of-food to-have-tasted
Ἀλέξανδρον μήτε τινὰ θεραπείαν ἄλλην θεραπεῦσαι τὸ σῶμα,
Alexander nor any care other to-have-tended the body
ἀλλὰ κεῖσθαι γὰρ ἢ ὀδυρόμενον ἢ πενθικῶς σιγῶντα·
but to-lie for either weeping or mournfully silent
καὶ πυρὰν κελεῦσαι αὐτῷ ἑτοιμάζεσθαι ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἀπὸ
and a-pyre to-have-ordered for-him to-be-prepared in Babylon from
ταλάντων μυρίων, οἱ δὲ καὶ πλειόνων ἀνέγραψαν·
talents ten-thousand some and even more recorded
14.9 καὶ ὅτι πένθος ποιεῖσθαι περιηγγέλη κατὰ πᾶσαν τὴν
and that mourning to-make was-proclaimed throughout all the
χώραν τὴν βάρβαρον· καὶ ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν ἑταίρων τῶν
country the barbarian and that many of-the companions the
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐς θεραπείαν τὴν ἐκείνου σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ
of-Alexander for flattery the of-him them both selves and
τὰ ὅπλα Ἡφαιστίωνι ἀνέθεσαν ἀποθανόντι· πρῶτον δὲ
the arms to-Hephaestion dedicated having-died first and

Εὐμενῆ ἄρξαι τοῦ σοφίσματος, ὅντινα ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν
Eumenes to-have-begun of-the device whom a-little before
ἔφαμεν ὅτι διηνέχθη πρὸς Ἡφαιστίωνα· καὶ τοῦτο δὲ
we-said that he-quarreled with Hephaestion and this and
δρᾶσαι, τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὡς μὴ ἐφήδεσθαι δοκοίη
to-have-done — for-Alexander so-that not to-rejoice he-might-seem
τελευτήσαντι Ἡφαιστίωνι.
having-died at-Hephaestion
οὔκουν οὐδὲ ἄλλον τινὰ ἔταξεν ἀντὶ Ἡφαιστίωνος 14.10
not-therefore even other anyone he-appointed instead-of Hephaestion
χιλίαρχον ἐπὶ τῇ ἵππῳ τῇ ἑταιρικῇ Ἀλέξανδρος, ὡς μὴ
chiliarch over the cavalry the companion Alexander so-that not
ἀπόλοιτο τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ Ἡφαιστίωνος ἐκ τῆς τάξεως, ἀλλὰ
might-perish the name — of-Hephaestion from the unit but
Ἡφαιστίωνός τε ἡ χιλιαρχία ἐκαλεῖτο καὶ τὸ σημεῖον
of-Hephaestion both the chiliarchy was-called and the standard
αὐτῆς ἡγεῖτο τὸ ἐξ Ἡφαιστίωνος πεποιημένον. ἀγῶνά τε
of-it led the by Hephaestion made contest both
ἐπενόει ποιῆσαι γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικὸν πλήθει τε τῶν
he-intended to-hold gymnastic both and musical in-number both of-the
ἀγωνιζομένων καὶ τῇ εἰς αὐτὸν χορηγίᾳ πολύ τι
competitors and in-the on it outlay much somewhat
τῶν ἄλλων τῶν πρόσθεν ἀριδηλότερον· τρισχιλίους γὰρ
than-the others the before more-splendid three-thousand for
ἀγωνιστὰς τοὺς σύμπαντας παρεσκεύασε. καὶ οὗτοι ὀλίγον
competitors the all he-prepared and these a-little
ὕστερον ἐπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου τῷ τάφῳ λέγουσιν ὅτι ἠγωνίσαντο.
later at of-Alexander the tomb they-say that competed
χρόνος τε ἦν συχνὸς τῷ πένθει καὶ αὐτός τε αὑτὸν 15.1
time both was long for-the mourning and he-himself both himself
ἤδη μετεκάλει ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι μᾶλλόν τι
already called-back from it and the companions more somewhat

ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε ἤνυτον. ἔνθα δὴ ἐξέλασιν ποιεῖται ἐπὶ
in the such accomplished there indeed an-expedition he-makes against
Κοσσαίους, ἔθνος πολεμικὸν ὅμορον τῷ Οὐξίων.
Cossaeans a-people warlike bordering on-the of-Uxians
15.2 εἰσὶ δὲ ὄρειοι οἱ Κοσσαῖοι καὶ χωρία ὀχυρὰ κατὰ
are and mountain-dwellers the Cossaeans and places strong by
κώμας νέμονται, ὁπότε προσάγοι δύναμις ἐς τὰ ἄκρα
villages they-inhabit whenever should-approach a-force to the heights
τῶν ὀρῶν ἀποχωροῦντες ἀθρόοι ἢ ὅπως ἂν προχωρῇ
of-the mountains withdrawing in-a-mass or as — it-may-go-well
ἑκάστοις οὕτω διαφεύγουσιν, ἐς ἀπορίαν βάλλοντες τοὺς
for-each so they-escape into helplessness throwing those
ξὺν δυνάμει σφίσιν ἐπιχειροῦντας· ἀπελθόντων δὲ αὖθις εἰς
with force them attempting having-gone-away and again to
τὸ λῃστεύειν τρεπόμενοι ἀπὸ τούτου τὸν βίον ποιοῦνται.
the to-rob turning from this the living they-make
15.3 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐξεῖλεν αὐτῶν τὸ ἔθνος καίπερ χειμῶνος
Alexander and destroyed of-them the people although in-winter
στρατεύσας. ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε ὁ χειμὼν ἐμποδὼν ἐγένετο αὐτῷ οὔτε
having-campaigned but neither the winter in-the-way became for-him nor
αἱ δυσχωρίαι, οὔτε αὐτῷ οὔτε Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Λάγου, ὃς
the rough-grounds neither for-him nor for-Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus who
μέρος τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἦγεν. οὕτως οὐδὲν ἄπορον
part of-the army against them led so nothing impracticable
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῶν πολεμικῶν ἦν ἐς ὅ τι ὁρμήσειε.
for-Alexander of-the warlike-things was toward what ever he-might-set-out
15.4 κατιόντι δὲ αὐτῷ ἐς Βαβυλῶνα Λιβύων τε πρεσβεῖαι
going-down and to-him to Babylon of-Libyans both embassies
ἐνετύγχανον ἐπαινούντων τε καὶ στεφανούντων ἐπὶ τῇ
met praising both and crowning for the
βασιλείᾳ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ἐξ Ἰταλίας Βρέττιοί τε καὶ
kingship — of-Asia and from Italy Bruttians both and

Λευκανοὶ καὶ Τυρρηνοὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἐπρέσβευον. καὶ
Lucanians and Etruscans for the same sent-embassies and
Καρχηδονίους τότε πρεσβεῦσαι λέγεται καὶ ἀπὸ Αἰθιόπων
Carthaginians then to-have-sent-envoys is-said and from Ethiopians
πρέσβεις ἐλθεῖν καὶ Σκυθῶν τῶν ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης,
envoys to-have-come and of-Scythians the from — Europe
καὶ Κελτοὺς καὶ Ἴβηρας, ὑπὲρ φιλίας δεησομένους· ὧν
and Celts and Iberians for friendship about-to-ask of-whom
τά τε ὀνόματα καὶ τὰς σκευὰς τότε πρῶτον ὀφθῆναι
the both names and the dress then first to-have-been-seen
πρὸς Ἑλλήνων τε καὶ Μακεδόνων.
by Greeks both and Macedonians
τοὺς δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐς ἀλλήλους διαφορῶν λέγουσιν 15.5
these and also about the toward one-another differences they-say
ὅτι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ διακρῖναι ἐπέτρεπον· καὶ τότε μάλιστα
that to-Alexander to-decide they-entrusted and then most
αὐτόν τε αὑτῷ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
himself both to-himself Alexander and to-those around him
φανῆναι γῆς τε ἁπάσης καὶ θαλάσσης κύριον. Ἄριστος
to-have-appeared of-land both all and sea lord Aristus
δὲ καὶ Ἀσκληπιάδης τῶν τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀναγραψάντων
and also Asclepiades of-those the of-Alexander having-recorded
καὶ Ῥωμαίους λέγουσιν ὅτι ἐπρέσβευσαν· καὶ ἐντυχόντα
also Romans say that sent-embassies and having-met
ταῖς πρεσβείαις Ἀλέξανδρον ὑπὲρ Ῥωμαίων τι τῆς ἐς
the embassies Alexander about Romans something of-the into
τὸ ἔπειτα ἐσομένης δυνάμεως μαντεύσασθαι, τόν τε κόσμον
the future to-be power to-have-prophesied the both order
τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἰδόντα καὶ τὸ φιλόπονόν τε καὶ ἐλευθέριον
of-the men having-seen and the industrious both and free
καὶ περὶ τοῦ πολιτεύματος ἅμα διαπυνθανόμενον.
and about the constitution at-the-same-time inquiring

15.6 καὶ τοῦτο οὔτε ὡς ἀτρεκὲς οὔτε ὡς ἄπιστον πάντῃ
and this neither as exact nor as incredible wholly
ἀνέγραψα· πλήν γε δὴ οὔτε τις Ῥωμαίων ὑπὲρ τῆς
I-recorded except at-least indeed neither any of-Romans about the
πρεσβείας ταύτης ὡς παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον σταλείσης μνήμην
embassy this as to Alexander sent mention
τινὰ ἐποιήσατο, οὔτε τῶν τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου γραψάντων,
any made nor of-those the of-Alexander having-written
οἷστισι μᾶλλον ἐγὼ ξυμφέρομαι, Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου
with-whom more I agree Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος· οὐδὲ τῷ Ῥωμαίων πολιτεύματι
and Aristobulus nor to-the of-Romans constitution
ἐπεοικὸς ἦν ἐλευθέρῳ δὴ τότε ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ὄντι,
befitting was free indeed then to the most being
παρὰ βασιλέα ἀλλόφυλον ἄλλως τε καὶ ἐς τοσόνδε ἀπὸ
to a-king foreign especially both and to so-great from
τῆς οἰκείας πρεσβεῦσαι, οὔτε φόβου ἐξαναγκάζοντος οὔτε
the own-land to-send-envoys neither fear compelling nor
κατ᾽ ἐλπίδα ὠφελείας, μίσει τε, εἴπερ τινὰς ἄλλους, τοῦ
in hope of-benefit by-hatred both if-indeed any others of-the
τυραννικοῦ γένους τε καὶ ὀνόματος κατεχομένους.
tyrannical race both and name being-gripped

Alexander sends Heracleides with shipwrights to Hyrcania to build ships and explore the Caspian. Crossing the Tigris, he is warned by the Chaldaean seers not to enter Babylon, and answers with a verse of Euripides. Arrian reflects that to die in his prime, after Hephaestion, may have been better for him. Alexander suspects the seers want to keep Bel's temple revenues, and marshes keep him from going round the city as they advise. Aristobulus tells how Peithagoras found a lobeless liver before the deaths of Hephaestion and Alexander; Calanus had said he would embrace Alexander at Babylon. Greek embassies come, and he returns statues Xerxes took. At Babylon he finds his fleet, builds another, digs a harbor, and prepares against the Arabs, from insatiable ambition, Arrian thinks.

ἐκ τούτου δὴ Ἡρακλείδην τὸν Ἀργαίου ἐκπέμπει ἐς 16.1
after this indeed Heracleides the (son)-of-Argaeus he-sends-out to
Ὑρκανίαν ναυπηγοὺς ἅμα οἱ ἄγοντα, κελεύσας ὕλην
Hyrcania shipwrights together-with himself leading having-ordered timber
τεμόντα ἐκ τῶν ὀρῶν τῶν Ὑρκανίων ναυπηγεῖσθαι
having-cut from the mountains the Hyrcanian to-build
ναῦς μακρὰς ἀφράκτους τε καὶ πεφραγμένας ἐς τὸν
ships long undecked both and decked in the
κόσμον τὸν Ἑλληνικόν.
fashion the Greek
πόθος γὰρ εἶχεν αὐτὸν καὶ ταύτην ἐκμαθεῖν τὴν θάλασσαν 16.2
longing for held him also this to-learn-thoroughly the sea
τὴν Κασπίαν τε καὶ Ὑρκανίαν καλουμένην ποίᾳ τινὶ
the Caspian both and Hyrcanian called with-what some
ξυμβάλλει θαλάσσῃ, πότερα τῇ τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου
it-joins sea whether with-the of-the sea the Euxine
ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς ἑῴας τῆς κατ' Ἰνδοὺς ἐκπεριερχομένη ἡ μεγάλη
or from the eastern the toward Indians going-round the great
θάλασσα ἀναχεῖται εἰς κόλπον τὸν Ὑρκάνιον, καθάπερ οὖν
sea spreads into gulf the Hyrcanian just-as then

καὶ τὸν Περσικὸν ἐξεῦρε, τὴν Ἐρυθρὰν δὴ καλουμένην
also the Persian he-discovered the Red indeed called
θάλασσαν, κόλπον οὖσαν τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης.
sea gulf being of-the great sea

16.3 οὐ γάρ πω ἐξεύρηντο αἱ ἀρχαὶ τῆς Κασπίας θαλάσσης,
not for yet had-been-discovered the sources of-the Caspian sea
καίτοι ἐθνῶν τε αὐτὴν περιοικούντων οὐκ ὀλίγων καὶ
although peoples both it dwelling-around not few and
ποταμῶν πλοΐμων ἐμβαλλόντων ἐς αὐτήν· ἐκ Βάκτρων
rivers navigable emptying into it from Bactra
μὲν Ὄξος, μέγιστος τῶν Ἀσιανῶν ποταμῶν, πλήν γε
indeed Oxus greatest of-the Asian rivers except at-least
δὴ τῶν Ἰνδῶν, ἐξίησιν ἐς ταύτην τὴν θάλασσαν,
indeed those of-Indians discharges into this the sea
διὰ Σκυθῶν δὲ Ἰαξάρτης· καὶ τὸν Ἀράξην δὲ τὸν ἐξ
through Scythians and Iaxartes and — Araxes and the from
Ἀρμενίων ῥέοντα ἐς ταύτην ἐσβάλλειν ὁ πλείων λόγος
Armenia flowing into this to-empty the more-common account
κατέχει. μέγιστοι μὲν οὗτοι·
holds greatest indeed these

16.4 πολλοὶ δὲ δὴ καὶ ἄλλοι ἔς τε τούτους ἐμβάλλοντες
many and indeed also others into both these emptying
καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ σφῶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν ταύτην ἐξιᾶσιν,
and themselves on their-own into the sea this discharge
οἱ μὲν καὶ γινωσκόμενοι πρὸς τῶν ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον
the-ones indeed also known by those around Alexander
ἐπελθόντων τὰ ἔθνη ταῦτα, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὰ ἐπέκεινα
having-visited the peoples these the-others and in the-parts beyond
τοῦ κόλπου, ὡς εἰκός, κατὰ τοὺς Σκύθας τοὺς Νομάδας,
the gulf as is-likely among the Scythians the Nomads
ὃ δὴ ἄγνωστον πάντῃ ἐστίν.
which indeed unknown wholly is

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμὸν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ 16.5
Alexander and when the Tigris river with the army
διέβη ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος, ἐνταῦθα ἐντυγχάνουσιν
crossed marching toward Babylon there meet
αὐτῷ Χαλδαίων οἱ λόγιοι, καὶ ἀπαγαγόντες ἀπὸ τῶν
him of-Chaldaeans the learned and having-drawn-aside from the
ἑταίρων ἐδέοντο ἐπισχεῖν τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος ἔλασιν.
companions begged to-hold-off the toward Babylon march
λόγιον γὰρ γεγονέναι σφίσιν ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ τοῦ Βήλου μὴ
oracle for to-have-come to-them from the god — Bel not
πρὸς ἀγαθοῦ οἱ εἶναι τὴν πάροδον τὴν ἐς Βαβυλῶνα
for good to-him to-be the entry the into Babylon
ἐν τῷ τότε. τὸν δὲ ἀποκρίνασθαι αὐτοῖς λόγος τοῦ
in the then-(time) him and to-have-answered them story —
Εὐριπίδου τοῦ ποιητοῦ ἔπος·
of-Euripides the poet verse
ἔχει δὲ τὸ ἔπος Εὐριπίδῃ ὧδε· μάντις δ' ἄριστος ὅστις 16.6
has and the verse for-Euripides thus prophet and best whoever
εἰκάζει καλῶς. σὺ δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι,
guesses well you and O king said the Chaldaeans
μὴ πρὸς δυσμὰς ἀφορῶν αὐτὸς μηδὲ τὴν στρατιὰν ταύτῃ
not toward the-west looking yourself nor the army there
ἐπέχουσαν ἄγων παρελθεῖν, ἀλλὰ ἐκπεριελθὼν πρὸς ἕω
turned leading to-go-in but having-gone-around toward dawn
μᾶλλον.
rather
τῷ δὲ οὐδὲ τοῦτο εὐμαρὲς διὰ δυσχωρίαν ξυνέβη· 16.7
for-him but not-even this easy because-of rough-ground it-turned-out
ἀλλὰ ἦγε γὰρ αὐτὸν ταύτῃ τὸ δαιμόνιον ᾗ παρελθόντα
but led for him this-way the divine where having-entered
ἐχρῆν ἤδη τελευτῆσαι. καί που τυχὸν καὶ ἄμεινον
it-was-fated already to-die and I-suppose perhaps even better

αὐτῷ ἦν ἐν ἀκμῇ τῆς τε ἄλλης δόξης καὶ τοῦ πόθου
for-him was in prime of-the both other glory and of-the longing
τοῦ παρ᾽ ἀνθρώπων ἀπηλλάχθαι, πρίν τινα ξυμβῆναι
of-the from men to-have-departed before some to-befall
αὐτῷ ξυμφορὰν ἀνθρωπίνην, ἧς ἕνεκα καὶ Σόλωνα
him misfortune human for-the-sake-of which also Solon
Κροίσῳ παραινέσαι εἰκὸς τέλος ὁρᾶν μακροῦ βίου μηδὲ
Croesus to-have-advised it-is-likely end to-see of-long life nor
πρόσθεν τινὰ ἀνθρώπων ἀποφαίνειν εὐδαίμονα.
before anyone of-men to-declare happy

16.8 ἐπεὶ καὶ αὐτῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἡ Ἡφαιστίωνος τελευτὴ οὐ
since also for-himself Alexander the of-Hephaestion death not
σμικρὰ ξυμφορὰ γεγένητο, ἧς καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος
small misfortune had-been which also himself Alexander
προαπελθεῖν ἂν δοκεῖ μοι ἐθελῆσαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶν
to-depart-first — seems to-me to-have-wished rather than living
πειραθῆναι, οὐ μεῖον ἢ καὶ Ἀχιλλέα δοκῶ ἂν ἑλέσθαι
to-experience not less than also Achilles I-think — to-have-chosen
προαποθανεῖν Πατρόκλου μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ θανάτου αὐτῷ
to-die-before Patroclus rather than of-the death for-him
τιμωρὸν γενέσθαι.
avenger to-become

17.1 ἦν δέ τι καὶ ὕποπτον αὐτῷ ἐς τοὺς Χαλδαίους,
was and something also suspicious to-him toward the Chaldaeans
ὡς οὐ κατὰ μαντείαν τι μᾶλλον ἢ ἐς ὠφέλειαν
as not according-to prophecy anything rather than for benefit
τὴν αὑτῶν φέροι αὐτοῖς ἡ κώλυσις τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου
the their-own might-tend for-them the prevention — of-Alexander
ἐς Βαβυλῶνα ἐν τῷ τότε ἐλάσεως. ὁ γὰρ τοῦ Βήλου
into Babylon in the then-(time) march the for — of-Bel

νεὼς ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει ἦν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων, μεγέθει τε
temple in middle the city was of-the Babylonians in-size both
μέγιστος καὶ ἐκ πλίνθου ὀπτῆς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ ἡρμοσμένης.
greatest and from brick baked in bitumen fitted
τοῦτον τὸν νεών, ὥσπερ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἱερὰ τὰ 17.2
this the temple as also the other temples the
Βαβυλωνίων, Ξέρξης κατέσκαψεν, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος
of-Babylonians Xerxes razed when from — Greece
ὀπίσω ἀπενόστησεν· Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐν νῷ εἶχεν ἀνοικοδομεῖν
back he-returned Alexander and in mind had to-rebuild
οἱ μὲν λέγουσιν ὅτι ἐπὶ τοῖς θεμελίοις τοῖς πρόσθεν, καὶ
some indeed say that on the foundations the former and
τούτου ἕνεκα τὸν χοῦν ἐκφέρειν ἐκέλευε τοὺς Βαβυλωνίους,
of-this for-the-sake the rubble to-carry-out he-ordered the Babylonians
οἱ δέ, ὅτι καὶ μείζονα ἔτι τοῦ πάλαι ὄντος.
the-others and that even greater still than-the of-old existing
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀποστάντος αὐτοῦ μαλθακῶς ἀνθήψαντο τοῦ 17.3
when and having-gone-away him slackly took-hold of-the
ἔργου οἷς ταῦτα ἐπετέτραπτο, ὁ δὲ τῇ στρατιᾷ
work those-to-whom these-things had-been-entrusted he and with-the army
πάσῃ ἐπενόει τὸ ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι. εἶναι δὲ τῷ θεῷ
whole intended the work to-accomplish to-be and to-the god
τῷ Βήλῳ πολλὴν μὲν τὴν χώραν ἀνειμένην ἐκ τῶν
— Bel much indeed the land dedicated by the
Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέων, πολὺν δὲ χρυσόν.
Assyrian kings much and gold
καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου πάλαι μὲν τὸν νεὼν ἐπισκευάζεσθαι καὶ τὰς 17.4
and from this formerly indeed the temple to-be-repaired and the
θυσίας τῷ θεῷ θύεσθαι, τότε δὲ τοὺς Χαλδαίους τὰ
sacrifices to-the god to-be-sacrificed then but the Chaldaeans the-things
τοῦ θεοῦ νέμεσθαι, οὐκ ὄντος ἐς ὅ τι ἀναλωθήσεται τὰ
of-the god to-enjoy not being on what ever will-be-spent the

περιγιγνόμενα. τούτων δὴ εἵνεκα ὕποπτοι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
surplus of-these indeed for-the-sake suspect to-Alexander
ἦσαν οὐκ ἐθέλειν παρελθεῖν εἴσω Βαβυλῶνος Ἀλέξανδρον,
they-were not to-wish to-go-in inside Babylon Alexander
ὡς μὴ δι᾽ ὀλίγου τὸν νεὼν ἐπιτελεσθέντα ἀφελέσθαι
so-that not in short-time the temple completed should-take-away
αὐτοὺς τὰς ἐκ τῶν χρημάτων ὠφελείας.
them the from the money benefits

17.5 ὅμως δὲ τά γε τῆς ἐπιστροφῆς τῆς κατὰ τὴν
nevertheless and the-things at-least of-the turning the for the
εἴσοδον τὴν ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐθελῆσαι αὐτοῖς πεισθῆναι
entrance the into the city to-have-been-willing them to-obey
λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος, καὶ τῇ πρώτῃ μὲν παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν
says Aristobulus and on-the first indeed beside the river
τὸν Εὐφράτην καταστρατοπεδεῦσαι, ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν
— Euphrates to-have-encamped on and the next-day
ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντα τὸν ποταμὸν παρ᾽ αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι,
on right having the river along it to-march
θέλοντα ὑπερβάλλειν τῆς πόλεως τὸ μέρος τὸ ἐς δυσμὰς
wishing to-pass of-the city the part the to west
τετραμμένον, ὡς ταύτῃ ἐπιστρέψαντα πρὸς ἕω ἄγειν·
turned so-that there having-turned toward dawn to-lead

17.6 ἀλλὰ οὐ γὰρ δυνηθῆναι ὑπὸ δυσχωρίας οὕτως ἐλάσαι ξὺν
but not for to-have-been-able by rough-ground so to-march with
τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὅτι τὰ ἀπὸ δυσμῶν τῆς πόλεως εἰσιόντι,
the army because the-parts from west of-the city for-one-entering
εἰ ταύτῃ πρὸς ἕω ἐπέστρεφεν, ἑλώδη τε καὶ τεναγώδη
if there toward dawn he-turned marshy both and swampy
ἦν. καὶ οὕτω καὶ ἑκόντα καὶ ἄκοντα ἀπειθῆσαι τῷ θεῷ.
were and so both willingly and unwillingly to-have-disobeyed the god

ἐπεὶ καὶ τοιόνδε τινὰ λόγον Ἀριστόβουλος ἀναγέγραφεν, 18.1
since also such a-certain story Aristobulus has-recorded
Ἀπολλόδωρον τὸν Ἀμφιπολίτην τῶν ἑταίρων τῶν
Apollodorus the Amphipolitan of-the companions —
Ἀλεξάνδρου, στρατηγὸν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἣν παρὰ Μαζαίῳ
of-Alexander general of-the army which with Mazaeus
τῷ Βαβυλῶνος σατράπῃ ἀπέλιπεν Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐπειδὴ
the of-Babylon satrap left Alexander when
συνέμιξεν ἐπανιόντι αὐτῷ ἐξ Ἰνδῶν, ὁρῶντα πικρῶς
he-joined returning him from Indians seeing bitterly
τιμωρούμενον τοὺς σατράπας ὅσοι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ
punishing the satraps as-many-as over one and another
χώρᾳ τεταγμένοι ἦσαν, ἐπιστεῖλαι Πειθαγόρᾳ τῷ ἀδελφῷ,
country posted were to-have-written to-Peithagoras the brother
μάντιν γὰρ εἶναι τὸν Πειθαγόραν τῆς ἀπὸ σπλάγχνων
seer for to-be — Peithagoras of-the from entrails
μαντείας, μαντεύσασθαι καὶ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τῆς σωτηρίας.
divination to-divine also about his-own the safety
ἀντεπιστεῖλαι δὲ αὐτῷ Πειθαγόραν πυνθανόμενον τίνα 18.2
to-have-written-back and to-him Peithagoras inquiring whom
μάλιστα φοβούμενος χρήσασθαι ἐθέλοι τῇ μαντείᾳ. τὸν
most fearing to-use he-wished the divination he
δὲ γράψαι αὖθις ὅτι τόν τε βασιλέα αὐτὸν καὶ
and to-have-written again that the both king himself and
Ἡφαιστίωνα. θύεσθαι δὴ τὸν Πειθαγόραν πρῶτα μὲν ἐπὶ
Hephaestion to-sacrifice indeed — Peithagoras first indeed for
τῷ Ἡφαιστίωνι· ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ ἥπατος τοῦ ἱερείου ὁ λοβὸς
— Hephaestion when and on the liver of-the victim the lobe
ἀφανὴς ἦν, οὕτω δὴ ἐγγράψαντα καὶ κατασημηνάμενον τὸ
invisible was so indeed having-written and having-sealed the
γραμμάτιον πέμψαι παρὰ τὸν Ἀπολλόδωρον ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος
letter to-have-sent to — Apollodorus from Babylon

εἰς Ἐκβάτανα, δηλοῦντα μηδέν τι δεδιέναι Ἡφαιστίωνα·
to Ecbatana showing nothing at-all to-fear Hephaestion
ἔσεσθαι γὰρ αὐτοῖς ὀλίγου χρόνου ἐκποδών.
to-be-going-to-be for to-them in-little time out-of-the-way
18.3 καὶ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος κομίσασθαι
and this the letter says Aristobulus to-have-received
Ἀπολλόδωρον μιᾷ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ ἢ τελευτῆσαι
Apollodorus one before day than to-have-died
Ἡφαιστίωνα. αὖθις δὲ θύεσθαι τὸν Πειθαγόραν ἐπὶ τῷ
Hephaestion again and to-sacrifice — Peithagoras for —
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ γενέσθαι καὶ ἐπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἄλοβον τὸ
Alexander and to-have-become also on Alexander lobeless the
ἧπαρ τοῦ ἱερείου. καὶ Πειθαγόραν τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ ὑπὲρ
liver of-the victim and Peithagoras the same also about
Ἀλεξάνδρου γράψαι Ἀπολλοδώρῳ. Ἀπολλόδωρον δὲ οὐ
Alexander to-have-written to-Apollodorus Apollodorus and not
κατασιωπῆσαι, ἀλλὰ φράσαι γὰρ πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον τὰ
to-have-kept-silent but to-have-told for to Alexander the-things
ἐπεσταλμένα, ὡς εὔνοιαν μᾶλλόν τι ἐπιδειξόμενον τῷ
written as goodwill more somewhat about-to-show to-the
βασιλεῖ, εἰ φυλάττεσθαι παραινέσειε μή τις αὐτῷ κίνδυνος
king if to-be-on-guard he-should-advise lest some to-him danger
ἐν τῷ τότε ξυμπέσοι.
in the then-(time) should-befall
18.4 καὶ Ἀπολλόδωρόν τε λέγει ὅτι Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπῄνεσε καὶ
and Apollodorus both says that Alexander praised and
τὸν Πειθαγόραν, ἐπειδὴ παρῆλθεν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, ἤρετο
— Peithagoras when he-came to Babylon asked
ὅτου γενομένου αὐτῷ σημείου ταῦτα ἐπέστειλεν πρὸς τὸν
what having-happened for-him sign these-things he-wrote to the
ἀδελφόν· τὸν δὲ εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἄλοβόν οἱ τὸ ἧπαρ ἐγένετο
brother him and to-have-said that lobeless to-him the liver was

τοῦ ἱερείου· ἐρομένου δὲ ὅ τι νοοῖ τὸ σημεῖον μέγα
of-the victim having-asked and what ever it-means the sign great
εἰπεῖν εἶναι χαλεπόν. Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ τοσούτου δεῆσαι
to-have-said to-be difficult Alexander and so-far to-have-lacked
χαλεπῆναι τῷ Πειθαγόρᾳ, ὡς καὶ δι' ἐπιμελείας ἔχειν
to-be-angry — with-Peithagoras that even through care to-have
αὐτὸν πλείονος, ὅτι ἀδόλως τὴν ἀλήθειάν οἱ ἔφρασε.
him more because without-guile the truth to-him he-told
ταῦτα αὐτὸς Ἀριστόβουλος λέγει παρὰ Πειθαγόρου 18.5
these-things himself Aristobulus says from Peithagoras
πυθέσθαι· καὶ Περδίκκᾳ δὲ μαντεύσασθαι αὐτὸν λέγει καὶ
to-have-learned and for-Perdiccas and to-have-divined him he-says and
Ἀντιγόνῳ χρόνῳ ὕστερον· καὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου ἀμφοῖν
for-Antigonus in-time later and the same sign for-both
γενομένου Περδίκκαν τε ἐπὶ Πτολεμαῖον στρατεύσαντα
having-happened Perdiccas both against Ptolemy having-campaigned
ἀποθανεῖν καὶ Ἀντίγονον ἐν τῇ μάχῃ τῇ πρὸς Σέλευκον
to-have-died and Antigonus in the battle the against Seleucus
καὶ Λυσίμαχον τῇ ἐν Ἰψῷ γενομένῃ.
and Lysimachus the at Ipsus having-happened
καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ ὑπὲρ Καλάνου τοῦ σοφιστοῦ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ 18.6
and indeed indeed also about Calanus the sage the Indian
τοιόσδε τις ἀναγέγραπται λόγος, ὁπότε ἐπὶ τὴν πυρὰν
such some has-been-recorded story when to the pyre
ᾔει ἀποθανούμενος, τότε τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἑταίρους
he-went about-to-die then the indeed other companions
ἀσπάζεσθαι αὐτόν, Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ οὐκ ἐθελῆσαι προσελθεῖν
to-have-embraced him to-Alexander but not to-have-wished to-approach
ἀσπασόμενον, ἀλλὰ φάναι γὰρ ὅτι ἐν Βαβυλῶνι αὐτῷ
about-to-embrace but to-have-said for that in Babylon him
ἐντυχὼν ἀσπάσεται. καὶ τοῦτον τὸν λόγον ἐν μὲν τῷ τότε
having-met he-will-embrace and this the story at indeed the then-(time)

ἀμεληθῆναι, ὕστερον δέ, ἐπειδὴ ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν Βαβυλῶνι
to-have-been-neglected later but when died in Babylon
Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐς μνήμην ἐλθεῖν τῶν ἀκουσάντων, ὅτι
Alexander into memory to-have-come of-those having-heard that
ἐπὶ τῇ τελευτῇ ἄρα τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐθειάσθη.
for the death then the of-Alexander he-was-inspired

19.1 παρελθόντι δ' αὐτῷ ἐς Βαβυλῶνα πρεσβεῖαι παρὰ τῶν
having-entered and him to Babylon embassies from the
Ἑλλήνων ἐνέτυχον, ὑπὲρ ὅτων μὲν ἕκαστοι πρεσβευόμενοι
Greeks met about what indeed each sending-embassies
οὐκ ἀναγέγραπται, δοκεῖν δ' ἔμοιγε αἱ πολλαὶ στεφανούντων
not has-been-recorded to-seem and to-me the most crowning
τε αὐτὸν ἦσαν καὶ ἐπαινούντων ἐπὶ ταῖς νίκαις ταῖς τε
both him were and praising for the victories the both
ἄλλαις καὶ μάλιστα ταῖς Ἰνδικαῖς, καὶ ὅτι σῶος ἐξ Ἰνδῶν
other and most the Indian and that safe from Indians
ἐπανήκει χαίρειν φασκόντων. καὶ τούτους δεξιωσάμενός
he-returns to-rejoice saying and these having-greeted
τε καὶ τὰ εἰκότα τιμήσας ἀποπέμψαι ὀπίσω λέγεται.
both and the fitting having-honored to-have-sent-away back is-said

19.2 ὅσους δὲ ἀνδριάντας ἢ ὅσα ἀγάλματα ἢ εἰ δή
as-many-as and statues or as-many-as images or if indeed
τι ἄλλο ἀνάθημα ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος Ξέρξης ἀνεκόμισεν
any other offering from — Greece Xerxes carried-up
ἐς Βαβυλῶνα ἢ ἐς Πασαργάδας ἢ ἐς Σοῦσα ἢ ὅπῃ
to Babylon or to Pasargadae or to Susa or where
ἄλλῃ τῆς Ἀσίας, ταῦτα δοῦναι ἄγειν τοῖς πρέσβεσι·
else — of-Asia these to-give to-carry-away to-the envoys
καὶ τὰς Ἁρμοδίου καὶ Ἀριστογείτονος εἰκόνας τὰς χαλκᾶς
and the of-Harmodius and Aristogeiton statues the bronze

οὕτω λέγεται ἀπενεχθῆναι ὀπίσω ἐς Ἀθήνας καὶ τῆς
so is-said to-have-been-carried-back back to Athens and —
Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Κελκέας τὸ ἕδος.
of-Artemis the Celcean the image
κατέλαβε δὲ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος, καὶ 19.3
he-found and in Babylon as says Aristobulus also
τὸ ναυτικόν, τὸ μὲν κατὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν
the fleet the-part indeed along the Euphrates river
ἀναπεπλευκὸς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης τῆς Περσικῆς, ὅ τι περ
having-sailed-up from sea the Persian what ever indeed
σὺν Νεάρχῳ ἦν, τὸ δὲ ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀνακεκομισμένον,
with Nearchus was the-part and from Phoenicia brought-up
πεντήρεις μὲν δύο τῶν ἐκ Φοινίκων, τετρήρεις δὲ τρεῖς,
quinqueremes indeed two of-the from Phoenicians quadriremes and three
τριήρεις δὲ δώδεκα, τριακοντόρους δὲ ἐς τριάκοντα·
triremes and twelve thirty-oared-ships and about thirty
ταύτας ξυντμηθείσας κομισθῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην
these cut-in-sections to-have-been-carried to the Euphrates
ποταμὸν ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐς Θάψακον πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δὲ
river from Phoenicia to Thapsacus a-city there and
ξυμπηχθείσας αὖθις καταπλεῦσαι ἐς Βαβυλῶνα. λέγει δὲ
fitted-together again to-have-sailed-down to Babylon he-says and
ὅτι καὶ ἄλλος αὐτῷ ἐναυπηγεῖτο στόλος τέμνοντι τὰς
that also another for-him was-being-built fleet by-cutting the
κυπαρίσσους τὰς ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ·
cypresses the in — Babylonia
τούτων γὰρ μόνων τῶν δένδρων εὐπορίαν εἶναι ἐν τῇ 19.4
of-these for only of-the trees abundance to-be in the
χώρᾳ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ὅσα ἐς ναυπηγίαν
country of-the Assyrians of-the and other as-many-as for shipbuilding
ἀπόρως ἔχειν τὴν γῆν ταύτην· πληρώματα δὲ ἐς τὰς
lacking to-be the land this crews and for the

ναῦς καὶ τὰς ἄλλας ὑπηρεσίας πορφυρέων τε πλῆθος καὶ
ships and the other services of-purple-fishers both a-multitude and
τῶν ἄλλων ὅσοι ἐργάται τῆς θαλάσσης ἀφῖχθαι αὐτῷ
of-the others as-many-as workers of-the sea to-have-come to-him
ἐκ Φοινίκης τε καὶ τῆς ἄλλης παραλίας· λιμένα τε ὅτι
from Phoenicia both and the other coast a-harbor both that
πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι ἐποίει ὀρυκτὸν ὅσον χιλίαις ναυσὶ
at Babylon he-made dug as-much-as for-a-thousand ships
μακραῖς ὅρμον εἶναι καὶ νεωσοίκους ἐπὶ τοῦ λιμένος.
long anchorage to-be and dockyards on the harbor

19.5 καὶ Μίκκαλος ὁ Κλαζομένιος μετὰ πεντακοσίων ταλάντων
and Miccalus the Clazomenian with five-hundred talents
ἐπὶ Φοινίκης τε καὶ Συρίας ἐστέλλετο, τοὺς μὲν μισθῷ
to Phoenicia both and Syria was-sent the-ones indeed with-pay
πείσων, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ὠνησόμενος ὅσοι θαλάττιοι
about-to-persuade the-others and also about-to-buy as-many-as seafaring
ἄνθρωποι. τήν τε γὰρ παραλίαν τὴν πρὸς τῷ κόλπῳ
men the both for coast the by the gulf
τῷ Περσικῷ κατοικίζειν ἐπενόει καὶ τὰς νήσους τὰς
the Persian to-colonize he-intended and the islands the
ταύτῃ. ἐδόκει γὰρ αὐτῷ οὐ μεῖον ἂν Φοινίκης εὐδαίμων
there it-seemed for to-him not less — than-Phoenicia prosperous
ἡ χώρα αὕτη γενέσθαι.
the country this to-become

19.6 ἦν δὲ αὐτῷ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ ἡ παρασκευὴ ὡς ἐπὶ Ἄραβας
was and for-him of-the fleet the preparation as against Arabs
τοὺς πολλούς, πρόφασιν μέν, ὅτι μόνοι τῶν ταύτῃ βαρβάρων
the most pretext indeed that alone of-the there barbarians
οὔτε πρεσβείαν ἀπέστειλαν οὔτε τι ἄλλο ἐπιεικὲς ἢ ἐπὶ
neither embassy sent nor anything other fitting or for

τιμῇ ἐπέπρακτο Ἄραψιν ἐς αὐτόν· τὸ δὲ ἀληθές, ὥς γέ
honor had-been-done by-Arabs toward him the but truth as at-least
μοι δοκεῖ, ἄπληστος ἦν τοῦ κτᾶσθαί τι ἀεὶ Ἀλέξανδρος.
to-me it-seems insatiable was of-the to-acquire something always Alexander

VII · ARABIA, THE PALLACOPAS, AND THE DIADEM

Alexander, the story goes, hopes the Arabs will honor him as a third god beside Sky and Dionysus, and their spices, coast, and harbors draw him; islands off the Euphrates are reported, and none of his scouts dares sail round Arabia. He improves the Euphrates' outlet into the Pallacopas and founds a city for Greek mercenaries. In the marshes the wind carries off his diadem; a sailor swims for it with it on his head, and the seers bid Alexander behead him, though Aristobulus says he got the talent and a flogging. Peucestas brings twenty thousand Persians, mixed into Macedonian files; Greek envoys crown him; and Ammon allows Hephaestion a hero's honors, while Arrian blames the letter promising Cleomenes pardon.

λόγος δὲ κατέχει ὅτι ἤκουεν Ἄραβας δύο μόνον τιμᾶν 20.1
story and holds that he-heard Arabs two only to-honor
θεούς, τὸν Οὐρανόν τε καὶ τὸν Διόνυσον, τὸν μὲν
gods the Sky both and — Dionysus the indeed
Οὐρανὸν αὐτόν τε ὁρώμενον καὶ τὰ ἄστρα ἐν οἷ ἔχοντα
Sky himself both being-seen and the stars in himself having
τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τὸν ἥλιον, ἀφ' ὅτου μεγίστη καὶ
the both other-things and the sun from which greatest and
φανοτάτη ὠφέλεια ἐς πάντα ἥκει τὰ ἀνθρώπεια, Διόνυσον
most-visible benefit to all comes the human-things Dionysus
δὲ κατὰ δόξαν τῆς ἐς Ἰνδοὺς στρατιᾶς. οὔκουν
and according-to fame of-the into Indians expedition not-therefore
ἀπαξιοῦν καὶ αὐτὸν τρίτον ἂν νομισθῆναι πρὸς
to-think-himself-unworthy also himself third — to-be-considered by
Ἀράβων θεόν, οὐ φαυλότερα ἔργα Διονύσου ἀποδειξάμενον,
Arabs god not meaner deeds than-Dionysus having-displayed

εἴπερ οὖν καὶ Ἀράβων κρατήσας ἐπιτρέψειεν αὐτοῖς,
if-indeed then also Arabs having-conquered he-should-permit them
καθάπερ Ἰνδοῖς, πολιτεύειν κατὰ τὰ σφῶν νόμιμα.
as Indians to-govern according-to the their customs

20.2 τῆς τε χώρας ἡ εὐδαιμονία ὑπεκίνει αὐτόν, ὅτι ἤκουεν
of-the both country the prosperity stirred him because he-heard
ἐκ μὲν τῶν λιμνῶν τὴν κασίαν γίγνεσθαι αὐτοῖς, ἀπὸ δὲ
from indeed the marshes the cassia to-grow for-them from and
τῶν δένδρων τὴν σμύρναν τε καὶ τὸν λιβανωτόν, ἐκ δὲ
the trees the myrrh both and the frankincense from and
τῶν θάμνων τὸ κιννάμωμον τέμνεσθαι, οἱ λειμῶνες δὲ ὅτι
the shrubs the cinnamon to-be-cut the meadows and that
νάρδον αὐτόματοι ἐκφέρουσι· τό τε μέγεθος τῆς χώρας,
nard of-themselves produce the both size of-the country
ὅτι οὐκ ἐλάττων ἡ παράλιος τῆς Ἀραβίας ἤπερ ἡ τῆς
because not less the coast — of-Arabia than the —
Ἰνδικῆς αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο, καὶ νῆσοι αὐτῇ προσκεῖσθαι
of-India to-him was-reported and islands to-it to-lie-off
πολλαί, καὶ λιμένες πανταχοῦ τῆς χώρας ἐνεῖναι, οἷοι
many and harbors everywhere of-the country to-be-in such-as
παρασχεῖν μὲν ὅρμους τῷ ναυτικῷ, παρασχεῖν δὲ καὶ
to-provide indeed anchorages for-the fleet to-provide and also
πόλεις ἐνοικισθῆναι καὶ ταύτας γενέσθαι εὐδαίμονας.
cities to-be-settled and these to-become prosperous

20.3 δύο δὲ νῆσοι κατὰ τὸ στόμα τοῦ Εὐφράτου πελάγιαι
two and islands at the mouth — of-Euphrates in-the-open-sea
ἐξηγγέλλοντο αὐτῷ, ἡ μὲν πρώτη οὐ πρόσω τῶν
were-reported to-him the indeed first not far from-the
ἐκβολῶν τοῦ Εὐφράτου, ἐς ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους
mouths — of-Euphrates about hundred and twenty stades
ἀπέχουσα ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ τε καὶ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ
being-distant from the shore both and the mouth of-the

ποταμοῦ, μικροτέρα αὕτη καὶ δασεῖα ὕλῃ παντοίᾳ·
river smaller this and thick with-wood of-every-kind
εἶναι δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ ἱερὸν Ἀρτέμιδος καὶ τοὺς οἰκήτορας
to-be and in it also a-temple of-Artemis and the inhabitants
αὐτῆς ἀμφὶ τὸ ἱερὸν τὴν δίαιταν ποιεῖσθαι·
of-it around the temple the living to-make
νέμεσθαί τε αὐτὴν αἰξί τε ἀγρίαις καὶ ἐλάφοις, καὶ ταύτας 20.4
to-be-grazed both it by-goats both wild and deer and these
ἀνεῖσθαι ἀφέτους τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, οὐδὲ εἶναι θέμις θήραν
to-be-let-loose consecrated — to-Artemis nor to-be lawful hunting
ποιεῖσθαι ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν, ὅτι μὴ θῦσαί τινα τῇ θεῷ ἐθέλοντα
to-make from them except — to-sacrifice anyone to-the goddess wishing
ἐπὶ τῷδε θηρᾶν μόνον· ἐπὶ τῷδε γὰρ οὐκ εἶναι ἀθέμιτον.
for this to-hunt only for this for not to-be unlawful
καὶ ταύτην τὴν νῆσον λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος ὅτι Ἴκαρον 20.5
and this the island says Aristobulus that Icarus
ἐκέλευσε καλεῖσθαι Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ τῆς νήσου τῆς Ἰκάρου
ordered to-be-called Alexander after the island — Icarus
τῆς ἐν τῷ Αἰγαίῳ πόντῳ, ἐς ἥντινα Ἴκαρον τὸν
the in the Aegean sea on which Icarus the
Δαιδάλου τακέντος τοῦ κηροῦ ὅτῳ προσήρτητο τὰ
(son)-of-Daedalus having-melted the wax by-which had-been-fastened the
πτερὰ πεσεῖν λόγος κατέχει, ὅτι οὐ κατὰ τὰς
wings to-have-fallen story holds because not according-to the
ἐντολὰς τοῦ πατρὸς πρὸς τῇ γῇ ἐφέρετο, ἀλλὰ μετέωρος
instructions of-the father near the earth he-was-carried but aloft
γὰρ ὑπὸ ἀνοίας πετόμενος παρέσχε τῷ ἡλίῳ θάλψαι τε
for from folly flying he-allowed to-the sun to-warm both
καὶ ἀνεῖναι τὸν κηρόν, καὶ ἀπὸ ἑαυτοῦ τὸν Ἴκαρον τῇ
and to-loosen the wax and from himself — Icarus to-the

τε νήσῳ καὶ τῷ πελάγει τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἐγκαταλιπεῖν
both island and to-the sea the name to-have-left
τὴν μὲν Ἴκαρον καλεῖσθαι, τὸ δὲ Ἰκάριον.
the-one indeed Icarus to-be-called the-other and Icarian
20.6 ἡ δὲ ἑτέρα νῆσος ἀπέχειν μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ
the and other island to-be-distant indeed from the mouth —
Εὐφράτου ἐλέγετο ὅσον πλοῦν ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς κατ᾽
of-Euphrates was-said about a-voyage of-a-day and night with
οὖρον θεούσῃ νηΐ· Τύλος δὲ αὐτῇ εἶναι ὄνομα· μεγάλη
fair-wind for-a-running ship Tylus and for-it to-be name great
δὲ εἶναι καὶ οὔτε τραχεῖα ἡ πολλὴ οὔτε ὑλώδης, ἀλλ᾽
and to-be and neither rough the most nor wooded but
οἷα καρπούς τε ἡμέρους ἐκφέρειν καὶ πάντα ὡραῖα.
such-as fruits both cultivated to-produce and all seasonable
20.7 ταυτὶ ἀπηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὰ μὲν πρὸς Ἀρχίου,
these-things were-reported to-Alexander the-ones indeed by Archias
ὃς ξὺν τριακοντόρῳ ἐκπεμφθεὶς ἐπὶ κατασκοπὴν
who with a-thirty-oared-ship having-been-sent-out for reconnaissance
τοῦ παράπλου τοῦ ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἄραβας μέχρι μὲν
of-the coasting-voyage the as toward the Arabs as-far-as indeed
τῆς νήσου τῆς Τύλου ἦλθε, τὸ πρόσω δὲ οὐκέτι
the island — Tylus came the further but no-longer
περαιωθῆναι ἐτόλμησεν· Ἀνδροσθένης δὲ ξὺν ἄλλῃ
to-cross dared Androsthenes and with another
τριακοντόρῳ σταλεὶς καὶ τῆς χερρονήσου τι τῶν
thirty-oared-ship having-been-sent also of-the peninsula some of-the
Ἀράβων παρέπλευσε· μακροτάτω δὲ τῶν ἐκπεμφθέντων
Arabs coasted farthest and of-those sent-out
προὐχώρησεν Ἱέρων ὁ Σολεὺς ὁ κυβερνήτης, λαβὼν
advanced Hieron the Solian the helmsman having-received
καὶ οὗτος παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου τριακόντορον.
also this-one from Alexander a-thirty-oared-ship

ἦν μὲν γὰρ αὐτῷ προστεταγμένον περιπλεῦσαι τὴν 20.8
was indeed for to-him ordered to-sail-round the
χερρόνησον τὴν Ἀράβων πᾶσαν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν κόλπον
peninsula the of-Arabs all as-far to the gulf
τὸν πρὸς Αἰγύπτῳ τὸν Ἀράβιον τὸν καθ' Ἡρώων πόλιν·
the by Egypt the Arabian the by of-Heroes city
οὐ μὴν ἐτόλμησέ γε τὸ πρόσω ἐλθεῖν, καίτοι ἐπὶ τὸ
not however dared at-least the further to-go although for the
πολὺ παραπλεύσας τὴν Ἀράβων γῆν· ἀλλ' ἀναστρέψας
most having-coasted the of-Arabs land but having-turned-back
γὰρ παρ' Ἀλέξανδρον ἐξήγγειλεν τὸ μέγεθός τε τῆς
for to Alexander reported the size both of-the
χερρονήσου θαυμαστόν τι εἶναι καὶ ὅσον οὐ πολὺ
peninsula wonderful something to-be and as-much-as not much
ἀποδέον τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς, ἄκραν τε ἀνέχειν ἐπὶ πολὺ
falling-short-of the of-Indians land cape both to-project into much
τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης·
of-the great sea
ἣν δὴ καὶ τοὺς σὺν Νεάρχῳ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς πλέοντας, 20.9
which indeed also those with Nearchus from — India sailing
πρὶν ἐπικάμψαι ἐς τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικόν, οὐ πόρρω
before to-turn into the gulf the Persian not far
ἀνατείνουσαν ἰδεῖν τε καὶ παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθεῖν
projecting to-have-seen both and by little to-have-come
διαβαλεῖν ἐς αὐτήν, καὶ Ὀνησικρίτῳ τῷ κυβερνήτῃ ταύτῃ
to-cross to it and for-Onesicritus the helmsman this-way
δοκοῦν· ἀλλὰ Νέαρχος λέγει ὅτι αὐτὸς διεκώλυσεν,
seeming-good but Nearchus says that he-himself prevented
ὡς ἐκπεριπλεύσας τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικὸν ἔχοι
so-that having-sailed-round the gulf the Persian he-might-be-able
ἀπαγγεῖλαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐφ' οἷστισι πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἐστάλη·
to-report to-Alexander for which-things by him he-was-sent

20.10 οὐ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῷ πλεῦσαι τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν ἐστάλθαι,
not for for the to-sail the great sea to-have-been-sent
ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ τῷ καταμαθεῖν τὴν χώραν τὴν προσεχῆ τῇ
but for the to-learn the country the adjacent to-the
θαλάσσῃ καὶ τοὺς κατοικοῦντας αὐτὴν ἀνθρώπους, ὅρμους
sea and the inhabiting it men anchorages
τε ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ ὕδατα καὶ τὰ νόμαια τῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ εἴ
both in it and waters and the customs of-the men and if
τις ἀγαθὴ καρποὺς ἐκφέρειν ἢ εἴ τις κακή· καὶ οὖν καὶ
some good fruits to-produce or if some bad and then also
τοῦτο αἴτιον γενέσθαι ἀποσωθῆναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὸν στρατόν·
this cause to-have-been to-get-away-safe for-Alexander the force
οὐ γὰρ ἂν σωθῆναι πλεύσαντας ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὰ
not for — to-have-been-saved having-sailed beyond — Arabia the
ἔρημα, ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ καὶ ὁ Ἱέρων ἐπιστρέψαι ὀπίσω λέγεται.
deserted-parts for which also — Hieron to-have-turned back is-said
21.1 ἐν ᾧ δὲ αὐτῷ ἐναυπηγοῦντο μὲν αἱ τριήρεις, ὁ λιμὴν
in which and for-him were-being-built indeed the triremes the harbor
δὲ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι ὠρύσσετο, ἐκπλεῖ ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος
and at Babylon was-being-dug he-sails-out from Babylon
κατὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Πολλακόπαν καλούμενον
down — Euphrates as toward the Pallacopas called
ποταμόν. ἀπέχει δὲ οὗτος τῆς Βαβυλῶνος σταδίους ὅσον
river is-distant and this-one — from-Babylon stades about
ὀκτακοσίους, καὶ ἔστι διῶρυξ αὕτη ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφράτου,
eight-hundred and is a-canal this from — Euphrates
οὐχὶ δὲ ἐκ πηγῶν τις ἀνίσχων ποταμός.
not and from springs some rising river
21.2 ὁ γὰρ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς ῥέων ἐκ τῶν Ἀρμενίων
the for Euphrates river flowing from the Armenian
ὀρῶν χειμῶνος μὲν ὥρᾳ προχωρεῖ κατὰ τὰς ὄχθας,
mountains of-winter indeed in-the-season advances within the banks

οἷα δὴ οὐ πολλοῦ ὄντος αὐτῷ τοῦ ὕδατος· ἦρος δὲ
as indeed not much being for-it the water in-spring and
ὑποφαίνοντος καὶ πολὺ δὴ μάλιστα ὑπὸ τροπάς, ἅστινας
appearing and much indeed most toward solstice which
τοῦ θέρους ὁ ἥλιος ἐπιστρέφει, μέγας τε ἐπέρχεται καὶ
of-the summer the sun turns great both comes-on and
ὑπερβάλλει ὑπὲρ τὰς ὄχθας ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν Ἀσσυρίαν·
overflows over the banks into the land the Assyrian
τηνικαῦτα γὰρ αἱ χιόνες αἱ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὄρεσι τοῖς Ἀρμενίοις 21.3
at-that-time for the snows the on the mountains the Armenian
κατατηκόμεναι αὔξουσιν αὐτῷ τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ μέγα. ὅτι
melting increase for-it the water to great because
δὲ ἐπιπολῆς ἐστιν αὐτῷ καὶ ὑψηλὸς ὁ ῥοῦς, ὑπερβάλλει
and on-the-surface is for-it and high the current it-overflows
ἐς τὴν χώραν, εἰ μή τις ἀναστομώσας αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸν
into the country if not anyone having-opened it along —
Πολλακόπαν ἐς τὰ ἕλη τε ἐκτρέψειε καὶ τὰς λίμνας,
Pallacopas into the marshes both should-divert and the lakes
αἳ δὴ ἀρχόμεναι ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς διώρυχος διήκουσιν
which indeed beginning from this the canal extend
ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ξυνεχῆ τῇ Ἀράβων γῇ, καὶ ἔνθεν μὲν
as-far to the continuous with-the of-Arabs land and thence indeed
ἐς τέναγος ἐπὶ πολύ, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἐς θάλασσαν κατὰ
into swamp for much from and that into sea through
πολλά τε καὶ ἀφανῆ στόματα ἐκδίδωσι.
many both and hidden mouths it-flows-out
τετηκυίας δὲ τῆς χιόνος ἀμφὶ Πλειάδων μάλιστα δύσιν 21.4
having-melted and the snow about of-Pleiades most setting
ὀλίγος τε ὁ Εὐφράτης ῥέει καὶ οὐδὲν μεῖον τὸ πολὺ
little both — Euphrates flows and nothing less the most
αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὸν Πολλακόπαν ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς τὰς λίμνας. εἰ
of-it through — Pallacopas flows-out into the lakes if

δή τις μὴ ἀποφράξειε τὸν Πολλακόπαν αὖθις, ὡς
indeed anyone not should-block — Pallacopas again so-that
κατὰ τὰς ὄχθας ἐκτραπὲν φέρεσθαι τὸ ὕδωρ κατὰ πόρου,
along the banks turned to-be-carried the water down channel
ἐκένωσεν ἂν τὸν Εὐφράτην ἐς αὑτόν, ὡς μηδ'
it-would-have-emptied — — Euphrates into itself so-that not-even
ἐπάρδεσθαι ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τὴν Ἀσσυρίαν γῆν.
to-be-irrigated from it the Assyrian land
21.5 ἀλλὰ ἀπεφράσσοντο γὰρ αἱ ἐς τὸν Πολλακόπαν τοῦ
but were-blocked for the into — Pallacopas —
Εὐφράτου ἐκβολαὶ πρὸς τοῦ σατράπου τῆς Βαβυλωνίας
of-Euphrates outlets by the satrap — of-Babylonia
πολλῷ πόνῳ, καίπερ οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀναστομούμεναι, ὅτι
with-much toil although not with-difficulty being-opened because
ἰλυώδης τε ἡ ταύτῃ γῆ καὶ πηλὸς ἡ πολλὴ αὐτῆς,
muddy both the there land and clay the most of-it
οἵα δεχομένη τὸ ὕδωρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ εὐμαρῆ τὴν
such-as receiving the water of-the river not easy the
ἀποστροφὴν αὐτοῦ παρέχειν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς τρίτον μῆνα
turning-away of-it to-provide but even into third month
Ἀσσυρίων ἄνδρες ὑπὲρ τοὺς μυρίους ἐν τῷδε τῷ πόνῳ
of-Assyrians men over the ten-thousand in this the toil
ξυνείχοντο. ταῦτα ἀπαγγελθέντα ἐπήγαγεν Ἀλέξανδρον
were-occupied these-things having-been-reported induced Alexander
ὠφελῆσαί τι τὴν χώραν τὴν Ἀσσυρίαν.
to-help somewhat the country the Assyrian
21.6 ἔνθεν μὲν δὴ ἐς τὸν Πολλακόπαν ἐτρέπετο τοῦ
thence indeed indeed into — Pallacopas was-turned —
Εὐφράτου ὁ ῥοῦς, ταύτῃ δὲ ἔγνω βεβαίως ἀποκλεῖσαι
of-Euphrates the current there and he-decided firmly to-shut-off
τὴν ἐκβολήν· προελθόντι δὲ ὅσον σταδίους τριάκοντα
the outlet to-one-having-advanced and about stades thirty

ὑπόπετρος ἡ γῆ ἐφαίνετο, οἵα διακοπεῖσα, εἰ ξυναφὴς
rocky the land appeared such-as having-been-cut-through if joined
ἐγένετο τῇ πάλαι διώρυχι τῇ κατὰ τὸν Πολλακόπαν,
it-were to-the old canal the along — Pallacopas
οὔτ' ἂν διαχεῖσθαι παρέχειν τὸ ὕδωρ ὑπὸ στερρότητος
neither — to-be-dispersed to-allow the water from hardness
τῆς γῆς, τήν τε ἀποστροφὴν αὐτοῦ τῇ τεταγμένῃ ὥρᾳ
of-the land the both turning-away of-it at-the appointed season
μὴ χαλεπῶς γίγνεσθαι.
not with-difficulty to-happen
τούτων ἕνεκα ἐπί τε τὸν Πολλακόπαν ἔπλευσε καὶ κατ' 21.7
of-these for-the-sake to both — Pallacopas he-sailed and down
αὐτὸν καταπλεῖ ἐς τὰς λίμνας ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀράβων γῆν.
it sails-down into the lakes as toward the of-Arabs land
ἔνθα χῶρόν τινα ἐν καλῷ ἰδὼν πόλιν ἐξῳκοδόμησέ
there place some in good having-seen a-city he-built
τε καὶ ἐτείχισε, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ κατῴκισε τῶν Ἑλλήνων
both and fortified and in this settled of-the Greeks
τινὰς τῶν μισθοφόρων, ὅσοι τε ἑκόντες καὶ ὅσοι
some of-the mercenaries as-many-as both willingly and as-many-as
ὑπὸ γήρως ἢ κατὰ πήρωσιν ἀπόλεμοι ἦσαν.
by age or by maiming unfit-for-war were
αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐξελέγξας δὴ τῶν Χαλδαίων τὴν μαντείαν, 22.1
himself and as having-refuted indeed of-the Chaldaeans the prophecy
ὅτι οὐδὲν πεπόνθοι ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἄχαρι, καθάπερ
that nothing he-had-suffered in Babylon unpleasant as
ἐκεῖνοι ἐμαντεύσαντο, ἀλλὰ ἔφθη γὰρ ἐλάσας ἔξω
they prophesied but he-got-ahead for having-marched outside
Βαβυλῶνος πρίν τι παθεῖν, ἀνέπλει αὖθις κατὰ τὰ ἕλη
Babylon before anything to-suffer sailed-up again through the marshes
θαρρῶν, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχων τὴν Βαβυλῶνα· ἵνα δὴ καὶ
confident on left having — Babylon where indeed also

ἐπλανήθη αὐτῷ μέρος τοῦ ναυτικοῦ κατὰ τὰ στενὰ ἀπορίᾳ
went-astray for-him part of-the fleet in the narrows from-lack
ἡγεμόνος, πρίν γε δὴ αὐτὸς πέμψας τὸν ἡγησόμενον
of-a-guide until at-least indeed himself having-sent the about-to-guide
ἐπανήγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἐς τὸν πόρον. λόγος δὲ λέγεται τοιόσδε.
led-back them into the channel story and is-told such
22.2 τῶν βασιλέων τῶν Ἀσσυρίων τοὺς τάφους ἐν ταῖς λίμναις
of-the kings the Assyrian the tombs in the lakes
τε εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἕλεσι δεδομημένους. ὡς δὲ
both to-be the most and in the marshes built when and
ἔπλει Ἀλέξανδρος κατὰ τὰ ἕλη, κυβερνᾶν γὰρ αὐτὸν λόγος
sailed Alexander through the marshes to-steer for him story
τὴν τριήρη, πνεύματος μεγάλου ἐμπεσόντος αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν
the trireme wind great having-fallen-upon him on the
καυσίαν καὶ τὸ διάδημα αὐτῇ συνεχόμενον, τὴν μὲν δὴ οἷα
kausia and the diadem with-it held-together the indeed indeed as
βαρυτέραν πεσεῖν ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ, τὸ διάδημα δὲ ἀπενεχθὲν
heavier to-have-fallen into the water the diadem and carried-off
πρὸς τῆς πνοῆς σχεθῆναι ἐν καλάμῳ· τὸν κάλαμον δὲ
by the blast to-have-been-caught on a-reed the reed and
τῶν ἐπιπεφυκότων εἶναι τάφῳ τινὶ τῶν πάλαι βασιλέων.
of-those growing to-be on-tomb some of-the ancient kings
22.3 τοῦτό τε οὖν αὐτὸ πρὸ τῶν μελλόντων σημῆναι καὶ
this both then itself before the things-to-come to-have-signified and
ὅτι τῶν τις ναυτῶν ἐκνηξάμενος ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ διάδημα
that of-the some sailors having-swum-out as toward the diadem
ἀφελὼν τοῦ καλάμου αὐτὸ μετὰ χεῖρας μὲν οὐκ
having-taken-off from-the reed it in hands indeed not
ἤνεγκεν, ὅτι νηχομένου ἂν αὐτοῦ ἐβρέχετο,
he-carried because swimming — he it-would-have-been-wetted
περιθεὶς δὲ τῇ κεφαλῇ τῇ αὑτοῦ οὕτω διήνεγκε.
having-put-on and on-the head the his-own so he-carried-across

καὶ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ τῶν ἀναγραψάντων τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου 22.4
and the indeed most of-those having-recorded the-things of-Alexander
λέγουσιν ὅτι τάλαντον μὲν ἐδωρήσατο αὐτῷ Ἀλέξανδρος
say that a-talent indeed gave to-him Alexander
τῆς προθυμίας ἕνεκα, ἀποτεμεῖν δὲ ἐκέλευσε τὴν κεφαλήν,
of-the eagerness for-the-sake to-cut-off and he-ordered the head
τῶν μάντεων ταύτῃ ἐξηγησαμένων, μὴ περιδεῖν σώαν
of-the seers so having-interpreted not to-allow safe
ἐκείνην τὴν κεφαλὴν ἥτις τὸ διάδημα ἐφόρησε τὸ βασίλειον·
that the head which the diadem wore the royal
Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ τάλαντον μὲν ὅτι ἔλαβε λέγει αὐτόν,
Aristobulus and a-talent indeed that he-received says him
ἀλλὰ πληγὰς λαβεῖν τῆς περιθέσεως ἕνεκα τοῦ διαδήματος.
but blows to-receive of-the putting-on for-the-sake of-the diadem
Ἀριστόβουλος μὲν δὴ τῶν τινα Φοινίκων τῶν ναυτῶν 22.5
Aristobulus indeed indeed of-the some Phoenicians of-the sailors
λέγει ὅτι τὸ διάδημα τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκόμισεν, εἰσὶ
says that the diadem — to-Alexander brought there-are
δὲ οἳ Σέλευκον λέγουσιν. καὶ τοῦτο τῷ τε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
and who Seleucus say and this — both to-Alexander
σημῆναι τὴν τελευτὴν καὶ τῷ Σελεύκῳ τὴν βασιλείαν τὴν
to-have-signified the death and — to-Seleucus the kingship the
μεγάλην. Σέλευκον γὰρ μέγιστον τῶν μετὰ Ἀλέξανδρον
great Seleucus for greatest of-those after Alexander
διαδεξαμένων τὴν ἀρχὴν βασιλέα γενέσθαι τήν τε
having-succeeded-to the rule king to-have-become the both
γνώμην βασιλικώτατον καὶ πλείστης γῆς ἐπάρξαι μετά
mind most-kingly and most land to-have-ruled-over after
γε αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον οὔ μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐς ἀμφίλογον.
at-least himself Alexander not to-me it-seems to-come into dispute

23.1 ἐπανελθὼν δὲ ἐς Βαβυλῶνα καταλαμβάνει Πευκέσταν
having-returned and to Babylon he-finds Peucestas
ἥκοντα ἐκ Περσῶν, ἄγοντα στρατιὰν Περσῶν ἐς
having-come from Persians leading an-army of-Persians about
δισμυρίους· ἦγε δὲ καὶ Κοσσαίων καὶ Ταπούρων οὐκ
twenty-thousand he-led and also of-Cossaeans and of-Tapurians not
ὀλίγους, ὅτι καὶ ταῦτα ἔθνη τῶν προσχώρων τῇ
few because also these peoples of-the neighboring —
Περσίδι μαχιμώτατα εἶναι ἐξηγγέλλετο. ἦκε δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ
to-Persis most-warlike to-be was-reported came and to-him also
Φιλόξενος στρατιὰν ἄγων ἀπὸ Καρίας καὶ Μένανδρος ἐκ
Philoxenus an-army leading from Caria and Menander from
Λυδίας ἄλλους καὶ Μενίδας τοὺς ἱππέας ἄγων τοὺς αὐτῷ
Lydia others and Menidas the cavalry leading the to-him
ξυνταχθέντας.
assigned

23.2 καὶ πρεσβεῖαι δὲ ἐν τούτῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἦκον, καὶ
and embassies and in this from — Greece came and
τούτων οἱ πρέσβεις αὐτοί τε ἐστεφανωμένοι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
of-these the envoys themselves both garlanded to-Alexander
προσῆλθον καὶ ἐστεφάνουν αὐτὸν στεφάνοις χρυσοῖς, ὡς
approached and crowned him with-crowns golden as
θεωροὶ δῆθεν ἐς τιμὴν θεοῦ ἀφιγμένοι. τῷ δὲ οὐ
sacred-envoys forsooth for honor of-a-god having-arrived for-him but not
πόρρω ἄρα ἡ τελευτὴ ἦν.
far then the end was

23.3 ἔνθα δὴ τούς τε Πέρσας ἐπαινέσας τῆς προθυμίας, ὅτι
there indeed the both Persians having-praised for-the eagerness because
πάντα Πευκέστᾳ ἐπείθοντο, καὶ αὐτὸν Πευκέσταν τῆς
in-all-things Peucestas they-obeyed and himself Peucestas for-the
ἐν κόσμῳ αὐτῶν ἐξηγήσεως, κατέλεγεν αὐτοὺς ἐς τὰς
in order of-them leadership he-enrolled them into the

Μακεδονικὰς τάξεις, δεκαδάρχην μὲν τῆς δεκάδος ἡγεῖσθαι
Macedonian battalions file-leader indeed of-the file to-lead
Μακεδόνα καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ διμοιρίτην Μακεδόνα καὶ
a-Macedonian and after this a-double-pay-man Macedonian and
δεκαστάτηρον, οὕτως ὀνομαζόμενον ἀπὸ τῆς μισθοφορᾶς,
a-ten-stater-man so named from the pay
ἥντινα μείονα μὲν τοῦ διμοιρίτου, πλείονα δὲ τῶν
which less indeed than-the double-pay-man more but than-those
οὐκ ἐν τιμῇ στρατευομένων ἔφερεν·
not in honor serving he-received
ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ δώδεκα Πέρσας καὶ τελευταῖον τῆς 23.4
after these and twelve Persians and last of-the
δεκάδος Μακεδόνα, δεκαστάτηρον καὶ τοῦτον, ὥστε ἐν τῇ
file a-Macedonian ten-stater-man also this-one so-that in the
δεκάδι τέσσαρας μὲν εἶναι Μακεδόνας, τοὺς μὲν τῇ
file four indeed to-be Macedonians the-ones indeed in-the
μισθοφορᾷ προὔχοντας, τὸν δὲ τῇ ἀρχῇ τῆς δεκάδος,
pay excelling the-one and in-the command of-the file
δώδεκα δὲ Πέρσας, τοὺς μὲν Μακεδόνας τὴν πάτριον
twelve and Persians the indeed Macedonians the ancestral
ὅπλισιν ὡπλισμένους, τοὺς δὲ Πέρσας τοὺς μὲν τοξότας,
armor armed the and Persians the-ones indeed archers
τοὺς δὲ καὶ μεσάγκυλα ἔχοντας.
the-others and also thonged-javelins having
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ πολλάκις μὲν τοῦ ναυτικοῦ ἀπεπειρᾶτο, 23.5
in this and often indeed the fleet he-tested
πολλαὶ δὲ ἔριδες αὐτῷ τῶν τριήρων καὶ ὅσαι τετρήρεις
many and contests for-him of-the triremes and as-many-as quadriremes
κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐγίγνοντο, καὶ ἀγῶνες τῶν τε ἐρετῶν
on the river took-place and competitions of-the both rowers
καὶ τῶν κυβερνητῶν καὶ στέφανοι τῶν νικώντων.
and of-the helmsmen and crowns for-the victors

23.6 ἦκον δὲ καὶ παρὰ Ἄμμωνος οἱ θεωροὶ οὕστινας ἐστάλκει
came and also from Ammon the sacred-envoys whom he-had-sent
ἐρησομένους ὅπως θέμις αὐτῷ τιμᾶν Ἡφαιστίωνα· οἱ δὲ ὡς
about-to-ask how lawful for-him to-honor Hephaestion they and as
ἥρωϊ ἔφησαν ὅτι θύειν θέμις ὁ Ἄμμων λέγει. ὁ δὲ ἔχαιρέ
to-a-hero said that to-sacrifice lawful — Ammon says he and rejoiced
τε τῇ μαντείᾳ καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ὡς ἥρωα ἐγέραιρε. καὶ
both at-the oracle and the from this-time as a-hero honored and
Κλεομένει, ἀνδρὶ κακῷ καὶ πολλὰ ἀδικήματα ἀδικήσαντι ἐν
to-Cleomenes a-man bad and many wrongs having-done in
Αἰγύπτῳ, ἐπιστέλλει ἐπιστολήν. καὶ ταύτην τῆς μὲν ἐς
Egypt he-sends a-letter and this for-the indeed toward
Ἡφαιστίωνα καὶ ἀποθανόντα φιλίας ἕνεκα καὶ μνήμης
Hephaestion even having-died friendship for-the-sake and memory
οὐ μέμφομαι ἔγωγε, ἄλλων δὲ πολλῶν ἕνεκα μέμφομαι.
not I-blame I-at-least of-other but many-things for-the-sake I-blame
23.7 ἔλεγε γὰρ ἡ ἐπιστολὴ κατασκευασθῆναι Ἡφαιστίωνι
said for the letter to-be-built for-Hephaestion
ἡρῷον ἐν Ἀλεξανδρείᾳ τῇ Αἰγυπτίᾳ, ἔν τε τῇ πόλει αὐτῇ
a-hero-shrine in Alexandria the Egyptian in both the city itself
καὶ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ τῇ Φάρῳ, ἵνα ὁ πύργος ἐστὶν ὁ ἐν τῇ
and in the island — Pharos where the tower is the on the
νήσῳ, μεγέθει τε μέγιστον καὶ πολυτελείᾳ ἐκπρεπέστατον,
island in-size both greatest and in-costliness most-splendid
καὶ ὅπως ἐπικρατήσῃ ἐπικαλεῖσθαι ἀπὸ Ἡφαιστίωνος,
and that it-should-prevail to-be-named after Hephaestion
καὶ τοῖς συμβολαίοις καθ' ὅσα οἱ ἔμποροι ἀλλήλοις
and in-the contracts in which the merchants with-one-another
ξυμβάλλουσιν ἐγγράφεσθαι τὸ ὄνομα Ἡφαιστίωνος.
make-contracts to-be-written-in the name of-Hephaestion

ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ ἔχω μέμψασθαι, πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι οὐκ 23.8
these-things indeed not I-can to-blame except at-least indeed that not
ἐπὶ μεγάλοις μεγάλως διεσπουδάζετο. ἐκεῖνα δὲ καὶ πάνυ
on great-things greatly he-was-zealous those-things but even very
μέμφομαι. ἢν γὰρ καταλάβω ἐγώ, ἔλεγε τὰ γράμματα, τὰ
I-blame if for I-find I he-said the letters the
ἱερὰ τὰ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ καλῶς κατεσκευασμένα καὶ τὰ ἡρῷα
temples the in Egypt well built and the hero-shrines
τὰ Ἡφαιστίωνος, εἴ τέ τι πρότερον ἡμάρτηκας,
the of-Hephaestion if both anything before you-have-done-wrong
ἀφήσω σε τούτου, καὶ τὸ λοιπόν, ὁπηλίκον ἂν ἁμάρτῃς,
I-will-release you from-this and the future however-great — you-do-wrong
οὐδὲν πείσῃ ἐξ ἐμοῦ ἄχαρι. τοῦτο ἀνδρὶ ἄρχοντι πολλῆς
nothing you-will-suffer from me unpleasant this to-a-man ruling much
μὲν χώρας, πολλῶν δὲ ἀνθρώπων ἐκ βασιλέως μεγάλου
indeed country many and men from king great
ἐπεσταλμένον, ἄλλως τε καὶ κακῷ ἀνδρί, οὐκ ἔχω ἐπαινέσαι.
sent especially both and to-a-bad man not I-can to-praise

Aristobulus tells of omens: a stranger sits on the empty throne and is tortured. After feasting through the night with Medius, Alexander falls ill of a fever. The royal journals give the days: bathing, sacrifice, orders for the voyage to the officers, fever by night, until he can no longer speak. The soldiers force their way in to see him, and he greets each with his head and eyes. Companions sleeping in the temple of Sarapis are told not to move him, and he dies soon after. Some say that, asked to whom he left his kingdom, he answered: to the strongest, and others that he foresaw great funeral games over himself.

24.1 ἀλλὰ γὰρ αὐτῷ ἤδη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐγγὺς ἦν τὸ τέλος. καί
but for to-him already Alexander near was the end and
τι καὶ τοιόνδε πρὸ τῶν μελλόντων σημῆναι λέγει
something also such before the things-to-come to-have-signified says
Ἀριστόβουλος· καταλοχίζειν μὲν αὐτὸν τὴν στρατιὰν τὴν
Aristobulus to-be-enrolling indeed him the army the
σὺν Πευκέστᾳ τε ἐκ Περσῶν καὶ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ξὺν
with Peucestas both from Persians and from sea with
Φιλοξένῳ καὶ Μενάνδρῳ ἥκουσαν ἐς τὰς Μακεδονικὰς
Philoxenus and Menander having-come into the Macedonian
τάξεις· διψήσαντα δὲ ἀποχωρῆσαι ἐκ τῆς ἕδρας
battalions having-become-thirsty and to-have-withdrawn from the seat
καταλιπόντα ἔρημον τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασίλειον.
having-left empty the throne the royal

24.2 εἶναι δὲ κλίνας ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ θρόνου ἀργυρόποδας, ἐφ' ὧν
to-be and couches on-either-side of-the throne silver-footed on which
οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἑταῖροι ἐκάθηντο. τῶν τινα οὖν ἠμεληκότων
the around him companions sat of-the some then neglected
ἀνθρώπων, οἱ δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐν φυλακῇ ἀδέσμῳ ὄντα
men some and even of-those in custody unbound being
λέγουσιν, ἔρημον ἰδόντα τὸν θρόνον καὶ τὰς κλίνας, περὶ τῷ
say empty having-seen the throne and the couches around the

θρόνῳ δὲ ἑστηκότας τοὺς εὐνούχους, καὶ γὰρ καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι
throne and standing the eunuchs and for also the companions
ξυνανέστησαν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀποχωροῦντι, διελθόντα διὰ
had-risen-with the king withdrawing having-gone-through among
τῶν εὐνούχων ἀναβῆναί τε ἐπὶ τὸν θρόνον καὶ καθέζεσθαι.
the eunuchs to-have-gone-up both onto the throne and to-sit-down
τοὺς δὲ οὐκ ἀναστῆσαι μὲν αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου κατὰ 24.3
them and not to-have-made-get-up indeed him from the throne according-to
δή τινα νόμον Περσικόν, περιρρηξαμένους δὲ τύπτεσθαι τά
indeed some custom Persian having-torn-their-clothes and to-beat the
τε στήθη καὶ τὰ πρόσωπα ὡς ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ κακῷ. ταῦτα
both breasts and the faces as at great evil these-things
ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, κελεῦσαι στρεβλωθῆναι τὸν
when was-reported to-Alexander to-have-ordered to-be-tortured the
καθίσαντα, μήποτε ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς ξυντεταγμένον τοῦτο
having-sat whether-perhaps from plot arranged this
ἔδρασε γνῶναι ἐθέλοντα. τὸν δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο κατειπεῖν ὅτι μὴ
he-did to-learn wishing he and nothing other to-have-said except —
ἐπὶ νοῦν οἱ ἐλθὸν οὕτω πρᾶξαι· ᾗ δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον
into mind to-him having-come so to-act by-which indeed also more
ἐπ᾽ οὐδενὶ ἀγαθῷ ξυμβῆναι αὐτῷ οἱ μάντεις ἐξηγοῦντο.
for no good to-happen to-him the seers interpreted
ἡμέραι τε οὐ πολλαὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐγένοντο καὶ τεθυκὼς 24.4
days both not many after this passed and having-sacrificed
τοῖς θεοῖς τάς τε νομιζομένας θυσίας ἐπὶ ξυμφοραῖς ἀγαθαῖς
to-the gods the both customary sacrifices for events good
καί τινας καὶ ἐκ μαντείας εὐωχεῖτο ἅμα τοῖς φίλοις
and some also from prophecy he-feasted together-with the friends
καὶ ἔπινε πόρρω τῶν νυκτῶν. δοῦναι δὲ λέγεται καὶ
and drank far-into the nights to-have-given and is-said also
τῇ στρατιᾷ ἱερεῖα καὶ οἶνον κατὰ λόχους καὶ ἑκατοστύας.
to-the army victims and wine by companies and hundreds

ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ πότου αὐτὸν μὲν ἀπαλλάττεσθαι ἐθέλειν ἐπὶ
from and the drinking him indeed to-depart to-wish to
κοιτῶνα εἰσὶν οἳ ἀνέγραψαν· Μήδιον δὲ αὐτῷ ἐντυχόντα,
bedchamber there-are who recorded Medius and him having-met
τῶν ἑταίρων ἐν τῷ τότε τὸν πιθανώτατον, δεηθῆναι
of-the companions in the then-(time) the most-trusted to-have-begged
κωμάσαι παρὰ οἷ· γενέσθαι γὰρ ἂν ἡδὺν τὸν κῶμον.
to-revel with him to-be for — pleasant the revel
25.1 καὶ αἱ βασίλειοι ἐφημερίδες ὧδε ἔχουσιν· πίνειν παρὰ
and the royal journals thus run to-drink with
Μηδίῳ αὐτὸν κωμάσαντα· ἔπειτα ἐξαναστάντα καὶ
Medius him having-reveled then having-risen and
λουσάμενον καθεύδειν τε καὶ αὖθις δειπνεῖν παρὰ Μηδίῳ
having-bathed to-sleep both and again to-dine with Medius
καὶ αὖθις πίνειν πόρρω τῶν νυκτῶν· ἀπαλλαχθέντα δὲ
and again to-drink far-into the nights having-left and
τοῦ πότου λούσασθαι· καὶ λουσάμενον ὀλίγον τι
the drinking to-have-bathed and having-bathed a-little something
ἐμφαγεῖν καὶ καθεύδειν αὐτοῦ, ὅτι ἤδη ἐπύρεσσεν.
to-eat and to-sleep there because already he-was-feverish
25.2 ἐκκομισθέντα δὲ ἐπὶ κλίνης πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ θῦσαι ὡς
having-been-carried-out and on a-couch to the sacrifices to-sacrifice as
νόμος ἐφ' ἑκάστῃ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπιθέντα κατακεῖσθαι
custom on each day and the sacrifices having-put-on to-lie
ἐν τῷ ἀνδρῶνι ἔστε ἐπὶ κνέφας. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τοῖς ἡγεμόσι
in the men's-hall until toward dusk in this and to-the officers
παραγγέλλειν ὑπὲρ τῆς πορείας καὶ τοῦ πλοῦ, τοὺς μὲν ὡς
to-give-orders about the march and the voyage the-ones indeed as
πεζῇ ἰόντας παρασκευάζεσθαι ἐς τετάρτην ἡμέραν, τοὺς
by-land going to-get-ready for fourth day the-others
δὲ ἅμα οἱ πλέοντας ὡς εἰς πέμπτην πλευσουμένους.
and together-with him sailing as for fifth about-to-sail

ἐκεῖθεν δὲ κατακομισθῆναι ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν 25.3
thence and to-have-been-carried-down on the couch as to the
ποταμόν, καὶ πλοίου ἐπιβάντα διαπλεῦσαι πέραν τοῦ
river and a-boat having-boarded to-have-sailed-across beyond the
ποταμοῦ ἐς τὸν παράδεισον, κἀκεῖ αὖθις λουσάμενον
river into the park and-there again having-bathed
ἀναπαύεσθαι. ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν λούσασθαί τε αὖθις καὶ
to-rest on and the next-day to-have-bathed both again and
θῦσαι τὰ νομιζόμενα· καὶ εἰς τὴν καμάραν εἰσελθόντα
to-sacrifice the customary and into the vaulted-room having-entered
κατακεῖσθαι διαμυθολογοῦντα πρὸς Μήδιον· παραγγεῖλαι
to-lie telling-stories to Medius to-have-ordered
δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν ἀπαντῆσαι ἕωθεν. ταῦτα πράξαντα
and also the officers to-meet at-dawn these-things having-done
δειπνῆσαι ὀλίγον·
to-have-dined a-little
κομισθέντα δὲ αὖθις ἐς τὴν καμάραν πυρέσσειν ἤδη 25.4
having-been-carried and again into the vaulted-room to-be-feverish already
ξυνεχῶς τὴν νύκτα ὅλην· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ λούσασθαι καὶ
continuously the night whole on-the and next-day to-have-bathed and
λουσάμενον θῦσαι. Νεάρχῳ δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεμόσι
having-bathed to-sacrifice to-Nearchus and also the other officers
παραγγεῖλαι τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν πλοῦν ὅπως ἔσται ἐς τρίτην
to-have-given-orders the-things about the voyage how it-will-be for third
ἡμέραν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ λούσασθαι αὖθις καὶ θῦσαι
day on-the and next-day to-have-bathed again and to-sacrifice
τὰ τεταγμένα, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπιθέντα οὐκέτι ἐλινύειν
the appointed and the sacrifices having-put-on no-longer to-rest
πυρέσσοντα. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς τοὺς ἡγεμόνας εἰσκαλέσαντα
being-feverish but even so the officers having-called-in
παραγγέλλειν τὰ πρὸς τὸν ἔκπλουν ὅπως αὐτῷ ἔσται
to-give-orders the-things for the sailing that for-him will-be

ἕτοιμα· λούσασθαί τε ἐπὶ τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ, καὶ λουσάμενον
ready to-have-bathed both at the evening and having-bathed
ἔχειν ἤδη κακῶς.
to-be already badly

25.5 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ μετακομισθῆναι ἐς τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν πρὸς
on-the and next-day to-have-been-moved into the house the by
τῇ κολυμβήθρᾳ καὶ θῦσαι μὲν τὰ τεταγμένα, ἔχοντα
the swimming-pool and to-sacrifice indeed the appointed being
δὲ πονήρως ὅμως ἐσκαλέσαι τῶν ἡγεμόνων τοὺς
and badly nevertheless to-have-called-in of-the officers the
ἐπικαιριωτάτους καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ πλοῦ αὖθις παραγγέλλειν.
most-important and about the voyage again to-give-orders
τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ μόγις ἐκκομισθῆναι πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ
on-the and following with-difficulty to-have-been-carried-out to the sacrifices
καὶ θῦσαι, καὶ μηδὲν μεῖον ἔτι παραγγέλλειν ὑπὲρ τοῦ
and to-sacrifice and nothing less still to-give-orders about the
πλοῦ τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν.
voyage to-the officers

25.6 ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν κακῶς ἤδη ἔχοντα ὅμως θῦσαι τὰ
on and the next-day badly already being nevertheless to-sacrifice the
τεταγμένα. παραγγεῖλαι δὲ τοὺς μὲν στρατηγοὺς διατρίβειν
appointed to-have-ordered and the indeed generals to-stay
κατὰ τὴν αὐλήν, χιλιάρχας δὲ καὶ πεντακοσιάρχας
in the courtyard chiliarchs and and commanders-of-five-hundred
πρὸ τῶν θυρῶν. ἤδη δὲ παντάπασι πονήρως ἔχοντα
before the doors already and altogether badly being
διακομισθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ παραδείσου ἐς τὰ βασίλεια.
to-have-been-carried-across from the park into the palace
εἰσελθόντων δὲ τῶν ἡγεμόνων γνῶναι μὲν αὐτούς,
having-entered and the officers to-have-recognized indeed them
φωνῆσαι δὲ μηδὲν ἔτι, ἀλλὰ εἶναι ἄναυδον· καὶ τὴν
to-have-spoken but nothing any-longer but to-be speechless and the

νύκτα πυρέσσειν κακῶς καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην
night to-be-feverish badly and the day and the next
νύκτα καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν.
night and the day
οὕτως ἐν ταῖς ἐφημερίσι ταῖς βασιλείοις ἀναγέγραπται, 26.1
so in the journals the royal it-has-been-recorded
καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται ἐπόθησαν ἰδεῖν αὐτόν,
and besides these that the soldiers longed to-see him
οἱ μέν, ὡς ζῶντα ἔτι ἴδοιεν, οἱ δέ, ὅτι
the-ones indeed so-that alive still they-might-see the-others and because
τεθνηκέναι ἤδη ἐξηγγέλλετο, ἐπικρύπτεσθαι δὲ αὐτοῦ
to-have-died already it-was-reported to-be-concealed and his
ἐτόπαζον πρὸς τῶν σωματοφυλάκων τὸν θάνατον, ὡς
they-guessed by the bodyguards the death as
ἔγωγε δοκῶ· τοὺς πολλοὺς δὲ ὑπὸ πένθους καὶ πόθου
I-at-least think the most and from grief and longing
τοῦ βασιλέως βιάσασθαι ἰδεῖν Ἀλέξανδρον. τὸν δὲ
for-the king to-have-forced to-see Alexander him and
ἄφωνον μὲν εἶναι λέγουσι παραπορευομένης τῆς στρατιᾶς,
speechless indeed to-be they-say passing-by the army
δεξιοῦσθαι δὲ ὡς ἑκάστους τήν τε κεφαλὴν ἐπαίροντα
to-greet but as each the both head raising
μόγις καὶ τοῖν ὀφθαλμοῖν ἐπισημαίνοντα.
with-difficulty and with-the-two eyes signing
λέγουσι δὲ αἱ ἐφημερίδες αἱ βασίλειοι ἐν τοῦ Σαράπιδος 26.2
say and the journals the royal in — of-Sarapis
τῷ ἱερῷ Πείθωνά τε ἐγκοιμηθέντα καὶ Ἄτταλον καὶ
the temple Peithon both having-slept-in and Attalus and
Δημοφῶντα καὶ Πευκέσταν, πρὸς δὲ Κλεομένην τε καὶ
Demophon and Peucestas besides and Cleomenes both and
Μενίδαν καὶ Σέλευκον, ἐπερωτᾶν τὸν θεὸν εἰ λῷον καὶ
Menidas and Seleucus to-ask the god if better and

ἄμεινον Ἀλεξάνδρῳ εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν τοῦ θεοῦ κομισθέντα
preferable for-Alexander into the temple of-the god having-been-carried
καὶ ἱκετεύσαντα θεραπεύεσθαι πρὸς τοῦ θεοῦ· καὶ γενέσθαι
and having-supplicated to-be-tended by the god and to-have-come
φήμην τινὰ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ μὴ κομίζεσθαι εἰς τὸ ἱερόν,
utterance some from the god not to-be-carried into the temple
ἀλλὰ αὐτοῦ μένοντι ἔσεσθαι ἄμεινον.
but there for-(him)-remaining to-be-going-to-be better

26.3 ταῦτά τε ἀπαγγεῖλαι τοὺς ἑταίρους καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον οὐ
these-things both to-have-reported the companions and Alexander not
πολὺ ὕστερον ἀποθανεῖν, ὡς τοῦτο ἄρα ἤδη ὂν τὸ
much later to-have-died as this then already being the
ἄμεινον. οὐ πόρρω δὲ τούτων οὔτε Ἀριστοβούλῳ οὔτε
better not far and from-these neither by-Aristobulus nor
Πτολεμαίῳ ἀναγέγραπται. οἱ δὲ καὶ τάδε ἀνέγραψαν,
by-Ptolemy has-been-recorded some and also these-things recorded
ἐρέσθαι μὲν τοὺς ἑταίρους αὐτὸν ὅτῳ τὴν βασιλείαν
to-have-asked indeed the companions him to-whom the kingship
ἀπολείπει, τὸν δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι ὅτι τῷ κρατίστῳ· οἱ
he-leaves him and to-have-answered that to-the strongest others
δέ, προσθεῖναι πρὸς τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ ὅτι μέγαν ἐπιτάφιον
and to-have-added to this the word that great funeral
ἀγῶνα ὁρᾷ ἐφ' αὑτῷ ἐσόμενον.
contest he-sees over himself about-to-be

Arrian records, rather than credits, the tales of poison sent by Antipater and of Alexander trying to vanish into the Euphrates so that men would think him a god. Alexander died in his thirty-third year after reigning twelve years and eight months, handsome, tireless, brave, ambitious, pious, a master of war, and generous with money. His faults came from youth, success, and flatterers, and he alone of ancient kings repented of his wrongs. His claim to divine birth was perhaps a device, and his Persian dress was policy. Whoever blames him should compare himself, and Arrian, though he has censured some of his deeds, is not ashamed to admire a man born, he thinks, not without the divine.

πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα οἶδα ἀναγεγραμμένα ὑπὲρ τῆς 27.1
many and also other-things I-know recorded about the
Ἀλεξάνδρου τελευτῆς, καὶ φάρμακον ὅτι ἐπέμφθη παρὰ
of-Alexander death and poison that was-sent from
Ἀντιπάτρου Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ ἐκ τοῦ φαρμάκου ὅτι ἀπέθανε·
Antipater to-Alexander and from the poison that he-died
καὶ τὸ φάρμακον ὅτι Ἀριστοτέλης μὲν Ἀντιπάτρῳ
and the poison that Aristotle indeed for-Antipater
ἐξεῦρε δεδοικὼς ἤδη Ἀλέξανδρον Καλλισθένους ἕνεκα,
found-out fearing already Alexander of-Callisthenes for-the-sake
Κάσανδρος δὲ ὁ Ἀντιπάτρου ἐκόμισεν· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὅτι ἐν
Cassander and the (son)-of-Antipater brought some and also that in
ἡμιόνου ὁπλῇ ἐκόμισε καὶ τοῦτο ἀνέγραψαν. δοῦναι δὲ
a-mule's hoof he-brought also this recorded to-have-given and
αὐτὸ Ἰόλλαν τὸν ἀδελφὸν τὸν Κασάνδρου τὸν νεώτερον·
it Iollas the brother the of-Cassander the younger
εἶναι γὰρ οἰνοχόον βασιλικὸν τὸν Ἰόλλαν καί τι 27.2
to-be for cupbearer royal — Iollas and something
καὶ λελυπῆσθαι πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν τῆς
also to-have-been-aggrieved by Alexander a-little before the

τελευτῆς· οἱ δὲ καὶ Μήδιον μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου,
death some and also Medius to-have-shared-in the deed
ἐραστὴν ὄντα τοῦ Ἰόλλα· καὶ αὐτὸν γὰρ εἶναι τὸν
lover being — of-Iollas and himself for to-be the
εἰσηγητὴν γενόμενον Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τοῦ κώμου· ὀδύνην τε
proposer having-become to-Alexander of-the revel pain both
αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῇ κύλικι γενέσθαι ὀξεῖαν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῇ ὀδύνῃ
to-him over the cup to-have-come sharp and at the pain
ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἐκ τοῦ πότου.
to-have-departed from the drinking

27.3 ἤδη δέ τις οὐκ ᾐσχύνθη ἀναγράψαι ὅτι αἰσθόμενος
already and someone not was-ashamed to-record that having-perceived
οὐ βιώσιμον ὄντα αὑτὸν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς τὸν Εὐφράτην
not likely-to-live being himself Alexander into the Euphrates
ποταμὸν ᾔει ἐμβαλῶν, ὡς ἀφανὴς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
river went to-throw-himself so-that vanished from men
γενόμενος πιστοτέραν τὴν δόξαν παρὰ τοῖς ἔπειτα
having-become more-credible the belief among those later
ἐγκαταλείποι ὅτι ἐκ θεοῦ τε αὐτῷ ἡ γένεσις ξυνέβη καὶ
he-might-leave that from a-god both for-him the birth happened and
παρὰ θεοὺς ἡ ἀποχώρησις. Ῥωξάνην δὲ τὴν γυναῖκα οὐ
to gods the departure Roxane and the wife not
λαθεῖν ἐξιόντα, ἀλλὰ εἰργόμενον γὰρ πρὸς αὐτῆς
to-have-escaped-the-notice going-out but being-prevented for by her
ἐποιμώξαντα εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἐφθόνησεν ἄρα αὐτῷ δόξης τῆς
having-groaned to-have-said that she-begrudged then him glory the
ἐς ἅπαν, ὡς θεῷ δὴ γεγενημένῳ. καὶ ταῦτα ἐμοὶ
for ever as for-a-god indeed having-been-born and these-things by-me
ὡς μὴ ἀγνοεῖν δόξαιμι μᾶλλον ὅτι λεγόμενά ἐστιν
so-that not to-be-ignorant I-might-seem rather that said are
ἢ ὡς πιστὰ ἐς ἀφήγησιν ἀναγεγράφθω.
than as credible for narrative let-have-been-recorded

ἐτελεύτα μὲν δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος τῇ τετάρτῃ καὶ δεκάτῃ 28.1
died indeed indeed Alexander in-the fourth and tenth
καὶ ἑκατοστῇ Ὀλυμπιάδι ἐπὶ Ἡγησίου ἄρχοντος Ἀθήνησιν·
and hundredth Olympiad under Hegesias archon at-Athens
ἐβίω δὲ δύο καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη καὶ τοῦ τρίτου μῆνας
lived and two and thirty years and of-the third months
ἐπέλαβεν ὀκτώ, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος· ἐβασίλευσε δὲ
he-reached eight as says Aristobulus reigned and
δώδεκα ἔτη καὶ τοὺς ὀκτὼ τούτους μῆνας, τό τε σῶμα
twelve years and the eight these months in-the both body
κάλλιστος καὶ φιλοπονώτατος καὶ ὀξύτατος γενόμενος
most-handsome and most-industrious and keenest having-become
καὶ τὴν γνώμην ἀνδρειότατος καὶ φιλοτιμότατος καὶ
and in-the mind most-courageous and most-ambitious and
φιλοκινδυνότατος καὶ τοῦ θείου ἐπιμελέστατος·
most-danger-loving and of-the divine most-careful
ἡδονῶν δὲ τῶν μὲν τοῦ σώματος ἐγκρατέστατος, τῶν 28.2
of-pleasures and of-those indeed of-the body most-self-controlled of-those
δὲ τῆς γνώμης ἐπαίνου μόνου ἀπληστότατος· ξυνιδεῖν δὲ
and of-the mind of-praise only most-insatiable to-discern and
τὸ δέον ἔτι ἐν τῷ ἀφανεῖ ὂν δεινότατος, καὶ ἐκ τῶν
the needful still in the unseen being most-clever and from the
φαινομένων τὸ εἰκὸς ξυμβαλεῖν ἐπιτυχέστατος, καὶ τάξαι
apparent the likely to-infer most-successful and to-marshal
στρατιὰν καὶ ὁπλίσαι τε καὶ κοσμῆσαι δαημονέστατος· καὶ
an-army and to-arm both and to-equip most-skilled and
τὸν θυμὸν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπᾶραι καὶ ἐλπίδων ἀγαθῶν
the spirit in-the soldiers to-raise and with-hopes good
ἐμπλῆσαι καὶ τὸ δεῖμα ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις τῷ ἀδεεῖ τῷ
to-fill and the fear in the dangers by-the fearlessness the
αὐτοῦ ἀφανίσαι, ξύμπαντα ταῦτα γενναιότατος.
his-own to-dispel all these-things most-noble

28.3 καὶ οὖν καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ πρᾶξαι, ξὺν μεγίστῳ
and then also as-many-as in the open to-do with greatest
θάρσει ἔπραξεν, ὅσα τε φθάσας ὑφαρπάσαι
boldness he-did as-many-as both having-anticipated to-snatch
τῶν πολεμίων, πρὶν καὶ δεῖσαί τινα αὐτὰ ὡς
from-the enemy before even to-fear anyone them as
ἐσόμενα, προλαβεῖν δεινότατος· καὶ τὰ μὲν ξυντεθέντα
about-to-happen to-seize most-clever and the indeed agreed
ἢ ὁμολογηθέντα φυλάξαι βεβαιότατος, πρὸς δὲ τῶν
or covenanted to-keep most-firm by but those
ἐξαπατώντων μὴ ἁλῶναι ἀσφαλέστατος, χρημάτων τε
deceiving not to-be-caught most-safe of-money both
ἐς μὲν ἡδονὰς τὰς αὑτοῦ φειδωλότατος, ἐς δὲ εὐποιΐαν
for indeed pleasures the his-own most-sparing for but benefaction
τῶν πέλας ἀφθονώτατος.
of-the neighbors most-unstinting

29.1 εἰ δέ τι ἐπλημμελήθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δι' ὀξύτητα ἢ ὑπ'
if but anything was-done-amiss by-Alexander because-of sharpness or from
ὀργῆς, ἢ εἴ τι ἐς τὸ ὑπερογκότερον προήχθη βαρβαρίσαι,
anger or if something to the more-arrogant he-was-led to-barbarize
οὐ μεγάλα τίθεμαι ἔγωγε, εἰ τὴν νεότητά τέ τις τὴν
not great-things I-consider I-at-least if the youth both anyone the
Ἀλεξάνδρου μὴ ἀνεπιεικῶς ἐνθυμηθείη καὶ τὸ διηνεκὲς τῆς
of-Alexander not unreasonably should-consider and the continuity of-the
εὐτυχίας καὶ τοὺς πρὸς ἡδονήν, οὐκ ἐπὶ τῷ βελτίστῳ, τοῖς
good-fortune and those for pleasure not for the best to-the
βασιλεῦσι ξυνόντας τε καὶ ἐπὶ κακῷ ξυνεσομένους· ἀλλὰ
kings associating both and for evil about-to-associate but
μεταγνῶναί γε ἐφ' οἷς ἐπλημμέλησε μόνῳ οἶδα τῶν
to-have-repented at-least for what he-did-amiss alone I-know of-the
πάλαι βασιλέων Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὑπάρξαι ὑπὸ γενναιότητος.
ancient kings for-Alexander to-have-belonged from nobility

οἱ δὲ πολλοί, εἰ καί τι ἔγνωσαν πλημμελήσαντες, 29.2
the but most if even something they-recognized having-done-amiss
οἱ δὲ τῷ προηγορεῖν αὐτοῦ, ὡς καλῶς δὴ πραχθέντος,
they and by-the defending it as well indeed done
ἐπικρύψειν οἴονται τὴν ἁμαρτίαν, κακῶς γιγνώσκοντες.
to-be-going-to-conceal think the error badly judging
μόνη γὰρ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἴασις ἁμαρτίας ὁμολογεῖν τε
alone for to-me seems cure of-error to-confess both
ἁμαρτόντα καὶ δῆλον εἶναι ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ μεταγιγνώσκοντα,
having-erred and plain to-be at it repenting
ὡς τοῖς τε παθοῦσί τι ἄχαρι οὐ πάντῃ χαλεπὰ
so-that to-those both having-suffered something unpleasant not wholly grievous
τὰ παθήματα φαινόμενα, εἰ ὁ δράσας αὐτὰ ξυγχωροίη ὅτι
the sufferings appearing if the having-done them should-admit that
οὐ καλὰ ἔδρασεν, αὐτῷ τέ τινι ἐς τὸ μέλλον ταύτην
not well he-did for-himself both someone for the future this
ἐλπίδα ἀγαθὴν ὑπολειπομένην, μή ποτε ἂν παραπλήσιόν
hope good being-left not ever — like
τι ἁμαρτεῖν, εἰ τοῖς πρόσθεν πλημμεληθεῖσιν ἀχθόμενος
anything to-err if at-the before wrongs being-vexed
φαίνοιτο.
he-should-appear
ὅτι δὲ ἐς θεὸν τὴν γένεσιν τὴν αὑτοῦ ἀνέφερεν, οὐδὲ 29.3
that and to god the birth the his-own he-referred not-even
τοῦτο ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ μέγα εἶναι αὐτῷ τὸ πλημμέλημα, εἰ
this to-me seems great to-be for-him the fault if
μὴ καὶ σόφισμα ἦν τυχὸν ἐς τοὺς ὑπηκόους τοῦ σεμνοῦ
not even a-device it-was perhaps for the subjects of-the majesty
ἕνεκα. οὔκουν δοκεῖ ἔμοιγε ἢ Μίνως γενέσθαι
for-the-sake not-therefore seems to-me either than-Minos to-have-become
βασιλεὺς ἀφανέστερος ἢ Αἰακοῦ ἢ Ῥαδαμάνθυος, οἷς
king more-obscure or than-Aeacus or than-Rhadamanthys for-whom

δὴ ἐς Δία ἀνενεχθεῖσα ἡ γένεσις πρὸς τῶν πάλαι
indeed to Zeus having-been-referred the birth by the ancient
ἀνθρώπων οὐδεμιᾷ αὐτῶν ὕβρει προστίθεται, οὐδὲ Θησέως
men to-no of-them outrage is-attributed nor of-Theseus
τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος οὐδὲ Ἴωνος τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος.
the (son)-of-Poseidon nor of-Ion the (son)-of-Apollo
29.4 ὡς ἔμοιγε καὶ ἡ Περσικὴ σκευὴ σόφισμα δοκεῖ εἶναι
as to-me also the Persian dress a-device seems to-be
πρός τε τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὡς μὴ πάντῃ ἀλλότριον
toward both the barbarians so-that not wholly foreign
αὐτῶν φαίνεσθαι τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ πρὸς τοὺς Μακεδόνας,
to-them to-appear the king and toward the Macedonians
ὡς ἀποστροφήν τινα εἶναι αὐτῷ ἀπὸ τῆς ὀξύτητός
so-that a-refuge some to-be for-him from the sharpness
τε καὶ ὕβρεως τῆς Μακεδονικῆς· ἐφ' ὅτῳ δὴ καὶ
both and insolence the Macedonian for which indeed also
ἐγκαταμῖξαί μοι δοκεῖ ταῖς τάξεσιν αὐτῶν τοὺς Πέρσας
to-have-mixed-in to-me he-seems into-the ranks of-them the Persians
τοὺς μηλοφόρους καὶ τοῖς ἀγήμασι τοὺς ὁμοτίμους. καὶ
the apple-bearers and into-the agemas the Peers and
οἱ πότοι δέ, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος, οὐ τοῦ οἴνου
the drinking-bouts and as says Aristobulus not of-the wine
ἕνεκα μακροὶ αὐτῷ ἐγίγνοντο, οὐ γὰρ πίνειν πολὺν οἶνον
for-the-sake long for-him were not for to-drink much wine
Ἀλέξανδρον, ἀλλὰ φιλοφροσύνης τῆς ἐς τοὺς ἑταίρους.
Alexander but of-friendliness the toward the companions
30.1 ὅστις δὲ κακίζει Ἀλέξανδρον, μὴ μόνον ὅσα ἄξια
whoever and reviles Alexander not only as-many-as worthy
κακίζεσθαί ἐστι προφερόμενος κακιζέτω, ἀλλὰ ξύμπαντα
to-be-reviled is bringing-forward let-him-revile but all
τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου εἰς ἓν χωρίον ξυναγαγὼν οὕτω δὴ
the of-Alexander into one place having-gathered so indeed

ἐκλογιζέσθω ὅστις τε ὢν αὐτὸς καὶ ὁποίᾳ τύχῃ κεχρημένος
let-him-reckon who both being himself and with-what fortune having-had
ὅντινα γενόμενον ἐκεῖνον καὶ ἐς ὅσον εὐτυχίας τῆς
what-kind having-become that-one and to how-great of-good-fortune the
ἀνθρωπίνης ἐλθόντα βασιλέα τε ἀμφοῖν τοῖν ἠπείροιν
human having-come king both of-both the continents
ἀναμφιλογώτατα γενόμενον καὶ ἐπὶ πᾶν ἐξικόμενον τῷ
most-indisputably having-become and to everything having-reached by-the
αὐτοῦ ὀνόματι κακίζει, σμικρότερός τε ὢν αὐτὸς καὶ ἐπὶ
his-own name be-reviles smaller both being himself and over
σμικροῖς πονούμενος καὶ οὐδὲ ταῦτα ἐν κόσμῳ τιθέμενος.
small-things toiling and not-even these in order setting
ὡς ἔγωγε δοκῶ ὅτι οὔτε τι ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων οὔτε τις 30.2
as I-at-least think that neither any people of-men nor any
πόλις ἐν τῷ τότε ἦν οὔτε τις εἷς ἄνθρωπος εἰς ὃν
city in the then-(time) was nor any single man to whom
οὐ πεφοιτήκει τὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ὄνομα. οὔκουν οὐδὲ ἐμοὶ
not had-come the of-Alexander name not-therefore even to-me
ἔξω τοῦ θείου φῦναι ἂν δοκεῖ ἀνὴρ οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ
outside of-the divine to-have-been-born — seems a-man to-no other
ἀνθρώπων ἐοικώς. καὶ ταῦτα χρησμοί τε ἐπισημῆναι ἐπὶ
of-men like and these-things oracles both to-have-signified at
τῇ τελευτῇ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου λέγονται καὶ φάσματα ἄλλα
the death the of-Alexander are-said and apparitions other
ἄλλοις γενόμενα καὶ ἐνύπνια φανέντα ἄλλα ἄλλοις καὶ ἡ
to-others happening and dreams appearing other to-others and the
ἐς τοῦτο ἐξ ἀνθρώπων τιμή τε αὐτοῦ καὶ μνήμη οὐκ
up-to this from men honor both his and memory not
ἀνθρωπίνη οὖσα, καὶ νῦν δὲ διὰ τοσούτου ἄλλοι χρησμοὶ
human being also now and through so-long other oracles
ἐπὶ τῇ τιμῇ αὐτοῦ τῷ ἔθνει τῷ Μακεδόνων χρησθέντες.
for the honor of-him to-the people the of-Macedonians having-been-given

30.3 ἐπεὶ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐμεμψάμην ἔστιν ἃ ἐν τῇ ξυγγραφῇ
since also myself I-blamed there-are which in this history
τῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργων, ἀλλὰ αὐτόν γε Ἀλέξανδρον
of-the of-Alexander deeds but himself at-least Alexander
οὐκ αἰσχύνομαι θαυμάζων· τὰ δὲ ἔργα ἐκεῖνα ἐκάκισα
not I-am-ashamed admiring the and deeds those I-reviled
ἀληθείας τε ἕνεκα τῆς ἐμῆς καὶ ἅμα ὠφελείας
of-truth both for-the-sake the my and at-the-same-time of-benefit
τῆς ἐς ἀνθρώπους· ἐφ᾽ ὅτῳ ὡρμήθην οὐδὲ αὐτὸς ἄνευ
the for men for which I-set-out not-even myself without
θεοῦ ἐς τήνδε τὴν ξυγγραφήν.
god to this the history

ARRIAN

ΙΝΔΙΚΗ

Indica

Arrian describes India from the Indus to the east. West of the river live the Astaceni and Assaceni, and the Nysaeans, said to descend from Dionysus' Greeks. The Taurus range bounds India on the north, and the sea on the south and east; the Indus forms a delta like the Nile's. Arrian follows Eratosthenes' figures for its size, and Megasthenes' list of the great rivers that join the Ganges and the Indus, larger than the Nile and the Danube. Megasthenes says India never invaded others nor was invaded before Alexander, except in story by Dionysus and Heracles, whose relics Arrian doubts. India's summer rains, crocodiles, and dark peoples resemble Ethiopia's.

τὰ ἔξω τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ πρὸς ἑσπέρην ἔστε 1.1
the-parts beyond the Indus river the toward west as-far
ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Κωφῆνα Ἀστακηνοὶ καὶ Ἀσσακηνοί, ἔθνεα
to river Cophen Astacenians and Assacenians peoples
Ἰνδικά, ἐποικέουσιν.
Indian inhabit

ἀλλὰ οὔτε μεγάλοι τὰ σώματα, κατάπερ οἱ ἐντὸς τοῦ 1.2
but neither great the bodies as those within —
Ἰνδοῦ ᾠκισμένοι, οὔτε ἀγαθοὶ ὡσαύτως τὸν θυμὸν οὐδὲ
Indus settled nor good likewise the spirit nor
μέλανες ὡσαύτως τοῖσι πολλοῖσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν.
black likewise as-the many Indians

οὗτοι πάλαι μὲν Ἀσσυρίοισιν ὑπήκοοι ἦσαν· ἐπὶ δὲ 1.3
these long-ago indeed to-Assyrians subject were under and
Μήδοισι Περσέων ἤκουον, καὶ φόρους ἀπέφερον Κύρῳ
Medes to-Persians were-subject and tributes paid to-Cyrus
τῷ Καμβύσεω ἐκ τῆς γῆς σφῶν, οὓς ἔταξε Κῦρος.
the (son)-of-Cambyses from the land their which assessed Cyrus

1.4 Νυσαῖοι δὲ οὐκ Ἰνδικὸν γένος ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἅμα
Nysaeans and not Indian race are but of-those together-with
Διονύσῳ ἐλθόντων ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν Ἰνδῶν, τυχὸν μὲν
Dionysus having-come into the land the of-Indians perhaps indeed
Ἑλλήνων, ὅσοι ἀπόμαχοι αὐτῶν ἐγένοντο ἐν τοῖσι
of-Greeks as-many-as unfit-for-service of-them became in the
πολέμοισιν οὕστινας πρὸς Ἰνδοὺς Διόνυσος ἐπολέμησε,
wars which against Indians Dionysus waged
τυχὸν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιχωρίων.
perhaps and also of-the natives

1.5 τοὺς ἐθέλοντας τοῖσιν Ἕλλησι συνῴκισε, τήν τε χώρην
those wishing with-the Greeks he-settled the both country
Νυσαίην ὠνόμασεν ἀπὸ τοῦ οὔρεος τῆς Νύσης Διόνυσος,
Nysaean named from the mountain — Nysa Dionysus
καὶ τὴν πόλιν αὐτὴν Νῦσαν.
and the city itself Nysa

1.6 καὶ τὸ οὖρος τὸ πρὸς τῇ πόλι, ὅτου ἐν τῇσιν ὑπωρείῃσιν
and the mountain the by the city of-which in the foothills
ᾤκισται ἡ Νῦσα, Μηρὸς κλείζεται ἐπὶ τῇ συμφορῇ ἥτινι
is-settled — Nysa Meros is-called from the mishap which
ἐχρήσατο εὐθὺς γενόμενος.
he-experienced at-once being-born

1.7 ταῦτα μὲν οἱ ποιηταὶ ἐπὶ Διονύσῳ ἐποίησαν, καὶ
these-things indeed the poets about Dionysus composed and
ἐξηγείσθων αὐτὰ ὅσοι λόγιοι Ἑλλήνων ἢ βαρβάρων·
let-them-interpret them as-many-as learned of-Greeks or of-barbarians

1.8 ἐν Ἀσσακηνοῖσι δὲ Μάσσακα, πόλις μεγάλη, ἵναπερ
among Assacenians and Massaca city great where-indeed
καὶ τὸ κράτος τῆς γῆς ἐστι τῆς Ἀσσακίης· καὶ ἄλλη
also the power of-the land is — of-Assacia and another
πόλις Πευκελαῖτις, μεγάλη καὶ αὐτή, οὐ μακρὰν τοῦ
city Peucelaïtis great also itself not far —

Ἰνδοῦ. ταῦτα μὲν ἔξω τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ ᾤκισται
from-Indus these-things indeed beyond the Indus river are-settled
πρὸς ἑσπέρην ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν Κωφῆνα.
toward west as-far to — Cophen
τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ πρὸς ἕω, ταῦτά μοι ἔστω ἡ 2.1
the-parts and from — Indus toward dawn these to-me let-be the
Ἰνδῶν γῆ, καὶ Ἰνδοὶ οὗτοι ἔστων. οὖροι δὲ τῆς Ἰνδῶν
of-Indians land and Indians these let-be boundaries and of-the of-Indians
γῆς πρὸς μὲν βορέεω ἀνέμου ὁ Ταῦρος τὸ οὖρος.
land toward indeed north wind — Taurus the mountain
καλέεται δὲ οὐ Ταῦρος ἔτι ἐν τῇ γῇ ταύτῃ, ἀλλὰ 2.2
is-called and not Taurus any-longer in the land this but
ἄρχεται μὲν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ὁ Ταῦρος τῆς κατὰ Παμφύλους
begins indeed from sea — Taurus the by Pamphylians
τε καὶ Λυκίην καὶ Κίλικας, παρατείνει δὲ ἔστε ἐπὶ
both and Lycia and Cilicians and stretches as-far to
τὴν πρὸς ἕω θάλασσαν, τέμνων τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν.
the toward dawn sea cutting — Asia all
ἄλλο δὲ ἄλλῃ καλέεται τὸ οὖρος, τῇ μὲν Παραπάμισος 2.3
other and elsewhere is-called the mountain here indeed Parapamisus
τῇ δὲ Ἠμωδός· ἄλλῃ δὲ Ἴμαον κλῄζεται, καὶ τυχὸν
there and Emodus elsewhere and Imaus it-is-called and perhaps
ἄλλα καὶ ἄλλα ἔχει οὐνόματα.
other and other it-has names
Μακεδόνες δὲ οἱ σὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στρατεύσαντες Καύκασον 2.4
Macedonians and the with Alexander having-campaigned Caucasus
αὐτὸ ἐκάλεον, ἄλλον τοῦτον Καύκασον, οὐ τὸν Σκυθικόν,
it called another this Caucasus not the Scythian
ὡς καὶ τὰ ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Καυκάσου λόγον κατέχειν
so-that also the-parts beyond — Caucasus a-story to-hold
ὅτι ἐπῆλθεν Ἀλέξανδρος.
that went-over Alexander

2.5 τὰ πρὸς ἑσπέρην δὲ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ
the-parts toward west and of-the of-Indians land the river —
Ἰνδὸς ἀπείργει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν, ἴναπερ
Indus bounds as-far to the great sea where-indeed
αὐτὸς κατὰ δύο στόματα ἐκδιδοῖ, οὐ συνεχέα ἀλλήλοισι
it-itself by two mouths flows-out not continuous with-one-another
τὰ στόματα,
the mouths

2.6 κατάπερ τὰ πέντε τοῦ Ἴστρου ἐστὶ συνεχέα, ἀλλὰ ὡς τὰ
as the five — of-Ister are continuous but as those
τοῦ Νείλου, ὑπ᾽ ὅτων τὸ Δέλτα ποιέεται τὸ Αἰγύπτιον,
— of-Nile by which the Delta is-made the Egyptian
ὧδέ τοι καὶ τὸ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς Δέλτα ποιέει ὁ Ἰνδὸς
thus surely also the of-the of-Indians land Delta makes the Indus
ποταμός, οὐ μεῖον τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου· καὶ τοῦτο Πάταλα
river not less than-the Egyptian and this Patala
τῇ Ἰνδῶν γλώσσῃ καλέεται.
in-the of-Indians tongue is-called

2.7 τὸ δὲ πρὸς νότου τε ἀνέμου καὶ μεσαμβρίης αὐτὴ
the-part and toward south both wind and midday itself
ἡ μεγάλη θάλασσα ἀπείργει τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν, καὶ τὰ
the great sea bounds the of-Indians land and the-parts
πρὸς ἕω ἡ αὐτὴ θάλασσα ἀπείργει.
toward dawn the same sea bounds

2.8 τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσαμβρίης κατὰ Πάταλά τε καὶ τοῦ
the-parts indeed toward midday by Patala both and —
Ἰνδοῦ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ὤφθη πρός τε Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ
of-Indus the mouths were-seen by both Alexander and
Μακεδόνων καὶ πολλῶν Ἑλλήνων· τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἕω
Macedonians and many Greeks the-parts but toward dawn
Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν οὐκ ἐπῆλθε πρόσω ποταμοῦ Ὑφάσιος,
Alexander indeed not went-over beyond river Hyphasis

ὀλίγοι δὲ ἀνέγραψαν τὰ μέχρι ποταμοῦ Γάγγεω καὶ 2.9
few and recorded the-parts as-far-as river Ganges and
ἵνα τοῦ Γάγγεω αἱ ἐκβολαὶ καὶ πόλις Παλίμβοθρα
where — of-Ganges the mouths and city Palimbothra
μεγίστη τῶν Ἰνδικῶν πρὸς τῷ Γάγγῃ.
greatest of-the Indian by — Ganges
ἐμοὶ δὲ Ἐρατοσθένης ὁ Κυρηναῖος πιστότερος ἄλλου 3.1
to-me and Eratosthenes the Cyrenaean more-trustworthy than-another
ἔστω, ὅτι γῆς περιόδου πέρι ἔμελεν Ἐρατοσθένεϊ.
let-be because of-earth circuit about was-a-concern to-Eratosthenes
οὗτος ἀπὸ τοῦ οὔρεος τοῦ Ταύρου, ἵνα τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ αἱ πηγαί, 3.2
this-one from the mountain — Taurus where — of-Indus the springs
παρ᾽ αὐτὸν τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ἰόντι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην
along itself the Indus river for-one-going as-far to the great
θάλασσαν καὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὰς ἐκβολὰς μυρίους σταδίους καὶ
sea and — Indus the mouths ten-thousand stades and
τρισχιλίους τὴν πλευρὴν λέγει ἐπέχειν τῆς γῆς τῆς Ἰνδῶν.
three-thousand the side says to-extend of-the land the of-Indians
ταυτησὶ δὲ ἀντίπορον πλευρὴν ποιέει τὴν ἀπὸ τωὐτοῦ 3.3
of-this and opposite side makes the from the-same
οὔρεος παρὰ τὴν ἑῴην θάλασσαν, οὐκέτι ταύτῃ τῇ
mountain along the eastern sea no-longer to-this the
πλευρῇ ἴσην, ἀλλὰ ἄκρην γὰρ ἀνέχειν ἐπὶ μέγα ἐς τὸ
side equal but a-cape for to-project on great into the
πέλαγος, ἐς τρισχιλίους σταδίους μάλιστα ἀνατείνουσαν
open-sea about three-thousand stades about stretching
τὴν ἄκρην, εἴη ἂν ὧν αὐτῷ ἡ πλευρὴ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς
the cape would-be — then for-him the side of-the of-Indians land
πρὸς ἕω μυρίους καὶ ἑξακισχιλίους σταδίους ἐπέχουσα.
toward dawn ten-thousand and six-thousand stades extending
τοῦτο μὲν αὐτῷ πλάτος τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς συμβαίνει,
this indeed for-him breadth of-the of-Indians land amounts-to

3.4 μῆκος δὲ τὸ ἀπ᾽ ἑσπέρης ἐπὶ ἕω ἔστε μὲν ἐπὶ πόλιν
length and the from west to dawn as-far-as indeed to city
Παλίμβοθρα μεμετρημένον σχοινίοισι λέγει ἀναγράφειν·
Palimbothra measured with-ropes he-says to-record
καὶ εἶναι γὰρ ὁδὸν βασιληίην. τοῦτο ἐπέχειν ἐς μυρίους
and to-be for road royal this to-extend about ten-thousand
σταδίους.
stades

3.5 τὰ δὲ ἐπέκεινα οὐκέτι ὡσαύτως ἀτρεκέα. φήμας δὲ
the-parts and beyond no-longer likewise exact reports but
ὅσοι ἀνέγραψαν, σὺν τῇ ἄκρῃ τῇ ἀνεχούσῃ ἐς τὸ πέλαγος
as-many-as recorded with the cape the projecting into the open-sea
ἐς μυρίους σταδίους μάλιστα ἐπέχειν λέγουσιν· εἶναι ἂν
about ten-thousand stades about to-extend say would-be —
ὧν τὸ μῆκος τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς σταδίων μάλιστα δισμυρίων.
then the length of-the of-Indians land stades about twenty-thousand

3.6 Κτησίης δὲ ὁ Κνίδιος τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν ἴσην τῇ ἄλλῃ
Ctesias and the Cnidian the of-Indians land equal to-the other
Ἀσίῃ λέγει, οὐδὲν λέγων, οὐδὲ Ὀνησίκριτος, τρίτην μοῖραν
Asia says nothing saying nor Onesicritus third part
τῆς πάσης γῆς. Νέαρχος δὲ μηνῶν τεσσάρων ὁδὸν τὴν
of-the whole earth Nearchus and of-months four journey the
δι᾽ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πεδίου τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς.
through itself the plain of-the of-Indians land

3.7 Μεγασθένεϊ δὲ τὸ ἀπὸ ἀνατολέων ἐς ἑσπέρην πλάτος
for-Megasthenes and the from east to west breadth
ἐστὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς ὅ τι περ οἱ ἄλλοι μῆκος ποιέουσι·
is of-the of-Indians land what ever indeed the others length make
καὶ λέγει Μεγασθένης μυρίων καὶ ἑξακισχιλίων σταδίων
and says Megasthenes of-ten-thousand and six-thousand stades
εἶναι ἵναπερ τὸ βραχύτατον αὐτοῦ.
to-be where-indeed the narrowest of-it

τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ἄρκτου πρὸς μεσαμβρίην, τοῦτο δὲ αὐτῷ 3.8
the and from north to south this and for-him
μῆκος γίνεται, καὶ ἐπέχει τριηκοσίους καὶ δισχιλίους καὶ
length becomes and extends three-hundred and two-thousand and
δισμυρίους ἴναπερ τὸ στεινότατον αὐτοῦ.
twenty-thousand where-indeed the narrowest of-it
ποταμοὶ δὲ τοσοίδε εἰσὶν ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ, ὅσοι οὐδὲ ἐν 3.9
rivers and so-many are in the of-Indians land as-many-as not-even in
τῇ πάσῃ Ἀσίῃ. μέγιστοι μὲν ὁ Γάγγης τε καὶ ὁ Ἰνδός,
the whole Asia greatest indeed — Ganges both and — Indus
ὅτου καὶ ἡ γῆ ἐπώνυμος, ἄμφω τοῦ τε Νείλου τοῦ
from-which also the land is-named both — both than-Nile the
Αἰγυπτίου καὶ τοῦ Ἴστρου τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ, καὶ εἰ ἐς τωὐτὸ
Egyptian and — Ister the Scythian even if into the-same
συνέλθοι αὐτοῖσι τὸ ὕδωρ, μέζονες. δοκέειν δὲ ἔμοιγε,
should-come-together for-them the water greater to-seem and to-me-at-least
καὶ ὁ Ἀκεσίνης μέζων ἐστὶ τοῦ τε Ἴστρου καὶ τοῦ Νείλου,
also — Acesines greater is — both than-Ister and — Nile
ἴναπερ παραλαβὼν ἅμα τόν τε Ὑδάσπεα καὶ τὸν
where-indeed having-taken-in together — both Hydaspes and —
Ὑδραώτεα καὶ τὸν Ὕφασιν ἐμβάλλει ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν, ὡς καὶ
Hydraotes and — Hyphasis it-empties into — Indus so-that even
τριήκοντα αὐτῷ σταδίους τὸ πλάτος ταύτῃ εἶναι· καὶ τυχὸν
thirty for-it stades the breadth there to-be and perhaps
καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ μέζονες ποταμοὶ ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ ῥέουσιν.
also others many greater rivers in the of-Indians land flow
ἀλλὰ οὔ μοι ἀτρεκὲς ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ὑφάσιος 4.1
but not for-me exact about the-parts beyond the Hyphasis
ποταμοῦ ἰσχυρίσασθαι, ὅτι οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Ὑφάσιος ἦλθεν
river to-assert because not beyond — Hyphasis came
Ἀλέξανδρος.
Alexander

4.2 αὐτοῖν δὲ τοῖν μεγίστοιν ποταμοῖν τοῦ τε Γάγγεω καὶ
of-these-very and the greatest rivers — both of-Ganges and
τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὸν Γάγγεα μεγάθεϊ πολλόν τι ὑπερφέρειν
— of-Indus — Ganges in-size much somewhat to-surpass
Μεγασθένης ἀνέγραψε, καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μνήμην τοῦ
Megasthenes recorded and as-many-as others memory —
Γάγγεω ἔχουσιν·
of-Ganges have

4.3 αὐτόν τε γὰρ μέγαν ἀνίσχειν ἀπὸ τῶν πηγέων, δέκεσθαί
itself both for great to-rise from the springs to-receive
τε ἐς ἑωυτὸν τόν τε Καϊνὰν ποταμὸν καὶ τὸν
both into itself the both Cainas river and —
Ἐραννοβόαν καὶ τὸν Κοσσόανον, πάντας πλωτούς· ἐπὶ
Erannoboas and — Cossoanus all navigable in-addition
δὲ Σῶνόν τε ποταμὸν καὶ Σιττόκατιν καὶ Σολόματιν,
and Sonus both river and Sittocatis and Solomatis
καὶ τούτους πλωτούς·
and these navigable

4.4 ἐπὶ δὲ Κονδοχάτην τε καὶ Σάμβον καὶ Μάγωνα
in-addition and Condochates both and Sambus and Magon
καὶ Ἀγόρανιν καὶ Ὤμαλιν. ἐμβάλλουσι δὲ ἐς αὐτὸν
and Agoranis and Omalis empty and into it
Κομμινάσης τε μέγας ποταμὸς καὶ Κάκουθις καὶ
Comminases both great river and Cacuthis and
Ἀνδώματις ἐξ ἔθνεος Ἰνδικοῦ τοῦ Μαδυανδινῶν ῥέων,
Andomatis from people Indian the of-Madyandini flowing

4.5 καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοισιν Ἄμυστις παρὰ πόλιν Καταδούπην, καὶ
and besides these Amystis by city Catadupe and
Ὀξύμαγις ἐν τοῖσι Παζάληισι καλεομένοισι. καὶ Ἐρρένυσις
Oxymagis among the Pazalae called and Errenysis
δὲ ἐν Μάθηισιν, ἔθνεϊ Ἰνδικῷ, συμβάλλει τῷ Γάγγῃ.
and among Mathae people Indian joins — Ganges

τούτων λέγει Μεγασθένης οὐδένα εἶναι τοῦ Μαιάνδρου 4.6
of-these says Megasthenes none to-be — than-Maeander
ἀποδέοντα, ἵναπερ ναυσίπορος ὁ Μαίανδρος.
falling-short where-indeed navigable — Maeander
εἶναι ὧν τὸ εὖρος τῷ Γάγγῃ, ἔνθαπερ αὐτὸς ἑωυτοῦ 4.7
to-be then the breadth — for-Ganges where-very itself than-itself
στεινότατος, ἐς ἑκατὸν σταδίους· πολλαχῇ δὲ καὶ
narrowest about hundred stades in-many-places and also
λιμνάζειν, ὡς μὴ ἄποπτον εἶναι τὴν πέρην χώρην, ἵναπερ
to-form-lakes so-that not visible to-be the opposite country where-indeed
χθαμαλή τέ ἐστι καὶ οὐδαμῇ γηλόφοισιν ἀνεστηκυῖα.
low both it-is and nowhere with-hills rising
τῷ δὲ Ἰνδῷ ἐς τωὐτὸν ἔρχεται. Ὑδραώτης μὲν 4.8
— and to-Indus into the-same comes Hydraotes indeed
ἐν Καμβισθόλοισι παρειληφὼς τόν τε Ὕφασιν ἐν
among Cambistholi having-taken-in — both Hyphasis among
Ἀστρύβῃσι καὶ τὸν Σαράγγην ἐκ Κηκέων καὶ τὸν
Astrybae and — Saranges from Cecians and —
Νεῦδρον ἐξ Ἀττακηνῶν, ἐς τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐμβάλλουσιν.
Neudrus from Attacenians into — Acesines they-empty
Ὑδάσπης δὲ ἐν Ὀξυδράκῃσιν ἄγων ἅμα οἱ τὸν 4.9
Hydaspes and among Oxydracae bringing together-with himself —
Σίναρον ἐν Ἀρίσπῃσιν ἐς τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐκδιδοῖ καὶ
Sinarus among Arispae into — Acesines flows-out also
οὗτος.
this
ὁ δὲ Ἀκεσίνης ἐν Μαλλοῖσι συμβάλλει τῷ Ἰνδῷ· καὶ 4.10
— and Acesines among Malli joins — Indus and
Τούταπος δὲ μέγας ποταμὸς ἐς τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐκδιδοῖ.
Tutapus and great river into — Acesines flows-out

τούτων ὁ Ἀκεσίνης ἐμπλησθεὶς καὶ τῇ ἐπικλήσι ἐκνικήσας
by-these — Acesines filled and in-the name prevailing
αὐτὸς τῷ ἑωυτοῦ δὴ οὐνόματι ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν.
itself with-the its-own indeed name empties into — Indus
4.11 Κωφὴν δὲ ἐν Πευκελαΐτιδι, ἅμα οἱ ἄγων Μάλαντόν
Cophen and in Peucelaïtis together-with himself bringing Malantus
τε καὶ Σόαστον καὶ Γαρροίαν, ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν.
both and Soastus and Garroeas flows-out into — Indus
4.12 κατύπερθε δὲ τούτων Πάρενος καὶ Σάπαρνος, οὐ πολὺ
above and these Parenus and Saparnus not much
διέχοντες, ἐμβάλλουσιν ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν. Σόανος δὲ ἐκ τῆς
distant empty into — Indus Soanus and from the
ὀρεινῆς τῆς Ἀβισσαρέων ἔρημος ἄλλου ποταμοῦ ἐκδιδοῖ
mountainous of-the Abissareans bereft of-another river flows-out
ἐς αὐτόν. καὶ τούτων τοὺς πολλοὺς Μεγασθένης λέγει
into it and of-these the most Megasthenes says
ὅτι πλωτοί εἰσιν.
that navigable they-are
4.13 οὔκουν ἀπιστίην χρὴ ἔχειν ὑπέρ τε τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
not-therefore disbelief it-is-necessary to-have about both — Indus
καὶ τοῦ Γάγγεω, μηδὲ συμβλητοὺς εἶναι αὐτοῖσι τόν τε
and — Ganges nor comparable to-be to-them — both
Ἴστρον καὶ τὸν Νεῖλον.
Ister and — Nile
4.14 ἐς μέν γε τὸν Νεῖλον οὐδένα ποταμὸν ἐκδιδόντα ἴδμεν,
into indeed at-least — Nile no river flowing-out we-know
ἀλλὰ ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ διώρυχας τετμημένας κατὰ τὴν χώρην
but from it canals cut through the country
τὴν Αἰγυπτίην·
the Egyptian

ὁ δὲ Ἴστρος ὀλίγος μὲν ἀνίσχει ἀπὸ τῶν πηγέων, 4.15
— *and Ister little indeed rises from the springs*
δέκεται δὲ πολλοὺς ποταμούς, ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ πλήθεϊ ἴσους
receives and many rivers but not-even in-number equal
τοῖσιν Ἰνδῶν ποταμοῖσιν, οἳ τὸν Ἰνδὸν καὶ τὸν Γάγγεα
to-the of-Indians rivers which — Indus and — Ganges
ἐκδιδοῦσι, πλωτοὺς δὲ δὴ κάρτα ὀλίγους, ὧν τοὺς
flow-out-into navigable and indeed very few of-which the-ones
μὲν αὐτὸς ἰδὼν οἶδα, τὸν Ἕνον τε καὶ τὸν Σάον.
indeed myself having-seen I-know — Enus both and — Saus
Ἕνος μὲν ἐν μεθορίῳ τῆς Νωρικῶν καὶ Ῥαιτῶν γῆς 4.16
Enus indeed on boundary of-the of-Norici and of-Raeti land
μίγνυται τῷ Ἴστρῳ, ὁ δὲ Σάος κατὰ Παίονας. ὁ δὲ
mingles — with-Ister — and Saus by Paeonians the and
χῶρος, ἵναπερ συμβάλλουσιν οἱ ποταμοί, Ταυροῦνος
place where-indeed join the rivers Taurunus
καλέεται. ὅστις δὲ καὶ ἄλλον οἶδε ναυσίπορον τῶν ἐς
is-called whoever and also another knows navigable of-those into
τὸν Ἴστρον ἐκδιδόντων, ἀλλὰ οὐ πολλοὺς κου οἶδε.
— Ister flowing-out but not many I-suppose knows
τὸ δὲ αἴτιον ὅστις ἐθέλει φράζειν τοῦ πλήθεός τε καὶ 5.1
the and cause whoever wishes to-explain of-the multitude both and
μεγάθεος τῶν Ἰνδικῶν ποταμῶν, φραζέτω· ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ
size of-the Indian rivers let-him-explain for-me and also
ταῦτα ὡς ἀκοὴ ἀναγεγράφθω.
these-things as hearsay let-have-been-recorded
ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν ποταμῶν οὐνόματα Μεγασθένης 5.2
since also of-other many rivers names Megasthenes
ἀνέγραψεν, οἳ ἔξω τοῦ Γάγγεώ τε καὶ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
recorded which outside — of-Ganges both and — of-Indus
ἐκδιδοῦσιν ἐς τὸν ἑῷόν τε καὶ μεσαμβρινὸν πόντον,
flow-out into the eastern both and southern sea

ὥστε τοὺς πάντας ὀκτὼ καὶ πεντήκοντα λέγει ὅτι εἰσὶν
so-that the all eight and fifty he-says that are
Ἰνδικοὶ ποταμοί, ναυσίποροι πάντες.
Indian rivers navigable all

5.3 ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ Μεγασθένης τὴν πολλὴν δοκέει μοι ἐπελθεῖν
but not-even Megasthenes the most seems to-me to-have-visited
τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρης, πλήν γε δὴ ὅτι πλεῦνα ἢ οἱ
of-the of-Indians country except at-least indeed that more than those
σὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐπῆλθεν· συγγενέσθαι γὰρ Σανδρακόττῳ
with Alexander he-visited to-have-been-with for Sandracottus
λέγει, τῷ μεγίστῳ βασιλέι τῶν Ἰνδῶν, καὶ Πώρῳ, ἔτι
he-says the greatest king of-the Indians and Porus still
τούτου μέζονι.
than-this greater

5.4 οὗτος ὧν ὁ Μεγασθένης λέγει, οὔτε Ἰνδοὺς ἐπιστρατεῦσαι
this-one then — Megasthenes says neither Indians to-have-attacked
οὐδαμοῖσιν ἀνθρώποισιν, οὔτε Ἰνδοῖσιν ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους,
any men nor Indians other men

5.5 ἀλλὰ Σέσωστριν μὲν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον, τῆς Ἀσίης
but Sesostris indeed the Egyptian — of-Asia
καταστρεψάμενον τὴν πολλὴν καὶ ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν Εὐρώπην
having-subdued the most and as-far to — Europe
σὺν στρατιῇ ἐλάσαντα ὀπίσω ἀπονοστῆσαι,
with army having-marched back to-have-returned

5.6 Ἰδάνθυρσον δὲ τὸν Σκύθεα ἐκ Σκυθίης ὁρμηθέντα πολλὰ
Idanthyrsus and the Scythian from Scythia having-set-out many
μὲν Ἀσίης ἔθνεα καταστρέψασθαι, ἐπελθεῖν δὲ καὶ τὴν
indeed of-Asia peoples to-have-subdued to-have-invaded and also the
Αἰγυπτίων γῆν κρατέοντα.
of-Egyptians land prevailing

Σεμίραμιν δὲ τὴν Ἀσσυρίην ἐπιχειρέειν μὲν στέλλεσθαι 5.7
Semiramis and the Assyrian to-attempt indeed to-set-out
ἐς Ἰνδούς, ἀποθανεῖν δὲ πρὶν τέλος ἐπιθεῖναι τοῖσι
to Indians to-have-died but before end to-put to-the
βουλεύμασιν. ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρον γὰρ στρατεῦσαι ἐπὶ
plans but Alexander for to-have-campaigned against
Ἰνδοὺς μοῦνον.
Indians alone
καὶ πρὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου Διονύσου μὲν πέρι πολλὸς λόγος 5.8
and before Alexander of-Dionysus indeed about much story
κατέχει ὡς καὶ τούτου στρατεύσαντος ἐς Ἰνδοὺς καὶ
holds as also of-this-one having-campaigned into Indians and
καταστρεψαμένου Ἰνδούς, Ἡρακλέος δὲ πέρι οὐ πολλός.
having-subdued Indians of-Heracles and about not much
Διονύσου μέν γε τῆς στρατηλασίης καὶ Νῦσα πόλις 5.9
of-Dionysus indeed at-least of-the expedition also Nysa city
μνῆμα οὐ φαῦλον, καὶ ὁ Μηρὸς τὸ οὖρος, καὶ ὁ κισσὸς
memorial not trivial and — Meros the mountain and the ivy
ὅστις ἐν τῷ οὔρεϊ τούτῳ φύεται, καὶ αὐτοὶ Ἰνδοὶ ὑπὸ
which in the mountain this grows and themselves Indians with
τυμπάνων τε καὶ κυμβάλων στελλόμενοι ἐς τὰς μάχας, καὶ
drums both and cymbals setting-out to the battles and
ἐσθὴς αὐτοῖσι κατάστικτος ἐοῦσα, κατάπερ τοῦ Διονύσου
dress for-them spotted being as — of-Dionysus
τοῖσι βάκχοισιν· Ἡρακλέος δὲ οὐ πολλὰ ὑπομνήματα.
for-the bacchants of-Heracles and not many memorials
ἀλλὰ τὴν Ἄορνον γὰρ πέτρην, ἥντινα Ἀλέξανδρος βίῃ 5.10
but — Aornus for rock which Alexander by-force
ἐχειρώσατο, ὅτι Ἡρακλέης οὐ δυνατὸς ἐγένετο ἑξελεῖν,
subdued that Heracles not able was to-take
Μακεδονικὸν δοκέει μοι κόμπασμα, κατάπερ ὦν καὶ τὸν
Macedonian seems to-me boast just-as then also —

Παραπάμισον Καύκασον ἐκάλεον Μακεδόνες, οὐδέν τι
Parapamisus Caucasus called Macedonians nothing at-all
προσήκοντα τοῦτον τῷ Καυκάσῳ.
belonging this — to-Caucasus

5.11 καί τι καὶ ἄντρον ἐπιφρασθέντες ἐν Παραπαμισάδῃσι,
and something also a-cave having-noticed among Parapamisadae
τοῦτο ἔφασαν ἐκεῖνο εἶναι τοῦ Προμηθέος τοῦ Τιτῆνος
this they-said that to-be — of-Prometheus the Titan
τὸ ἄντρον, ἐν ὅτῳ ἐκρέματο ἐπὶ τῇ κλοπῇ τοῦ πυρός.
the cave in which he-was-hung for the theft of-the fire

5.12 καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν Σίβῃσιν, Ἰνδικῷ γένεϊ, ὅτι δορὰς
and indeed also among Sibae Indian race because skins
ἀμπεχομένους εἶδον τοὺς Σίβας, ἀπὸ τῆς Ἡρακλέος
wearing they-saw the Sibae from the of-Heracles
στρατηλασίης ἔφασκον τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας εἶναι τοὺς
expedition they-said those left-behind to-be the
Σίβας· καὶ γὰρ καὶ σκυτάλην φορέουσιν οἱ Σίβαι, καὶ
Sibae and for also a-club carry the Sibae and
τῇσι βουσὶν αὐτῶν ῥόπαλον ἐπικέκαυται, καὶ τοῦτο ἐς
on-the cows of-them a-club is-branded and this to
μνήμην ἀνέφερον τοῦ ῥοπάλου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος.
memory they-referred of-the club — of-Heracles

5.13 εἰ δέ τῳ πιστὰ ταῦτα, ἄλλος ἂν οὗτος Ἡρακλέης
if and to-anyone credible these-things another — this-one Heracles
εἴη, οὐχ ὁ Θηβαῖος ἢ ὁ Τύριος ἢ ὁ Αἰγύπτιος, ἤ τις
would-be not the Theban or the Tyrian or the Egyptian or some
καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἄνω χώρην τὴν οὐ πόρρω τῆς Ἰνδῶν
also in the upper country the not far from-the of-Indians
γῆς ᾠκισμένην μέγας βασιλεύς.
land settled great king

ταῦτα μέν μοι ἐκβολὴ ἔστω τοῦ λόγου ἐς τὸ μὴ 6.1
these-things indeed for-me digression let-be of-the account for the not
πιστὰ φαίνεσθαι ὅσα ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ὑφάσιος
credible to-appear as-many-as about the beyond the Hyphasis
ποταμοῦ Ἰνδῶν μετεξέτεροι ἀνέγραψαν· ἔστε γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸν
river Indians some recorded as-far-as for to —
Ὕφασιν οἱ τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατηλασίης μετασχόντες
Hyphasis those of-the of-Alexander expedition having-shared
οὐ πάντη ἄπιστοί εἰσιν.
not wholly untrustworthy are
ἐπεὶ καὶ τόδε λέγει Μεγασθένης ὑπὲρ ποταμοῦ Ἰνδικοῦ, 6.2
since also this says Megasthenes about river Indian
Σίλαν μὲν εἶναί οἱ οὔνομα, ῥέειν δὲ ἀπὸ κρήνης
Silas indeed to-be for-it name to-flow and from a-spring
ἐπωνύμου τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ τῆς χώρης τῆς Σιλέων, καὶ
named-after the river through the country the of-Silaeans and
τούτων ἐπωνύμων τοῦ ποταμοῦ τε καὶ τῆς κρήνης, τὸ
these named-after the river both and the spring the
δὲ ὕδωρ παρέχεσθαι τοιόνδε.
and water to-provide such
οὐδὲν εἶναι ὅτῳ ἀντέχει τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ οὔτε τι νήχεσθαι 6.3
nothing to-be that it-supports the water and neither anything to-swim
ἐν αὐτῷ οὔτε τι ἐπιπλέειν, ἀλλὰ πάντα γὰρ ἐς
in it nor anything to-float but all for into
βυσσὸν δύνειν· οὕτω τι ἀμενηνότερον πάντων εἶναι
depth to-sink so something feebler than-all to-be
τὸ ὕδωρ ἐκεῖνο καὶ ἠεροειδέστερον.
the water that and more-misty

6.4 ὕεται δὲ ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ τοῦ θέρεος, μάλιστα μὲν τὰ
is-rained-on and the of-Indians land in-the summer most indeed the
οὔρεα, Παραπάμισός τε καὶ Ἠμωδὸς καὶ τὸ Ἰμαϊκὸν οὖρος,
mountains Parapamisus both and Emodus and the Imaïc mountain
καὶ ἀπὸ τούτων μεγάλοι καὶ θολεροὶ οἱ ποταμοὶ ῥέουσιν.
and from these great and muddy the rivers flow
6.5 ὕεται δὲ τοῦ θέρεος καὶ τὰ πεδία τῶν Ἰνδῶν, ὥστε
are-rained-on and in-the summer also the plains of-the Indians so-that
λιμνάζει τὰ πολλὰ αὐτῶν.
forms-lakes the most of-them
6.6 καὶ ἔφυγεν ἡ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου
and fled the of-Alexander army from the Acesines
ποταμοῦ μέσου θέρεος, ὑπερβαλόντος τοῦ ὕδατος ἐς τὰ
river in-middle summer having-overflowed the water onto the
πεδία, ὥστε ἀπὸ τῶνδε ἔξεστι τεκμηριοῦσθαι καὶ τοῦ
plains so-that from these it-is-possible to-infer also —
Νείλου τὸ πάθημα, ὅτι οἰκὸς ὕεσθαι τὰ Αἰθιόπων οὔρεα
of-Nile the phenomenon that likely to-be-rained-on the of-Ethiopians mountains
τοῦ θέρεος, καὶ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνων ἐμπιμπλάμενον τὸν Νεῖλον
in-the summer and from those being-filled — Nile
ὑπερβάλλειν ὑπὲρ τὰς ὄχθας ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν Αἰγυπτίην.
to-overflow over the banks onto the land the Egyptian
6.7 θολερὸς ὢν καὶ οὗτος ῥέει ἐν τῇδε τῇ ὥρῃ, ὡς οὔτε ἂν
muddy then also this-one flows in this the season as neither —
ἀπὸ χιόνος τηκομένης ἔρρεεν, οὔτε εἰ πρὸς τῶν ὥρῃ
from snow melting it-would-flow nor if by the in-season
θέρεος πνεόντων ἐτησίων ἀνέμων ἀνεκόπτετό οἱ τὸ
of-summer blowing etesian winds was-driven-back for-it the
ὕδωρ· ἄλλως τε οὐδὲ χιονόβλητα εἴη τὰ Αἰθιόπων
water besides both not-even snow-covered would-be the of-Ethiopians
οὔρεα ὑπὸ καύματος.
mountains from heat

ὕεσθαι δὲ κατάπερ τὰ Ἰνδῶν οὐκ ἔξω ἐστὶ τοῦ 6.8
to-be-rained-on and as the of-Indians not outside is of-the
οἰκότος, ἐπεὶ καὶ τἄλλα ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ οὐκ ἀπέοικε τῆς
probable since also in-other-respects the of-Indians land not is-unlike —
Αἰθιοπίης, καὶ οἱ ποταμοὶ οἱ Ἰνδικοὶ ὁμοίως τῷ Νείλῳ
of-Ethiopia and the rivers the Indian likewise — to-Nile
τῷ Αἰθιοπηίῳ τε καὶ Αἰγυπτίῳ κροκοδείλους τε φέρουσιν,
the Ethiopian both and Egyptian crocodiles both bear
ἔστιν δὲ οἳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἰχθύας καὶ ἄλλα κήτεα ὅσα
there-are and which of-them also fishes and other sea-monsters as-many-as
ὁ Νεῖλος, πλὴν ἵππου τοῦ ποταμίου· Ὀνησίκριτος δὲ
— Nile except horse the river Onesicritus and
καὶ ἵππους τοὺς ποταμίους λέγει ὅτι φέρουσι.
also horses the river says that they-bear
τῶν δὲ ἀνθρώπων αἱ ἰδέαι οὐ πάντη ἀπᾴδουσιν αἱ 6.9
of-the and men the appearances not wholly are-discordant the
Ἰνδῶν τε καὶ Αἰθιόπων. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς νότου ἀνέμου
of-Indians both and of-Ethiopians the indeed for toward south wind
Ἰνδοὶ τοῖσιν Αἰθίοψι μᾶλλόν τι ἐοίκασι, μέλανές τε
Indians to-the Ethiopians more somewhat are-like black both
ἰδέσθαι εἰσί, καὶ ἡ κόμη αὐτοῖσι μέλαινα, πλήν γε δὴ
to-see they-are and the hair for-them black except at-least indeed
ὅτι σιμοὶ οὐκ ὡσαύτως οὐδὲ οὐλόκρανοι ὡς Αἰθίοπες·
that flat-nosed not likewise nor woolly-haired as Ethiopians
οἱ δὲ βορειότεροι αὐτῶν κατ' Αἰγυπτίους μάλιστα
the and more-northern of-them after-the-manner-of to-Egyptians most
ἂν εἶεν τὰ σώματα.
— would-be the bodies

Megasthenes counts a hundred and eighteen Indian peoples. Once nomads in skins who ate bark and raw flesh, they were taught by Dionysus to found cities, plow, drink wine, and worship with cymbals and drums. Dionysus left Spatembas as king, and the kingship passed from father to son. Heracles had many sons and one daughter, Pandaea, to whom he gave a kingdom, and he found the pearl for her; Arrian doubts the tale that he made her ripe for marriage at seven. The Indians count a hundred and fifty-three kings to Sandracottus; no one but Alexander invaded India. They raise no monuments to the dead, no Indian is a slave, and their river and coast cities are of wood; Palimbothra, the greatest, runs eighty stades.

7.1 ἔθνεα δὲ Ἰνδικὰ εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν τὰ πάντα λέγει
peoples and Indian twenty and hundred the all says
Μεγασθένης, δυοῖν δέοντα. καὶ πολλὰ μὲν εἶναι ἔθνεα
Megasthenes two lacking and many indeed to-be peoples
Ἰνδικὰ καὶ αὐτὸς συμφέρομαι Μεγασθένεϊ, τὸ δὲ ἀτρεκές.
Indian also myself I-agree with-Megasthenes the but exact-truth
οὐκ ἔχω εἰκάσαι ὅκως ἐκμαθὼν ἀνέγραψεν, οὔτε
not I-can to-guess how having-learned he-recorded neither
πολλοστὸν μέρος τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς ἐπελθών, οὔτε ἐπιμιξίης
smallest part of-the of-Indians land having-visited nor intercourse
πᾶσι τοῖσι γένεσιν ἐούσης ἐς ἄλληλα.
with-all the races being with one-another

7.2 πάλαι μὲν δὴ νομάδας εἶναι Ἰνδούς, κατάπερ Σκυθέων
long-ago indeed indeed nomads to-be Indians as of-Scythians
τοὺς οὐκ ἀροτῆρας, οἳ ἐν τῇσιν ἁμάξῃσι πλανεύμενοι
those not plowmen who in the wagons wandering
ἄλλοτε ἄλλην τῆς Σκυθίης ἀμείβουσιν, οὔτε πόλιας
at-one-time another — of-Scythia exchange neither cities
οἰκέοντες οὔτε ἱρὰ θεῶν σέβοντες.
inhabiting nor temples of-gods revering

οὕτω μηδὲ Ἰνδοῖσι πόλιας εἶναι μηδὲ ἱρὰ θεῶν 7.3
so neither for-Indians cities to-be nor temples of-gods
δεδομημένα, ἀλλὰ ἀμπίσχεσθαι μὲν δορὰς θηρίων ὅσων
built but to-wear indeed skins of-beasts as-many-as
κατακάνοιεν, σιτέεσθαι δὲ τῶν δενδρέων τὸν φλοιόν.
they-might-kill to-eat and of-the trees the bark
καλέεσθαι δὲ τὰ δένδρεα ταῦτα τῇ Ἰνδῶν φωνῇ τάλα,
to-be-called and the trees these in-the of-Indians speech tala
καὶ φύεσθαι ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν, κατάπερ τῶν φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇσι
and to-grow on them as of-the palms on the
κορυφῇσιν, οἷά περ τολύπας.
tops such-as indeed balls-of-wool
σιτέεσθαι δὲ καὶ τῶν θηρίων ὅσα ἕλοιεν 7.4
to-eat and also of-the beasts as-many-as they-might-catch
ὠμοφαγέοντας, πρίν γε δὴ Διόνυσον ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὴν
eating-raw until at-least indeed Dionysus to-come into the
χώρην τὴν Ἰνδῶν.
country the of-Indians
Διόνυσον δὲ ἐλθόντα, ὡς καρτερὸς ἐγένετο Ἰνδῶν, πόλιάς 7.5
Dionysus and having-come when master became of-Indians cities
τε οἰκίσαι καὶ νόμους θέσθαι τῇσι πόλισιν, οἴνου τε
both to-have-founded and laws to-have-given to-the cities of-wine both
δοτῆρα Ἰνδοῖσι γενέσθαι κατάπερ Ἕλλησι, καὶ σπείρειν
giver for-Indians to-have-become as for-Greeks and to-sow
διδάξαι τὴν γῆν διδόντα αὐτὸν σπέρματα,
to-have-taught the land giving himself seeds
ἢ οὐκ ἐλάσαντος ταύτῃ Τριπτολέμου, ὅτε περ ἐκ 7.6
either not having-marched this-way Triptolemus when indeed by
Δήμητρος ἐστάλη σπείρειν γῆν πᾶσαν, ἢ πρὸ Τριπτολέμου
Demeter he-was-sent to-sow land all or before Triptolemus

τις οὗτος Διόνυσος ἐπελθὼν τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν σπέρματά
some this Dionysus having-visited the of-Indians land seeds
σφισιν ἔδωκε καρποῦ τοῦ ἡμέρου.
to-them gave of-crop the cultivated

7.7 βόας τε ὑπ᾽ ἄροτρον ζεῦξαι Διόνυσον πρῶτον, καὶ
oxen both under plow to-have-yoked Dionysus first and
ἀροτῆρας ἀντὶ νομάδων ποιῆσαι Ἰνδῶν τοὺς πολλούς,
plowmen instead-of nomads to-have-made of-Indians the most
καὶ ὁπλίσαι ὅπλοισι τοῖσιν ἀρηίοισι.
and to-have-armed with-arms the warlike

7.8 καὶ θεοὺς σέβειν ὅτι ἐδίδαξε Διόνυσος ἄλλους τε καὶ
and gods to-revere that taught Dionysus others both and
μάλιστα δὴ ἑωυτὸν κυμβαλίζοντας καὶ τυμπανίζοντας·
most indeed himself beating-cymbals and beating-drums
καὶ ὄρχησιν δὲ διδάξαι τὴν σατυρικήν,
and dance and to-have-taught the satyric

7.9 τὸν κόρδακα παρ᾽ Ἕλλησι καλεόμενον, καὶ κομᾶν
the cordax among Greeks called and to-wear-long-hair
Ἰνδοὺς τῷ θεῷ. μιτρηφορέειν τε ἀναδεῖξαι, καὶ μύρων
Indians for-the god to-wear-the-mitra both to-have-introduced and of-perfumes
ἀλοιφὰς ἐκδιδάξαι.
anointings to-have-taught

8.1 ἀπιόντα δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς, ὥς οἱ ταῦτα ἐκεκόσμητο,
departing and from the of-Indians land when for-him these-things had-been-ordered
καταστῆσαι βασιλέα τῆς χώρης Σπατέμβαν, τῶν ἑταίρων
to-have-appointed king of-the country Spatembas of-the companions
τὸν βακχωδέστατον· τελευτήσαντος δὲ Σπατέμβα τὴν
the most-bacchic having-died and Spatembas the
βασιληίην ἐκδέξασθαι Βουδύαν τὸν τούτου παῖδα.
kingship to-have-received Budyas the his son

καὶ τὸν μὲν πεντήκοντα καὶ δύο ἔτεα βασιλεῦσαι Ἰνδῶν, 8.2
and the-one indeed fifty and two years to-have-reigned of-Indians
τὸν πατέρα, τὸν δὲ παῖδα εἴκοσιν ἔτεα. καὶ τούτου
the father the-other and son twenty years and of-this-one
παῖδα ἐκδέξασθαι τὴν βασιληίην Κραδεύαν,
son to-have-received the kingship Cradeuas
καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τὸ πολλὸν μὲν κατὰ γένος ἀμείβειν τὴν 8.3
and the from this the most indeed by descent to-change the
βασιληίην, παῖδα παρὰ πατρὸς ἐκδεκόμενον· εἰ δὲ ἐκλείποι τὸ
kingship son from father receiving if and should-fail the
γένος, οὕτω δὴ ἀριστίνδην κατίστασθαι Ἰνδοῖσι βασιλέας.
family so indeed by-merit to-be-appointed for-Indians kings
Ἡρακλέα δέ, ὅντινα ἐς Ἰνδοὺς ἀπικέσθαι λόγος κατέχει, 8.4
Heracles and who to Indians to-have-come story holds
παρ᾽ αὐτοῖσιν Ἰνδοῖσι γηγενέα λέγεσθαι.
among themselves Indians earth-born to-be-called
τοῦτον τὸν Ἡρακλέα μάλιστα πρὸς Σουρασηνῶν 8.5
this — Heracles most by Sourasenians
γεραίρεσθαι, Ἰνδικοῦ ἔθνεος, ἵνα δύο πόλιες μεγάλαι,
to-be-honored Indian people where two cities great
Μέθορά τε καὶ Κλεισόβορα· καὶ ποταμὸς Ἰωβάρης
Methora both and Cleisobora and river Iobares
πλωτὸς διαρρέει τὴν χώρην αὐτῶν.
navigable flows-through the country of-them
τὴν σκευὴν δὲ οὗτος ὁ Ἡρακλέης ἥντινα ἐφόρεε 8.6
the dress and this — Heracles which wore
Μεγασθένης λέγει ὅτι ὁμοίην τῷ Θηβαίῳ Ἡρακλέϊ, ὡς
Megasthenes says that like to-the Theban Heracles as
αὐτοὶ Ἰνδοὶ ἀπηγέονται. καὶ τούτῳ ἄρσενας μὲν παῖδας
themselves Indians relate and to-this-one male indeed children
πολλοὺς κάρτα γενέσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ — πολλῇσι
many very to-have-been-born in the of-Indians land with-many

γὰρ δὴ γυναιξὶν ἐς γάμον ἐλθεῖν καὶ τοῦτον τὸν
for indeed women to marriage to-have-come also this —
Ἡρακλέα—, θυγατέρα δὲ μουνογενέην. οὔνομα δὲ εἶναι
Heracles daughter but only-born name and to-be
τῇ παιδὶ Πανδαίην, καὶ τὴν χώρην.
to-the child Pandaea and the country

8.7 ἵνα τε ἐγένετο καὶ ἥστινος ἐπέτρεψεν αὐτῇ ἄρχειν
where both she-was-born and which entrusted her to-rule
Ἡρακλέης, τῆς παιδὸς ἐπώνυμον. καὶ ταύτῃ ἐλέφαντας μὲν
Heracles of-the child named-after and to-this-one elephants indeed
γενέσθαι ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς ἐς πεντακοσίους, ἵππον δὲ ἐς
to-have-been from the father about five-hundred cavalry and about
τετρακισχιλίην, πεζῶν δὲ ἐς τὰς τρισκαίδεκα μυριάδας.
four-thousand of-infantry and about the thirteen myriads

8.8 καὶ τάδε δὲ μετεξέτεροι Ἰνδῶν περὶ Ἡρακλέος λέγουσιν,
and these-things and some of-Indians about Heracles say
ἐπελθόντα αὐτὸν πᾶσαν γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν καὶ καθήραντα
having-visited him all land and sea and having-cleansed
ὅ τι περ κακόν, καινὸν εἶδος ἐξευρεῖν ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ
what ever indeed evil new kind to-have-found in the sea
κόσμου γυναικηίου,
of-adornment womanly

8.9 ὄντινα καὶ ἐς τοῦτο ἔτι οἵ τε ἐξ Ἰνδῶν τῆς χώρης
which also to this still those both from of-Indians the country
τὰ ἀγώγιμα παρ᾽ ἡμέας ἀγινέοντες σπουδῇ ὠνεόμενοι
the merchandise to us bringing eagerly buying
ἐκκομίζουσι,
export

8.10 καὶ Ἑλλήνων δὲ πάλαι καὶ Ῥωμαίων νῦν ὅσοι
and of-Greeks and long-ago and of-Romans now as-many-as
πολυκτέανοι καὶ εὐδαίμονες μέζονι ἔτι σπουδῇ ὠνέονται
wealthy and prosperous with-greater still eagerness buy

τὸν μαργαρίτην δὴ τὸν θαλάσσιον οὕτω τῇ Ἰνδῶν
the margarita indeed the of-the-sea so in-the of-Indians
γλώσσῃ καλεόμενον. τὸν γὰρ Ἡρακλέα, ὡς καλόν οἱ
tongue called — for Heracles as fine to-him
ἐφάνη τὸ φόρημα, ἐκ πάσης θαλάσσης ἐς τὴν Ἰνδῶν
appeared the ornament from all sea into the of-Indians
συναγινέειν τὸν μαργαρίτην δὴ τοῦτον, τῇ θυγατρὶ τῇ
to-collect the pearl indeed this for-the daughter the
ἑωυτοῦ εἶναι κόσμον.
his-own to-be adornment

καὶ λέγει Μεγασθένης, θηρεύεσθαι αὐτοῦ τὴν κόγχην 8.11
and says Megasthenes to-be-hunted of-it the shell
δικτύοισι, νέμεσθαι δὲ κατὰ ὠὐτὸ πολλὰς κόγχας,
with-nets to-feed and in the-same many shells
κατάπερ τὰς μελίσσας. καὶ εἶναι γὰρ καὶ τοῖσι μαργαρίτῃσι
as the bees and to-be for also for-the pearls
βασιλέα ἢ βασίλισσαν, ὡς τῇσι μελίσσῃσι.
a-king or a-queen as for-the bees

καὶ ὅστις μὲν ἐκεῖνον κατ᾽ ἐπιτυχίην συλλάβοι, τοῦτον μὲν 8.12
and whoever indeed that-one by luck should-catch this-one indeed
εὐπετέως περιβάλλειν καὶ τὸ ἄλλο σμῆνος τῶν μαργαριτέων·
easily to-net also the other swarm of-the pearls
εἰ δὲ διαφύγοι σφᾶς ὁ βασιλεύς, τούτοισι δὲ οὐκέτι θηρατοὺς
if but should-escape them the king for-these and no-longer catchable
εἶναι τοὺς ἄλλους. τοὺς ἑλόντας δὲ περιορᾶν κατασαπῆναί
to-be the others those having-caught and to-allow to-rot
σφισι τὴν σάρκα, τῷ δὲ ὀστέῳ ἐς κόσμον χρᾶσθαι.
for-them the flesh the and bone for adornment to-use

8.13 καὶ εἶναι γὰρ καὶ παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖσι τὸν μαργαρίτην τριστάσιον
and to-be for also among Indians the pearl threefold
κατὰ τιμὴν πρὸς χρυσίον τὸ ἄπεφθον, καὶ τοῦτο ἐν τῇ
in value against gold the refined also this in the
Ἰνδῶν γῇ ὀρυσσόμενον.
of-Indians land being-mined

9.1 ἐν δὲ τῇ χώρῃ ταύτῃ, ἵνα ἐβασίλευσεν ἡ θυγάτηρ τοῦ
in and the country this where reigned the daughter —
Ἡρακλέος, τὰς μὲν γυναῖκας ἑπταέτεας ἐούσας ἐς ὥρην
of-Heracles the indeed women seven-years-old being to season
γάμου ἰέναι, τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας τεσσαράκοντα ἔτεα τὰ
of-marriage to-come the and men forty years the
πλεῖστα βιώσκεσθαι.
most to-live

9.2 καὶ ὑπὲρ τούτου λεγόμενον λόγον εἶναι παρὰ Ἰνδοῖσιν.
and about this told story to-be among Indians
Ἡρακλέα, ὀψιγόνου οἱ γενομένης τῆς παιδός, ἐπεί τε
Heracles late-born to-him having-been the child when —
δὴ ἐγγὺς ἔμαθεν ἑωυτῷ ἐοῦσαν τὴν τελευτήν, οὐκ ἔχοντα
indeed near he-learned to-himself being the end not having
ὅτῳ ἀνδρὶ ἐκδῷ τὴν παῖδα ἑωυτοῦ ἐπαξίῳ, αὐτὸν
to-what man he-might-give the child his-own worthy himself
μιγῆναι τῇ παιδὶ ἑπταέτεϊ ἐούσῃ, ὡς γένος ἐξ οὗ
to-have-lain with-the child seven-years-old being so-that a-race from him
τε καὶ κἀκείνης ὑπολείπεσθαι Ἰνδῶν βασιλέας. ποιῆσαι ὧν
both and-from-her to-be-left of-Indians kings to-have-made then
αὐτὴν Ἡρακλέα ὡραίην γάμου·
her Heracles ripe for-marriage

9.3 καὶ ἐκ τοῦδε ἅπαν τὸ γένος τοῦτο ὅτου ἡ Πανδαίη
and from this all the race this of-which — Pandaea
ὑπῆρξε τωὐτὸν τοῦτο γέρας ἔχειν παρὰ Ἡρακλέος.
ruled the-same this privilege to-have from Heracles

ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκέει, εἴπερ ὦν τὰ ἐς τοσόνδε ἄτοπα 9.4
to-me and seems if-indeed then the-things to so-great absurd
Ἡρακλέης οἷός τε ἦν ἐξεργάζεσθαι, κἂν ἑωυτὸν ἀποφῆναι
Heracles able — was to-accomplish also himself to-have-made
μακροβιώτερον, ὡς ὡραίῃ μιγῆναι τῇ παιδί.
longer-lived so-that ripe to-lie-with the child
ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ τὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὥρης τῶν ταύτῃ παίδων 9.5
but for if the-things about the ripeness of-the there children
ἀτρεκέα ἐστίν, ἐς τωὐτὸν φέρειν δοκέει ἔμοιγε ἐς ὅ
exact is into the-same to-tend seems to-me into what
τι περ καὶ τὸ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τῆς ἡλικίης ὅτι
ever indeed also the-thing about the men of-the age that
τεσσαρακοντούτεες ἀποθνήσκουσιν οἱ πρεσβύτατοι αὐτῶν.
at-forty-years die the oldest of-them
οἷς γὰρ τό τε γῆρας τοσῷδε ταχύτερον ἐπέρχεται 9.6
for-whom for the both old-age so-much faster comes-on
καὶ ὁ θάνατος ὁμοῦ τῷ γήραϊ, πάντως κου καὶ
and the death together-with the old-age surely I-suppose also
ἡ ἀκμὴ πρὸς λόγον τοῦ τέλεος ταχυτέρη ἐπανθέει.
the prime in proportion of-the end faster blooms
ὥστε τριακοντούτεες μὲν ὠμογέροντες ἂν κου εἶεν 9.7
so-that at-thirty-years indeed raw-old-men — I-suppose would-be
αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ἄνδρες, εἴκοσι δὲ ἔτεα γεγονότες οἱ ἔξω
among-them the men twenty and years having-become those outside
ἥβης νεηνίσκοι, ἡ δὲ ἀκροτάτη ἥβη ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντεκαίδεκα
youth young-men the and highest youth about the fifteen
ἔτεα· καὶ τῇσι γυναιξὶν ὥρη γάμου κατὰ λόγον ἂν ἐς
years and for-the women season of-marriage in proportion — to
τὰ ἑπτὰ ἔτεα συμβαίνοι.
the seven years would-fall

9.8 καὶ γὰρ τοὺς καρποὺς ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρῃ πεπαίνεσθαί
and for the fruits in this the country to-ripen
τε ταχύτερον τῶν ἄλλῃ ὡυτὸς οὗτος Μεγασθένης
both faster than-those elsewhere the-same this Megasthenes
ἀνέγραψε καὶ φθίνειν ταχύτερον.
recorded and to-decay faster

9.9 ἀπὸ μὲν δὴ Διονύσου βασιλέας ἠρίθμεον Ἰνδοὶ ἐς
from indeed indeed Dionysus kings counted Indians to
Σανδράκοττον τρεῖς καὶ πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, ἔτεα δὲ
Sandracottus three and fifty and hundred years and
δύο καὶ τεσσαράκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλια· ἐν δὲ τούτοισι
two and forty and six-thousand in and these
τρὶς τὸ πᾶν ἐς ἐλευθερίην *** τὴν δὲ καὶ ἐς τριηκόσια·
three-times the whole into freedom (lacuna) the and also for three-hundred
τὴν δὲ εἴκοσί τε ἐτέων καὶ ἑκατόν. πρεσβύτερόν τε
the and twenty both years and hundred older both
Διόνυσον Ἡρακλέος δέκα καὶ πέντε γενεῇσιν Ἰνδοὶ λέγουσιν·
Dionysus than-Heracles ten and five generations Indians say

9.10 ἄλλον δὲ οὐδένα ἐμβαλεῖν ἐς γῆν τὴν Ἰνδῶν ἐπὶ
other and no-one to-have-invaded into land the of-Indians for
πολέμῳ, οὐδὲ Κῦρον τὸν Καμβύσεω, καίτοι ἐπὶ Σκύθας
war not-even Cyrus the (son)-of-Cambyses although against Scythians
ἐλάσαντα καὶ τἄλλα πολυπραγμονέστατον δὴ τῶν
having-marched and in-other-respects most-meddlesome indeed of-the
κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίην βασιλέων γενόμενον τὸν Κῦρον.
throughout — Asia kings having-become — Cyrus

9.11 ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρον γὰρ ἐλθεῖν τε καὶ κρατῆσαι πάντων
but Alexander for to-have-come both and to-have-conquered all
τοῖσιν ὅπλοισιν, ὅσους γε δὴ ἐπῆλθε· καὶ ἂν καὶ
with-the arms as-many-as at-least indeed he-came-against and — even
πάντων κρατῆσαι, εἰ ἡ στρατιὴ ἤθελεν.
all to-have-conquered if the army had-been-willing

οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ Ἰνδῶν τινὰ ἔξω τῆς οἰκηίης σταλῆναι 9.12
not indeed indeed not-even of-Indians anyone outside the own-land to-have-been-sent
ἐπὶ πολέμῳ διὰ δικαιότητα.
for war because-of justice
λέγεται δὲ καὶ τάδε, μνημήια ὅτι Ἰνδοὶ τοῖσι τελευτήσασιν 10.1
is-said and also this memorials that Indians to-the dead
οὐ ποιέουσιν, ἀλλὰ τὰς ἀρετὰς γὰρ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἱκανὰς
not make but the virtues for of-the men sufficient
ἐς μνήμην τίθενται τοῖσιν ἀποθανοῦσι καὶ τὰς ᾠδὰς αἳ
for memory they-consider for-those having-died and the songs which
αὐτοῖσιν ἐπᾴδονται.
to-them are-sung
πολίων δὲ ἀριθμὸν οὐκ εἶναι ἂν ἀτρεκὲς ἀναγράψαι τῶν 10.2
of-cities and number not to-be — exact to-record of-the
Ἰνδικῶν ὑπὸ πλήθεος. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὅσαι παραποτάμιαι
Indian from multitude but for as-many-as by-rivers
αὐτέων ἢ παραθαλάσσιαι, ταύτας μὲν ξυλίνας ποιέεσθαι·
of-them or by-the-sea these indeed wooden to-be-made
οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἐκ πλίνθου ποιεομένας διαρκέσαι ἐπὶ χρόνον 10.3
not for — from brick being-made to-last for time
τοῦ τε ὕδατος εἵνεκα τοῦ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ καὶ ὅτι οἱ ποταμοὶ
of-the both water for-the-sake of-the from sky and that the rivers
αὐτοῖσιν ὑπερβάλλοντες ὑπὲρ τὰς ὄχθας ἐμπιμπλᾶσι τοῦ
for-them overflowing over the banks fill with-the
ὕδατος τὰ πεδία.
water the plains
ὅσαι δὲ ἐν ὑπερδεξίοισί τε καὶ μετεώροισι τόποισι καὶ 10.4
as-many-as and in commanding both and lofty places and
τούτοισι ψιλοῖσιν ᾠκισμέναι εἰσί, ταύτας δὲ ἐκ πλίνθου
these bare settled are these and from brick
τε καὶ πηλοῦ ποιέεσθαι.
both and clay to-be-made

10.5 μεγίστην δὲ πόλιν ἐν Ἰνδοῖσιν εἶναι τὴν Παλίμβοθρα
greatest and city among Indians to-be the Palimbothra
καλεομένην, ἐν τῇ Πρασίων γῇ, ἵνα αἱ συμβολαί εἰσι
called in the of-Prasii land where the confluences are
τοῦ τε Ἐραννοβόα ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ Γάγγεω· τοῦ μὲν
of-the both Erannoboas river and — of-Ganges — indeed
Γάγγεω, τοῦ μεγίστου ποταμῶν· ὁ δὲ Ἐραννοβόας τρίτος
of-Ganges the greatest of-rivers — and Erannoboas third
μὲν ἂν εἴη τῶν Ἰνδικῶν ποταμῶν, μέζων δὲ τῶν
indeed — would-be of-the Indian rivers greater and than-those
ἄλλῃ καὶ οὗτος. ἀλλὰ συγχωρέει τῷ Γάγγῃ, ἐπειδὰν
elsewhere also this but yields — to-Ganges when
ἐμβάλῃ ἐς αὐτὸν τὸ ὕδωρ.
it-empties into it the water

10.6 καὶ λέγει Μεγασθένης, μῆκος μὲν ἐπέχειν τὴν πόλιν κατ᾽
and says Megasthenes length indeed to-extend the city along
ἑκατέρην τὴν πλευρὴν ἵναπερ μακροτάτη αὐτὴ ἑωυτῆς
each the side where-indeed longest itself than-itself
ᾤκισται ἐς ὀγδοήκοντα σταδίους, τὸ δὲ πλάτος ἐς
is-settled about eighty stades the and breadth about
πεντεκαίδεκα.
fifteen

10.7 τάφρον δὲ περιβεβλῆσθαι τῇ πόλι τὸ εὖρος ἑξάπλεθρον,
a-ditch and to-have-been-put-around the city the width six-plethra
τὸ δὲ βάθος τριήκοντα πήχεων· πύργους δὲ ἑβδομήκοντα
the and depth thirty cubits towers and seventy
καὶ πεντακοσίους ἔχειν τὸ τεῖχος καὶ πύλας τέσσαρας
and five-hundred to-have the wall and gates four
καὶ ἑξήκοντα.
and sixty

εἶναι δὲ καὶ τόδε μέγα ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ, πάντας Ἰνδοὺς 10.8
to-be and also this great in the of-Indians land all Indians
εἶναι ἐλευθέρους, οὐδέ τινα δοῦλον εἶναι Ἰνδόν. τοῦτο
to-be free nor any slave to-be Indian this
μὲν Λακεδαιμονίοισιν ἐς τωὐτὸ συμβαίνει καὶ Ἰνδοῖσι.
indeed for-Lacedaemonians into the-same falls-out and for-Indians
Λακεδαιμονίοισι μέν γε οἱ εἵλωτες δοῦλοί εἰσι καὶ 10.9
for-Lacedaemonians indeed at-least the helots slaves are and
τὰ δούλων ἐργάζονται, Ἰνδοῖσι δὲ οὐδὲ ἄλλος δοῦλός
the-tasks of-slaves do for-Indians but not-even another slave
ἐστι, μήτι γε Ἰνδῶν τις.
is let-alone at-least of-Indians anyone

III · THE SEVEN CLASSES, AND THE ELEPHANT HUNT

The Indians are divided into seven classes: the sages, who sacrifice and prophesy and live naked in the open; the farmers, left untouched in war; the herdsmen and hunters; the craftsmen and traders; the warriors, who are paid by the state; the overseers, who report to the king; and the councilors. No one may marry or move outside his class, except that anyone may become a sage. To catch wild elephants they dig a ditch around an enclosure, lure the wild herd in with tame females, starve them, set tame elephants on them, and beat them until they can be bound and ridden.

νενέμηνται δὲ οἱ πάντες Ἰνδοὶ ἐς ἑπτὰ μάλιστα γένεα. 11.1
are-divided and the all Indians into seven about classes
ἓν μὲν αὐτοῖσιν οἱ σοφισταί εἰσι, πλήθεϊ μὲν μείους
one indeed among-them the sages are in-number indeed fewer
τῶν ἄλλων, δόξῃ δὲ καὶ τιμῇ γεραρώτατοι·
than-the others in-repute but and in-honor most-honored

11.2 οὔτε γάρ τι τῷ σώματι ἐργάζεσθαι ἀναγκαίη σφιν
neither for any with-the body to-work necessity on-them
προσκέεται οὔτε τι ἀποφέρειν· ἀπ᾽ ὅτων πονέουσιν
lies nor anything to-pay from what they-toil
ἐς τὸ κοινόν. οὐδέ τι ἄλλο ἀναγκαίης ἁπλῶς ἐπεῖται
for the common-fund nor any other of-necessity simply is-imposed
τοῖσι σοφιστῇσιν, ὅτι μὴ θύειν τὰς θυσίας τοῖσι θεοῖσιν
on-the sages except — to-sacrifice the sacrifices to-the gods
ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ τῶν Ἰνδῶν·
on-behalf-of the commonwealth of-the Indians

11.3 ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ θύει, ἐξηγητὴς αὐτῷ τῆς θυσίης τῶν τις
whoever and privately sacrifices guide to-him of-the sacrifice of-the some
σοφιστέων τούτων γίνεται, ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως κεχαρισμένα
sages these becomes as not — otherwise acceptable
τοῖσι θεοῖσι θύσαντι.
to-the gods having-sacrificed

11.4 εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ μαντικῆς οὗτοι μοῦνοι Ἰνδῶν δαήμονες, οὐδὲ
are and also of-divination these alone of-Indians skilled nor
ἐπεῖται ἄλλῳ μαντεύεσθαι ὅτι μὴ σοφιστῇ ἀνδρί.
is-it-permitted to-another to-divine except — sage man

11.5 μαντεύονται δὲ ὑπὲρ τῶν ὡρέων τοῦ ἔτεος καὶ εἴ τις τὸ
they-divine and about the seasons of-the year and if some the
κοινὸν συμφορὴ καταλαμβάνοι· τὰ δὲ ἴδια ἑκάστοισιν
community misfortune should-seize the-things and private for-each
οὔ σφιν μέλει μαντεύεσθαι, ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἐξικνεομένης
not to-them it-is-a-concern to-divine either as not reaching
τῆς μαντικῆς ἐς τὰ σμικρότερα, ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον ἐὸν
of-the divination to the smaller-things or as not worthy being
ἐπὶ τούτοισι πονέεσθαι.
over these to-toil

ὅστις δὲ ἁμάρτοι ἐς τρὶς μαντευσάμενος, τούτῳ 11.6
whoever and should-err to three-times having-divined to-this-one
δὲ ἄλλο μὲν κακὸν γίνεσθαι οὐδέν, σιωπᾶν δὲ εἶναι
and other indeed evil to-happen nothing to-be-silent and to-be
ἐπάναγκες τοῦ λοιποῦ· καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν ὅστις ἐξαναγκάσει
compulsory for-the rest and not there-is who will-compel
τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον φωνῆσαι, ὅτου σιωπὴ κατακέκριται.
the man this to-speak on-whom silence has-been-condemned
οὗτοι γυμνοὶ διαιτέονται οἱ σοφισταί, τοῦ μὲν χειμῶνος 11.7
these naked live the sages in-the indeed winter
ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ, τοῦ δὲ θέρεος, ἐπεὰν ὁ ἥλιος
in-the-open in the sun in-the and summer when the sun
κατέχῃ, ἐν τοῖσι λειμῶσι καὶ τοῖσιν ἕλεσιν ὑπὸ δένδρεσι
holds-sway in the meadows and the marshes under trees
μεγάλοισιν, ὧν τὴν σκιὴν Νέαρχος λέγει ἐς πέντε πλέθρα
great whose the shade Nearchus says to five plethra
ἐν κύκλῳ ἐξικνέεσθαι, καὶ ἂν καὶ μυρίους ἀνθρώπους ὑπὸ
in circle to-reach and — even ten-thousand men under
ἑνὶ δένδρεϊ σκιάζεσθαι· τηλικαῦτα εἶναι ταῦτα τὰ δένδρεα.
one tree to-be-shaded so-large to-be these the trees
σιτέονται δὲ τὰ ὡραῖα καὶ τὸν φλοιὸν τῶν δενδρέων, 11.8
they-eat and the seasonal-fruits and the bark of-the trees
γλυκύν τε ἐόντα τὸν φλοιὸν καὶ τρόφιμον οὐ μεῖον ἤπερ
sweet both being the bark and nourishing not less than
αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων.
the dates of-the palms
δεύτεροι δ' ἐπὶ τούτοισιν οἱ γεωργοί εἰσιν, πλήθεϊ 11.9
second and after these the farmers are in-number
πλεῖστοι Ἰνδῶν ἐόντες. καὶ τούτοισιν οὔτε ὅπλα ἐστὶν
most of-Indians being and to-these neither arms are
ἀρήια οὔτε μέλει πολεμήια ἔργα, ἀλλὰ τὴν χώρην
warlike nor is-a-concern warlike deeds but the country

οὗτοι ἐργάζονται, καὶ τοὺς φόρους τοῖσί τε βασιλεῦσι
these work and the tributes to-the both kings
καὶ τῇσι πόλισιν, ὅσαι αὐτόνομοι, οὗτοι ἀποφέρουσι.
and to-the cities as-many-as independent these pay
11.10 καὶ εἰ πόλεμος ἐς ἀλλήλους τοῖσιν Ἰνδοῖσι τύχοι, τῶν
and if war with one-another for-the Indians should-happen of-those
ἐργαζομένων τὴν γῆν οὐ θέμις σφιν ἅπτεσθαι οὐδὲ αὐτὴν τὴν
working the land not lawful for-them to-touch nor itself the
γῆν τέμνειν, ἀλλὰ οἱ μὲν πολεμέουσι καὶ κατακαίνουσιν
land to-ravage but the-ones indeed make-war and kill
ἀλλήλους ὅκως τύχοιεν, οἱ δὲ πλησίον αὐτῶν κατ᾽
one-another as they-might-happen the-others and near them in
ἡσυχίην ἀροῦσιν ἢ τρυγέουσιν ἢ κλαδέουσιν ἢ θερίζουσιν.
quiet plow or gather-vintage or prune or reap
11.11 τρίτοι δέ εἰσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν οἱ νομέες, οἱ ποιμένες τε καὶ οἱ
third and are among-Indians the herdsmen the shepherds both and the
βουκόλοι. καὶ οὗτοι οὔτε κατὰ πόλιας οὔτε ἐν τῇσι κώμῃσιν
cowherds and these neither in cities nor in the villages
οἰκέουσι, νομάδες δέ εἰσι καὶ ἀνὰ τὰ οὔρεα βιοτεύουσι,
dwell nomads and are and over the mountains live
φόρον δὲ οὗτοι ἀπὸ τῶν κτηνέων ἀποφέρουσι, καὶ θηρεύουσιν
tribute and these from the cattle pay and hunt
οὗτοι ἀνὰ τὴν χώρην ὄρνιθάς τε καὶ ἄγρια θηρία.
these throughout the country birds both and wild beasts
12.1 τέταρτον δέ ἐστι τὸ δημιουργικόν τε καὶ καπηλικὸν γένος.
fourth and is the artisan both and trading class
καὶ οὗτοι λειτουργοί εἰσι, καὶ φόρον ἀποφέρουσιν ἀπὸ τῶν
and these public-servants are and tribute pay from the
ἔργων τῶν σφετέρων, πλήν γε δὴ ὅσοι τὰ ἀρήια
works the their-own except at-least indeed as-many-as the warlike
ὅπλα ποιέουσιν. οὗτοι δὲ καὶ μισθὸν ἐκ τοῦ κοινοῦ
arms make these but also pay from the common-fund

προσλαμβάνουσιν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ γένεϊ οἵ τε ναυπηγοὶ καὶ
receive-besides in and this the class the both shipwrights and
οἱ ναῦται εἰσιν, ὅσοι γε κατὰ τοὺς ποταμοὺς πλώουσι.
the sailors are as-many-as at-least on the rivers sail
πέμπτον δὲ γένος ἐστὶν Ἰνδοῖσιν οἱ πολεμισταί, πλήθεϊ 12.2
fifth and class is among-Indians the warriors in-number
μὲν δεύτερον μετὰ τοὺς γεωργούς, πλείστῃ δὲ ἐλευθερίῃ
indeed second after the farmers greatest and freedom
τε καὶ εὐθυμίῃ χρεόμενον. οὗτοι ἀσκηταὶ μούνων τῶν
both and cheerfulness enjoying these practitioners alone of-the
πολεμικῶν ἔργων εἰσί.
warlike works are
τὰ δὲ ὅπλα ἄλλοι αὐτοῖσι ποιέουσι, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους 12.3
the and arms others for-them make and the horses
ἄλλοι παρέχουσι, καὶ διακονέουσιν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου ἄλλοι,
others provide and serve in camp others
οἳ τούς τε ἵππους αὐτοῖσι θεραπεύουσι καὶ τὰ ὅπλα
who the both horses for-them tend and the arms
ἐκκαθαίρουσι καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἄγουσι καὶ τὰ ἅρματα
clean and the elephants drive and the chariots
κοσμέουσί τε καὶ ἡνιοχεύουσιν.
equip both and drive
αὐτοὶ δέ, ἔστ' ἂν μὲν πολεμέειν δέῃ, πολεμέουσιν, 12.4
themselves and as-long-as — indeed to-make-war it-is-necessary make-war
εἰρήνης δὲ γενομένης εὐθυμέονται· καί σφιν μισθὸς ἐκ τοῦ
of-peace and having-come they-make-merry and to-them pay from the
κοινοῦ τοσόσδε ἔρχεται, ὡς καὶ ἄλλους τρέφειν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ
common-fund so-great comes so-that even others to-feed from it
εὐμαρέως. ἕκτοι δέ εἰσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν οἱ ἐπίσκοποι καλεόμενοι.
easily sixth and are among-Indians the overseers called

12.5 οὗτοι ἐφορέουσι τὰ γινόμενα κατά τε τὴν χώρην
these oversee the-things happening throughout both the country
καὶ κατὰ τὰς πόλιας, καὶ ταῦτα ἀναγγέλλουσι τῷ
and throughout the cities and these-things report to-the
βασιλέι, ἴναπερ βασιλεύονται Ἰνδοί, ἢ τοῖσι τέλεσιν,
king where-indeed are-ruled-by-kings Indians or to-the authorities
ἴναπερ αὐτόνομοί εἰσι. καὶ τούτοισιν οὐ θέμις ψεῦδος
where-indeed independent they-are and to-these not lawful falsehood
ἀναγγεῖλαι οὐδέν, οὐδέ τις Ἰνδῶν αἰτίην ἔσχε ψεύσασθαι.
to-report any nor any of-Indians charge had to-have-lied

12.6 ἕβδομοι δέ εἰσιν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῶν κοινῶν βουλευόμενοι
seventh and are those about the public-affairs deliberating
ὁμοῦ τῷ βασιλέι ἢ κατὰ τὰς πόλιας ὅσαι αὐτόνομοι
together-with the king or in the cities as-many-as independent
σὺν τῇσιν ἀρχῇσι.
with the magistrates

12.7 πλήθεϊ μὲν ὀλίγον τὸ γένος τοῦτό ἐστι, σοφίῃ δὲ καὶ
in-number indeed small the class this is in-wisdom but and
δικαιότητι ἐκ πάντων προκεκριμένον. ἔνθεν οἵ τε ἄρχοντες
justice of all preferred whence the both rulers
αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιλέγονται καὶ ὅσοι νόμαρχοι καὶ ὕπαρχοι
for-them are-chosen and as-many-as nomarchs and hyparchs
καὶ θησαυροφύλακές τε καὶ στρατοφύλακες, ναύαρχοί τε
and treasurers both and army-officers admirals both
καὶ ταμίαι καὶ τῶν κατὰ γεωργίην ἔργων ἐπιστάται.
and stewards and of-the in agriculture works overseers

12.8 γαμέειν δὲ ἐξ ἑτέρου γένεος οὐ θέμις, οἷον τοῖσι
to-marry and from another class not lawful as for-the
γεωργοῖσιν ἐκ τοῦ δημιουργικοῦ ἢ ἔμπαλιν. οὐδὲ δύο
farmers from the artisan or the-reverse nor two
τέχνας ἐπιτηδεύειν τὸν αὐτὸν οὐδὲ τοῦτο θέμις, οὐδὲ
crafts to-practice the same nor this lawful nor

ἀμείβειν ἕτερον ἐξ ἑτέρου γένος, οἷον γεωργικὸν ἐκ
to-change other from other class as farmer from
νομέος γίνεσθαι, ἢ νομέα ἐκ δημιουργικοῦ.
herdsman to-become or herdsman from artisan
μοῦνόν σφισιν ἀνεῖται σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γίνεσθαι, 12.9
only for-them is-allowed sage from every class to-become
ὅτι οὐ μαλθακὰ τοῖσι σοφιστῇσίν ἐστι τὰ πρήγματα
because not soft for-the sages are the affairs
ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωρότατα.
but of-all most-wretched
θηρέουσι δὲ Ἰνδοὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἄγρια θηρία κατάπερ 13.1
hunt and Indians the indeed other wild beasts as
καὶ Ἕλληνες, ἡ δὲ τῶν ἐλεφάντων σφιν θήρη οὐδέν
also Greeks the and of-the elephants for-them hunt nothing
τι ἄλλῃ ἔοικεν, ὅτι καὶ ταῦτα τὰ θηρία οὐδαμοῖσιν
at-all other is-like because also these the beasts to-no
ἄλλοισι θηρίοισιν ἐπέοικεν.
other beasts are-like
ἀλλὰ τόπον γὰρ ἐπιλεξάμενοι ἄπεδον καὶ καυματώδεα ἐν 13.2
but a-place for having-chosen flat and burning in
κύκλῳ τάφρον ὀρύσσουσιν, ὅσον μεγάλῳ στρατοπέδῳ
circle a-ditch they-dig as-much-as for-great camp
ἐναυλίσασθαι. τῆς δὲ τάφρου τὸ εὖρος ἐς πέντε ὀργυιὰς
to-encamp-in of-the and ditch the width about five fathoms
ποιέονται, βάθος τε ἐς τέσσαρας.
they-make depth both about four
τὸν δὲ χόον ὅντινα ἐκβάλλουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ὀρύγματος, ἐπὶ 13.3
the and earth which they-throw-out from the digging on
τὰ χείλεα ἑκάτερα τῆς τάφρου ἐπιφορήσαντες ἀντὶ
the lips each of-the ditch having-heaped instead-of
τείχεος διαχρέονται,
wall use

13.4 αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ χώματι τῷ ἐπὶ τοῦ χείλεος τοῦ ἔξω
themselves and on the mound the on the lip the outer
τῆς τάφρου σκηνάς σφιν ὀρυκτὰς ποιέονται, καὶ διὰ
of-the ditch huts for-themselves dug-out make and through
τούτων ὀπὰς ὑπολείπονται· δι᾽ ὧν φάος τε αὐτοῖσιν
these holes they-leave through which light both to-them
ἐσέρχεται καὶ τὰ θηρία προσάγοντα καὶ ἐσελαύνοντα ἐς
enters and the beasts approaching and charging-in into
τὸ ἔρκος σκέπτονται.
the enclosure they-watch

13.5 ἐνθαῦτα ἐντὸς τοῦ ἕρκεος καταστήσαντες τῶν τινας
there within the enclosure having-placed of-the some
θηλέων τρεῖς ἢ τέσσαρας, ὅσαι μάλιστα τὸν θυμὸν
females three or four as-many-as most in-the spirit
χειροήθεες, μίαν ἔσοδον ἀπολιμπάνουσι κατὰ τὴν τάφρον,
tame one entrance they-leave across the ditch
γεφυρώσαντες τὴν τάφρον· καὶ ταύτῃ χόον τε καὶ ποίην
having-bridged the ditch and on-this earth both and grass
πολλὴν ἐπιφορέουσι τοῦ μὴ ἀρίδηλον εἶναι τοῖσι θηρίοισι
much they-heap-on for-the not conspicuous to-be to-the beasts
τὴν γέφυραν, μή τινα δόλον ὀισθῶσιν.
the bridge lest some trick they-suspect

13.6 αὐτοὶ μὲν ὧν ἐκποδὼν σφᾶς ἔχουσι κατὰ τῶν σκηνέων
themselves indeed then out-of-the-way themselves hold down-in the huts
τῶν ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ δεδυκότες, οἱ δὲ ἄγριοι ἐλέφαντες
the on the ditch having-crept the and wild elephants
ἡμέρης μὲν οὐ πελάζουσι τοῖσιν οἰκεομένοισι, νύκτωρ δὲ
by-day indeed not approach the inhabited-places by-night but
πλανέονταί τε πάντη καὶ ἀγεληδὸν νέμονται τῷ μεγίστῳ
they-roam both everywhere and in-herds feed the greatest

καὶ γενναιοτάτῳ σφῶν ἑπόμενοι, κατάπερ αἱ βόες τοῖσι
and noblest of-them following as the cows the
ταύροισιν.
bulls
ἐπεὰν ὦν τῷ ἕρκεϊ πελάσωσι, τήν τε φωνὴν ἀκούοντες 13.7
when then to-the enclosure they-approach the both voice hearing
τῶν θηλέων καὶ τῆς ὀδμῆς αἰσθόμενοι, δρόμῳ ἴενται ὡς
of-the females and the smell perceiving at-a-run they-rush as
ἐπὶ τὸν χῶρον τὸν πεφραγμένον· ἐκπεριελθόντες δὲ τῆς
toward the place the fenced having-gone-round and of-the
τάφρου τὰ χείλεα εὖτ' ἂν τῇ γεφύρῃ ἐπιτύχωσι. κατὰ
ditch the lips when — the bridge they-meet over
ταύτην ἐς τὸ ἕρκος ὠθέονται.
this into the enclosure they-push
οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι αἰσθόμενοι τὴν ἔσοδον τῶν ἐλεφάντων 13.8
the and men having-perceived the entrance of-the elephants
τῶν ἀγρίων, οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν τὴν γέφυραν ὀξέως
the wild the-ones indeed of-them the bridge swiftly
ἀπεῖλον, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς πέλας κώμας ἀποδραμόντες
removed the-others and to the near villages having-run-off
ἀγγέλλουσι τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ὅτι ἐν τῷ ἕρκεϊ ἔχονται
report the elephants that in the enclosure they-are-held
οἳ δὲ ἀκούσαντες ἐπιβαίνουσι τῶν κρατίστων τε καὶ
they and having-heard mount the strongest both and
χειροηθεστάτων ἐλεφάντων, ἐπιβάντες δὲ ἐλαύνουσιν ὡς
tamest elephants having-mounted and drive as
ἐπὶ τὸ ἕρκος, ἐλάσαντες δὲ οὐκ αὐτίκα μάχης ἅπτονται,
toward the enclosure having-driven and not at-once battle engage
ἀλλὰ ἐῶσι γὰρ λιμῷ τε ταλαιπωρηθῆναι τοὺς ἀγρίους
but allow for by-hunger both to-be-distressed the wild
ἐλέφαντας καὶ ὑπὸ τῷ δίψεϊ δουλωθῆναι.
elephants and by the thirst to-be-subdued

13.9 εὖτ᾽ ἂν δέ σφισι κακῶς ἔχειν δοκέωσι, τηνικαῦτα
when — and to-them badly to-be-faring they-seem then
ἐπιστήσαντες αὖθις τὴν γέφυραν ἐλαύνουσί τε ὡς ἐπὶ
having-set-up again the bridge drive both as toward
τὸ ἕρκος, καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα μάχη κατίσταται καρτερὴ
the enclosure and the indeed first battle arises fierce
τοῖσιν ἡμέροισι τῶν ἐλεφάντων πρὸς τοὺς ἑαλωκότας·
for-the tame of-the elephants against the captured
13.10 ἔπειτα κρατέονται μὲν κατὰ τὸ οἰκὸς οἱ ἄγριοι ὑπό τε
then are-overcome indeed as-is the likely the wild by both
τῇ ἀθυμίῃ καὶ τῷ λιμῷ ταλαιπωρεύμενοι.
the despondency and the hunger being-distressed
13.11 οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐλεφάντων καταβάντες παρειμένοισιν
they and from the elephants having-dismounted exhausted
ἤδη τοῖσιν ἀγρίοισι τοὺς πόδας ἄκρους συνδέουσιν, ἔπειτα
already for-the wild the feet tips they-tie-together then
ἐγκελεύονται τοῖσιν ἡμέροισι πληγῇσι σφᾶς κολάζειν
they-urge the tame with-blows them to-chastise
πολλῇσιν, ἔστ᾽ ἂν ἐκεῖνοι ταλαιπωρεύμενοι ἐς γῆν πέσωσι.
many until — those being-distressed to earth should-fall
παραστάντες δὲ βρόχους περιβάλλουσιν αὐτοῖσι κατὰ
having-stood-by and nooses they-throw-around them about
τοὺς αὐχένας, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπιβαίνουσι κειμένοισι.
the necks and themselves mount the-lying
13.12 τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἀποσείεσθαι τοὺς ἀμβάτας μηδέ τι ἄλλο
for-the and not to-shake-off the riders nor any other
ἀτάσθαλον ἐργάζεσθαι, τὸν τράχηλον αὐτοῖσιν ἐν κύκλῳ
reckless to-do the neck of-them in circle
μαχαιρίῳ ὀξέι ἐπιτέμνουσι, καὶ τὸν βρόχον κατὰ τὴν
with-knife sharp they-cut-around and the noose in the

τομὴν περιδέουσιν, ὡς ἀτρέμα ἔχειν τὴν κεφαλήν τε
cut they-bind-around so-that still to-hold the head both
καὶ τὸν τράχηλον ὑπὸ τοῦ ἕλκεος.
and the neck from the wound
εἰ γὰρ περιστρέφοιντο ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίης, τρίβεται αὐτοῖσι 13.13
if for they-should-turn from recklessness is-rubbed for-them
τὸ ἕλκος ὑπὸ τῷ κάλῳ.
the wound by the rope

IV · ELEPHANTS, BEASTS, AND THE INDIAN WAY OF LIFE

Captured elephants that refuse food are lulled with songs, drums, and cymbals; they are wise, carrying fallen riders to burial, and Arrian has seen them play cymbals and dance. They live up to two hundred years. Nearchus saw tiger skins and the skins of the gold-digging ants Megasthenes describes, and tells of great snakes, while Arrian passes over parrots and apes as familiar; Indian doctors cure snakebite. The Indians dress in linen, dye their beards, carry parasols, fight with tall bows, javelins, and two-handed swords, and ride without saddles. Chaste women give themselves for an elephant, and girls marry victors in contests. Arrian then turns to the voyage.

οὕτω ὦν ἀτρέμα ἴσχουσι, καὶ ταύτῃ γνωσιμαχέοντες 14.1
so then still they-keep and in-this-way acknowledging-defeat
ἤδη ἄγονται πρὸς τῶν ἡμέρων. ὅσοι δὲ νήπιοι αὐτῶν
already are-led by the tame as-many-as and young of-them
ἢ διὰ κακότητα οὐκ ἄξιοι ἐκτῆσθαι, τούτους ἐῶσιν
or because-of badness not worthy to-be-possessed these they-allow
ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐς τὰ σφέτερα ἤθεα.
to-go-away to the their-own haunts
ἄγοντες δὲ ἐς τὰς κώμας τοὺς ἁλόντας τοῦ τε χλωροῦ 14.2
leading and to the villages the captured of-the both green
καλάμου καὶ τῆς ποίης τὰ πρῶτα ἐμφαγεῖν ἔδοσαν,
reed and of-the grass the first to-eat they-gave

14.3 οἳ δὲ ὑπὸ ἀθυμίης οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν οὐδὲν σιτέεσθαι, τοὺς
they and from despondency not wish anything to-eat them
δὲ περιστάμενοι οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ᾠδῇσί τε καὶ τυμπάνοισι καὶ
and standing-around the Indians with-songs both and with-drums and
κυμβάλοισιν κρούοντές τε καὶ ἐπᾴδοντες κατευνάζουσι.
with-cymbals beating both and singing lull-to-sleep
14.4 θυμόσοφον γὰρ εἴπερ τι ἄλλο θηρίον ἐλέφας, καί
wise-of-heart for if-indeed any other beast elephant and
τινες ἤδη αὐτῶν τοὺς ἀμβάτας σφῶν ἐν πολέμῳ
some already of-them the riders their in war
ἀποθανόντας ἄραντες αὐτοὶ ἐξήνεγκαν ἐς ταφήν, οἳ
having-died having-lifted themselves carried-out to burial others
δὲ καὶ ὑπερήσπισαν κειμένους, οἳ δὲ καὶ πεσόντων
and also shielded-over them-lying others and also of-the-fallen
προεκινδύνευσαν, ὁ δέ τις πρὸς ὀργὴν ἀποκτείνας τὸν
ran-risk-in-front one and some in anger having-killed the
ἀμβάτην ὑπὸ μετανοίης τε καὶ ἀθυμίης ἀπέθανεν.
rider from remorse both and despondency died
14.5 εἶδον δὲ ἐγὼ καὶ κυμβαλίζοντα ἤδη ἐλέφαντα καὶ
saw and I also cymbal-playing already an-elephant and
ἄλλους ὀρχεομένους, κυμβάλου τῷ κυμβαλίζοντι πρὸς
others dancing a-cymbal to-the cymbal-player to
τοῖν σκελοῖν τοῖν ἔμπροσθε προσηρτημένου, καὶ πρὸς
the-two legs the-two front fastened and to
τῇ προβοσκίδι καλεομένῃ ἄλλο κύμβαλον·
the trunk called another cymbal
14.6 ὁ δὲ ἐν μέρεϊ τῇ προβοσκίδι ἔκρουε τὸ κύμβαλον ἐν
he and in turn with-the trunk struck the cymbal in
ῥυθμῷ πρὸς ἑκατέροιν τοῖν σκελοῖν, οἳ δὲ ὀρχεόμενοι ἐν
rhythm against each the-two legs they and dancing in
κύκλῳ τε ἐχόρευον, καὶ ἐπαίροντές τε καὶ ἐπικάμπτοντες
circle both danced and raising both and bending

τὰ ἔμπροσθε σκέλεα ἐν τῷ μέρεϊ ἐν ῥυθμῷ καὶ οὗτοι
the front legs in the turn in rhythm and these
ἔβαινον, κατ᾽ ὅτι ὁ κυμβαλίζων σφίσιν ὑπηγέετο.
stepped according-to what the cymbal-player for-them led
βαίνεται δὲ ἐλέφας ἦρος ὥρῃ, κατάπερ βοῦς ἢ ἵππος, 14.7
is-mounted and elephant in-spring season as ox or horse
ἐπεὰν τῇσι θηλέῃσιν αἱ παρὰ τοῖσι κροτάφοισιν ἀναπνοαὶ
when for-the females the by the temples breathing-holes
ἀνοιχθεῖσαι ἐκπνέωσι. κύει δὲ τοὺς ἐλαχίστους μὲν
having-opened breathe-out is-pregnant and the shortest indeed
ἑκκαίδεκα μῆνας, τοὺς πλείστους δὲ ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τίκτει
sixteen months the most and eighteen gives-birth
δὲ ἕν, κατάπερ ἵππος, καὶ τοῦτο ἐκτρέφει τῷ γάλακτι
and one as horse and this rears with-the milk
ἐς ἔτος ὄγδοον.
to year eighth
ζώουσι δὲ ἐλεφάντων οἱ πλεῖστα ἔτεα ζώοντες ἐς 14.8
live and of-elephants those most years living to
διηκόσια, πολλοὶ δὲ νούσῳ προτελευτέουσιν.
two-hundred many and by-disease die-before
καὶ ἔστιν αὐτοῖσι τῶν μὲν ὀφθαλμῶν ἴημα βόειον γάλα 14.9
and there-is for-them of-the indeed eyes remedy cow's milk
ἐγχεόμενον, πρὸς δὲ τὰς ἄλλας νούσους μέλας οἶνος
poured-in for and the other diseases black wine
πινόμενος, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖσιν ἕλκεσι ὕεια κρέα ὀπτεύμενα καὶ
drunk on and the wounds pork meat roasted and
καταπλασσόμενα.
plastered-on
τοῦ δὲ ἐλέφαντος τὴν τίγριν πολλόν τι ἀλκιμωτέρην 15.1
than-the and elephant the tiger much somewhat more-valiant
Ἰνδοὶ ἄγουσι. τίγριος δὲ δορὴν μὲν ἰδεῖν λέγει Νέαρχος,
Indians consider of-tiger and skin indeed to-have-seen says Nearchus

αὐτὴν δὲ τίγριν οὐκ ἰδεῖν· ἀλλὰ τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς γὰρ
itself but tiger not to-have-seen but the Indians for
ἀπηγέεσθαι, τίγριν εἶναι μέγαθος μὲν ἡλίκον τὸν μέγιστον
to-relate tiger to-be in-size indeed as-large-as the largest
ἵππον, τὴν δὲ ὠκύτητα καὶ ἀλκὴν οἵην οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ εἰκάσαι·
horse the and swiftness and strength such-as to-nothing other to-liken
15.2 ἐπεὰν γὰρ ὁμοῦ ἔλθῃ ἐλέφαντι, ἐπιπηδᾶν τε ἐπὶ τὴν
when for together it-comes with-an-elephant to-leap both on the
κεφαλὴν τοῦ ἐλέφαντος καὶ ἄγχειν εὐπετέως.
head of-the elephant and to-throttle easily
15.3 ταύτας δέ, ἄστινας καὶ ἡμεῖς ὁρέομεν καὶ τίγριας καλέομεν,
these and which also we see and tigers call
θῶας εἶναι αἰόλους καὶ μέζονας ἤπερ τοὺς ἄλλους θῶας.
jackals to-be spotted and larger than the other jackals
15.4 ἐπεὶ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρμήκων λέγει Νέαρχος μύρμηκα
since also about the ants says Nearchus an-ant
μὲν αὐτὸς οὐκ ἰδέειν, ὁκοῖον δή τινα μετεξέτεροι
indeed himself not to-have-seen of-the-sort-which indeed (a-kind) certain-(writers)
διέγραψαν γίνεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ, δορὰς δὲ καὶ τούτων
described to-occur in the of-Indians land skins and also of-these
ἰδεῖν πολλὰς ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον κατακομισθείσας τὸ
to-have-seen many to the camp brought-down the
Μακεδονικόν.
Macedonian
15.5 Μεγασθένης δὲ ἀτρεκέα εἶναι ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρμήκων τὸν
Megasthenes and exact to-be about the ants the
λόγον ἱστορέει, τούτους εἶναι τοὺς τὸν χρυσὸν ὀρύσσοντας,
account relates these to-be those the gold digging
οὐκ αὐτοῦ τοῦ χρυσοῦ εἵνεκα, ἀλλὰ φύσι γὰρ κατὰ
not itself the gold for-the-sake but by-nature for under

τῆς γῆς ὀρύσσουσιν, ἵνα φωλεύωσι, κατάπερ οἱ ἡμέτεροι
the earth they-dig so-that they-may-lurk as the our
οἱ σμικροὶ μύρμηκες ὀλίγον τῆς γῆς ὀρύσσουσιν.
the small ants a-little of-the earth dig
ἐκείνους δέ — εἶναι γὰρ ἀλωπέκων μέζονας — πρὸς λόγον 15.6
those and to-be for than-foxes larger in proportion
τοῦ μεγάθεος σφῶν καὶ τὴν γῆν ὀρύσσειν· τὴν δὲ γῆν
of-the size their and the earth to-dig the and earth
χρυσῖτιν εἶναι, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης γίνεσθαι Ἰνδοῖσι τὸν χρυσόν.
gold-bearing to-be and from this to-come to-Indians the gold
ἀλλὰ Μεγασθένης τε ἀκοὴν ἀπηγέεται, καὶ ἐγὼ ὅτι 15.7
but Megasthenes both hearsay relates and I because
οὐδὲν τούτου ἀτρεκέστερον ἀναγράψαι ἔχω, ἀπίημι ἑκὼν
nothing than-this more-exact to-record am-able let-go willingly
τὸν ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρμήκων λόγον.
the about the ants account
σιττακοὺς δὲ Νέαρχος μὲν ὡς δή τι θῶμα ἀπηγέεται 15.8
parrots and Nearchus indeed as indeed some marvel relates
ὅτι γίνονται ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ, καὶ ὁκοῖος ὄρνις ἐστὶν ὁ
that they-occur in the of-Indians land and what-sort bird is the
σιττακός, καὶ ὅκως φωνὴν ἵει ἀνθρωπίνην.
parrot and how voice it-utters human
ἐγὼ δὲ ὅτι αὐτός τε πολλοὺς ὀπώπεα καὶ ἄλλους 15.9
I and because myself both many have-seen and others
ἐπισταμένους ᾔδεα τὸν ὄρνιθα, οὐδὲν ὡς ὑπὲρ ἀτόπου
knowing knew the bird nothing as about strange
δῆθεν ἀπηγήσομαι· οὐδὲ ὑπὲρ τῶν πιθήκων τοῦ μεγάθεος,
forsooth will-relate nor about the apes the size
ἢ ὅτι καλοὶ παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖσι πίθηκοί εἰσιν, οὐδὲ ὅκως
or that fine among Indians apes are nor how

θηρέονται ἐρέω. καὶ γὰρ ταῦτα γνώριμα ἐρέω, πλήν
they-are-hunted I-will-tell and for these-things known I-will-tell except
γε δὴ ὅτι καλοὶ κου πίθηκοί εἰσι.
at-least indeed that fine I-suppose apes are
15.10 καὶ ὄφιας δὲ λέγει Νέαρχος θηρευθῆναι αἰόλους μὲν καὶ
and snakes and says Nearchus to-have-been-hunted spotted indeed and
ταχέας, μέγαθος δέ, ὧν μὲν λέγει ἑλεῖν Πείθωνα τὸν
swift in-size and which indeed he-says to-have-caught Peithon the
Ἀντιγένεος, πήχεων ὡς ἑκκαίδεκα· αὐτοὺς δὲ τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς
(son)-of-Antigenes of-cubits about sixteen themselves and the Indians
πολὺ μέζονας τούτων λέγειν εἶναι τοὺς μεγίστους ὄφιας.
much larger than-these to-say to-be the greatest snakes
15.11 ὅσοι δὲ ἰητροὶ Ἕλληνες, τούτοισιν οὐδὲν ἄκος ἐξεύρητο
as-many-as and physicians Greek to-these no remedy had-been-found
ὅστις ὑπὸ ὄφιος δηχθείη Ἰνδικοῦ· ἀλλὰ αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ
whoever by snake should-be-bitten Indian but themselves for the
Ἰνδοὶ ἰῶντο τοὺς πληγέντας. καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε Νέαρχος λέγει
Indians healed those struck and for this Nearchus says
ὅτι συλλελεγμένους ἀμφ' ἑωυτὸν εἶχεν Ἀλέξανδρος Ἰνδῶν
that gathered around himself had Alexander of-Indians
ὅσοι ἰητρικὴν σοφώτατοι, καὶ ἐκεκήρυκτο ἀνὰ
as-many-as in-medicine wisest and it-had-been-proclaimed throughout
τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὅστις δηχθείη, ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν φοιτᾶν
the camp whoever should-be-bitten to the tent to-come
τὴν τοῦ βασιλέος.
the of-the king
15.12 οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων νούσων τε καὶ παθέων
the and same these also of-the other diseases both and sufferings
ἰητροὶ ἦσαν. οὐ πολλὰ δὲ ἐν Ἰνδοῖσι πάθεα γίνεται,
physicians were not many and among Indians sufferings occur
ὅτι αἱ ὧραι σύμμετροί εἰσιν αὐτόθι· εἰ δέ τι μέζον
because the seasons temperate are there if and something greater

καταλαμβάνοι, τοῖσι σοφιστῇσιν ἀνεκοινοῦντο· καὶ ἐκεῖνοι
should-seize to-the sages they-referred and those
οὐκ ἄνευ θεοῦ ἐδόκεον ἰῆσθαι ὅ τι περ ἰήσιμον.
not without god seemed to-heal what ever indeed curable
ἐσθῆτι δὲ Ἰνδοὶ λινέῃ χρέονται, κατάπερ λέγει Νέαρχος, 16.1
clothing and Indians linen use as says Nearchus
λίνου τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν δενδρέων, ὑπὲρ ὅτων μοι ἤδη
of-linen the from the trees about which to-me already
λέλεκται. τὸ δὲ λίνον τοῦτο ἢ λαμπρότερον τὴν χροιήν
has-been-said the and linen this either brighter in-the color
ἐστιν ἄλλου λίνου παντός, ἢ μέλανες αὐτοὶ ἐόντες
is than-other linen all or black themselves being
λαμπρότερον τὸ λίνον φαίνεσθαι ποιέουσιν.
brighter the linen to-appear make
ἔστι δὲ κιθὼν λίνεος αὐτοῖσιν ἔστε ἐπὶ μέσην τὴν κνήμην, 16.2
is and tunic linen for-them as-far to middle the shin
νῆμα δὲ τὸ μὲν τοῖσιν ὤμοισι περιβεβλημένον, τὸ
spun-cloth and the-one indeed on-the shoulders thrown-around the-other
δὲ περὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσιν εἰλιγμένον.
and around the heads wound
καὶ ἐνώτια Ἰνδοὶ φορέουσιν ἐλέφαντος, ὅσοι κάρτα 16.3
and earrings Indians wear of-ivory as-many-as very
εὐδαίμονες· οὐ γὰρ πάντες Ἰνδοὶ φορέουσι.
prosperous not for all Indians wear
τοὺς δὲ πώγωνας λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι βάπτονται Ἰνδοὶ 16.4
the and beards says Nearchus that dye Indians
χροιὴν ἄλλην καὶ ἄλλην, οἳ μέν, ὡς λευκοὺς φαίνεσθαι
color other and other some indeed so-that white to-appear
οἵους λευκοτάτους, οἳ δὲ κυανέους· τοῖσι δὲ φοινικέους
such-as whitest others and dark-blue to-some and red
εἶναι, τοῖσι δὲ καὶ πορφυρέους, ἄλλοισι πρασοειδέας·
to-be to-some and also purple to-others leek-green

16.5 καὶ σκιάδια ὅτι προβάλλονται τοῦ θέρεος ὅσοι
and parasols that they-hold-before-them in-the summer as-many-as
οὔκ ἠμεληµένοι Ἰνδῶν. ὑποδήµατα δὲ λευκοῦ δέρµατος
not neglected of-Indians shoes and of-white leather
φορέουσι, περισσῶς καὶ ταῦτα ἠσκηµένα· καὶ τὰ ἴχνεα
they-wear elaborately and these worked and the soles
τῶν ὑποδηµάτων αὐτοῖσι ποικίλα καὶ ὑψηλά, τοῦ µέζονας
of-the shoes for-them variegated and high for-the taller
φαίνεσθαι.
to-appear

16.6 ὁπλίσιος δὲ τῆς Ἰνδῶν οὐκ ὠυτὸς εἷς τρόπος, ἀλλὰ
of-armament and of-the Indians not the-same one manner but
οἱ µὲν πεζοὶ αὐτοῖσι τόξον τε ἔχουσιν, ἰσόµηκες τῷ
the indeed infantry for-them bow both have of-equal-length to-the
φορέοντι τὸ τόξον, καὶ τοῦτο κάτω ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν
bearer the bow and this down on the ground
θέντες καὶ τῷ ποδὶ τῷ ἀριστερῷ ἀντιβάντες, οὕτως
having-set and with-the foot the left having-stepped-against so
ἐκτοξεύουσι, τὴν νευρὴν ἐπὶ µέγα ὀπίσω ἀπαγαγόντες·
they-shoot the string to great back having-drawn

16.7 ὁ γὰρ ὀιστὸς αὐτοῖσιν ὀλίγον ἀποδέων τριπήχεος, οὐδέ
the for arrow for-them a-little falling-short of-three-cubits nor
τι ἀντέχει τοξευθὲν πρὸς Ἰνδοῦ ἀνδρὸς τοξικοῦ, οὔτε
anything withstands shot by Indian man archer neither
ἀσπὶς οὔτε θώρηξ οὔτε εἴ τι καρτερώτερον ἐγένετο.
shield nor breastplate nor if anything stronger existed

16.8 ἐν δὲ τῇσιν ἀριστερῇσι πέλται εἰσὶν αὐτοῖσιν ὠµοβόιναι,
in and the left-hands light-shields are for-them of-raw-oxhide
στεινότεραι µὲν ἢ κατὰ τοὺς φορέοντας, µήκεϊ δὲ οὐ
narrower indeed than as-wide-as the bearers in-length but not
πολλὸν ἀποδέουσαι. τοῖσι δὲ ἄκοντες ἀντὶ τόξων εἰσί.
much falling-short for-others and javelins instead-of bows are

μάχαιραν δὲ πάντες φορέουσι, πλατέαν δὲ καὶ τὸ μῆκος 16.9
sword and all wear broad and and the length
οὐ μέζω τριπήχεος· καὶ ταύτην, ἐπεὰν συστάδην καταστῇ
not greater than-three-cubits and this when hand-to-hand should-be-set
αὐτοῖσιν ἡ μάχη — τὸ δὲ οὐκ εὐμαρέως Ἰνδοῖσιν ἐς
for-them the battle this and not easily for-Indians against
ἀλλήλους γίνεται — ἀμφοῖν τοῖν χεροῖν καταφέρουσιν,
one-another happens with-both the-two hands they-bring-down
τοῦ καρτερὴν τὴν πληγὴν γενέσθαι.
for-the strong the blow to-be
οἱ δὲ ἱππέες αὐτοῖσιν ἀκόντια δύο ἔχουσιν, οἷα τὰ σαύνια 16.10
the and cavalry for-them javelins two have such-as the saunia
ἀκόντια, καὶ πέλτην σμικροτέρην τῶν πεζῶν. οἱ δὲ ἵπποι
javelins and light-shield smaller than-the infantry the and horses
αὐτοῖσιν οὐ σεσαγμένοι εἰσίν, οὐδὲ χαλινοῦνται τοῖσιν
for-them not saddled are nor are-bridled with-the
Ἑλληνικοῖσι χαλινοῖσιν ἢ τοῖσι Κελτικοῖσιν ἐμφερέως,
Greek bridles or the Celtic in-like-manner
ἀλλὰ περὶ ἄκρῳ τῷ στόματι ἐν κύκλῳ ἔχουσι δέρμα 16.11
but around tip the mouth in circle they-have skin
ὠμοβόινον ῥαπτὸν περιηρτημένον, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ χάλκεα
raw-oxhide sewn fastened-around and in this bronze
κέντρα ἢ σιδήρεα, οὐ κάρτα ὀξέα, ἔσω ἐστραμμένα·
spikes or iron not very sharp inward turned
τοῖσι δὲ πλουσίοισιν ἐλεφάντινα κέντρα ἐστίν. ἐν δὲ τῷ
for-the and rich ivory spikes are in and the
στόματι σίδηρον αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ἵπποι ἔχουσιν, οἷόν περ
mouth iron for-them the horses have such-as indeed
ὀβελόν, ἔνθεν ἐξηρτημένοι εἰσὶν αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ῥυτῆρες·
a-spit from-which attached are for-them the reins

16.12 ἐπεὰν ὦν ἐπαγάγωσι τὸν ῥυτῆρα, ὅ τε ὀβελὸς κρατέει
when then they-pull the rein the both spit masters
τὸν ἵππον, καὶ τὰ κέντρα, οἷα δὴ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἠρτημένα,
the horse and the spikes as indeed from it fastened
κεντέοντα οὐκ ἐᾷ ἄλλο τι ἢ πείθεσθαι τῷ ῥυτῆρι.
pricking not allow other anything than to-obey the rein
17.1 τὰ δὲ σώματα ἰσχνοί τέ εἰσιν Ἰνδοὶ καὶ εὐμήκεες,
the and bodies lean both are Indians and tall
καὶ κοῦφοι πολλόν τι ὑπὲρ τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους.
and light much somewhat beyond the other men
ὀχήματα δὲ τοῖσι μὲν πολλοῖσιν Ἰνδῶν κάμηλοί εἰσι καὶ
vehicles and for-the indeed many of-Indians camels are and
ἵπποι καὶ ὄνοι, τοῖσι δὲ εὐδαίμοσιν ἐλέφαντες.
horses and asses for-the and prosperous elephants
17.2 βασιλικὸν γὰρ ὄχημα ὁ ἐλέφας παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖσίν ἐστι,
royal for vehicle the elephant among Indians is
δεύτερον δὲ τιμῇ τὰ τέθριππα, τρίτον δὲ αἱ κάμηλοι.
second and in-honor the four-horse-chariots third and the camels
τὸ δὲ ἐπ᾽ ἑνὸς ἵππου ὀχέεσθαι ἄτιμον.
the and on one horse to-ride without-honor
17.3 αἱ γυναῖκες δὲ αὐτοῖσιν, ὅσαι κάρτα σώφρονες, ἐπὶ
the women and for-them as-many-as very chaste for
μὲν ἄλλῳ μισθῷ οὐκ ἄν τι διαμάρτοιεν, ἐλέφαντα δὲ
indeed other pay not — anything would-go-astray an-elephant but
λαβοῦσα γυνὴ μίσγεται τῷ δόντι· οὐδὲ αἰσχρὸν Ἰνδοὶ
having-received a-woman lies-with the giver nor shameful Indians
ἄγουσι τὸ ἐπὶ ἐλέφαντι μιγῆναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ σεμνὸν δοκέει
consider the for elephant to-lie-with but even dignified seems
τῇσι γυναιξὶν ἀξίην τὸ κάλλος φανῆναι ἐλέφαντος.
to-the women worthy in-the beauty to-appear of-an-elephant

γαμέουσι δὲ οὔτε τι διδόντες οὔτε τι λαμβάνοντες, 17.4
they-marry and neither anything giving nor anything taking
ἀλλὰ ὅσαι ἤδη ὡραῖαι γάμου, ταύτας δὲ οἱ πατέρες
but as-many-as already ripe for-marriage these and the fathers
προάγοντες ἐς τὸ ἐμφανὲς κατιστᾶσιν ἐκλέξασθαι τῷ
bringing-forward into the open set-up to-choose for-the
νικήσαντι πάλην ἢ πὺξ ἢ δρόμον ἢ κατ᾽ ἄλλην τινὰ
having-won at-wrestling or boxing or running or in another some
ἀνδρηίην προκριθέντι.
manliness having-been-preferred
σιτοφάγοι δὲ καὶ ἀροτῆρες Ἰνδοί εἰσιν, ὅσοι γε μὴ 17.5
grain-eaters and and plowmen Indians are as-many-as at-least not
ὄρειοι αὐτῶν· οὗτοι δὲ θηρήια κρέα σιτέονται.
mountain-dwellers of-them these and wild-game meat eat
ταῦτά μοι ἀπόχρη δεδηλῶσθαι ὑπὲρ Ἰνδῶν, ὅσα 17.6
these-things for-me suffices to-have-been-shown about Indians as-many-as
γνωριμώτατα Νέαρχός τε καὶ Μεγασθένης, δοκίμω ἄνδρε,
most-known Nearchus both and Megasthenes reputable two-men
ἀνεγραψάτην·
recorded
ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲ ἡ ὑπόθεσίς μοι τῆσδε τῆς συγγραφῆς τὰ 17.7
since and not-even the subject to-me of-this the history the
Ἰνδῶν νόμιμα ἀναγράψαι ἦν, ἀλλὰ ὅκως γὰρ περιεκομίσθη
of-Indians customs to-record was but how for was-conveyed-round
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς Πέρσας ἐξ Ἰνδῶν ὁ στόλος, ταῦτα δέ
for-Alexander to Persians from Indians the fleet these-things and
μοι ἐκβολὴ ἔστω τοῦ λόγου.
for-me digression let-be of-the account

Alexander mans his fleet on the Hydaspes with Phoenicians, Cyprians, Egyptians, and islanders, under trierarchs whom Arrian lists, with Nearchus as admiral and Onesicritus as helmsman of the royal ship. He sacrifices to his gods and to the sea and rivers, holds games, and sails down to the Acesines while Craterus and Hephaestion march along the banks. Arrian follows Nearchus' account of the voyage from the Indus to the Persian Gulf. Alexander, Nearchus says, longed for the voyage but feared for the fleet, and Nearchus volunteered to lead it. When the etesian winds lull, the fleet sets out down the Indus, cuts a channel through a reef at its mouth, and reaches a harbor Nearchus names after Alexander, where he walls his camp and strong winds hold it for twenty-four days.

18.1 Ἀλέξανδρος γάρ, ἐπειδή οἱ παρεσκεύαστο τὸ ναυτικὸν
Alexander for when for-him had-been-prepared the fleet
ἐπὶ τοῦ Ὑδάσπεω τῇσιν ὄχθῃσιν, ἐπιλεγόμενος ὅσοι
on — Hydaspes the banks choosing as-many-as
τε Φοίνικες καὶ ὅσοι Κύπριοι καὶ Αἰγύπτιοι εἵποντο ἐν
both Phoenicians and as-many-as Cyprians and Egyptians followed in
τῇ ἄνω στρατηλασίῃ, ἐκ τούτων ἐπλήρου τὰς νέας,
the up-country expedition from these he-manned the ships
ὑπηρεσίας τε αὐτῇσι καὶ ἐρέτας ἐπιλεγόμενος ὅσοι
crews both for-them and rowers choosing as-many-as
τῶν θαλασσίων ἔργων δαήμονες.
of-the sea works skilled

18.2 ἦσαν δὲ καὶ νησιῶται ἄνδρες οὐκ ὀλίγοι ἐν τῇ στρατιῇ,
were and also islanders men not few in the army
οἷσι ταῦτα ἔμελε, καὶ Ἴωνες καὶ Ἑλλησπόντιοι.
to-whom these-things were-a-concern and Ionians and Hellespontines

18.3 τριήραρχοι δὲ αὐτοῖσιν ἐπεστάθησαν ἐκ Μακεδόνων μὲν
trierarchs and over-them were-appointed from Macedonians indeed
Ἡφαιστίων τε ὁ Ἀμύντορος, καὶ Λεόννατος ὁ Ἀντέου,
Hephaestion both the (son)-of-Amyntor and Leonnatus the (son)-of-Anteas

καὶ Λυσίμαχος ὁ Ἀγαθοκλέος, καὶ Ἀσκληπιόδωρος ὁ
and Lysimachus the (son)-of-Agathocles and Asclepiodorus the
Τιμάνδρου, καὶ Ἄρχων ὁ Κλεινίεω, καὶ Δημόνικος
(son)-of-Timander and Archon the (son)-of-Cleinias and Demonicus
ὁ Ἀθηναίου, καὶ Ἀρχίης ὁ Ἀναξιδότεω, καὶ Ὀφέλας
the (son)-of-Athenaeus and Archias the (son)-of-Anaxidotus and Ophellas
ὁ Σειληνοῦ, καὶ Τιμάνθης ὁ Παντιάδεω. οὗτοι μὲν
the (son)-of-Silenus and Timanthes the (son)-of-Pantiades these indeed
Πελλαῖοι· ἐκ δὲ Ἀμφιπόλιος ἦγον οἵδε·
Pellaeans from and Amphipolis commanded these
Νέαρχος ὁ Ἀνδροτίμου, ὃς τὰ ἀμφὶ τῷ παραπλόῳ 18.4
Nearchus the (son)-of-Androtimus who the-things about the coasting-voyage
ἀνέγραψε· καὶ Λαομέδων ὁ Λαρίχου, καὶ Ἀνδροσθένης
recorded and Laomedon the (son)-of-Larichus and Androsthenes
ὁ Καλλιστράτου·
the (son)-of-Callistratus
ἐκ δὲ τῆς Ὀρεστίδος Κράτερός τε ὁ Ἀλεξάνδρου, καὶ 18.5
from and — Orestis Craterus both the (son)-of-Alexander and
Περδίκκας ὁ Ὀρόντεω· Ἐορδαῖοι δὲ Πτολεμαῖός τε ὁ
Perdiccas the (son)-of-Orontes Eordaeans and Ptolemy both the
Λάγου καὶ Ἀριστόνοος ὁ Πισαίου. ἐκ Πύδνης δὲ
(son)-of-Lagus and Aristonous the (son)-of-Pisaeus from Pydna and
Μήτρων τε ὁ Ἐπιχάρμου καὶ Νικαρχίδης ὁ Σίμου.
Metron both the (son)-of-Epicharmus and Nicarchides the (son)-of-Simus
ἐπὶ δὲ Ἄτταλός τε ὁ Ἀνδρομένεος Τυμφαῖος, καὶ 18.6
besides and Attalus both the (son)-of-Andromenes Tymphaean and
Πευκέστας ὁ Ἀλεξάνδρου, Μιεζεύς, καὶ Πείθων ὁ Κρατεύα,
Peucestas the (son)-of-Alexander Miezan and Peithon the (son)-of-Crateuas
Ἀλκομενεύς, καὶ Λεόννατος ὁ Ἀντιπάτρου Αἰγαῖος, καὶ
Alcomenian and Leonnatus the (son)-of-Antipater Aegaean and

Πάνταυχος ὁ Νικολάου Ἀλωρίτης, καὶ Μυλλέας ὁ
Pantauchus the (son)-of-Nicolaus Alorite and Mylleas the
Ζωΐλου Βεροιαῖος. οὗτοι μὲν οἱ σύμπαντες Μακεδόνες·
(son)-of-Zoilus Beroean these indeed the all Macedonians
18.7 Ἑλλήνων δὲ Μήδιος μὲν ὁ Ὀξυθέμιδος Λαρισαῖος,
of-Greeks and Medius indeed the (son)-of-Oxythemis Larisaean
Εὐμένης δὲ ὁ Ἱερωνύμου ἐκ Καρδίης, Κριτόβουλος
Eumenes and the (son)-of-Hieronymus from Cardia Critobulus
δὲ ὁ Πλάτωνος Κῷος καὶ Θόας ὁ Μηνοδώρου καὶ
and the (son)-of-Plato Coan and Thoas the (son)-of-Menodorus and
Μαίανδρος ὁ Μανδρογένεος Μάγνητες.
Maeandrus the (son)-of-Mandrogenes Magnesians
18.8 Ἄνδρων δὲ ὁ Καβήλεω Τήιος, Κυπρίων δὲ Νικοκλέης
Andron and the (son)-of-Cabeles Teian of-Cyprians and Nicocles
ὁ Πασικράτεος Σόλιος, καὶ Νιθάφων ὁ Πνυταγόρεω
the (son)-of-Pasicrates Solian and Nithaphon the (son)-of-Pnytagoras
Σαλαμίνιος. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ Πέρσης αὐτῷ τριήραρχος,
Salaminian was and indeed also a-Persian for-him trierarch
Βαγώας ὁ Φαρνούχεω.
Bagoas the (son)-of-Pharnuches
18.9 τῆς δὲ αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου νεὸς κυβερνήτης ἦν Ὀνησίκριτος
of-the and of-himself Alexander ship helmsman was Onesicritus
Ἀστυπαλαιεύς, γραμματεὺς δὲ τοῦ στόλου παντὸς Εὐαγόρας
Astypalaean secretary and of-the fleet whole Euagoras
ὁ Εὐκλέωνος Κορίνθιος.
the (son)-of-Eucleon Corinthian
18.10 ναύαρχος δὲ αὐτοῖσιν ἐπεστάθη Νέαρχος ὁ Ἀνδροτίμου,
admiral and over-them was-appointed Nearchus the (son)-of-Androtimus
τὸ γένος μὲν Κρὴς ὁ Νέαρχος, ᾤκεε δὲ ἐν Ἀμφιπόλι
the race indeed Cretan — Nearchus he-lived but in Amphipolis
τῇ ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι.
the on Strymon

ὡς δὲ ταῦτα ἐκεκόσμητο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ἔθυε τοῖσι 18.11
when and these-things had-been-ordered by-Alexander he-sacrificed to-the
θεοῖσιν ὅσοι γε πάτριοι ἢ μαντευτοὶ αὐτῷ, καὶ
gods as-many-as at-least ancestral or prescribed-by-oracle for-him and
Ποσειδῶνι καὶ Ἀμφιτρίτῃ καὶ Νηρηίσι καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ
to-Poseidon and to-Amphitrite and to-Nereids and to-itself the
Ὠκεανῷ, καὶ τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ ποταμῷ, ἀπ᾽ ὅτου ὡρμᾶτο,
Ocean and to-the Hydaspes river from which he-set-out
καὶ τῷ Ἀκεσίνῃ, ἐς ὅντινα ἐκδιδοῖ Ὑδάσπης, καὶ τῷ
and — to-Acesines into which flows-out Hydaspes and —
Ἰνδῷ, ἐς ὅντινα ἄμφω ἐκδιδοῦσιν·
to-Indus into which both flow-out
ἀγῶνές τε αὐτῷ μουσικοί τε καὶ γυμνικοὶ ἐποιεῦντο, καὶ 18.12
contests both for-him musical both and gymnastic were-held and
ἱερήϊα τῇ στρατιῇ πάσῃ κατὰ τέλεα ἐδίδοτο.
victims for-the army all by units were-given
ὡς δὲ πάντα ἐξήρτυτο αὐτῷ ἐς ἀναγωγήν, Κράτερον 19.1
when and everything had-been-made-ready for-him for putting-out Craterus
μὲν τὰ ἐπὶ θάτερα τοῦ Ὑδάσπεω ἐπιέναι σὺν στρατιῇ
indeed the-parts on the-other-side — of-Hydaspes to-go with army
ἐκέλευσε πεζικῇ τε καὶ ἱππικῇ· ἐς τὸ ἐπὶ θάτερα δὲ
he-ordered infantry both and cavalry on the on the-other-side and
Ἡφαιστίων αὐτῷ προεπορεύετο, σὺν ἄλλῃ στρατιῇ πλείονι
Hephaestion for-him went-ahead with another army larger
ἔτι τῆς Κρατέρῳ συντεταγμένης. καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας
still than-the with-Craterus drawn-up and the elephants
Ἡφαιστίων αὐτῷ ἦγεν, ὄντας ἐς διηκοσίους.
Hephaestion for-him led being about two-hundred

19.2 αὐτὸς δὲ τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς καλεομένους ἅμα οἳ
himself and the both shield-bearers called together-with himself
ἦγε καὶ τοὺς τοξότας πάντας καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τοὺς
led and the archers all and of-the cavalry the
ἑταίρους καλεομένους, τοὺς πάντας ἐς ὀκτακισχιλίους.
companions called the all about eight-thousand

19.3 τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κράτερον καὶ Ἡφαιστίωνα
for-those indeed indeed around Craterus and Hephaestion
ἐτέτακτο ἵνα προπορευθέντες ὑπομένοιεν τὸν στόλον.
it-had-been-ordered that having-gone-ahead they-should-wait-for the fleet

19.4 Φίλιππον δέ, ὃς αὐτῷ σατράπης τῆς χώρης ταύτης ἦν,
Philip and who for-him satrap of-the country this was
ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου ποταμοῦ τὰς ὄχθας πέμπει, ἅμα
on the Acesines river the banks he-sends together-with
στρατιῇ πολλῇ καὶ τοῦτον·
army great also this-one

19.5 ἤδη γὰρ καὶ δώδεκα μυριάδες αὐτῷ μάχιμοι εἵποντο
already for also twelve ten-thousands for-him fighting-men followed
σὺν οἷσιν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης τε αὐτὸς ἀνήγαγε καὶ αὖθις
with those-whom from sea both himself led-up and again
οἱ ἐπὶ συλλογῇ αὐτῷ στρατιῆς πεμφθέντες ἦκον ἔχοντες,
those for collection for-him of-army sent came having
παντοῖα ἔθνεα βαρβαρικὰ ἅμα οἳ ἄγοντι καὶ πᾶσαν
various peoples barbarian together-with him leading and every
ἰδέην ὡπλισμένα.
form armed

19.6 αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας τῇσι νηυσὶ κατέπλωε κατὰ τὸν
himself and having-set-out with-the ships sailed-down along —
Ὑδάσπεα ἔστε ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου τε καὶ τοῦ Ὑδάσπεω
Hydaspes as-far to — of-Acesines both and — of-Hydaspes
τὰς συμβολάς.
the confluences

νέες δὲ αἱ σύμπασαι αὐτῷ ὀκτακόσιαι ἦσαν, αἵ τε μακραὶ 19.7
ships and the all for-him eight-hundred were the both long
καὶ ὅσα στρογγύλα πλοῖα καὶ ἄλλαι ἱππαγωγοὶ καὶ
and as-many-as round boats and other horse-transports and
σιτία ἅμα τῇ στρατιῇ ἄγουσαι.
food together-with the army bringing
ὅκως μὲν δὴ κατὰ τοὺς ποταμοὺς κατέπλωσεν αὐτῷ ὁ 19.8
how indeed indeed down the rivers sailed for-him the
στόλος, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῷ παραπλόῳ ἔθνεα κατεστρέψατο,
fleet and as-many-as in the coasting-voyage peoples he-subdued
καὶ ὅκως διὰ κινδύνου αὐτὸς ἐν Μαλλοῖσιν ἦκε, καὶ τὸ
and how through danger himself among Malli came and the
τρῶμα ὃ ἐτρώθη ἐν Μαλλοῖσι, καὶ Πευκέστας τε
wound which he-was-wounded among Malli and Peucestas both
καὶ Λεόννατος ὅκως ὑπερήσπισαν αὐτὸν πεσόντα, πάντα
and Leonnatus how shielded him fallen all
ταῦτα λέλεκταί μοι ἤδη ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ τῇ Ἀττικῇ συγγραφῇ.
these-things have-been-told by-me already in the other the Attic history
ὁ δὲ λόγος ὅδε τοῦ παραπλόου μοι ἀπήγησίς ἐστιν, 19.9
the and account this of-the coasting-voyage for-me narration is
ὃν Νέαρχος σὺν τῷ στόλῳ παρέπλωσεν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
which Nearchus with the fleet coasted from — Indus
τῶν ἐκβολέων ὁρμηθεὶς κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν μεγάλην
the mouths having-set-out along the sea the great
ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικόν, ἣν δὴ Ἐρυθρὴν
as-far to the gulf the Persian which indeed Red
θάλασσαν μετεξέτεροι καλέουσι.
sea some call

20.1 Νεάρχῳ δὲ λέλεκται ὑπὲρ τούτων ὅδε ὁ λόγος· πόθον
by-Nearchus and has-been-told about these this the account longing
μὲν εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκπεριπλῶσαι τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν
indeed to-be for-Alexander to-sail-round the sea the
ἀπὸ Ἰνδῶν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν Περσικήν,
from Indians as-far to the Persian
20.2 ὀκνέειν δὲ αὐτὸν τοῦ τε πλόου τὸ μῆκος καὶ μή τινι
to-hesitate but him of-the both voyage the length and lest with-some
ἄρα χώρῃ ἐρήμῃ ἐγκύρσας ἢ ὅρμων ἀπόρῳ ἢ οὐ
then country desert having-met or of-anchorages lacking or not
συμμέτρως ἐχούσῃ τῶν ὡρέων, οὕτω δὴ διαφθαρῇ
suitably having of-the seasons so indeed should-be-destroyed
αὐτῷ ὁ στόλος, καὶ οὐ φαύλη κηλὶς αὕτη τοῖσιν ἔργοισιν
for-him the fleet and not trivial stain this upon-the deeds
αὐτοῦ τοῖσι μεγάλοισιν ἐπιγενομένη τὴν πᾶσαν εὐτυχίην
his the great having-come-upon the all good-fortune
αὐτῷ ἀφανίσῃ· ἀλλὰ ἐκνικῆσαι γὰρ αὐτῷ τὴν ἐπιθυμίην
for-him should-efface but to-have-prevailed for in-him the desire
τοῦ καινόν τι αἰεὶ καὶ ἄτοπον ἐργάζεσθαι.
of-the new something always and strange to-do
20.3 ἀπόρως δὲ ἔχειν ὅντινα οὐκ ἀδύνατόν τε ἐς τὰ
at-a-loss and to-be whom not incapable both for the-things
ἐπινοεύμενα ἐπιλέξαιτο, καὶ ἅμα τῶν ἐν νηὶ ἀνδρῶν,
being-planned he-might-choose and at-the-same-time of-the in ship men
ὅκως τῶν τοιοῦτον στόλον στελλομένων ἀφελεῖ τὸ
how of-the such fleet being-sent he-will-remove the
δεῖμα τοῦ δῆθεν ἠμελημένως αὐτοὺς ἐς προῦπτον κίνδυνον
fear of-the forsooth carelessly them into foreseen danger
ἐκπέμπεσθαι.
to-be-sent-out

λέγει δὲ Νέαρχος ἑωυτῷ ξυνοῦσθαι Ἀλέξανδρον ὅντινα 20.4
says and Nearchus with-himself to-have-consulted Alexander whom
προχειρίσηται ἐξηγέεσθαι τοῦ στόλου.
he-should-appoint to-lead the fleet
ὡς δὲ ἄλλου καὶ ἄλλου ἐς μνήμην ἰόντα τοὺς μὲν ὡς 20.5
when and other and other to mind coming those indeed as
οὐκ ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν ὑπὲρ οὗ ἀπολέγειν, τοὺς δὲ ὡς
not wishing to-run-risks for him to-reject those and as
μαλθακοὺς τὸν θυμόν, τοὺς δὲ ὡς πόθῳ τῆς οἰκηίης
soft in-the spirit those and as by-longing for-the home
κατεχομένους, τοῖσι δὲ ἄλλο καὶ ἄλλο ἐπικαλέοντα, τότε
held to-these and other and other charging then
δὴ αὐτὸν ὑποστάντα εἰπεῖν ὅτι "ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγώ
indeed himself having-undertaken to-have-said that O king I
τοι ὑποδέκομαι ἐξηγήσεσθαι τοῦ στόλου, καὶ εἰ τὰ
to-you undertake to-be-going-to-lead the fleet and if the-things
ἀπὸ τοῦ θείου συνεπιλαμβάνοιτο, περιάξω τοι σῴας
from the divine should-assist I-will-bring-round for-you safe
τὰς νέας καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν Περσίδα, εἰ
the ships and the men as-far to — Persis if
δὴ πλωτός τέ ἐστιν ὁ ταύτῃ πόντος καὶ τὸ ἔργον
indeed navigable both is the there sea and the task
οὐκ ἄπορον γνώμῃ ἀνθρωπίνῃ."
not impossible for-mind human
Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ λόγῳ μὲν οὐ φάναι ἐθέλειν ἐς τοσήνδε 20.6
Alexander and in-word indeed not to-have-said to-wish into such
ταλαιπωρίην καὶ τοσόνδε κίνδυνον τῶν τινα ἑωυτοῦ φίλων
hardship and such danger of-the some his-own friends
ἐμβάλλειν, αὐτὸς δὲ ταύτῃ δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον οὐκ ἀνιέναι
to-throw he and in-this-way indeed also more not to-relax
ἀλλὰ λιπαρέειν.
but to-persist

20.7 οὕτω δὴ ἀγαπῆσαί τε Ἀλέξανδρον τοῦ Νεάρχου τὴν
so indeed to-have-welcomed both Alexander — of-Nearchus the
προθυμίην, καὶ ἐπιστῆσαι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν τοῦ στόλου
eagerness and to-have-set him to-command the fleet
παντός.
whole

20.8 καὶ τότε δὴ ἔτι μᾶλλον τῆς στρατιῆς ὅ τι περ ἐπὶ
and then indeed still more of-the army what ever indeed for
τῷ παραπλόῳ τῷδε ἐτάσσετο καὶ τὰς ὑπηρεσίας ἴλεω
the coasting-voyage this was-assigned and the crews well-disposed
ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην, ὅτι δὴ Νέαρχόν γε οὔποτε ἂν
to-have the spirit that indeed Nearchus at-least never —
Ἀλέξανδρος προήκατο ἐς κίνδυνον καταφανέα, εἰ
Alexander would-have-thrown-away into danger manifest if
μή σφι σωθήσεσθαι ἔμελλεν.
not them to-be-going-to-be-saved was-about

20.9 λαμπρότης τε πολλὴ τῇ παρασκευῇ ἐπεοῦσα καὶ κόσμος
splendor both much on-the preparation being-upon and adornment
τῶν νεῶν, καὶ σπουδαὶ τῶν τριηράρχων ἀμφὶ τὰς
of-the ships and zeal of-the trierarchs about the
ὑπηρεσίας τε καὶ τὰ πληρώματα ἐκπρεπέες καὶ τοὺς
crews both and the complements outstanding also those
πάντη δὴ κατοκνέοντας ἐς ὁρμὴν ἅμα καὶ ἐλπίδας
wholly indeed shrinking to eagerness together-with also hopes
χρηστοτέρας ὑπὲρ τοῦ παντὸς ἔργου ἐπηρκότα ἦν.
better for the whole task having-raised had

20.10 πολλὸν δὲ δὴ συνεπιλαβέσθαι ἐς εὐθυμίην τῇ στρατιῇ
much and indeed to-have-helped for cheerfulness for-the army
τὸ δὴ αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον ὁρμηθέντα κατὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὰ
the indeed himself Alexander having-set-out down — Indus the
στόματα ἀμφότερα ἐκπλῶσαι ἐς τὸν πόντον, σφάγιά τε
mouths both to-have-sailed-out into the sea victims both

Ποσειδῶνι ἐντεμεῖν καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι θεοὶ θαλάσσιοι,
to-Poseidon to-have-slaughtered and as-many-as other gods of-the-sea
καὶ δῶρα μεγαλοπρεπέα τῇ θαλάσσῃ χαρίσασθαι.
and gifts magnificent to-the sea to-have-given
τῇ τε ἄλλῃ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου παραλόγῳ εὐτυχίῃ πεποιθότας 20.11
in-the both other the of-Alexander unexpected good-fortune trusting
οὐδὲν ὅ τι οὐ τολμητόν τε ἐκείνῳ καὶ ἐπικτὸν
nothing what ever not daring both for-that-one and achievable
ἡγέεσθαι.
to-consider
ὡς δὲ τὰ ἐτήσια πνεύματα ἐκοιμήθη, ἃ δὴ τοῦ θέρεος 21.1
when and the etesian winds lulled which indeed of-the summer
τὴν ὥρην πᾶσαν κατέχει ἐκ τοῦ πελάγεος ἐπιπνέοντα ὡς
the season whole prevail from the open-sea blowing-on as
ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ ταύτῃ ἄπορον τὸν πλόον ποιέοντα,
toward the land and in-this-way impassable the voyage making
τότε δὴ ὥρμηντο ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Ἀθήνησι Κηφισοδώρου,
then indeed they-set-out under archon at-Athens Cephisodorus
εἰκάδι τοῦ Βοηδρομιῶνος μηνός, κατ᾽ ὅτι Ἀθηναῖοι
on-the-twentieth of-the Boedromion month according-to what Athenians
ἄγουσιν· ὡς δὲ Μακεδόνες τε καὶ Ἀσιανοὶ ἦγον, ***
reckon as and Macedonians both and Asians reckoned (lacuna)
τὸ ἑνδέκατον βασιλεύοντος Ἀλεξάνδρου.
the eleventh reigning Alexander
θύει δὲ καὶ Νέαρχος πρὸ τῆς ἀναγωγῆς Διὶ Σωτῆρι, 21.2
sacrifices and also Nearchus before the putting-out to-Zeus Savior
καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιέει καὶ οὗτος γυμνικόν. ἄραντες δὲ ἀπὸ
and contest holds also this-one gymnastic having-set-out and from
τοῦ ναυστάθμου τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρῃ κατὰ τὸν Ἰνδὸν
the roadstead on-the first day on — Indus
ὁρμίζονται ποταμὸν πρὸς διώρυχι μεγάλῃ, καὶ μένουσιν
they-anchor river at canal great and remain

αὐτοῦ δύο ἡμέρας· Στοῦρα δὲ οὔνομα ἦν τῷ χώρῳ·
there two days Stura and name was to-the place
στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ναυστάθμου ἐς ἑκατόν.
stades from the roadstead about a-hundred

21.3 τῇ τρίτῃ δὲ ἄραντες ἔπλωον ἔστε ἐπὶ διώρυχα ἄλλην
on-the third and having-set-out they-sailed as-far to canal another
σταδίους τριήκοντα, ἁλμυρὴν ἤδη ταύτην τὴν διώρυχα·
stades thirty salty already this the canal
ἀνῄει γὰρ ἡ θάλασσα ἐς αὐτήν, μάλιστα μὲν ἐν τῇσι
came-up for the sea into it most indeed in the
πλημμύρῃσιν, ὑπέμενε δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇσιν ἀμπώτεσι τὸ ὕδωρ
flood-tides remained and also in the ebb-tides the water
μεμιγμένον τῷ ποταμῷ· Καύμαρα δὲ οὔνομα ἦν τῷ
mixed with-the river Caumara and name was to-the
χώρῳ.
place

21.4 ἐνθένδε εἴκοσι σταδίους καταπλώσαντες ἐς Κορέεστιν
thence twenty stades having-sailed-down at Coreestis
ὁρμίζονται ἔτι κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν. ἐνθένδε ὁρμηθέντες
they-anchor still on the river thence having-set-out
ἔπλωον οὐκ ἐπὶ πολλόν·
they-sailed not for long

21.5 ἔρμα γὰρ ἐφάνη αὐτοῖσι κατὰ τὴν ἐκβολὴν τὴν ταύτῃ
reef for appeared to-them at the mouth the there
τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ, καὶ τὰ κύματα ἐρρόχθεε πρὸς τῇ ἠιόνι, καὶ
— *of-Indus and the waves roared against the shore and*
ἡ ἠιὼν αὕτη τρηχέα ἦν.
the shore this rough was

ἀλλὰ ἵναπερ μαλθακὸν ἦν τοῦ ἕρματος, ταύτῃ διώρυχα 21.6
but where-indeed soft was of-the reef there a-canal
ποιήσαντες ἐπὶ σταδίους πέντε, διῆγον τὰς νέας,
having-made for stades five they-brought-through the ships
ἐπειδὴ ἡ πλήμμυρα ἐπῆλθεν ἡ ἐκ τοῦ πόντου.
when the flood-tide came-on the from the sea
ἐκπεριπλώσαντες δὲ σταδίους πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν 21.7
having-sailed-round and stades fifty and hundred
ὁρμίζονται ἐς Κρώκαλα νῆσον ψαμμώδεα, καὶ μένουσιν
they-anchor at Crocala island sandy and remain
αὐτοῦ τὴν ἄλλην ἡμέρην.
there the next day
προσοικέει δὲ ταύτῃ ἔθνος Ἰνδικόν, οἱ Ἀράβιες καλεόμενοι, 21.8
dwells-near and this people Indian the Arabies called
ὧν καὶ ἐν τῇ μέζονι συγγραφῇ μνήμην ἔσχον, καὶ
of-whom also in the greater history mention I-made and
ὅτι εἰσὶν ἐπώνυμοι ποταμοῦ Ἀράβιος, ὃς διὰ τῆς γῆς
that they-are named-after river Arabis which through the land
αὐτῶν ῥέων ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν, ὁρίζων τούτων τε τὴν
of-them flowing flows-out into sea bounding of-these both the
χώρην καὶ τὴν Ὠρειτέων,
country and the of-Oreitae
ἐκ δὲ Κρωκάλων ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν ἔχοντες οὖρος τὸ 21.9
from and Crocala on right indeed having mountain the
καλεόμενον Εἶρον, ἐν ἀριστερῇ δὲ νῆσον ἁλιτενέα ἔπλωον·
called Eirus on left and island low-lying they-sailed
ἡ δὲ νῆσος παρατεταμένη τῇ ἠιόνι κόλπον στεινὸν ποιέει.
the and island stretched-along the shore gulf narrow makes

21.10 διεκπλώσαντες δὲ ταύτην ὁρμίζονται ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ.
having-sailed-through and this they-anchor in harbor good-for-anchoring
ὅτι δὲ μέγας τε καὶ καλὸς ὁ λιμὴν Νεάρχῳ ἔδοξεν,
because and great both and fine the harbor to-Nearchus seemed
ἐπονομάζει αὐτὸν Ἀλεξάνδρου λιμένα.
he-names it of-Alexander harbor

21.11 νῆσος δέ ἐστιν ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος ὅσον σταδίους
island and is at the mouth of-the harbor about stades
δύο ἀπέχουσα· Βίβακτα οὔνομα τῇ νήσῳ, ὁ δὲ χῶρος
two distant Bibacta name to-the island the and place
ἅπας Σάγγαδα ἐκαλέετο. ἡ δὲ νῆσος καὶ τὸν λιμένα,
whole Sangada was-called the and island also the harbor
προκειμένη πρὸ τοῦ πελάγεος, αὐτὴ ἐποίεεν.
lying-before before the open-sea itself made

21.12 ἐνθαῦτα πνεύματα μεγάλα ἐκ τοῦ πόντου ἔπνεε καὶ
there winds great from the sea blew and
συνεχέα, καὶ Νέαρχος δείσας τῶν βαρβάρων μή τινες
continuous and Nearchus having-feared of-the barbarians lest some
συνταχθέντες ἐπ᾽ ἁρπαγὴν τοῦ στρατοπέδου τραποίατο,
having-gathered for plunder of-the camp should-turn
ἐκτειχίζει τὸν χῶρον λιθίνῳ τείχεϊ.
fortifies the place with-stone wall

21.13 τέσσαρες δὲ καὶ εἴκοσιν ἡμέραι τῇ μονῇ ἐγένοντο. καὶ
four and and twenty days the stay were and
λέγει ὅτι μύας τε ἐθήρων τοὺς θαλασσίους οἱ στρατιῶται,
he-says that mussels both they-hunted the sea the soldiers
καὶ ὄστρεα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σωλῆνας καλεομένους, ἄτοπα
and oysters and and the razor-shells called strange
τὸ μέγαθος, ὡς τοῖσιν ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμετέρῃ θαλάσσῃ
in-the size as with-those in this the our sea
συμβαλέειν· καὶ ὕδωρ ὅτι ἁλμυρὸν ἐπίνετο.
to-compare and water that salty was-drunk

The fleet coasts from anchorage to anchorage past Domae, Saranga, and the Women's Harbor to the mouth of the Arabis, where the land of the Oreitae begins. A gale sinks two warships and a light boat, and Nearchus camps ashore at Cocala, where Leonnatus has defeated the Oreitae; there he takes on grain, repairs his ships, and trades his slack sailors for Leonnatus' soldiers. At the Tomerus his soldiers swim ashore and rout six hundred hairy, half-naked men with fire-hardened spears. Nearchus reports that while they coasted India the shadows fell toward the south and vanished at noon, and that stars once high had gone; Arrian finds this credible, since at Syene and Meroe noon is shadowless.

ἅμα τε ὁ ἄνεμος ἐπαύσατο καὶ οἱ ἀνήγοντο. 22.1
at-the-same-time both the wind ceased and they put-out
καὶ περαιωθέντες σταδίους ἐς ἑξήκοντα ὁρμίζονται πρὸς
and having-crossed stades about sixty they-anchor by
αἰγιαλῷ ψαμμώδεϊ· νῆσος δὲ ἐπῆν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ ἐρήμη.
shore sandy island and lay-off the shore deserted
ταύτην δὲ πρόβλημα ποιησάμενοι ὡρμίσθησαν·
this and shelter having-made they-anchored
Δόμαι οὔνομα τῇ νήσῳ. ὕδωρ δὲ οὐκ ἦν ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ, 22.2
Domae name to-the island water and not was on the shore
ἀλλὰ προελθόντες ἐς τὴν μεσογαίην ὅσον εἴκοσι σταδίους
but having-gone-forward into the interior about twenty stades
ἐπιτυγχάνουσιν ὕδατι καλῷ.
they-find water good
τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίῃ ἐς νύκτα αὐτοῖσιν ὁ πλόος ἐγίνετο 22.3
on-the and next-day into night for-them the voyage was
ἐς Σάραγγα σταδίους τριηκοσίους, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς
to Saranga stades three-hundred and they-anchor by
αἰγιαλῷ, καὶ ὕδωρ ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ὅσον ὀκτὼ σταδίους.
shore and water was from the shore about eight stades

22.4 ἐνθένδε πλώσαντες ὁρμίζονται ἐν Σακάλοισι, τόπῳ ἐρήμῳ.
thence having-sailed they-anchor at Sacala place deserted
καὶ διεκπλώσαντες σκοπέλους δύο, οὕτω τι ἀλλήλοισι
and having-sailed-through rocks two so somewhat to-one-another
πελάζοντας, ὥστε τοὺς ταρσοὺς τῶν νεῶν ἅπτεσθαι
approaching so-that the oar-blades of-the ships to-touch
ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῶν πετρέων, κατορμίζονται ἐν
on-this-side and on-that-side of-the rocks they-anchor at
Μοροντοβάροισι, σταδίους διελθόντες ἐς τριηκοσίους,
Morontobara stades having-gone-through about three-hundred
22.5 ὁ δὲ λιμὴν μέγας καὶ εὔκυκλος καὶ βαθὺς καὶ ἄκλυστος,
the and harbor great and round and deep and sheltered
ὁ δὲ ἔσπλοος ἐς αὐτὸν στεινός. τοῦτον τῇ γλώσσῃ
the but entrance into it narrow this in-the tongue
τῇ ἐπιχωρίῃ Γυναικῶν λιμένα ἐκάλεον, ὅτι γυνὴ τοῦ
the native of-Women harbor they-called because a-woman of-the
χώρου τούτου πρώτη ἐπῆρξεν.
place this first ruled
22.6 ὡς δὲ διὰ τῶν σκοπέλων διεξέπλωον, κύμασί τε
when and through the rocks they-sailed-out with-waves both
μεγάλοισιν ἐνέκυρσαν καὶ τῇ θαλάσσῃ ῥοώδεϊ. ἀλλὰ
great they-met-with and the sea rushing but
ἐκπεριπλῶσαι γὰρ ὑπὲρ τοὺς σκοπέλους μέγα ἔργον
to-sail-round for beyond the rocks great work
ἐφαίνετο.
appeared
22.7 ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίην ἔπλωον νῆσον ἐν ἀριστερῇ ἔχοντες
on and the next-day they-sailed an-island on left having
πρὸ τοῦ πελάγεος οὕτω τι τῷ αἰγιαλῷ συναφέα
before the open-sea so somewhat to-the shore joined
ὥστε εἰκάσαι ἂν διώρυχα εἶναι τὸ μέσον τοῦ τε αἰγιαλοῦ
so-that to-guess — a-canal to-be the middle of-the both shore

καὶ τῆς νήσου· στάδιοι οἱ πάντες ἑβδομήκοντα τοῦ
and of-the island stades the all seventy of-the
διεκπλόου. καὶ ἐπί τε τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ δένδρεα ἦν πολλὰ
passage and on both the shore trees were many
καὶ δασέα, καὶ ἡ νῆσος ὕλῃ παντοίῃ σύσκιος.
and thick and the island with-wood of-every-kind shady
ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω ἔπλωον ἔξω τῆς νήσου κατὰ ῥηχίην 22.8
toward and the dawn they-sailed outside the island along surf
στεινήν· ἔτι γὰρ ἀνάπωτις κατεῖχε. πλώσαντες δὲ ἐς
narrow still for ebb-tide prevailed having-sailed and about
ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους ὁρμίζονται ἐν τῷ στόματι
hundred and twenty stades they-anchor in the mouth
τοῦ Ἀράβιος ποταμοῦ· καὶ λιμὴν μέγας καὶ καλὸς πρὸς
of-the Arabis river and harbor great and fine at
τῷ στόματι· ὕδωρ δὲ οὐκ ἦν πότιμον· τοῦ γὰρ Ἀράβιος
the mouth water and not was drinkable — for of-Arabis
αἱ ἐκβολαὶ ἀναμεμιγμέναι τῷ πόντῳ ἦσαν.
the mouths mixed with-the sea were
ἀλλὰ τεσσαράκοντα σταδίους ἐς τὸ ἄνω προχωρήσαντες 22.9
but forty stades into the upstream having-advanced
λάκκῳ ἐπιτυγχάνουσι, καὶ ἔνθεν ὑδρευσάμενοι ὀπίσω
a-pit they-find and thence having-drawn-water back
ἀπενόστησαν. νῆσος δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ λιμένι ὑψηλὴ καὶ ἐρήμη,
they-returned island and by the harbor high and deserted
καὶ περὶ ταύτην ὀστρέων τε καὶ ἰχθύων παντοδαπῶν
and around this of-oysters both and fishes of-all-kinds
θήρη. μέχρι μὲν τοῦδε Ἀράβιες, ἔσχατοι Ἰνδῶν ταύτῃ
catch as-far-as indeed this Arabies last of-Indians there
ᾠκισμένοι, τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦδε Ὠρεῖται ἐπεῖχον.
settled the-parts and from this Oreitae held

23.1 ὁρμηθέντες δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἐκβολέων τοῦ Ἀράβιος παρέπλωον
having-set-out and from the mouths — of-Arabis they-coasted
τῶν Ὠρειτέων τὴν χώρην. καὶ ὁρμίζονται ἐν Παγάλοισι,
of-the Oreitae the country and they-anchor at Pagala
πλώσαντες σταδίους ἐς διηκοσίους, πρὸς ῥηχίῃ. ἀλλὰ
having-sailed stades about two-hundred by surf but
ἀγκύρῃσι γὰρ ἐπίβολος ἦν ὁ χῶρος. τὰ μὲν ὦν
for-anchors for suitable was the place the indeed then
πληρώματα ἀπεσάλευον ἐν τῇσι νηυσίν, οἱ δὲ ἐπ᾽
crews rode-at-anchor in the ships the-others and for
ὕδωρ ἐκβάντες ὑδρεύοντο.
water having-disembarked drew-water

23.2 τῇ δ᾽ ὑστεραίῃ ἀναχθέντες ἅμα ἡμέρῃ
on-the and next-day having-put-out at-the-same-time-with day
καὶ πλώσαντες σταδίους ἐς τετρακοσίους κατάγονται
and having-sailed stades about four-hundred they-put-in
ἑσπέριοι ἐς Κάβανα, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ ἐρήμῳ.
in-the-evening at Cabana and they-anchor by shore deserted
ἐνθαῦτα ῥηχίη τρηχέα ἦν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε μετεώρους τὰς
there surf rough was and for this out-at-sea the
νέας ὡρμίσαντο.
ships they-anchored

23.3 κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν πλόον πνεῦμα ὑπολαμβάνει τὰς νέας
during this the voyage a-wind catches the ships
μέγα ἐκ πόντου, καὶ νέες δύο μακραὶ διαφθείρονται
great from sea and ships two long are-destroyed
ἐν τῷ πλόῳ, καὶ κέρκουρος· οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι σῴζονται
in the voyage and a-light-boat the but men are-saved
ἀπονηξάμενοι, ὅτι οὐ πόρρω τῆς γῆς ὁ πλόος ἐγίνετο.
having-swum-away because not far from-the land the voyage was

ἀμφὶ δὲ μέσας νύκτας ἀναχθέντες πλώουσιν ἔστε ἐπὶ 23.4
about and middle night having-put-out they-sail as-far to
Κώκαλα, ἃ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ, ἔνθεν ὡρμήθησαν, ἀπεῖχε
Cocala which from-the shore whence they-set-out was-distant
σταδίους διηκοσίους· καὶ αἱ μὲν νέες σαλεύουσαι ὥρμεον,
stades two-hundred and the indeed ships riding lay-at-anchor
τὰ πληρώματα δὲ ἐκβιβάσας Νέαρχος πρὸς τῇ γῇ
the crews and having-disembarked Nearchus on the land
ηὐλίσθη, ὅτι ἐπὶ πολλὸν τεταλαιπωρηκότες ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ
bivouacked because for long having-suffered-hardship in the sea
ἀναπαύσασθαι ἐπόθεον. στρατόπεδον δὲ περιεβάλετο τῶν
to-rest they-longed camp and he-threw-around of-the
βαρβάρων τῆς φυλακῆς εἵνεκα.
barbarians for-the guard for-the-sake
ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ Λεόννατος, ὅτῳ τὰ Ὠρειτέων ἐξ 23.5
in this the place Leonnatus to-whom the-affairs of-Oreitae by
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπετέτραπτο, μάχῃ μεγάλῃ νικᾷ Ὠρείτας τε
Alexander had-been-entrusted in-battle great defeats Oreitae both
καὶ ὅσοι Ὠρείτῃσι συνεπελάβοντο τοῦ ἔργου. καὶ κτείνει
and as-many-as with-Oreitae took-part-in the action and kills
αὐτῶν ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας πάντας· τῶν δὲ
of-them six-thousand and the leaders all of-those and
σὺν Λεοννάτῳ ἱππέες μὲν ἀποθνήσκουσι πεντεκαίδεκα,
with Leonnatus cavalry indeed die fifteen
τῶν δὲ πεζῶν ἄλλοι τε οὐ πολλοὶ καὶ Ἀπολλοφάνης
of-the and infantry others both not many and Apollophanes
ὁ Γαδρωσίων σατράπης.
the of-Gadrosians satrap

23.6 ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ συγγραφῇ ἀναγέγραπται, καὶ
these-things indeed indeed in the other history have-been-recorded and
ὅκως Λεόννατος ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐστεφανώθη πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου
how Leonnatus for this was-crowned by Alexander
χρυσέῳ στεφάνῳ.
with-golden crown

23.7 ἐνθαῦτα σῖτος ἦν νενημένος κατὰ πρόσταγμα Ἀλεξάνδρου
there grain was heaped-up by order of-Alexander
ἐς ἐπισιτισμὸν τῷ στρατῷ, καὶ ἐμβάλλονται σιτία
for provisioning for-the force and they-put-aboard food
ἡμερέων δέκα ἐς τὰς νέας.
of-days ten into the ships

23.8 καὶ τῶν νεῶν ὅσαι ἐπεπονήκεσαν κατὰ τὸν πλόον
and of-the ships as-many-as had-been-damaged during the voyage
μέχρι τοῦδε ἐπεσκεύασαν, καὶ τῶν ναυτέων ὅσοι ἐν
up-to this they-repaired and of-the sailors as-many-as in
τῷ ἔργῳ βλακεῦσαι ἐφαίνοντο Νεάρχῳ, τούτους μὲν
the work to-be-slack appeared to-Nearchus these indeed
πεζῇ ἄγειν Λεοννάτῳ ἔδωκεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν σὺν
on-foot to-lead to-Leonnatus he-gave himself and from the with
Λεοννάτῳ στρατιωτέων συμπληροῖ τὸ ναυτικόν.
Leonnatus soldiers fills-up the fleet

24.1 ἐνθένδε ὁρμηθέντες ἔπλωον ἀκραεί, καὶ διελθόντες
thence having-set-out they-sailed with-a-strong-wind and having-gone-through
σταδίους ἐς πεντακοσίους ὡρμίζοντο πρὸς ποταμῷ
stades about five-hundred they-anchored by river
χειμαρρόῳ· Τόμηρος οὔνομα ἦν τῷ ποταμῷ.
torrent Tomerus name was to-the river

24.2 καὶ λίμνη ἦν ἐπὶ τῇσιν ἐκβολῇσι τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ
and lagoon was at the mouths of-the river the
δὲ βραχέα τὰ πρὸς τῷ αἰγιαλῷ ἐπῴκεον ἄνθρωποι ἐν
and shallows the by the shore inhabited men in

καλύβῃσι πνιγηρῇσι. καὶ οὗτοι ὡς προσπλώοντας εἶδον,
huts stifling and these when sailing-toward they-saw
ἐθάμβησάν τε καὶ παρατείναντες σφᾶς παρὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν
were-amazed both and having-stretched-out themselves along the shore
ἐτάχθησαν ὡς ἀπομαχεόμενοι πρὸς τοὺς ἐκβαίνοντας.
were-drawn-up as fighting-off against those disembarking
λόγχας δὲ ἐφόρεον παχέας, μέγαθος ὡς ἑξαπήχεας· 24.3
spears and they-carried thick in-size about six-cubits
ἀκωκὴ δὲ οὐκ ἐπῆν σιδηρέη, ἀλλὰ τὸ ὀξὺ αὐτοῖσι
point and not was-on iron but the sharp-end for-them
πεπυρακτωμένον τωὐτὸ ἐποίεε. πλῆθος δὲ ἦσαν ὡς
hardened-in-fire the-same made in-number and they-were about
ἑξακόσιοι.
six-hundred
καὶ τούτους Νέαρχος ὡς ὑπομένοντάς τε καὶ 24.4
and these Nearchus when awaiting both and
παρατεταγμένους κατεῖδε, τὰς μὲν νέας ἀνακωχεύειν
drawn-up saw the indeed ships to-hold-back
κελεύει ἐντὸς βέλεος, ὡς τὰ τοξεύματα ἐς τὴν γῆν
he-orders within missile-range so-that the arrows onto the land
ἀπ᾽ αὐτέων ἐξικνέεσθαι· αἱ γὰρ τῶν βαρβάρων λόγχαι
from them to-reach the for of-the barbarians spears
ἀγχέμαχοι μὲν ἄφοβοι δὲ ἐς τὸ ἐσακοντίζεσθαι ἦσαν.
for-close-fighting indeed not-fearsome but for the to-be-hurled were
αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν στρατιωτέων ὅσοι αὐτοί τε κουφότατοι 24.5
himself and of-the soldiers as-many-as themselves both lightest
καὶ κουφότατα ὡπλισμένοι τοῦ τε νέειν δαημονέστατοι,
and most-lightly armed in-the both to-swim most-skilled
τούτους δὲ ἐκνήξασθαι κελεύει ἀπὸ συνθήματος.
these and to-swim-out he-orders at signal

24.6 πρόσταγμα δέ σφισιν ἦν, ὅκως τις ἐκνηξάμενος σταίη
order and to-them was when anyone having-swum-out should-stand
ἐν τῷ ὕδατι, προσμένειν τὸν παραστάτην οἱ ἐσόμενον,
in the water to-wait-for the comrade-beside to-him about-to-be
μηδὲ ἐμβάλλειν πρόσθε ἐς τοὺς βαρβάρους, πρὶν ἐπὶ
nor to-charge before at the barbarians until in
τριῶν ἐς βάθος ταχθῆναι τὴν φάλαγγα· τότε δὲ δρόμῳ
three in depth to-be-formed the phalanx then and at-a-run
ἐπιέναι ἀλαλάζοντας.
to-attack raising-the-war-cry

24.7 ἅμα δὲ ἐρρίπτεον ἑωυτοὺς οἱ ἐπὶ τῷδε τεταγμένοι
at-the-same-time and threw themselves those for this posted
ἐκ τῶν νεῶν ἐς τὸν πόντον, καὶ ἐνήχοντο ὀξέως, καὶ
from the ships into the sea and swam swiftly and
ἵσταντο ἐν κόσμῳ, καὶ φάλαγγα ἐκ σφῶν ποιησάμενοι
stood in order and phalanx from themselves having-made
δρόμῳ ἐπῄεσαν αὐτοί τε ἀλαλάζοντες τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ καὶ
at-a-run attacked themselves both raising-the-war-cry — to-Enyalius and
οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν συνεπήχεον, τοξεύματά τε καὶ ἀπὸ
those on the ships shouted-with arrows both and from
μηχανέων βέλεα ἐφέρετο ἐς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
engines missiles were-carried against the barbarians

24.8 οἳ δὲ τήν τε λαμπρότητα τῶν ὅπλων ἐκπλαγέντες καὶ
they and at-the both brilliance of-the arms panic-struck and
τῆς ἐφόδου τὴν ὀξύτητα καὶ πρὸς τῶν τοξευμάτων τε
of-the attack the swiftness and by the arrows both
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βελέων βαλλόμενοι, οἷα δὴ ἡμίγυμνοι
and the other missiles being-hit as indeed half-naked
ἄνθρωποι, οὐδὲ ὀλίγον ἐς ἀλκὴν τραπέντες ἐγκλίνουσι.
men not-even a-little to resistance having-turned give-way

καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτοῦ φεύγοντες ἀποθνήσκουσιν, οἳ δὲ
and the-ones indeed there fleeing die the-others and
καὶ ἁλίσκονται· ἔστι δὲ οἳ καὶ διέφυγον ἐς τὰ οὔρεα.
also are-captured there-are and who also escaped to the mountains
ἦσαν δὲ οἱ ἁλόντες τά τε ἄλλα δασέες καὶ τὰς 24.9
were and those captured in-the both other-things hairy and the
κεφαλάς, καὶ τοὺς ὄνυχας θηριώδεες· τοῖσι γὰρ δὴ ὄνυξιν
heads and the nails beast-like the for indeed with-nails
ὅσα σιδήρῳ διαχρᾶσθαι ἐλέγοντο καὶ τοὺς ἰχθύας τούτοισι
as with-iron to-use they-were-said and the fishes with-these
παρασχίζοντες κατεργάζεσθαι καὶ τῶν ξύλων ὅσα
splitting to-prepare and of-the woods as-many-as
μαλθακώτερα. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα τοῖσι λίθοισι τοῖσιν ὀξέσιν
softer the and others with-the stones the sharp
ἔκοπτον· σίδηρος γὰρ αὐτοῖσιν οὐκ ἦν. ἐσθῆτα δὲ ἐφόρεον
they-cut iron for to-them not was clothing and they-wore
δέρματα θηρήια, οἳ δὲ καὶ ἰχθύων τῶν μεγάλων τὰ παχέα.
skins of-beasts some and also of-fishes of-the great the thick
ἐνθαῦτα νεωλκέουσι τὰς νέας, καὶ ὅσαι πεπονηκυῖαι 25.1
there they-haul-up the ships and as-many-as damaged
αὐτέων ἐπισκευάζουσι. τῇ δὲ ἕκτῃ ἡμέρῃ ἐστέλλοντο,
of-them they-repair on-the and sixth day they-set-out
καὶ πλώσαντες σταδίους ἐς τριηκοσίους ἀπικνέονται ἐς
and having-sailed stades about three-hundred they-arrive at
χῶρον, ὃς δὴ ἔσχατος ἦν τῆς Ὠρειτέων γῆς· Μάλανα
a-place which indeed last was of-the of-Oreitae land Malana
τῷ χώρῳ οὔνομα.
to-the place name
Ὠρεῖται δὲ ὅσοι ἄνω ἀπὸ θαλάσσης οἰκέουσιν, 25.2
Oreitae and as-many-as up from sea dwell
ἐσταλμένοι μὲν κατάπερ Ἰνδοί εἰσι, καὶ τὰ ἐς πόλεμον
equipped indeed like Indians are and the-things for war

ὡσαύτως παραρτέονται· γλῶσσα δὲ ἄλλη αὐτοῖσι τοῖσι
likewise prepare language and other for-them for-whom
καὶ ἄλλα νόμαια.
also other customs

25.3 μῆκος τοῦ παραπλόου παρὰ μὲν χώρην τὴν Ἀραβίων
length of-the coasting-voyage along indeed country the of-Arabies
ἐς χιλίους μάλιστα σταδίους, ἔνθενπερ ὡρμήθησαν, παρὰ
about thousand about stades whence-very they-set-out along
δὲ τὴν Ὠρειτέων γῆν ἑξακόσιοι καὶ χίλιοι.
and the of-Oreitae land six-hundred and thousand

25.4 παραπλωόντων δὲ τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν γὰρ οὐκέτι
coasting-along and the of-Indians land the from-there for no-longer
Ἰνδοί εἰσι λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι αἱ σκιαὶ αὐτοῖσιν οὐ τωὐτὸ
Indians are says Nearchus that the shadows for-them not the-same
ἐποίεον·
did

25.5 ἀλλὰ ὁκότε μὲν ἐπὶ πολλὸν τοῦ πόντου ὡς πρὸς μεσαμβρίην
but whenever indeed for far of-the sea as to south
προχωρήσειαν, αἱ δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην
they-advanced they and also themselves to south
τετραμμέναι ἐφαίνοντο· ὁκότε δὲ τὸ μέσον τῆς ἡμέρης
turned appeared whenever and the middle of-the day
ἐπέχοι ὁ ἥλιος, ἤδη καὶ ἔρημα σκιῆς πάντα ὤφθη αὐτοῖσι.
held the sun already also void of-shadow all were-seen by-them

25.6 τῶν τε ἀστέρων ὅσους πρόσθε μετεώρους κατεώρων,
of-the both stars as-many-as before aloft they-saw
οἳ μὲν ἀφανέες πάντη ἦσαν, οἳ δὲ πρὸς αὐτῇ τῇ
the-ones indeed invisible wholly were the-others and by very the
γῇ ἐφαίνοντο, καταδύνοντές τε καὶ αὐτίκα ἀνατέλλοντες
earth appeared setting both and at-once rising
οἱ πάλαι ἀειφανέες ἐόντες.
those long-ago always-visible being

καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἀποικότα δοκέει μοι ἀναγράψαι Νέαρχος· 25.7
and these-things not unlikely seems to-me to-have-recorded Nearchus
ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐν Συήνῃ τῇ Αἰγυπτίῃ, ἐπεὰν τροπὰς ἄγῃ
since also in Syene the Egyptian when solstice holds
θέρεος ὥρῃ ὁ ἥλιος, φρέαρ ἀποδεδειγμένον ἐστί, καὶ
in-the-summer season the sun a-well designated is and
τοῦτο ἄσκιον ἐν μεσαμβρίῃ φαίνεται· ἐν Μερόῃ δὲ πάντα
this shadowless at noon appears in Meroe and all
ἄσκια τῇ αὐτῇ ὥρῃ.
shadowless at-the same hour
οἰκὸς ὦν καὶ ἐν Ἰνδοῖσιν, ἅτε πρὸς μεσαμβρίην 25.8
likely then also among Indians as toward south
ᾠκισμένοισι, τωὐτὰ δὴ πάθεα ἐπέχειν, καὶ μάλιστα
settled the-same indeed phenomena to-occur and most
δὴ κατὰ τὸν πόντον τὸν Ἰνδικόν, ὅσῳ μᾶλλον
indeed in the sea the Indian by-as-much-as more
αὐτοῖσιν ἡ θάλασσα πρὸς μεσαμβρίην κέκλιται. ταῦτα
for-them the sea toward south slopes these-things
μὲν δὴ ὧδε ἐχέτω.
indeed indeed thus let-stand

Past Gadrosia, where the army suffered so much, the fleet coasts the land of the Fish-eaters. The anchorages are poor and food scarce; a local guide, Hydraces, helps them from Mosarna. At one town Nearchus enters as a visitor, seizes the gate with a few archers, and makes the people give up their meal of fish and some grain. Hunger drives the men on, and Nearchus keeps the ships offshore so they cannot desert. The Fish-eaters catch fish with palm-bark nets at low tide, grind them into meal, feed them to their sheep, and build houses from whale bones.

26.1 ἐπὶ δὲ Ὠρείτῃσι κατὰ μὲν μεσογαίην Γαδρώσιοι ἐπεῖχον,
beyond and Oreitae in indeed interior Gadrosians held
ὧν τὴν χώρην χαλεπῶς διεξῆλθεν ἅμα τῇ στρατιῇ
whose the country with-difficulty went-through together-with the army
Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ κακὰ τοσαῦτα ἔπαθεν, ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ
Alexander and evils so-many suffered as-many-as not-even the
σύμπαντα τῆς συμπάσης στρατηλασίης. ταῦτά μοι ἐν
all of-the whole expedition these-things by-me in
τῇ μέζονι συγγραφῇ ἀναγέγραπται.
the greater history have-been-recorded

26.2 κάτω δὲ Γαδρωσίων παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν αὐτὴν οἱ
below and of-Gadrosians along the sea itself the
Ἰχθυοφάγοι καλεόμενοι οἰκέουσι. παρὰ τούτων τὴν γῆν
Fish-eaters called dwell along these the land
ἔπλωον. τῇ μὲν δὴ πρώτῃ ἡμέρῃ περὶ δευτέρην
they-sailed on-the indeed indeed first day about second
φυλακὴν ἀναχθέντες καταίρουσιν ἐς Βαγίσαρα· στάδιοι
watch having-put-out they-put-in at Bagisara stades
τοῦ παραπλόου ἑξακόσιοι.
of-the coasting-voyage six-hundred

λιμήν τε ἔνι αὐτόθι εὔορμος, καὶ κώμη Πάσιρα, 26.3
harbor both is-in there good-for-anchoring and village Pasira
ἀπέχουσα ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἑξήκοντα σταδίους, καὶ οἱ
distant from sea sixty stades and the
πρόσοικοι αὐτῆς Πασιρέες.
neighbors of-it Pasireans
ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίην πρωιαίτερον τῆς ὥρης ἀναχθέντες 26.4
on and the next-day earlier than-the hour having-put-out
περιπλώουσιν ἄκρην ἐπὶ πολλόν τε ἀνέχουσαν ἐς τὸν
they-sail-round a-cape for far both projecting into the
πόντον καὶ ταύτην ὑψηλὴν καὶ κρημνώδεα.
sea and this high and precipitous
φρέατα δὲ ὀρύξαντες, ὕδωρ ὀλίγον καὶ πονηρὸν ἀρυσάμενοι 26.5
wells and having-dug water little and bad having-drawn
ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρῃ ἐπὶ ἀγκυρέων ὥρμεον, ὅτι ῥηχίη
on-this indeed the day at anchors they-lay because surf
κατὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἀνεῖχεν·
along the shore stood-up
ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίην καταίρουσιν ἐς Κόλτα, σταδίους 26.6
on and the next-day they-put-in at Colta stades
ἐλθόντες διηκοσίους. ἐνθένδε ἕωθεν πλώσαντες σταδίους
having-gone two-hundred thence at-dawn having-sailed stades
ἑξακοσίους ἐν Καλάμοισιν ὁρμίζονται. κώμη πρὸς τῷ
six-hundred at Calama they-anchor a-village by the
αἰγιαλῷ φοίνικες δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν ὀλίγοι ἐπεφύκεσαν, καὶ
shore palms and around it few had-grown and
βάλανοι ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖσι χλωραὶ ἐπῆσαν. καὶ νῆσος ὡς ἑκατὸν
dates on them green were-on and an-island about hundred
σταδίους ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἀπέχουσα, Καρνίνη οὔνομα.
stades from the shore distant Carnine name

26.7 ἐνθαῦτα ξείνια Νεάρχῳ προσφέρουσιν οἱ κωμῆται πρόβατα
there guest-gifts to-Nearchus bring the villagers sheep
καὶ ἰχθύας· καὶ τῶν προβάτων τὰ κρέα λέγει ὅτι ἦν
and fishes and of-the sheep the meat he-says that was
ἰχθυώδεα, ἴσα τοῖσι τῶν ὀρνίθων τῶν πελαγίων, ὅτι
fishy like to-those of-the birds the sea because
καὶ αὐτὰ ἰχθύας σιτέεται· ποίη γὰρ οὐκ ἔνι ἐν τῇ χώρῃ.
also they fishes eat grass for not is-in in the country
26.8 ἀλλὰ τῇ ὑστεραίῃ πλώσαντες ἐς σταδίους διηκοσίους
but on-the next-day having-sailed about stades two-hundred
ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ καὶ κώμῃ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς
they-anchor by shore and village from sea about
σταδίους τριήκοντα ἀπεχούσῃ· ἡ μὲν κώμη Κίσσα
stades thirty distant the indeed village Cissa
ἐκαλέετο, Καρβὶς δὲ τῷ αἰγιαλῷ οὔνομα ἦν.
was-called Carbis and to-the shore name was
26.9 ἐνθαῦτα πλοίοισιν ἐπιτυγχάνουσι σμικροῖσιν, οἷα ἁλιέων
there with-boats they-meet small such-as fishermen's
πλοῖα οὐκ εὐδαιμόνων· αὐτοὺς δὲ οὐ καταλαμβάνουσιν,
boats not prosperous them and not they-catch
ἀλλ᾽ ἔφυγον γὰρ κατορμιζομένας κατιδόντες τὰς νέας.
but fled for anchoring having-seen the ships
σῖτός τε αὐτόθι οὐκ ἐνῆν, καὶ ἐπελελοίπει τὴν στρατιὴν
grain both there not was-in and had-failed the army
ὁ πολλός· ἀλλὰ αἶγας ἐμβαλόμενοι ἐς τὰς νέας, οὕτω
the most but goats having-put into the ships so
δὴ ἀπέπλωον. καὶ περιπλώσαντες ἄκρην ὑψηλὴν ὅσον
indeed they-sailed-away and having-sailed-round a-cape high about
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίους ἀνέχουσαν ἐς τὸν
fifty and hundred stades projecting into the

πόντον, κατάγονται ἐν λιμένι ἀκλύστῳ. καὶ ὕδωρ αὐτόθι
sea they-put-in at harbor sheltered and water there
ἦν, καὶ ἁλιέες ᾤκεον· Μοσαρνὰ οὔνομα ἦν τῷ λιμένι.
was and fishermen dwelt Mosarna name was to-the harbor
ἐνθένδε κατηγεμὼν τοῦ πλόου λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι 27.1
thence guide of-the voyage says Nearchus that
συνέπλωσεν αὐτοῖσιν Ὑδράκης οὔνομα, Γαδρώσιος· ὑπέστη
sailed-with them Hydraces name Gadrosian undertook
δὲ Ὑδράκης καταστήσειν αὐτοὺς μέχρι Καρμανίης. τὰ
and Hydraces to-bring them as-far-as Carmania the-parts
δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦδε οὐκέτι χαλεπὰ ἦν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλόν τι
and from this no-longer difficult were but more somewhat
εὔορμα, ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικόν.
with-good-anchorage as-far to the gulf the Persian
ἐκ δὲ Μοσαρνῶν νυκτὸς ἄραντες πλώουσι σταδίους 27.2
from and Mosarna by-night having-set-out they-sail stades
ἑπτακοσίους καὶ πεντήκοντα ἐς Βάλωμον αἰγιαλόν· ἐνθένδε
seven-hundred and fifty to Balomus shore thence
ἐς Βάρνα κώμην σταδίους τετρακοσίους, ἵνα φοίνικές
to Barna village stades four-hundred where palms
τε πολλοὶ ἐνῆσαν καὶ κῆπος, καὶ ἐν τῷ κήπῳ μύρσιναι
both many were-in and a-garden and in the garden myrtles
ἐπεφύκεσαν καὶ ἄλλα ἄνθεα, ἀπ᾽ ὅτων στεφανώματα
had-grown and other flowers from which garlands
τοῖσι κωμήτῃσιν ἐπλέκετο·
for-the villagers were-woven
ἐνθαῦτα πρῶτον δένδρεά τε εἶδον ἥμερα, καὶ ἀνθρώπους 27.3
there first trees both they-saw cultivated and men
οὐ πάντη θηριώδεας ἐποικέοντας ἐνθένδε ἐς διηκοσίους
not wholly beast-like dwelling thence about two-hundred

σταδίους περιπλώσαντες καταίρουσιν ἐς Δενδρόβοσα, καὶ
stades having-sailed-round they-put-in at Dendrobosa and
αἱ νέες ἐπ᾽ ἀγκυρέων ἐσάλευσαν.
the ships at anchors rode

27.4 ἐνθένδε ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας ἄραντες ἐς Κώφαντα λιμένα
thence about middle night having-set-out at Cophas harbor
ἀπίκοντο, τετρακοσίους μάλιστα σταδίους διεκπλώσαντες·
they-arrived four-hundred about stades having-sailed-through

27.5 ἐνθαῦτα ἁλιέες τε ᾤκεον, καὶ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσιν ἦν σμικρὰ
there fishermen both dwelt and boats to-them were small
καὶ πονηρά· καὶ τῇσι κώπῃσιν οὐ κατὰ σκαλμὸν ἤρεσσον
and poor and with-the oars not by thole they-rowed
ὡς ὁ Ἑλλήνων νόμος, ἀλλὰ τὸ ὕδωρ ἀναβάλλοντες
as the of-Greeks custom but the water throwing-up
ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, κατάπερ οἱ σκάπτοντες τὴν γῆν.
on-this-side and on-that-side as those digging the earth
ὕδωρ δὲ πολλόν τε ἦν ἐν τῷ λιμένι καὶ καθαρόν.
water and much both was in the harbor and clean

27.6 περὶ δὲ πρώτην φυλακὴν ἄραντες καταίρουσιν ἐς Κύιζα,
about and first watch having-set-out they-put-in at Cyiza
ἐς ὀκτακοσίους σταδίους διεκπλώσαντες, ἵνα αἰγιαλός
about eight-hundred stades having-sailed-through where shore
τε ἔρημος ἦν καὶ ῥηχίη. αὐτόθι ὧν ἐπ᾽ ἀγκυρέων ὥρμεον,
both deserted was and surf there then at anchors they-lay
κατὰ νέας τε ἐδειπνοποιέοντο.
by ships both they-dined

27.7 ἐνθένδε διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους πεντακοσίους ἀπίκοντο ἔς
thence having-sailed-through stades five-hundred they-arrived at
τινα πόλιν σμικρήν, οἰκεομένην ἐπὶ γηλόφου οὐ πόρρω
a-certain city small inhabited on a-hill not far
τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ.
from-the shore

καὶ Νέαρχος ἐπιφρασθεὶς ὅτι σπείρεσθαι τὴν χώρην οἰκός, 27.8
and Nearchus having-noticed that to-be-sown the country likely
λέγει πρὸς Ἀρχίην — συνέπλωε δὲ Νεάρχῳ, τῶν ἐν αἴνῃ
says to Archias he-sailed-with and Nearchus of-those in repute
ἐὼν Μακεδόνων — πρὸς τοῦτον λέγει ὅτι καταληπτέον
being Macedonians to this-one he-says that to-be-seized
σφίσιν εἴη τὸ χωρίον·
for-them it-would-be the place
ἑκόντας τε γὰρ οὐκ ἂν οἴεσθαι δοῦναι τῇ στρατιῇ σιτία, 27.9
willingly both for not — to-think to-give to-the army food
βίῃ τε οὐκ οἷόν τε εἶναι ἐξαιρέειν, πολιορκίης δὲ καὶ
by-force both not possible both to-be to-take of-siege and and
τριβῆς δεήσειν, σφᾶς δὲ ἐπιλελοιπέναι τὰ σιτία. ὅτι δὲ ἡ
delay there-will-need them and to-have-failed the food that and the
γῆ σιτοφόρος, τῇ καλάμῃ τεκμηριοῦσθαι, ἤντινα οὐ πόρρω
land grain-bearing by-the straw to-infer which not far
τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἀπεώρων βαθέαν. ταῦτα ἐπεί σφισιν ἐδόκεε,
from-the shore they-saw deep these-things when to-them seemed-good
τὰς μὲν ἄλλας νέας κελεύει παραρτέεσθαι ὡς ἐς πλόον,
the indeed other ships he-orders to-get-ready as for voyage
καὶ Ἀρχίης αὐτῷ ἐξήρτυε τὰ ἐς τὸν πλόον· αὐτὸς δὲ
and Archias for-him prepared the-things for the voyage himself and
ὑπολειφθεὶς μετὰ μιῆς νεὸς ἐπὶ θέαν δῆθεν τῆς πόλιος ᾔει.
left-behind with one ship for viewing forsooth of-the city went
προσάγοντι δὲ αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ τείχεα φιλίως ξείνια 28.1
approaching and for-him toward the walls in-friendly-fashion guest-gifts
ἔφερον ἐκ τῆς πόλιος θύννους τε ἐν κριβάνοισιν
they-brought from the city tunnies both in ovens
ὀπτούς — οὗτοι γὰρ ἔσχατοι τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων οἰκέοντες
baked these for last of-the Fish-eaters dwelling

πρῶτοι αὐτοῖσιν ὤφθησαν οὐκ ὠμοφαγέοντες — καὶ
first by-them were-seen not eating-raw and
πέμματα ὀλίγα καὶ βαλάνους φοινίκων.
cakes few and dates of-palms

28.2 ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν ἄσμενος δέκεσθαι ἔφη, ἐθέλειν δὲ
he and these indeed gladly to-receive said to-wish and
θεήσασθαι τὴν πόλιν· οἳ δὲ εἴων παρελθεῖν.
to-view the city they and allowed to-go-in

28.3 ὡς δὲ ἔσω πυλέων παρῆλθε, δύο μὲν τῶν τοξοτέων
when and inside gates he-went two indeed of-the archers
κατέχειν κελεύει τὴν πυλίδα, αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ δυοῖν ἄλλοιν
to-hold he-orders the small-gate himself and with two others
καὶ τοῦ ἑρμηνέος ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ ταύτῃ ἀνελθὼν
and the interpreter onto the wall the there having-gone-up
ἐσήμηνε τοῖσιν ἀμφὶ Ἀρχίην ὅκως συνεκέετο. τὸν μὲν
signaled to-those around Archias as had-been-agreed the-one indeed
ὧν σημῆναι, τὸν δὲ συμβαλόντα ποιέειν τὸ τεταγμένον.
then to-signal the-other and having-understood to-do the ordered

28.4 ἰδόντες δὲ τὸ σημήιον οἱ Μακεδόνες ἐπώκελλόν τε κατὰ
having-seen and the signal the Macedonians ran-aground both in
τάχος τὰς νέας καὶ ἐξεπήδων σπουδῇ ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν, οἱ δὲ
haste the ships and leapt-out eagerly into the sea the and
βάρβαροι ἐκπλαγέντες τοῖσι γινομένοισιν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἔθεον.
barbarians panic-struck at-the things-happening to the arms ran

28.5 ὁ δὲ ἑρμηνεὺς ὁ σὺν Νεάρχῳ ἐκήρυσσε σῖτον δοῦναι
the and interpreter the with Nearchus proclaimed grain to-give
τῇ στρατιῇ, εἰ σῴην ἐθέλουσιν ἔχειν τὴν πόλιν· οἳ
to-the army if safe they-wish to-have the city they
δὲ ἠρνέοντο εἶναι σφίσι, καὶ ἅμα προσέβαλλον
and denied to-be to-them and at-the-same-time attacked

τῷ τείχεϊ. ἀλλὰ ἀνέστελλον αὐτοὺς οἱ τοξόται οἱ ἀμφὶ
the wall but drove-back them the archers the around
Νέαρχον, ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου τοξεύοντες.
Nearchus from higher-ground shooting
ὡς δὲ ἔμαθον ἐχομένην τε ἤδη καὶ ὅσον οὔπω 28.6
when and they-learned held both already and all-but not-yet
ἀνδραποδισθησομένην σφίσι τὴν πόλιν, τότε δὴ ἐδέοντο
about-to-be-enslaved for-them the city then indeed they-begged
τοῦ Νεάρχου, τὸν μὲν σῖτον ὅσπερ ἦν αὐτοῖσι λαβόντα
— Nearchus the indeed grain which-very was for-them having-taken
ἀπαγαγεῖν, τὴν πόλιν δὲ μὴ διαφθεῖραι.
to-carry-off the city but not to-destroy
Νέαρχος δὲ τὸν μὲν Ἀρχίην κελεύει καταλαβεῖν τὰς 28.7
Nearchus and — indeed Archias orders to-seize the
πύλας καὶ τὸ κατ᾽ αὐτὰς τεῖχος, αὐτὸς δὲ συμπέμπει
gates and the by them wall himself and sends-with
τοὺς κατοψομένους τὸν σῖτον εἰ ἀδόλως δεικνῦσιν.
those about-to-inspect the grain if without-guile they-show
οἳ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων τῶν ὀπτῶν ἀληλεσμένον 28.8
they and the indeed from the fishes the baked ground
ἄλευρον πολλὸν ἐδείκνυν, πυροὺς δὲ καὶ κριθὰς ὀλίγας·
meal much showed wheat and and barley little
καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανον σίτῳ μὲν τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων,
and for they-happened with-food indeed the from the fishes
τοῖσι δὲ ἄρτοισιν ὅσα ὄψῳ διαχρεόμενοι.
the and loaves as relish using
ὡς δὲ τὰ ἐόντα ἐπεδείκνυν, οὕτω δὴ ἐκ τῶν παρεόντων 28.9
when and the existing-things they-showed so indeed from the present-things
ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἀνήγοντο, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς ἄκρῃ, ἥντινα
having-provisioned they-put-out and they-anchor at a-cape which
οἱ ἐπιχώριοι ἱρὴν Ἡλίου ἦγον· οὔνομα τῇ ἄκρῃ Βάγεια.
the natives sacred of-Sun held name to-the cape Bageia

29.1 ἐνθένδε ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας ἄραντες διεκπλώουσι σταδίους
thence about middle night having-set-out they-sail-through stades
ἐς χιλίους ἐς Τάλμενα λιμένα εὔορμον. ἐνθένδε ἐς
about thousand to Talmena harbor good-for-anchoring thence to
Κανασίδα πόλιν ἐρήμην σταδίους ἐς τετρακοσίους, ἵνα
Canasis city deserted stades about four-hundred where
τινὶ φρέατι ὀρυκτῷ ἐπιτυγχάνουσι, καὶ φοίνικες ἄγριοι
some well dug they-find and palms wild
ἐπεφύκεσαν. τούτων τοὺς ἐγκεφάλους κόπτοντες ἐσιτέοντο·
had-grown of-these the brains cutting they-ate
σῖτος γὰρ ἐπελελοίπει τὴν στρατιήν.
food for had-failed the army

29.2 καὶ κακῶς ἤδη ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἔχοντες ἔπλωον τήν τε ἡμέρην
and badly already from hunger faring they-sailed the both day
καὶ τὴν νύκτα, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ ἐρήμῳ.
and the night and they-anchor by shore deserted

29.3 Νέαρχος δὲ καταδείσας μὴ ἄρα ἐς τὴν γῆν ἐκβάντες
Nearchus and having-feared lest then onto the land having-disembarked
ἀπολίποιεν τὰς νέας ὑπὸ ἀθυμίης, ἐπὶ τῷδε μετεώρους
they-should-abandon the ships from despondency for this out-at-sea
ἔσχε τὰς νέας ἐπ᾽ ἀγκυρέων.
kept the ships at anchors

29.4 ἐνθένδε ἀναχθέντες ἐς Κανάτην ὁρμίζονται, σταδίους ὡς
thence having-put-out at Canate they-anchor stades about
ἑπτακοσίους καὶ πεντήκοντα διεκπλώσαντες. ἔστι δὲ καὶ
seven-hundred and fifty having-sailed-through is and also
αἰγιαλὸς ἐνθαῦτα καὶ διώρυχες βραχέαι.
shore there and canals shallow

29.5 ἐνθένδε σταδίους ὀκτακοσίους πλώσαντες ἐν Τροῖσιν
thence stades eight-hundred having-sailed at Troesi
ὁρμίζονται, κῶμαι δὲ σμικραὶ καὶ πονηραὶ ἐπῆσαν. καὶ οἱ
they-anchor villages and small and poor were-there and the

μὲν ἄνθρωποι ἐκλείπουσι τὰ οἰκία, αὐτοὶ δὲ σίτῳ τινὶ
indeed men abandon the houses themselves and food some
ὀλίγῳ ἐπιτυγχάνουσι, καὶ βαλάνοισιν ἐκ φοινίκων. καὶ
little they-find and dates from palms and
καμήλους ἑπτὰ ὅσαι ἐγκατελήφθησαν κατακόψαντες,
camels seven as-many-as were-caught having-slaughtered
ἀπὸ τούτων ἐσιτέοντο.
from these they-ate
ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω ἀναχθέντες σταδίους τριηκοσίους πλώουσι, 29.6
toward and the dawn having-put-out stades three-hundred they-sail
καὶ κατορμίζονται ἐς Δαγάσειρα· ἔνθα νομάδες τινὲς
and they-anchor at Dagaseira where nomad some
ἄνθρωποι ᾤκεον.
men dwelt
ἐνθένδε ἄραντες τήν τε νύκτα καὶ τὴν ἡμέρην οὐδέν τι 29.7
thence having-set-out the both night and the day not at-all
ἐλινύοντες ἔπλωον, ἀλλὰ διελθόντες γὰρ σταδίους χιλίους
resting they-sailed but having-gone-through for stades thousand
τε καὶ ἑκατὸν ἐξέπλωσαν τὸ ἔθνος τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων,
both and hundred they-sailed-past the people of-the Fish-eaters
πολλὰ κακὰ ταύτῃ παθόντες ἀπορίῃ τῶν ἀναγκαίων.
many evils there having-suffered from-lack of-the necessities
ὁρμίζονται δὲ οὐ πρὸς τῇ γῇ — ῥηχίη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ 29.8
they-anchor and not by the land surf for was for
πολλὸν ἀνέχουσα—, ἀλλὰ μετέωροι ἐπ᾽ ἀγκυρέων· μῆκος
far projecting but out-at-sea at anchors length
τοῦ παραπλόου τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τῆς χώρης στάδιοι
of-the coasting-voyage of-the Fish-eaters of-the country stades
ὀλίγῳ πλεῦνες ἢ μύριοι.
by-little more than ten-thousand

29.9 οὗτοι οἱ Ἰχθυοφάγοι σιτέονται, κατ᾽ ὅ τι περ καὶ
these the Fish-eaters eat according-to what ever indeed also
κληίζονται, ἰχθύας, ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἁλιεύοντες τοὺς
they-are-called fishes few indeed of-them fishing-for the
ἰχθύας — ὀλίγοισι γὰρ καὶ πλοῖα ἐπὶ τῷδε πεποίηται
fishes for-few for also boats for this have-been-made
καὶ τέχνη ἐξεύρηται ἐπὶ τῇ θήρῃ τῶν ἰχθύων—, τὸ
and craft has-been-devised for the catching of-the fishes the
πολλὸν δὲ ἡ ἀνάπωτις αὐτοῖσι παρέχει.
most and the ebb-tide for-them provides

29.10 οἱ δὲ καὶ δίκτυα ἐπὶ τῷδε πεποίηνται, μέγαθος καὶ ἐς
they and also nets for this have-made in-size even to
δύο σταδίους τὰ πολλὰ αὐτῶν. πλέκουσι δὲ αὐτὰ ἐκ τοῦ
two stades the most of-them they-weave and them from the
φλοιοῦ τῶν φοινίκων, στρέφοντες τὸν φλοιὸν ὥσπερ λίνον.
bark of-the palms twisting the bark as flax

29.11 ἐπεὰν δὲ ἡ θάλασσα ὑπονοστήσῃ, ἵνα μὲν ξηρὴ ἡ γῆ
when and the sea recedes where indeed dry the land
ὑπολείπεται, ἐρήμη τὸ πολλόν ἐστιν ἰχθύων· ἔνθα δὲ βαθέα
is-left bare the most is of-fishes where and deep
ἐστίν, ὑπολείπεταί τι τοῦ ὕδατος καὶ ἐν τῷδε κάρτα
it-is is-left some of-the water and in this very
πολλοὶ ἰχθύες· οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ σμικροὶ αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ
many fishes the indeed most small of-them the-others and
καὶ μέζονες. τούτοισι περιβάλλοντες τὰ δίκτυα αἱρέουσι.
also larger these throwing-around the nets they-catch

29.12 σιτέονται δὲ ὠμοὺς μέν, ὅκως ἀνειρύουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος,
they-eat and raw indeed as they-draw-out from the water
τοὺς ἁπαλωτάτους αὐτῶν· τοὺς δὲ μέζονάς τε καὶ
the tenderest of-them the and larger both and
σκληροτέρους ὑπὸ ἡλίῳ αὐαίνοντες, εὖτ᾽ ἂν ἀπαυανθῶσι,
harder in sun drying when — they-are-dried

καταλεῦντες ἄλευρα ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν ποιέονται καὶ ἄρτους· οἳ
grinding meal from them they-make and loaves others
δὲ μάζας ἐκ τούτων τῶν ἀλεύρων πέσσουσι.
and cakes from these the meals bake
καὶ τὰ βοσκήματα αὐτοῖσι τοὺς ἰχθύας ξηροὺς σιτέεται· 29.13
and the herds for-them the fishes dry eat
ἡ γὰρ χώρη ἐρήμη λειμώνων οὐδὲ ποίην φέρει.
the for country bare of-meadows nor grass bears
θηρεύουσι δὲ καὶ καράβους πολλαχῇ καὶ ὄστρεα καὶ 29.14
they-hunt and also crayfish in-many-places and oysters and
κογχύλια. ἅλες δὲ αὐτόματοι γίνονται ἐν τῇ χώρῃ ***
shellfish salts and of-themselves occur in the country (lacuna)
ἀπὸ τούτων ἔλαιον ποιέουσιν.
from these oil they-make
οἳ μὲν δὴ αὐτῶν ἐρήμους τόπους οἰκέουσιν ἄδενδρόν 29.15
they indeed indeed of-them deserted places inhabit treeless
τε τὴν χώρην καὶ ἄφορον καρπῶν ἡμέρων — καὶ
both the country and barren of-fruits cultivated and
τούτοισιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων ἡ πᾶσα δίαιτα ποιέεται—,
for-these from the fishes the whole living is-made
ὀλίγοι δὲ αὐτῶν σπείρουσιν ὅσον τῆς χώρης, ὁ γὰρ
few and of-them sow as-much-as of-the country the for
σῖτος αὐτοῖσίν εἰσιν ἰχθύες.
food for-them are fishes
οἰκία δὲ ποιέονται οἱ μὲν εὐδαιμονέστατοι αὐτῶν 29.16
houses and make the-ones indeed most-prosperous of-them
ὅσα κήτεα ἐκβάλλει ἡ θάλασσα, τούτων τὰ ὀστέα
as-many-as sea-monsters casts-up the sea of-these the bones
ἐπιλεγόμενοι, καὶ τούτοισιν ἀντὶ ξύλων χρεόμενοι. καὶ
choosing and these instead-of timbers using and
θύρας τὰ ὀστέα ὅσα πλατέα αὐτῶν ποιέονται· τοῖσι
doors the bones as-many-as broad of-them they-make for-the

δὲ πολλοῖσι καὶ πενεστέροισιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκανθέων τῶν
and many and poorer from the spines of-the
ἰχθύων τὰ οἰκία ποιέεται.
fishes the houses are-made

VIII · WHALES, THE ISLAND OF THE SUN, AND CARMANIA

Off Cyiza the sailors see whales spouting and drop their oars in terror; Nearchus orders the ships to charge in line, shouting and sounding trumpets, and the whales dive. Their bones frame the Fish-eaters' huts. Nearchus lands on Nosala, the Sun's island, where whoever landed was said to vanish, and proves false both that tale and one of a Nereid who turned men into fish. In Carmania the coast turns northwest. Onesicritus wants to sail to the cape of Maceta, and Nearchus refuses, since the fleet's task is to explore the coast. At the Anamis the men meet a Greek straggler from Alexander's camp, five days inland, and Nearchus hauls up his ships behind a double palisade.

30.1 κήτεα δὲ μεγάλα ἐν τῇ ἔξω θαλάσσῃ βόσκεται, καὶ
sea-monsters and great in the outer sea feed and
ἰχθύες πολλῷ μέζονες ἢ ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἔσω.
fishes much larger than in this the inner
30.2 καὶ λέγει Νέαρχος, ὁκότε ἀπὸ Κυΐζων παρέπλωον, ὑπὸ
and says Nearchus when from Cyiza they-coasted toward
τὴν ἕω ὀφθῆναι ὕδωρ τῆς θαλάσσης οἷά περ ἐκ
the dawn to-have-been-seen water of-the sea as indeed from
πρηστήρων βίᾳ ἀναφερόμενον,
waterspouts by-force carried-up
30.3 ἐκπλαγέντας δὲ σφᾶς πυνθάνεσθαι τῶν κατηγεομένων
panic-struck and them to-inquire of-those guiding
τοῦ πλόου ὅ τι εἴη καὶ ἀπ' ὅτου τοῦτο τὸ πάθημα·
the voyage what ever it-was and from what this the phenomenon
τοὺς δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι ὅτι κήτεα φερόμενα κατὰ τὸν
they and to-have-answered that sea-monsters moving through the

πόντον ἀναφυσᾷ ἐς τὸ ἄνω τὸ ὕδωρ. καὶ τοῖσι ναύτῃσιν
sea blow into the upward the water and to-the sailors
ἐκπλαγεῖσιν ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν τὰ ἐρετμὰ ἐκπεσεῖν,
panic-struck from the hands the oars to-have-fallen
αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπιὼν παρακαλέειν τε καὶ θαρσύνειν, καὶ κατ' 30.4
himself and going-up to-encourage both and to-hearten and to
οὕστινας παραπλώων ἐγίνετο, ἐς μέτωπόν τε κελεῦσαι
whomever coasting-along he-came into line both to-have-ordered
καταστῆσαι ὡς ἐπὶ ναυμαχίῃ τὰς νέας, καὶ ἐπαλαλάζοντας
to-set as for sea-fight the ships and raising-the-war-cry
ὁμοῦ τῷ ὀρθίῳ πυκνήν τε καὶ σὺν κτύπῳ πολλῷ
together-with the shrill-call dense both and with noise much
τὴν εἰρεσίην ποιέεσθαι. οὕτως ἀναθαρσήσαντας ὁμοῦ δὴ
the rowing to-make thus having-taken-heart together indeed
πλώειν ἀπὸ συνθήματος.
to-sail at signal
ὡς δὲ ἐπέλαζον ἤδη τοῖσι θηρίοισιν, ἐνθαῦτα αὐτοὺς 30.5
when and they-approached already the beasts there them
μὲν ὅσον αἱ κεφαλαὶ αὐτοῖσιν ἐχώρεον ἐπαλαλάξαι,
indeed as-much-as the heads for-them held to-have-raised-the-war-cry
τὰς δὲ σάλπιγγας σημῆναι, καὶ τὸν κτύπον τὸν ἀπὸ
the and trumpets to-have-sounded and the noise the from
τῆς εἰρεσίης ὡς ἐπὶ μήκιστον κατασχεῖν.
of-the rowing as for longest to-have-kept-up
οὕτω δὴ ὁρεύμενα ἤδη κατὰ τὰς πρῴρας τῶν νεῶν τὰ 30.6
so indeed being-seen already by the prows of-the ships the
κήτεα ἐς βυσσὸν δῦναι ἐκπλαγέντα, καὶ οὐ πολλῷ
sea-monsters into depth to-have-sunk panic-struck and not much
ὕστερον κατὰ τὰς πρύμνας ἀναδύντα ἀνασχεῖν καὶ τῆς
later by the sterns having-surfaced to-have-come-up and of-the
θαλάσσης αὖθις ἀναφυσῆσαι ἐπὶ μέγα.
sea again to-have-blown to great

30.7 ἔνθεν κρότους τε ἐπὶ τῇ παραλόγῳ σωτηρίῃ γενέσθαι
thence clappings both at the unexpected deliverance to-have-been
τῶν ναυτέων, καὶ αἶνον ἐς τὸν Νέαρχον τε τόλμης καὶ
of-the sailors and praise for — Nearchus both of-daring and
τῆς σοφίης.
of-the wisdom

30.8 τούτων μετεξέτερα τῶν κητέων ἐποκέλλειν πολλαχοῦ τῆς
of-these some of-the sea-monsters to-run-aground in-many-places of-the
χώρης, ἐπειδὰν ἀνάπωτις κατάσχῃ, ἐν τοῖσι βραχέσιν
country when ebb-tide prevails in the shallows
ἐχόμενα, τὰ δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ χειμώνων σκληρῶν ἐς τὴν
held the-others and also by storms hard onto the
χέρσον ἐξωθέεσθαι, καὶ οὕτω δὴ κατασηπόμενα ἀπόλλυσθαί
dry-land to-be-thrust and so indeed rotting to-perish
τε καὶ τὰς σάρκας αὐτοῖσι περιρρεούσας ὑπολείπειν τὰ
both and the flesh from-them falling-away to-leave the
ὀστέα χρᾶσθαι τοῖσιν ἀνθρώποισιν ἐς τὰ οἰκία.
bones to-use for-the men for the houses

30.9 εἶναι ὧν τὰ μὲν ἐν τῇσι πλευρῇσιν αὐτῶν ὀστέα δοκοὺς
to-be then the-ones indeed in the ribs of-them bones beams
τοῖσιν οἰκήμασιν ὅσα μεγάλα, τὰ δὲ σμικρότερα
for-the dwellings as-many-as great the-others and smaller
στρωτῆρας· τὰ δὲ ἐν τῇσι σιαγόσι, ταῦτα δὲ εἶναι
rafters the-others and in the jaws these and to-be
τὰ θύρετρα, οἷα δὴ πολλῶν καὶ ἐς εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε
the door-frames as indeed of-many also to twenty and five
ὀργυιὰς ἀνηκόντων τὸ μέγαθος.
fathoms reaching the size

31.1 εὖτε δὲ παρέπλωον τὴν χώρην τὴν Ἰχθυοφάγων, λόγον
when and they-coasted the country the of-Fish-eaters a-story
ἀκούουσι περὶ νήσου τινὸς ἣ κέεται μὲν ἀπέχουσα
they-hear about island some which lies indeed distant

τῆς ταύτῃ ἠπείρου σταδίους ἐς ἑκατόν, ἐρήμη δέ
from-the there mainland stades about a-hundred deserted and
ἐστιν οἰκητόρων.
it-is of-inhabitants
ταύτην ἱρὴν Ἡλίου ἔλεγον εἶναι οἱ ἐπιχώριοι καὶ Νόσαλα 31.2
this sacred of-Sun said to-be the natives and Nosala
καλέεσθαι, οὐδέ τινα ἀνθρώπων καταίρειν ἐθέλειν ἐς αὐτήν·
to-be-called nor any of-men to-put-in to-wish at it
ὅστις δὲ ἂν ἀπειρίῃ προσσχῇ, γίνεσθαι ἀφανέα.
whoever and — through-inexperience should-put-in to-become invisible
ἀλλὰ λέγει Νέαρχος κέρκουρόν σφιν ἕνα πλήρωμα ἔχοντα 31.3
but says Nearchus a-light-boat for-them one crew having
Αἰγυπτίων οὐ πόρρω τῆς νήσου ταύτης γενέσθαι ἀφανέα,
of-Egyptians not far from-the island this to-have-become invisible
καὶ ὑπὲρ τούτου τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τοῦ πλόου ἰσχυρίζεσθαι ὅτι
and about this the guides of-the voyage to-insist that
ἄρα κατάραντες ὑπ᾽ ἀγνοίης ἐς τὴν νῆσον γένοιντο ἀφανέες.
then having-put-in from ignorance at the island they-became invisible
Νέαρχος δὲ πέμπει κύκλῳ περὶ τὴν νῆσον τριηκόντορον, 31.4
Nearchus and sends in-circle around the island a-thirty-oared-ship
κελεύσας μὴ κατασχεῖν μὲν ἐς τὴν νῆσον, ἐμβοᾶν δὲ
having-ordered not to-put-in indeed at the island to-shout and
τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ὡς μάλιστα ἐν χρῷ παραπλώοντας,
to-the men as most close (to-the)-skin coasting-along
καὶ τὸν κυβερνήτην οὐνομάζοντας καὶ ὅτου ἄλλου οὐκ
and the helmsman naming and of-whomever other not
ἀφανὲς τὸ οὔνομα.
unknown the name
ὡς δὲ οὐδένα ὑπακούειν, τότε δὴ αὐτὸς λέγει πλῶσαι 31.5
when and no-one to-answer then indeed he-himself says to-have-sailed
ἐς τὴν νῆσον, καὶ κατασχεῖν προσαναγκάσαι τοὺς ναύτας
to the island and to-have-put-in to-have-compelled the sailors

οὐκ ἐθέλοντας, καὶ ἐκβῆναι αὐτὸς καὶ ἐλέγξαι κενὸν
not wishing and to-have-landed himself and to-have-proved empty
μῦθον ἐόντα τὸν περὶ τῇ νήσῳ λόγον.
tale being the about the island story

31.6 ἀκοῦσαι δὲ καὶ ἄλλον λόγον λεγόμενον, οἰκῆσαι
to-have-heard and also another story told to-have-dwelt-on
τὴν νῆσον ταύτην μίαν τῶν Νηρηίδων· τὸ δὲ οὔνομα
the island this one of-the Nereids the and name
οὐ λέγεσθαι τῆς Νηρηίδος. ταύτῃ δὲ ὅστις πελάσειε,
not to-be-told of-the Nereid to-this and whoever should-approach
τούτῳ δὲ συγγίνεσθαι μέν, ἰχθὺν δὲ αὐτὸν ἐξ ἀνθρώπου
with-this-one and to-lie indeed fish and him from man
ποιέουσαν ἐμβάλλειν ἐς τὸν πόντον.
making to-throw into the sea

31.7 Ἥλιον δὲ ἀχθεσθέντα τῇ Νηρηίδι κελεύειν μετοικίζεσθαι
Sun and having-been-vexed with-the Nereid to-order to-move
αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς νήσου· τὴν δὲ ὁμολογέειν μὲν ὅτι
her from the island she and to-agree indeed that
ἐξοικισθήσεται, δέεσθαι δέ οἱ τὸ πάθημα παυθῆναι, καὶ
she-will-move to-ask and him the affliction to-be-stopped and
τὸν Ἥλιον ὑποδέξασθαι·
— Sun to-have-undertaken

31.8 τοὺς δὲ δὴ ἀνθρώπους οὕστινας ἰχθύας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
the and indeed men whom fishes from men
ἐπεποιήκει κατελεήσαντα ἀνθρώπους αὖθις ἐξ ἰχθύων
she-had-made having-pitied men again from fishes
ποιῆσαι, καὶ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τὸ γένος καὶ
to-have-made and from these the Fish-eaters the race also
ἐς Ἀλέξανδρον κατελθεῖν.
down-to Alexander to-have-come-down

καὶ ταῦτα ὅτι ψεύδεα ἐξελέγχει Νέαρχος, οὐκ ἐπαινέω 31.9
and these-things that false-things proves Nearchus not praise
αὐτὸν ἔγωγε τῆς σχολῆς τε καὶ σοφίης, οὔτε κάρτα χαλεπὰ
him I-at-least for-the leisure both and wisdom neither very difficult
ἐξελεγχθῆναι ἐόντα, ταλαίπωρόν τε ἐὸν γινώσκων τοὺς
to-be-disproved being wretched and being knowing the
παλαιοὺς λόγους ἐπιλεγόμενον ἐξελέγχειν ἐόντας ψευδέας.
ancient tales choosing to-refute being false
ὑπὲρ δὲ τοὺς Ἰχθυοφάγους Γαδρώσιοι ἐς τὸ ἄνω οἰκέουσι 32.1
beyond and the Fish-eaters Gadrosians into the upward inhabit
γῆν πονηρὴν καὶ ψαμμώδεα, ἔνθα καὶ τὰ πολλὰ κακὰ
land poor and sandy where also the many evils
ἡ στρατιή τε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔπαθε καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος,
the army both for-Alexander suffered and himself Alexander
ὥς μοι ἤδη ἐν τῷ ἄλλῳ λόγῳ ἀπήγηται.
as by-me already in the other account has-been-related
ὡς δὲ ἐς τὴν Καρμανίην ἀπὸ τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων κατῆρεν ὁ 32.2
when and into — Carmania from the Fish-eaters put-in the
στρατός, ἐνθαῦτα ἵνα πρῶτον τῆς Καρμανίης ὡρμίσαντο,
force there where first — of-Carmania they-anchored
ἐπ᾽ ἀγκυρέων ἐσάλευσαν, ὅτι ῥηχίη παρετέτατο ἐς τὸ
at anchors they-rode because surf stretched into the
πέλαγος τρηχέα.
open-sea rough
ἐνθένδε οὐκέτι ὡσαύτως πρὸς ἡλίου δυομένου ἔπλωον, 32.3
thence no-longer likewise toward sun setting they-sailed
ἀλλὰ τὸ μεταξὺ δύσιός τε ἡλίου καὶ τῆς ἄρκτου μᾶλλόν
but the between setting both of-sun and of-the north more
τι αἱ πρῷραι αὐτοῖσιν ἐπείχον.
somewhat the prows for-them held

32.4 καὶ ἡ Καρμανίη τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τῆς γῆς καὶ τῶν
and — Carmania the of-Fish-eaters than-the land and than-the
Ὠρειτέων εὐδενδροτέρη τε καὶ εὐκαρποτέρη ἐστί, καὶ
of-Oreitae more-wooded both and more-fruitful is and
ποιώδης μᾶλλόν τι καὶ εὔυδρος.
grassy more somewhat and well-watered

32.5 ὁρμίζονται δὲ ἐν Βάδει χώρῳ τῆς Καρμανίης οἰκεομένῳ,
they-anchor and at Badis a-place — of-Carmania inhabited
δένδρεά τε πολλὰ ἥμερα ἔχοντι πλὴν ἐλαίης, καὶ ἀμπέλους
trees both many cultivated having except the-olive and vines
ἀγαθάς, καὶ σιτοφόρῳ.
good and grain-bearing

32.6 ἐνθένδε ὁρμηθέντες καὶ διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους ὀκτακοσίους,
thence having-set-out and having-sailed-through stades eight-hundred
πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ ὁρμίζονται ἐρήμῳ, καὶ κατορέουσιν ἄκρην
by shore they-anchor deserted and they-descry a-cape
μακρὴν ἀνέχουσαν ἐπὶ πολλὸν ἐς τὸ πέλαγος· ἀπέχειν
long projecting for far into the open-sea to-be-distant
δὲ ἐφαίνετο ἡ ἄκρη πλόον ὡς ἡμέρης.
and appeared the cape a-voyage about of-a-day

32.7 καὶ οἱ τῶν χώρων ἐκείνων δαήμονες Ἀραβίης ἔλεγον τὴν
and those of-the places those skilled of-Arabia said the
ἀνέχουσαν ταύτην ἄκρην, καλέεσθαι δὲ Μάκετα· ἔνθεν
projecting this cape to-be-called and Maceta whence
τὰ κιννάμωμά τε καὶ ἄλλα τοιουτότροπα ἐς Ἀσσυρίους
the cinnamon both and other such-things to Assyrians
ἀγινέεσθαι.
to-be-brought

32.8 καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ τούτου, ἵναπερ ὁ στόλος ἐσάλευε,
and from the shore this where-indeed the fleet rode
καὶ τῆς ἄκρης, ἥντινα καταντικρὺ ἀπεώρων ἀνέχουσαν
and of-the cape which opposite they-saw projecting

ἐς τὸ πέλαγος, ὁ κόλπος — ἐμοί τε δοκέει καὶ Νεάρχῳ
into the open-sea the gulf to-me both seems and to-Nearchus
ὡσαύτως ἐδόκεεν — ἐς τὸ ἔσω ἀναχέεται, ὅπερ οἰκὸς
likewise seemed into the inner spreads-out which likely
ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ θάλασσα.
the Red sea
ταύτην τὴν ἄκρην ὡς κατεῖδον, Ὀνησίκριτος μὲν 32.9
this the cape when they-saw Onesicritus indeed
ἐπέχοντας ἐπ᾽ αὐτὴν πλώειν ἐκέλευεν, ὡς μὴ κατὰ τὸν
holding-course on it to-sail bade so-that not along the
κόλπον ἐλαστρεῦντας ταλαιπωρέεσθαι.
gulf driving-in to-suffer-hardship
Νέαρχος δὲ ὑποκρίνεται νήπιον εἶναι Ὀνησίκριτον, εἰ 32.10
Nearchus and answers childish to-be Onesicritus if
ἀγνοέει ἐπ᾽ ὅτῳ ἐστάλη πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ὁ στόλος.
he-is-ignorant for what was-sent by Alexander the fleet
οὐ γὰρ ὅτι ἀπορίη ἦν πεζῇ διασωθῆναι πάντα 32.11
not for that lack there-was on-foot to-get-through all
αὐτῷ τὸν στρατόν, ἐπὶ τῷδε ἄρα ἐκπέμψαι τὰς νέας,
for-him the army for this then to-have-sent-out the ships
ἀλλὰ ἐθέλοντα αἰγιαλούς τε τοὺς κατὰ τὸν παράπλοον
but wishing shores both the along the coasting-voyage
κατασκέψασθαι καὶ ὅρμους καὶ νησῖδας, καὶ ὅστις κόλπος
to-explore and anchorages and islets and whatever gulf
ἐσέχοι, ἐκπεριπλῶσαι τοῦτον, καὶ πόλιας ὅσαι
should-open-in to-sail-round this and cities as-many-as
ἐπιθαλάσσιαι, καὶ εἴ τις ἔγκαρπος γῆ καὶ εἴ τις ἐρήμη.
on-the-sea and if any fruitful land and if any desert
σφᾶς ὧν οὐ χρῆναι ἀφανίσαι τὸ ἔργον, πρὸς τέρματι 32.12
them then not to-be-necessary to-ruin the task at the-end
ἤδη ἐόντας τῶν πόνων, ἄλλως τε οὐδὲ ἀπόρως ἔτι
already being of-the toils besides both not-even in-want still

τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐν τῷ παραπλόῳ ἔχοντας. δεδιέναι τε,
of-the necessities in the coasting-voyage having to-fear both
ἐπεὶ ἡ ἄκρη ἐς μεσαμβρίην ἀνέχοι, μὴ ἐρήμῃ τε τῇ
since the cape to south projected lest with-desert both the
ταύτῃ γῇ καὶ ἀνύδρῳ καὶ φλογώδεϊ ἐγκύρσειαν.
there land and waterless and scorching they-should-meet
32.13 ταῦτα ἐνίκα, καί μοι δοκέει περιφανέως σῶσαι τὴν
these-things prevailed and to-me seems plainly to-have-saved the
στρατιὴν τῇδε τῇ βουλῇ Νέαρχος· τὴν γὰρ δὴ ἄκρην
army by-this the counsel Nearchus the for indeed cape
ἐκείνην καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτῇ χώρην πᾶσαν ἐρήμην τε
that and the by it country all desert both
εἶναι λόγος κατέχει καὶ ὕδατος ἀπορίῃ ἔχεσθαι.
to-be story holds and of-water by-lack to-be-gripped
33.1 ἀλλὰ ἔπλωον γὰρ ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἄραντες τῇ γῇ
but they-sailed for from the shore having-set-out to-the land
προσεχέες, καὶ πλώσαντες σταδίους ὡς ἑπτακοσίους ἐν
keeping-close and having-sailed stades about seven-hundred at
ἄλλῳ αἰγιαλῷ ὡρμίσαντο· Νεόπτανα οὔνομα τῷ αἰγιαλῷ.
another shore they-anchored Neoptana name to-the shore
33.2 καὶ αὖθις ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω ἀνήγοντο, καὶ πλώσαντες σταδίους
and again toward the dawn they-put-out and having-sailed stades
ἑκατὸν ὁρμίζονται κατὰ ποταμὸν Ἄναμιν· ὁ δὲ χῶρος
hundred they-anchor at river Anamis the and place
Ἁρμόζεια ἐκαλέετο. δαψιλέα δὲ ἤδη καὶ πάμφορα τὰ
Harmozeia was-called abundant and already and all-bearing the-things
ταύτῃ ἦν, πλὴν ἐλαῖαι οὐκ ἐπεφύκεσαν.
there were except olives not had-grown
33.3 ἐνθαῦτα ἐκβαίνουσί τε ἐκ τῶν νεῶν καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πολλῶν
there they-disembark both from the ships and from the many
πόνων ἄσμενοι ἀνεπαύοντο, μεμνημένοι ὅσα κακὰ κατὰ
toils gladly they-rested remembering how-many evils on

τὴν θάλασσαν πεπονθότες ἦσαν καὶ πρὸς τῇ γῇ τῇ
the sea having-suffered they-were and by the land the
Ἰχθυοφάγων, τήν τε ἐρημίην τῆς χώρης, καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους
of-Fish-eaters the both desolation of-the country and the men
ὅκως θηριώδεες, καὶ τὰς σφῶν ἀπορίας ἐπιλεγόμενοι.
how beast-like and the their straits recounting
καί τινες αὐτῶν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς τὸ πρόσω ἀνῆλθον, 33.4
and some of-them from sea to the forward went-up
ἀποσκεδασθέντες τῆς στρατιῆς κατὰ ζήτησιν ἄλλος
having-scattered from-the army in search one
ἄλλου.
of-another
ἐνθαῦτα ἄνθρωπός σφισιν ὤφθη χλαμύδα τε φορέων 33.5
there a-man by-them was-seen a-cloak both wearing
Ἑλληνικὴν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὡς Ἕλλην ἐσκευασμένος,
Greek and the other-things as a-Greek equipped
καὶ φωνὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐφώνεε. τοῦτον οἱ πρῶτοι ἰδόντες
and language Greek spoke this-one those first having-seen
δακρῦσαι ἔλεγον· οὕτω τι παράλογόν σφισι φανῆναι
to-have-wept said so something unexpected to-them to-have-appeared
ἐκ τῶν τοσῶνδε κακῶν Ἕλληνα μὲν ἄνθρωπον ἰδεῖν,
from the so-great evils Greek indeed man to-see
Ἑλλάδος δὲ φωνῆς ἀκοῦσαι.
of-Greek and speech to-hear
ἐπηρώτων τε ὁκόθεν ἥκοι καὶ ὅστις ἐών· ὃ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ 33.6
they-asked both whence he-came and who being he and from the
στρατοπέδου τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀποσκεδασθῆναι ἔλεγε, καὶ
camp — of-Alexander to-have-been-scattered said and
εἶναι οὐ πόρρω τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον.
to-be not far the camp and himself Alexander

33.7 τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον βοῶντές τε καὶ κροτέοντες ἀνάγουσι
this the man shouting both and clapping they-bring-up
παρὰ τὸν Νέαρχον· καὶ Νεάρχῳ πάντα ἔφρασε, καὶ
to — Nearchus and to-Nearchus everything he-told and
ὅτι πέντε ἡμερέων ὁδὸν ἀπέχει τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ ὁ
that five days' journey is-distant the camp and the
βασιλεὺς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης.
king from the sea

33.8 τόν τε ὕπαρχον τῆς χώρης ταύτης δείξειν ἔφη
the both hyparch of-the country this to-be-going-to-show he-said
Νεάρχῳ, καὶ ἔδειξε· καὶ μετὰ τούτου Νέαρχος γνώμην
to-Nearchus and he-showed and with this-one Nearchus plan
ποιέεται, ὅκως ἀναβήσεται πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα.
makes how he-will-go-up to the king

33.9 τότε μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τὰς νέας ἀπῆλθεν· ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω
then indeed indeed to the ships he-went-off toward and the dawn
τὰς νέας ἐνεώλκεεν, ἐπισκευῆς τε εἵνεκα, ὅσαι αὐτέων
the ships he-hauled-up of-repair both for-the-sake as-many-as of-them
κατὰ τὸν πλόον ἐπεπονήκεσαν, καὶ ἅμα ὅτι
during the voyage had-been-damaged and at-the-same-time because
ἐν τῷ χώρῳ τούτῳ ὑπολείπεσθαί οἱ ἐδόκεε τὸν
in the place this to-leave-behind for-him it-seemed(-good) the
πολλὸν στρατόν. χάρακά τε ὧν περιβάλλεται διπλόον
greater-part-of force a-palisade both then he-throws-around double
τῷ ναυστάθμῳ, καὶ τεῖχος γήινον καὶ τάφρον βαθέαν,
to-the roadstead and wall earthen and ditch deep
ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῆς ὄχθης ἀρξάμενος ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν
from of-the river the bank having-begun as-far to the
αἰγιαλόν, ἵνα αἱ νέες αὐτῷ ἀνειρυσμέναι ἦσαν.
shore where the ships for-him hauled-up were

IX · NEARCHUS FINDS ALEXANDER

The local governor races to tell Alexander that Nearchus is coming; when no one arrives, Alexander has him arrested. Searchers pass Nearchus and Archias unrecognized, so haggard are they, until Nearchus names himself. Alexander, seeing them come with only five others, thinks the fleet lost and weeps, then rejoices when he learns that the ships are safe, swearing that the news pleases him more than the conquest of Asia. At Nearchus' request the governor is freed. After sacrifices and games Alexander would spare Nearchus further danger, but Nearchus asks to finish the voyage. Fighting his way back to the coast, he sails on past islands sacred to Poseidon and to Hermes and Aphrodite.

ἐν ᾧ δὲ Νέαρχος ταῦτα ἐκόσμεε, τῆς χώρης ὁ ὕπαρχος 34.1
in which and Nearchus these-things arranged of-the country the hyparch
πεπυσμένος ὅκως ἐν μεγάλῃ φροντίδι ἔχοι Ἀλέξανδρος
having-learned how in great anxiety had Alexander
τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν στόλον τοῦτον, μέγα δή τι ἐξ
the-things about the fleet this great indeed something from
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀγαθὸν ἔγνω πείσεσθαι, εἰ πρώτός οἱ
Alexander good he-knew to-be-going-to-receive if first to-him
ἀπαγγείλειε τοῦ στρατοῦ τὴν σωτηρίην καὶ τὸν Νέαρχον
he-should-report of-the force the safety and — Nearchus
ὅτι οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον ἀπίξεται ἐς ὄψιν τὴν τοῦ βασιλέος.
that not much later will-come into sight the of-the king
οὕτω δὴ τὴν βραχυτάτην ἐλάσας ἀπαγγέλλει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ 34.2
so indeed the shortest-way having-ridden reports to-Alexander
ὅτι Νέαρχος οὗτος προσάγει ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν. τότε μὲν
that Nearchus here approaches from the ships then indeed
δὴ καίπερ ἀπιστέων τῷ λόγῳ Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀλλὰ ἐχάρη
indeed although disbelieving the word Alexander but rejoiced
γε κατὰ τὸ οἰκὸς τῇ ἀγγελίῃ·
at-least according-to the likely at-the news

34.3 ὡς δὲ ἡμέρη τε ἄλλη ἐξ ἄλλης ἐγίνετο, καὶ συντιθέντι
when and day both other after other passed and reckoning
αὐτῷ τῆς ἀγγελίης τὸν χρόνον οὐκέτι πιστὰ τὰ
for-him of-the news the time no-longer credible the-things
ἀπηγγελμένα ἐφαίνετο,
reported appeared

34.4 πεμπόμενοί τε ἄλλοι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλοισιν ὡς ἐπὶ κομιδῇ τοῦ
being-sent both others after others as for fetching —
Νεάρχου οἳ μέν τινες ὀλίγον τῆς ὁδοῦ προελθόντες
of-Nearchus the-ones indeed some a-little of-the road having-gone-forward
καὶ οὐδενὶ ἐγκύρσαντες κενοὶ ἐπανῄεσαν, οἳ δὲ καὶ
and with-no-one having-met empty returned the-others and also
πορρωτέρω ἐλθόντες καὶ διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἀμφὶ Νέαρχον,
farther having-gone and having-missed the around Nearchus
οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ ἐπανῄεσαν,
not-even themselves returned

34.5 ἐνθαῦτα δὴ τὸν μὲν ἄνθρωπον ἐκεῖνον, ὡς κενά τε
there indeed the indeed man that as empty-things both
ἀγγείλαντα καὶ λυπηρότερά οἱ τὰ πρήγματα ποιήσαντα
having-reported and more-grievous for-him the affairs having-made
τῇ ματαίῃ εὐφροσύνῃ, συλλαβεῖν κελεύει Ἀλέξανδρος,
with-the vain joy to-arrest orders Alexander
αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ τε ὄψι καὶ τῇ γνώμῃ δῆλος ἦν μεγάλῳ
himself and in-the both face and in-the mind plain was by-great
ἄχεϊ βεβλημένος.
grief struck

34.6 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν τινες κατὰ ζήτησιν τοῦ Νεάρχου
in this and of-the some for search — of-Nearchus
ἐσταλμένων ἵππους τε ἐπὶ κομιδῇ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἁπήνας δὲ
sent horses both for fetching of-him and carriages and

ἄγοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτῷ τε Νεάρχῳ
leading meet along the road himself both Nearchus
καὶ Ἀρχίῃ, καὶ πέντε ἢ ἓξ ἅμα αὐτοῖσι.
and Archias and five or six together-with them
καὶ ἐντυχόντες οὔτε αὐτὸν ἐγνώρισαν οὔτε Ἀρχίην — 34.7
and having-met neither him they-recognized nor Archias
οὕτω τι κάρτα ἀλλοῖοι ἐφάνησαν, κομόωντές τε καὶ
so somewhat very changed they-appeared long-haired both and
ῥυπόωντες καὶ μεστοὶ ἅλμης καὶ ῥικνοὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ
filthy and full of-brine and shriveled the bodies and
ὠχροὶ ὑπὸ ἀγρυπνίης τε καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ταλαιπωρίης —
pale from sleeplessness both and of-the other hardship
ἀλλὰ ἐρομένοισι γὰρ αὐτοῖσιν ἵναπερ εἴη Ἀλέξανδρος, 34.8
but to-those-asking for them where-indeed was Alexander
ὑποκρινάμενοι τὸν χῶρον οἳ δὲ παρήλαυνον.
having-answered the place they and drove-past
Ἀρχίης δὲ ἐπιφρασθεὶς λέγει πρὸς Νέαρχον "ὦ Νέαρχε, 34.9
Archias and having-noticed says to Nearchus O Nearchus
τούτους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους δι' ἐρημίης ἐλαύνειν τὴν αὐτὴν
these the men through desert to-drive the same
ἡμῖν ὁδὸν οὐκ ἐπ' ἄλλῳ τινὶ συντίθημι ὅτι μὴ κατὰ
to-us road not for other anything I-conclude except — on
ζήτησιν τὴν ἡμετέρην ἀπεσταλμένους.
search the our sent
ὅτι δὲ οὐ γινώσκουσιν ἡμέας, οὐκ ἐν θώματι ποιέομαι· 34.10
that and not they-recognize us not in wonder I-make
οὕτω γάρ τι ἔχομεν κακῶς, ὥστε ἄγνωστοι εἶναι.
so for something we-fare badly that unrecognizable to-be
φράσωμεν αὐτοῖσιν οἵτινές εἰμεν, καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐρώμεθα
let-us-tell them who we-are and them let-us-ask
κατ' ὅτι ταύτην ἐλαύνουσιν."
for what this-way they-drive

34.11 ἔδοξε Νεάρχῳ ἐναίσιμα λέγειν· καὶ ἤροντο ὅκοι ἐλαύνουσιν·
it-seemed to-Nearchus fitting to-speak and they-asked whither they-drive
οἱ δὲ ὑποκρίνονται ὅτι κατὰ ζήτησιν Νεάρχου τε καὶ
they and answer that on search of-Nearchus both and
τοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ.
of-the force the naval

34.12 ὁ δέ "οὗτος" ἔφη "ἐγώ εἰμι Νέαρχος, καὶ Ἀρχίης οὗτος.
he and here said I am Nearchus and Archias this-one
ἀλλὰ ἄγετε ἡμέας· ἡμεῖς δὲ τὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς στρατιῆς
but lead us we and the-things about the army
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀπηγησόμεθα."
to-Alexander will-relate

35.1 ἀναλαβόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς ἁπήνας ὀπίσω ἤλαυνον. καί
having-taken-up and them onto the carriages back they-drove and
τινες αὐτῶν τούτων ὑποφθάσαι ἐθελήσαντες τὴν ἀγγελίην,
some of-them these to-anticipate having-wished the news
προδραμόντες λέγουσιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὅτι "οὗτός τοι Νέαρχος,
having-run-ahead say to-Alexander that here surely Nearchus
καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἀρχίης καὶ πέντε ἄλλοι κομίζονται παρὰ σέ,"
and with him Archias and five others are-being-brought to you
ὑπὲρ δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ παντὸς οὐδὲν εἶχον ὑποκρίνασθαι.
about but the force whole nothing they-were-able to-answer

35.2 τοῦτο ἐκεῖνο συνθεὶς Ἀλέξανδρος, τοὺς μὲν παραλόγως
this that having-concluded Alexander them indeed beyond-expectation
ἀποσωθῆναι, τὴν στρατιὴν δὲ πᾶσαν διεφθάρθαι αὐτῷ,
to-have-got-away-safe the army but whole to-have-perished for-him
οὐ τοσόνδε Νεάρχου τε καὶ Ἀρχίεω τῇ σωτηρίῃ ἔχαιρεν,
not so-much of-Nearchus both and of-Archias at-the safety rejoiced
ὅσον ἐλύπεεν αὐτὸν ἀπολομένη ἡ στρατιὴ πᾶσα.
as-much-as grieved him having-perished the army whole

οὔπω πάντα εἴρητο, καὶ Νέαρχός τε καὶ Ἀρχίης 35.3
not-yet everything had-been-said and Nearchus both and Archias
προσῆγον. τοὺς δὲ μόλις καὶ χαλεπῶς ἐπέγνω Ἀλέξανδρος·
came-up them and hardly and with-difficulty recognized Alexander
ὅτι τε κομόωντας καὶ κακῶς ἐσταλμένους κατεώρα,
because both long-haired and badly dressed he-saw-them
ταύτῃ μᾶλλόν τι βεβαιότερον αὐτῷ τὸ ἄχος ὑπὲρ
by-this more somewhat more-firmly for-him the grief about
τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ναυτικῆς ἐγίνετο.
the army the naval became
ὁ δὲ τὴν δεξιὴν Νεάρχῳ ἐμβαλὼν καὶ ἀπαγαγὼν μοῦνον 35.4
he and the right-hand to-Nearchus having-given and having-led-away alone
ἀπὸ τῶν ἑταίρων τε καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστέων, πολλὸν
from the companions both and the shield-bearers long
χρόνον ἐδάκρυεν·
time wept
ὀψὲ δὲ ἀνενεγκὼν "ἀλλὰ σύγε ἡμῖν ὅτι ἐπανήκεις 35.5
late and having-recovered but you-at-least to-us that you-return
σῷος" ἔφη "καὶ Ἀρχίης οὗτος, ἔχοι ἂν ἔμοιγε ὡς
safe he-said and Archias this-one would-be — for-me-at-least as
ἐπὶ συμφορῇ τῇ ἁπάσῃ μετρίως· αἱ δέ τοι νέες καὶ ἡ
for disaster the whole moderately the but surely ships and the
στρατιὴ κοίῳ τινὶ τρόπῳ διεφθάρησαν;"
army in-what some manner perished
ὁ δὲ ὑπολαβών "ὦ βασιλεῦ," ἔφη "καὶ αἱ νέες τοι 35.6
he and having-taken-up O king he-said both the ships for-you
σῷαί εἰσι καὶ ὁ στρατός· ἡμεῖς δὲ αὐτάγγελοι τῆς
safe are and the force we and own-messengers of-the
σωτηρίης αὐτῶν ἥκομεν."
safety of-them come

35.7 ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐδάκρυεν Ἀλέξανδρος, κατ᾽ ὅτι ἀνέλπιστός
still more wept Alexander in so-far-as unhoped-for
οἱ ἡ σωτηρίη τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐφαίνετο· καὶ ὅκου ὁρμέουσιν
to-him the safety of-the force appeared and where are-anchored
αἱ νέες ἀνηρώτα. ὃ δὲ "αὗται" ἔφη "ἐν τῷ στόματι
the ships he-asked he and these he-said in the mouth
τοῦ Ἀνάμιδος ποταμοῦ ἀνειρυσμέναι ἐπισκευάζονται."
of-the Anamis river hauled-up are-being-repaired
35.8 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τόν τε Δία τὸν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τὸν Ἄμμωνα
Alexander and — both Zeus the of-Greeks and — Ammon
τὸν Λιβύων ἐπόμνυσιν, ἦ μὲν μεζόνως ἐπὶ τῇδε τῇ
the of-Libyans swears truly indeed more at this the
ἀγγελίῃ χαίρειν ἢ ὅτι τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν ἐκτημένος ἔχει.
news to-rejoice than that — Asia all having-acquired he-holds
καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἄχος οἱ τὸ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀπωλείῃ τῆς στρατιῆς
and for the grief to-him the at the loss of-the army
ἀντίρροπον γενέσθαι τῇ ἄλλῃ πάσῃ εὐτυχίῃ.
counterbalancing to-have-been to-the other all good-fortune
36.1 ὁ δὲ ὕπαρχος τῆς χώρης, ὅντινα συνειλήφει Ἀλέξανδρος
the and hyparch of-the country whom had-arrested Alexander
ἐπὶ τῆς ἀγγελίης τῇ ματαιότητι, παρεόντα κατιδὼν τὸν
for of-the news the vanity present having-seen —
Νέαρχον, πίπτει τε αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ γούνατα,
Nearchus falls both to-him at the knees
36.2 καὶ "οὗτός τοι" ἔφη "ἐγώ εἰμι, ὃς ἀπήγγειλα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
and here surely he-said I am who reported to-Alexander
ὅτι σῷοι ἥκετε· ὁρᾷς ὅκως διάκειμαι." οὕτω δὴ δέεται
that safe you-come you-see how I-fare so indeed asks
Ἀλεξάνδρου Νέαρχος ἀπεῖναι τὸν ἄνδρα, καὶ ἀπίεται.
of-Alexander Nearchus to-release the man and he-is-released

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ σωτήρια τοῦ στρατοῦ ἔθυε Διὶ 36.3
Alexander and thank-offerings-for-safety of-the force sacrificed to-Zeus
Σωτῆρι καὶ Ἡρακλέι καὶ Ἀπόλλωνι Ἀλεξικάκῳ καὶ
Savior and to-Heracles and to-Apollo Averter-of-Evil and
Ποσειδῶνί τε καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι θαλάσσιοι θεοί, καὶ ἀγῶνα
to-Poseidon both and as-many-as other of-the-sea gods and contest
ἐποίεε γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικόν, καὶ πομπὴν ἔπεμπε·
held gymnastic both and musical and procession led
καὶ Νέαρχος ἐν πρώτοισιν ἐπόμπευε, ταινίῃσί τε
and Nearchus among first marched-in-procession with-ribbons both
καὶ ἄνθεσι πρὸς τῆς στρατιῆς βαλλόμενος.
and with-flowers by the army being-pelted
ὡς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ τέλος εἶχε, λέγει πρὸς Νέαρχον "ἐγώ 36.4
when and these-things for-him end had he-says to Nearchus I
σε, ὦ Νέαρχε, οὐκέτι ἐθέλω τὸ πρόσω οὔτ' ὦν κινδυνεύειν
you O Nearchus no-longer wish the further neither then to-run-risks
οὔτε ταλαιπωρέεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἄλλος γὰρ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
nor to-suffer-hardship but another for of-the fleet
ἐξηγήσεται τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε, ἔστε καταστῆσαι αὐτὸ ἐς Σοῦσα."
will-lead the from this until to-bring it to Susa
Νέαρχος δὲ ὑπολαβὼν λέγει "ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ μέν τοι 36.5
Nearchus and having-taken-up says O king I indeed to-you
πάντα πείθεσθαι ἐθέλω τε καὶ ἀναγκαίη μοί ἐστιν. ἀλλὰ
in-all-things to-obey wish both and necessity for-me is but
εἰ δή τι καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ χαρίζεσθαι ἐθέλεις, μὴ ποιήσῃς
if indeed something also you to-me to-grant wish not do
ὧδε, ἀλλά με ἔασον ἐξηγήσασθαι ἐς ἅπαν τοῦ στρατοῦ,
thus but me let to-lead into the-whole of-the force
ἔστ' ἄν σοι σώας καταστήσω ἐς Σοῦσα τὰς νέας.
until — for-you safe I-bring to Susa the ships

36.6 μηδὲ τὰ μὲν χαλεπά τε καὶ ἄπορα ἐμοὶ ἐπιτετραμμένα
nor the indeed difficult both and impossible-things to-me entrusted
ἐκ σοῦ ἔστω, τὰ δὲ εὐπετέα τε καὶ κλέεος ἤδη ἐχόμενα
by you let-be the and easy both and of-glory already holding
ἑτοίμου, ταῦτα δὲ ἀπαιρεθέντα ἄλλῳ ἐς χεῖρας διδόσθω."
ready these and taken-away to-another into hands let-be-given
36.7 ἔτι λέγοντα παύει Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ χάριν προσωμολόγεεν
still speaking stops Alexander and gratitude agreed
εἰδέναι. οὕτω δὴ καταπέμπει αὐτόν, στρατιὴν δοὺς
to-know so indeed sends-down him army having-given
ἐς παραπομπὴν ὡς διὰ φιλίης ἰόντι ὀλίγην.
for escort as through friendly-country going small
36.8 τῷ δὲ οὐδὲ τὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
to-him and not-even the-things of-the road the to sea
ἔξω πόνου ἐγένετο, ἀλλὰ συλλελεγμένοι γὰρ οἱ κύκλῳ
outside toil were but gathered for the around
βάρβαροι τὰ ἐρυμνὰ τῆς χώρης τῆς Καρμανίης κατεῖχον,
barbarians the strongholds of-the country the Carmanian held
ὅτι ὁ σατράπης αὐτοῖσι ἐτετελευτήκει κατὰ πρόσταξιν
because the satrap for-them had-died by order
Ἀλεξάνδρου, ὁ δὲ νεωστὶ κατεστηκὼς Τληπόλεμος οὔπω
of-Alexander the and newly appointed Tlepolemus not-yet
βέβαιον τὸ κράτος εἶχε.
firm the power had
36.9 δὶς ὧν καὶ τρὶς τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρῃ ἄλλοισι καὶ ἄλλοισι
twice then and three-times on-the same day with-other and other
τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιφαινομένοισιν ἐς χεῖρας ἤεσαν, καὶ
of-the barbarians appearing to hands they-went and
οὕτως οὐδέν τι ἐλινύσαντες μόλις καὶ χαλεπῶς ἐπὶ
so not at-all having-rested hardly and with-difficulty to

θάλασσαν ἀπεσώθησαν. ἐνθαῦτα θύει Νέαρχος Διὶ
sea they-got-safe there sacrifices Nearchus to-Zeus
Σωτῆρι καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιέει γυμνικόν.
Savior and contest holds gymnastic
ὡς δὲ αὐτῷ τὰ θεῖα ἐν κόσμῳ ἐπεποίητο, οὕτω δὴ 37.1
when and for-him the divine-things in order had-been-done so indeed
ἀνήγοντο. παραπλώσαντες δὲ νῆσον ἐρήμην τε καὶ τραχέαν
they-put-out having-coasted and an-island deserted both and rough
ἐν ἄλλῃ νήσῳ ὁρμίζονται, μεγάλῃ ταύτῃ καὶ οἰκεομένῃ,
at another island they-anchor great this and inhabited
πλώσαντες σταδίους τριηκοσίους ἔνθενπερ ὡρμήθησαν.
having-sailed stades three-hundred whence-very they-had-set-out
καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐρήμη νῆσος Ὄργανα ἐκαλέετο, ἐς ἣν δὲ 37.2
and the indeed deserted island Organa was-called at which and
ὡρμίσθησαν Ὀάρακτα. ἄμπελοί τε ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπεφύκεσαν καὶ
they-anchored Oaracta vines both in it had-grown and
φοίνικες, καὶ σιτοφόρος ἦν· τὸ δὲ μῆκος τῆς νήσου στάδιοι
palms and grain-bearing it-was the and length of-the island stades
ὀκτακόσιοι. καὶ ὁ ὕπαρχος τῆς νήσου Μαζήνης συνέπλωεν
eight-hundred and the hyparch of-the island Mazenes sailed-with
αὐτοῖσι μέχρι Σούσων, ἐθελοντὴς ἡγεμὼν τοῦ πλόου.
them as-far-as Susa volunteer guide of-the voyage
ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ νήσῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῦ πρώτου δυναστεύσαντος 37.3
in this the island they-said also of-the first having-ruled
τῆς χώρης ταύτης δείκνυσθαι τὸν τάφον· οὔνομα δὲ
of-the country this to-be-shown the tomb name and
αὐτῷ Ἐρύθρην εἶναι. ἀπ᾽ ὅτου καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίην τῇ
for-him Erythres to-be from whom also the name to-the
θαλάσσῃ ταύτῃ εἶναι.
sea this to-be

37.4 ἐνθένδε ἄραντες ἔπλωον· καὶ τῆς νήσου παραπλώσαντες
thence having-set-out they-sailed and of-the island having-coasted
ὅσον διηκοσίους σταδίους ὁρμίζονται ἐν αὐτῇ αὖθις,
about two-hundred stades they-anchor at it again
καὶ κατορέουσιν ἄλλην νῆσον, ἀπέχουσαν τῆς μεγάλης
and they-descry another island distant from-the great
ταύτης τεσσαράκοντα μάλιστα σταδίους. Ποσειδῶνος ἱρὴ
this forty about stades of-Poseidon sacred
ἐλέγετο εἶναι καὶ ἄβατος.
was-said to-be and untrodden

37.5 ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω ἀνήγοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνει αὐτοὺς
toward and the dawn they-put-out and catches them
ἀνάπωτις οὕτω τι καρτερή, ὥστε τρεῖς τῶν νεῶν
ebb-tide so somewhat strong that three of-the ships
ἐποκείλασαι ἐν τῷ ξηρῷ ἐσχέθησαν, αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι χαλεπῶς
having-run-aground on the dry were-held the and others with-difficulty
διεκπλώουσαι τὰς ῥηχίας ἐς τὰ βάθεα ἀπεσώθησαν.
sailing-through the breakers into the deeps got-safe

37.6 αἱ δὲ ἐποκείλασαι τῆς πλημμυρίδος ἐπιγενομένης αὖθις
the and grounded of-the flood-tide having-come-on again
ἐξέπλωσάν τε καὶ δευτεραῖαι κατήγοντο ἵναπερ ὁ πᾶς
sailed-out both and on-the-second-day put-in where-indeed the whole
στόλος.
fleet

37.7 ὁρμίζονται δὲ ἐς νῆσον ἄλλην, διέχουσαν τῆς ἠπείρου
they-anchor and at island another distant from-the mainland
ὅσον τριηκοσίους σταδίους, πλώσαντες τετρακοσίους.
about three-hundred stades having-sailed four-hundred

37.8 ἐνθεῦτεν ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω ἔπλωον, νῆσον ἐρήμην ἐν ἀριστερῇ
thence toward the dawn they-sailed island deserted on left
παραμείβοντες· οὔνομα δὲ τῇ νήσῳ Πύλωρα. καὶ
passing name and to-the island Pylora and

ὁρμίζονται πρὸς Σισιδώνῃ, πολιχνίῳ σμικρῷ καὶ πάντων
they-anchor at Sisidone small-town small and of-all
ἀπόρῳ, ὅτι μὴ ὕδατος καὶ ἰχθύων· ἰχθυοφάγοι γὰρ καὶ
lacking except — water and fishes fish-eaters for also
οὗτοι ὑπ᾽ ἀναγκαίης ἦσαν, ὅτι πονηρὴν γῆν νέμονται.
these from necessity were because poor land they-inhabit
ἐνθένδε ὑδρευσάμενοι καταίρουσιν ἐς Ταρσίην ἄκρην 37.9
thence having-drawn-water they-put-in at Tarsias cape
ἀνατείνουσαν ἐς τὸ πέλαγος, πλώσαντες σταδίους
stretching into the open-sea having-sailed stades
τριηκοσίους. ἐνθένδε ἐς Καταίην, νῆσον ἐρήμην, ἀλιτενέα·
three-hundred thence to Cataea island deserted low-lying
αὕτη ἱρὴ Ἑρμέω καὶ Ἀφροδίτης ἐλέγετο· στάδιοι τοῦ 37.10
this sacred of-Hermes and of-Aphrodite was-said stades of-the
πλόου τριηκόσιοι.
voyage three-hundred
ἐς ταύτην ὅσα ἔτη ἀπίεται ἐκ τῶν περιοίκων πρόβατα 37.11
to this every year are-let-go from the neighbors sheep
καὶ αἶγες ἱρὰ τῷ Ἑρμέῃ καὶ τῇ Ἀφροδίτῃ, καὶ ταῦτα
and goats sacred — to-Hermes and — to-Aphrodite and these
ἀπηγριωμένα ἦν ὁρᾶν ὑπὸ χρόνου τε καὶ ἐρημίης.
gone-wild it-was-possible to-see from time both and desolation

The fleet coasts Persis, where pearls are fished, past Gogana to the Sitacus, where it rests three weeks, and on to the Oroatis; sailors measure a beached whale at fifty cubits. Arrian describes Persis' three climates and the robber peoples beside it, whom Alexander tamed. Past Susiana the fleet threads a shallow channel marked with stakes to the mouth of the Euphrates, then turns back up the Pasitigris and meets Alexander at the bridge to Susa, where Nearchus and Leonnatus are crowned. Arrian ends with the lands beyond: Arabia, which no one has sailed round, and Hanno's voyage down the coast of Libya.

38.1 μέχρι τοῦδε Καρμανίη· τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦδε Πέρσαι
as-far-as this Carmania the-parts and from this Persians
ἔχουσι. μῆκος τοῦ πλόου παρὰ τὴν Καρμανίων χώρην
hold length of-the voyage along the of-Carmanians country
στάδιοι τρισχίλιοι καὶ ἑπτακόσιοι. ζώουσι δὲ κατάπερ
stades three-thousand and seven-hundred they-live and as
Πέρσαι, ὅτι καὶ ὅμουροί εἰσι Πέρσῃσι· καὶ τὰ ἐς
Persians because also bordering they-are on-Persians and the-things for
τὸν πόλεμον ὡσαύτως κοσμέονται.
the war likewise they-are-equipped

38.2 ἐνθένδε ἄραντες παρὰ τὴν Περσίδα ἤδη ἔπλωον, καὶ
thence having-set-out along — Persis already they-sailed and
κατάγονται ἐς Ἴλαν χῶρον, ἵνα λιμὴν πρὸς νήσου
they-put-in at Ila a-place where a-harbor by island
σμικρῆς καὶ ἐρήμης γίνεται· οὔνομα τῇ νήσῳ Καΐκανδρος,
small and deserted is name to-the island Caicandrus
ὁ δὲ πλόος στάδιοι τετρακόσιοι.
the and voyage stades four-hundred

38.3 ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω ἐς ἄλλην νῆσον πλώσαντες ὁρμίζονται
toward and the dawn to another island having-sailed they-anchor
οἰκεομένην, ἵνα καὶ μαργαρίτην θηρᾶσθαι λέγει Νέαρχος
inhabited where also pearl to-be-fished says Nearchus

κατάπερ ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν θαλάσσῃ. ταύτης τῆς νήσου
as in the of-Indians sea of-this the island
τὴν ἄκρην παραπλώσαντες σταδίους ὡς τεσσαράκοντα,
the cape having-coasted stades about forty
ἐνθαῦτα ὡρμίσθησαν.
there they-anchored
ἐνθένδε πρὸς οὔρεϊ ὁρμίζονται ὑψηλῷ — Ὦχος οὔνομα 38.4
thence by a-mountain they-anchor high Ochus name
τῷ οὔρεϊ — ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ, καὶ ἁλιέες αὐτόθι ᾤκεον.
to-the mountain in harbor good-for-anchoring and fishermen there dwelt
καὶ ἔνθεν πλώσαντες σταδίους τετρακοσίους τε καὶ 38.5
and thence having-sailed stades four-hundred both and
πεντήκοντα, ὁρμίζονται ἐν Ἀποστάνοισι· καὶ πλοῖα πολλὰ
fifty they-anchor at Apostana and boats many
αὐτόθι ὥρμεε, κώμη τε ἐπῆν ἀπέχουσα ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
there lay-at-anchor village both was-there distant from sea
σταδίους ἑξήκοντα.
stades sixty
νυκτὸς δὲ ἄραντες ἐνθεῦτεν ἐσπλώουσιν ἐς κόλπον 38.6
by-night and having-set-out thence they-sail-into into a-gulf
συνοικεόμενον πολλῇσι κώμῃσι. στάδιοι τοῦ πλόου
settled with-many villages stades of-the voyage
τετρακόσιοι· ὁρμίζονται δὲ πρὸς ὑπωρείῃ. ταύτῃ φοίνικές
four-hundred they-anchor and by foothill this palms
τε πολλοὶ ἐπεφύκεσαν καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἀκρόδρυα ἐν
both many had-grown and as-many-as other fruit-trees in
τῇ Ἑλλάδι φύεται.
— Greece grow
ἐνθένδε ἄραντες ἐς Γώγανα παραπλώουσι σταδίους 38.7
thence having-set-out to Gogana they-coast stades
μάλιστα ἐς ἑξακοσίους ἐς χώρην οἰκεομένην· ὁρμίζονται
roughly about six-hundred to country inhabited they-anchor

δὲ ποταμοῦ χειμαρρόου — οὔνομα δέ οἱ Ἀρεών — ἐν
and of-river torrent name and for-it Areon in
τῇσιν ἐκβολῇσιν. ἐνθαῦτα χαλεπῶς ὁρμίζονται· στεινὸς
the mouths there with-difficulty they-anchor narrow
γὰρ ἦν ὁ ἔσπλοος κατὰ τὸ στόμα, ὅτι βραχέα τὰ
for was the entrance at the mouth because shallows the-parts
κύκλῳ αὐτοῦ ἡ ἀνάπωτις ἐποίεε.
around it the ebb-tide made

38.8 καὶ ἔνθεν αὖ ἐν στόματι ἄλλου ποταμοῦ ὁρμίζονται,
and thence again in mouth of-another river they-anchor
διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους ἐς ὀκτακοσίους· Σιτακὸς οὔνομα
having-sailed-through stades about eight-hundred Sitacus name
τῷ ποταμῷ ἦν. ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ ἐν τούτῳ εὐμαρέως
to-the river was but not-even in this easily
ὁρμίζονται, καὶ ὁ πλόος ἅπας οὗτος ὁ παρὰ τὴν
they-anchor and the voyage whole this the along —
Περσίδα βραχέα τε ἦν καὶ ῥηχίη καὶ τενάγεα.
Persis shallows both was and surf and swamps

38.9 ἐνθαῦτα σῖτον καταλαμβάνουσι πολλὸν συγκεκομισμένον
there grain they-find much collected
κατὰ πρόσταξιν τοῦ βασιλέος, ὡς σφίσιν εἶναι
by order of-the king so-that for-them to-be
ἐπισιτίσασθαι· ἐνθαῦτα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τὰς πάσας μίαν
to-provision there they-stayed days the all one
καὶ εἴκοσι, καὶ τὰς νέας ἀνειρυσάμενοι, ὅσαι μὲν
and twenty and the ships having-hauled-up as-many-as indeed
ἐπεπονήκεσαν ἐπεσκεύαζον, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας ἐθεράπευον.
had-been-damaged they-repaired the and others they-tended

39.1 ἐνθένδε ὁρμηθέντες ἐς Ἱέρατιν πόλιν ἀπίκοντο, ἐς χῶρον
thence having-set-out to Hieratis city they-arrived at a-place
οἰκεόμενον. ἑπτακόσιοι καὶ πεντήκοντα στάδιοι ὁ πλόος·
inhabited seven-hundred and fifty stades the voyage

ὡρμίσθησαν δὲ ἐν διώρυχι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐμβεβλημένῃ
they-anchored and in a-canal from the river cut
ἐς θάλασσαν, ᾗ οὔνομα ἦν Ἡράτεμις.
into sea whose name was Heratemis
ἅμα δὲ ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι παραπλώουσιν ἐς ποταμὸν 39.2
at-the-same-time and with-sun rising they-coast to river
χειμάρροον, οὔνομα Πάδαργον, ὁ δὲ χῶρος χερσόνησος
torrent name Padargus the and place peninsula
ἅπας. καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ κῆποί τε πολλοὶ καὶ ἀκρόδρυα
whole and in it gardens both many and fruit-trees
παντοῖα ἐφύετο· οὔνομα τῷ χώρῳ Μεσαμβρίη.
of-all-kinds grew name to-the place Mesambria
ἐκ Μεσαμβρίης δὲ ὁρμηθέντες καὶ διεκπλώσαντες 39.3
from Mesambria and having-set-out and having-sailed-through
σταδίους μάλιστα ἐς διηκοσίους ἐς Ταόκην ὁρμίζονται
stades roughly about two-hundred at Taoce they-anchor
ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Γράνιδι. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου ἐς τὸ ἄνω τὰ
on river Granis and from this into the upward the
Περσέων βασιλήια ἦν, ἀπέχοντα τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῶν
of-Persians palace was distant of-the river from-the
ἐκβολέων σταδίους ἐς διηκοσίους.
mouths stades about two-hundred
κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν παράπλοον λέγει Νέαρχος ὀφθῆναι 39.4
during this the coasting-voyage says Nearchus to-have-been-seen
κῆτος ἐκβεβλημένον ἐς τὴν ἠιόνα, καὶ τοῦτο
a-sea-monster cast-up onto the beach and this
προσπλώσαντάς τινας τῶν ναυτέων ἐκμετρῆσαι καὶ φάναι
having-sailed-up some of-the sailors to-have-measured and to-say
εἶναι πήχεων πεντήκοντα·
to-be of-cubits fifty

39.5 δέρμα δὲ αὐτῷ εἶναι φολιδωτόν, οὕτω τι ἐς βάθος
skin and to-it to-be scaly so something to depth
ἦκον, ὥστε καὶ ἐπὶ πῆχυν ἐπέχειν· ὄστρεά τε καὶ λοπάδας
reaching so-that even to a-cubit to-extend oysters both and limpets
καὶ φυκία πολλὰ ἔχειν ἐπιπεφυκότα. καὶ δελφῖνας λέγει
and seaweeds many to-have grown-on and dolphins he-says
ὅτι κατορᾶν ἦν πολλοὺς ἀμφὶ τῷ κήτεϊ, καὶ τῶν
that to-see it-was many around the sea-monster and than-those
ἐν τῇ ἔσω θαλάσσῃ μέζονας τοὺς δελφῖνας.
in the inner sea larger the dolphins

39.6 ἐνθένδε ὁρμηθέντες κατάγονται ἐς Ῥόγονιν ποταμὸν
thence having-set-out they-put-in at Rogonis river
χειμάρροον ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ· μῆκος τοῦ παραπλόου
torrent in harbor good-for-anchoring length of-the coasting-voyage
στάδιοι διηκόσιοι.
stades two-hundred

39.7 ἐνθένδε τετρακοσίους σταδίους διεκπλώσαντες αὐλίζονται
thence four-hundred stades having-sailed-through they-bivouac
ἐν ποταμῷ χειμαρρόῳ· Βρίξανα τῷ ποταμῷ οὔνομα.
at river torrent Brizana to-the river name
ἐνθαῦτα χαλεπῶς ὡρμίσαντο, ὅτι ῥηχίη ἦν καὶ βραχέα,
there with-difficulty they-anchored because surf was and shallows
καὶ χοιράδες ἐκ τοῦ πόντου ἀνεῖχον. ἀλλὰ ὅτε ἡ
and reefs from the sea projected but when the
πλήμμυρα ἐπῄει, τότε ὡρμίσαντο·
flood-tide came-on then they-anchored

39.8 ὑπονοστήσαντος δὲ τοῦ ὕδατος, ἐπὶ ξηροῦ ὑπελείφθησαν
having-receded and the water on dry-land were-left
αἱ νέες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ πλημμυρὶς ἐν τάξι ἀμείβουσα ἐπανῆλθε,
the ships when and the flood-tide in order alternating returned
τότε δὴ ἐκπλώσαντες ὁρμίζονται ἐπὶ ποταμῷ·
then indeed having-sailed-out they-anchor at river

οὔνομα δὲ τῷ ποταμῷ Ὀροάτις. μέγιστος δὲ τῶν 39.9
name and to-the river Oroatis greatest and of-the
ποταμῶν, ὡς λέγει Νέαρχος, ὅσοι ἐν τῷ παραπλόῳ
rivers as says Nearchus as-many-as in the coasting-voyage
τῷδε ἐμβάλλουσιν ἐς τὸν ἔξω πόντον.
this empty into the outer sea
μέχρι τοῦδε Πέρσαι οἰκέουσι, τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦδε Σούσιοι. 40.1
as-far-as this Persians dwell the-parts and from this Susians
Σουσίων δὲ ἄλλο ἔθνος αὐτόνομον κατύπερθε προσοικέει·
of-Susians and another people independent above dwells-near
Οὔξιοι καλέονται, ὑπὲρ ὅτων λέλεκταί μοι ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ
Uxians are-called about whom has-been-said by-me in the other
συγγραφῇ ὅτι λῃσταί εἰσι. μῆκος τοῦ παραπλόου τῆς
history that robbers they-are length of-the coasting-voyage of-the
Περσίδος χώρης στάδιοι τετρακόσιοι καὶ τετρακισχίλιοι.
Persian country stades four-hundred and four-thousand
τὴν δὲ Περσίδα γῆν τριχῇ νενεμῆσθαι τῶν ὡρέων λόγος 40.2
the and Persian land in-three to-be-divided by-the seasons story
κατέχει.
holds
τὸ μὲν αὐτῆς πρὸς τῇ Ἐρυθρῇ θαλάσσῃ οἰκεόμενον 40.3
the indeed of-it by the Red sea inhabited
ψαμμῶδές τε εἶναι καὶ ἄκαρπον ὑπὸ καύματος, τὰ
sandy both to-be and fruitless from heat the-parts
δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ὡς πρὸς ἄρκτον τε καὶ βορέην ἄνεμον
and from this as toward north both and northern wind
ἰόντων καλῶς κεκρᾶσθαι τῶν ὡρέων, καὶ τὴν χώρην
of-those-going well to-be-tempered of-the seasons and the country
ποιώδεά τε εἶναι καὶ λειμῶνας ὑδρηλοὺς καὶ ἄμπελον
grassy both to-be and meadows watered and vine
πολλὴν φέρειν καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι καρποί, πλὴν ἐλαίης·
much to-bear and as-many-as other fruits except the-olive

40.4 παραδείσοισί τε παντοίοισι τεθηλέναι, καὶ ποταμοῖσι
with-parks both of-all-kinds to-flourish and with-rivers
καθαροῖσι διαρρέεσθαι καὶ λίμνῃσι, καὶ ὄρνισιν ὁκόσοισιν
clean to-be-watered and with-lakes and with-birds as-many-as
ἀμφὶ ποταμούς τε καὶ λίμνας ἐστὶ τὰ ἤθεα ἵπποισί τε
about rivers both and lakes are the haunts for-horses both
ἀγαθὴν εἶναι, καὶ τοῖσιν ἄλλοισιν ὑποζυγίοισι νέμεσθαι,
good to-be and for-the other pack-animals to-graze
καὶ ὑλώδεά τε πολλαχῇ καὶ πολύθηρον.
and wooded both in-many-places and full-of-game
40.5 τὴν δὲ πρόσω ἔτι ἐπ᾽ ἄρκτον ἰόντων χειμερίην τε καὶ
the and farther still toward north of-those-going wintry both and
νιφετώδεα, ὥστε πρέσβεας τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ Εὐξείνου πόντου
snowy so-that envoys some from the Euxine sea
λέγει Νέαρχος κάρτα ὀλίγην ὁδὸν διελθόντας ἐντυχεῖν
says Nearchus very short road having-gone-through to-have-met
κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἰόντι τῇς Περσίδος καὶ θῶμα γενέσθαι
along the road going — of-Persis and wonder to-have-arisen
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, καὶ εἰπεῖν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ τὴν βραχύτητα.
for-Alexander and to-have-told Alexander of-the road the shortness
40.6 Σουσίοισι δὲ πρόσοικοι ὅτι εἰσὶν Οὔξιοι λέλεκταί μοι,
to-Susians and neighbors that are Uxians has-been-said by-me
κατάπερ Μάρδοι μὲν Πέρσῃσι προσεχέες οἰκέουσι, λῃσταὶ
as Mardians indeed to-Persians adjoining dwell robbers
καὶ οὗτοι, Κοσσαῖοι δὲ Μήδοισι.
also these Cossaeans and to-Medes
40.7 καὶ πάντα ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα ἡμέρωσεν Ἀλέξανδρος, χειμῶνος
and all these the peoples tamed Alexander in-winter
ὥρῃ ἐπιπεσὼν αὐτοῖσιν, ὅτε ἄβατον σφῶν τὴν χώρην ἦγον.
season having-fallen-on them when impassable their the country they-held

καὶ πόλιας ἐπέκτισε τοῦ μὴ νομάδας ἔτι εἶναι 40.8
and cities he-founded for-the not nomads any-longer to-be
ἀλλὰ ἀροτῆρας καὶ γῆς ἐργάτας, καὶ ἔχειν ὑπὲρ ὅτων
but plowmen and of-land workers and to-have for what
δειμαίνοντες μὴ κακὰ ἀλλήλους ἐργάσονται. ἐνθένδε τὴν
fearing not evils to-one-another they-will-do thence the
Σουσίων γῆν παρήμειβεν ὁ στρατός.
of-Susians land passed the force
καὶ ταῦτα οὐκέτι ὡσαύτως ἀτρεκέως λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι 40.9
and these-things no-longer likewise exactly says Nearchus that
ἔστιν οἱ ἐκφράσαι, πλήν γε δὴ τοὺς ὅρμους τε
it-is for-him to-describe except at-least indeed the anchorages both
καὶ τὸ μῆκος τοῦ πλόου·
and the length of-the voyage
τὴν χώρην γὰρ τεναγώδεά τε εἶναι τὴν πολλὴν καὶ 40.10
the country for swampy both to-be the most and
ῥηχίῃσιν ἐπὶ μέγα ἐς τὸν πόντον ἐπέχουσαν, καὶ ταύτῃ
with-breakers for great into the sea extending and in-this-way
σφαλερὴν ἐγκατορμίζεσθαι. πελαγίοισιν ὦν σφίσι τὴν
dangerous to-anchor-in in-the-open-sea then for-them the
κομιδὴν τὸ πολλὸν γενέσθαι.
passage the most to-have-been
ὁρμηθῆναι μὲν δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῶν ἐκβολέων, 40.11
to-have-set-out indeed indeed from the river the mouths
ἵναπερ ηὐλίσθησαν ἐπὶ τοῖσιν οὔροισι τῆς Περσίδος,
where-indeed they-bivouacked at the borders — of-Persis
ὕδωρ δὲ ἐμβαλέσθαι πέντε ἡμερέων· οὐκ ἔφασκον γὰρ
water and to-have-taken-on of-five days not they-said for
εἶναι ὕδωρ οἱ κατηγεμόνες τοῦ πλόου.
to-be water the guides of-the voyage

41.1 σταδίους δὲ πεντακοσίους κομισθέντες ὁρμίζονται ἐπὶ
stades and five-hundred having-been-carried they-anchor at
στόματι λίμνης ἰχθυώδεος, ᾗ οὔνομα Κατάδερβις· καὶ
mouth of-lake full-of-fish whose name Catadarbis and
νησὶς ἐπῆν τῷ στόματι· Μαργάστανα τῇ νησῖδι οὔνομα.
islet was-there at-the mouth Margastana to-the islet name
41.2 ἐνθένδε δὲ ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω ἐκπλώσαντες κατὰ βραχέα
thence and toward the dawn having-sailed-out through shallows
ἐκομίζοντο ἐπὶ μιᾶς νεός· πασσάλοισι δὲ ἔνθεν καὶ
they-were-carried in one ship-file with-stakes and on-this-side and
ἔνθεν πεπηγόσιν ἀπεδηλοῦτο τὰ βραχέα, κατάπερ ἐν
on-that-side fixed were-marked-out the shallows as in
τῷ μεσσηγὺς Λευκάδος τε νήσου ἰσθμῷ καὶ Ἀκαρνανίης
the between of-Leucas both island isthmus and Acarnania
ἀποδέδεικται σημήια τοῖσι ναυτιλλομένοισι τοῦ μὴ
have-been-set marks for-the sailors for-the not
ἐποκέλλειν ἐν τοῖσι βραχέσι τὰς νέας.
to-run-aground in the shallows the ships
41.3 ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Λευκάδα ψαμμώδεα ἐόντα τοῖσιν
but the-parts indeed by Leucas sandy being for-those
ἐποκείλασι ταχέαν τὴν ὑπονόστησιν ἐνδιδοῖ· κεῖθι δὲ
having-run-aground quick the refloating allow there and
πηλός ἐστιν ἐπ᾽ ἑκάτερα τοῦ πλεομένου βαθὺς καὶ ἰλυώδης,
mud is on each-side of-the channel deep and slimy
ὥστε οὐδεμιῇ μηχανῇ ἐποκείλασιν ἦν ἀποσωθῆναι.
so-that by-no device for-those-aground it-was to-get-off
41.4 οὔτε γὰρ κοντοὶ κατὰ τοῦ πηλοῦ δύνοντες αὐτοῖς οὐδέν
neither for poles into the mud sinking them in-any-way
τι ἐπωφέλεον, ἀνθρώποις τε ἐκβῆναι τοῦ ἀπῶσαι τὰς
at-all helped for-men both to-disembark for-the to-push-off the

νέας ἐς τὰ πλεόμενα ἄπορον ἐγίνετο· ἔδυνον γὰρ κατὰ
ships into the navigable impossible was they-sank for into
τοῦ πηλοῦ ἔστε ἐπὶ τὰ στήθεα.
the mud as-far to the breasts
οὕτω δὴ χαλεπῶς διεκπλώσαντες ἐς σταδίους ἑξακοσίους 41.5
so indeed with-difficulty having-sailed-through about stades six-hundred
κατὰ νέα ἕκαστοι ὁρμισθέντες, ἐνθαῦτα δείπνου ἐμνήσθησαν.
by ship each having-anchored there of-supper they-took-thought
τὴν νύκτα δὲ ἤδη κατὰ βάθεα ἔπλωον καὶ τὴν ἐπεξῆς 41.6
the night and already in deep-water they-sailed and the following
ἡμέρην ἔστε ἐπὶ βουλυτόν· καὶ ἦλθον σταδίους ἐνακοσίους,
day as-far to unyoking-time and they-went stades nine-hundred
καὶ κατωρμίσθησαν ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ Εὐφράτεω πρὸς
and they-anchored at the mouth — of-Euphrates by
κώμῃ τινὶ τῆς Βαβυλωνίης χώρης — οὔνομα δὲ αὐτῇ
village some of-the Babylonian country name and to-it
Διρίδωτις—,
Diridotis
ἵνα λιβανωτόν τε ἀπὸ τῆς πέριξ γῆς οἱ ἔμποροι ἀγινέουσι 41.7
where frankincense both from the surrounding land the merchants bring
καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὅσα θυμιήματα ἡ Ἀράβων γῆ φέρει.
and the other as-many-as incenses the of-Arabs land bears
ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Εὐφράτεω ἔστε ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα 41.8
from and the mouth — of-Euphrates as-far to Babylon
λέγει Νέαρχος σταδίους εἶναι ἐς τρισχιλίους καὶ
says Nearchus stades to-be about three-thousand and
τριηκοσίους.
three-hundred

42.1 ἐνθαῦτα ἀγγέλλεται Ἀλέξανδρον ἐπὶ Σούσων στέλλεσθαι.
there it-is-reported Alexander toward Susa to-be-marching
ἔνθεν καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸ ὀπίσω ἔπλωον, ὡς κατὰ τὸν
whence also they-themselves the back sailed so-that along the
Πασιτίγριν ποταμὸν ἀναπλώσαντες συμμῖξαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
Pasitigris river having-sailed-up to-join Alexander
42.2 ἔπλωον δὴ τὸ ἔμπαλιν ἐν ἀριστερῇ τὴν γῆν τὴν
they-sailed indeed the back on left the land the
Σουσίδα ἔχοντες, καὶ παραπλώουσι λίμνην, ἐς ἣν ὁ
Susian having and they-sail-past a-lake into which —
Τίγρης ἐσβάλλει ποταμός,
Tigris empties river
42.3 ὃς ῥέων ἐξ Ἀρμενίων παρὰ πόλιν Νῖνον, πάλαι ποτὲ
which flowing from Armenia by city Ninus long-ago once
μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, τὴν μέσην ἑωυτοῦ τε καὶ
great and prosperous the middle between-itself both and
τοῦ Εὐφράτεω ποταμοῦ — ἣν Μεσοποταμίην ἐπὶ τῷδε
the Euphrates river which Mesopotamia for this
κληίζεσθαι — ἀπείργει.
to-be-called it-encloses
42.4 ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς λίμνης ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν στάδιοι ἑξακόσιοι,
from and the lake to itself the river stades six-hundred
ἵνα καὶ κώμη τῆς Σουσίδος, ἣν καλέουσιν Ἄγινιν· αὕτη
where also a-village — of-Susis which they-call Aginis this
δὲ ἀπέχει Σούσων σταδίους ἐς πεντακοσίους. μῆκος
and is-distant from-Susa stades about five-hundred length
τοῦ παραπλόου τῆς Σουσίων γῆς ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ στόμα τοῦ
of-the coasting-voyage of-the of-Susians land as-far to the mouth of-the
Πασιτίγριδος ποταμοῦ στάδιοι δισχίλιοι.
Pasitigris river stades two-thousand

ἐνθένδε κατὰ τὸν Πασιτίγριν ἀνέπλωον διὰ χώρης 42.5
thence up — Pasitigris they-sailed-up through country
οἰκεομένης καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἀναπλώσαντες δὲ σταδίους ὡς
inhabited and prosperous having-sailed-up and stades about
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν ὁρμίζονται, προσμένοντες οὕστινας
fifty and hundred they-anchor waiting-for whom
ἐστάλκει Νέαρχος σκεψομένους ἵνα ὁ βασιλεὺς εἴη.
had-sent Nearchus about-to-find-out where the king might-be
αὐτὸς δὲ ἔθυε θεοῖσι τοῖσι σωτῆρσι, καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐποίεε, 42.6
himself and sacrificed to-gods the saviors and contest held
καὶ ἡ στρατιὴ ἡ ναυτικὴ πᾶσα ἐν εὐθυμίῃσιν ἦν.
and the force the naval whole in good-cheer was
ὡς δὲ προσάγων ἤδη Ἀλέξανδρος ἠγγέλλετο, ἔπλωον 42.7
when and approaching already Alexander was-reported they-sailed
αὖθις ἐς τὸ ἄνω κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν· καὶ πρὸς τῇ
again into the upward along the river and by the
σχεδίῃ ὁρμίζονται, ἐπ᾽ ἧς τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσειν
pontoon-bridge they-anchor on which the army to-take-across
ἔμελλεν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς Σοῦσα.
was-about Alexander to Susa
ἐνθαῦτα ἀνεμίγη ὁ στρατός, καὶ θυσίαι πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου 42.8
there mingled the force and sacrifices by Alexander
ἐθύοντο ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων τῇ σωτηρίῃ,
were-sacrificed for the ships both and the men the safety
καὶ ἀγῶνες ἐποιέοντο· καὶ Νέαρχος ὅκου παραφανείη
and contests were-held and Nearchus wherever be-appeared
τῆς στρατιῆς, ἄνθεσί τε καὶ ταινίῃσιν ἐβάλλετο.
of-the army with-flowers both and ribbons was-pelted
ἔνθα καὶ χρυσέῳ στεφάνῳ στεφανοῦνται ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου 42.9
there also with-golden crown are-crowned by Alexander
Νέαρχός τε καὶ Λεόννατος, Νέαρχος μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ
Nearchus both and Leonnatus Nearchus indeed for the

ναυτικοῦ τῇ σωτηρίῃ, Λεόννατος δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ νίκῃ, ἣν
fleet the safety Leonnatus and for the victory which
Ὠρείτας τε ἐνίκησε καὶ τοὺς Ὠρείτῃσι προσοικέοντας
Oreitae both he-defeated and the to-Oreitae neighboring
βαρβάρους. οὕτω μὲν ἀπεσώθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
barbarians so indeed got-away-safe for-Alexander from — Indus
τῶν ἐκβολέων ὁρμηθεὶς ὁ στρατός.
the mouths having-set-out the force

43.1 τὰ δὲ ἐν δεξιῇ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης ὑπὲρ τὴν
the-parts and on right of-the Red sea beyond —
Βαβυλωνίην Ἀραβίη ἡ πολλή ἐστι, καὶ ταύτης τὰ μὲν
Babylonia Arabia the most is and of-this the-parts indeed
κατήκει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν κατὰ Φοινίκην τε
reach as-far to the sea the by Phoenicia both
καὶ τὴν Παλαιστίνην Συρίην, πρὸς δυομένου δὲ ἡλίου ὡς
and the Palestinian Syria toward setting and of-sun as
ἐπὶ τὴν ἔσω θάλασσαν Αἰγύπτιοι τῇ Ἀραβίῃ ὁμουρέουσι.
to the inner sea Egyptians — with-Arabia border

43.2 κατὰ δὲ Αἴγυπτον ἐσέχων ἐκ τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης
by and Egypt opening-in from the great sea
κόλπος δῆλον ποιέει ὅτι εἵνεκά γε τοῦ σύρροον εἶναι
a-gulf plain makes that as-far-as at-least the confluent to-be
τὴν ἔξω θάλασσαν περίπλοος ἂν ἦν ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος
the outer sea circumnavigation — would-be from Babylon
ἐς τὸν κόλπον τοῦτον ἐσέχοντα ὡς ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον.
to the gulf this opening-in as to Egypt

43.3 ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὔ τις παρέπλωσε ταύτῃ οὐδαμῶν ἀνθρώπων
but for not anyone sailed-along here of-any men
ὑπὸ καύματος καὶ ἐρημίης, εἰ μή τινές γε πελάγιοι
from heat and desolation if not some at-least in-the-open-sea
κομιζόμενοι.
carried

ἀλλὰ οἱ ἀπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου γὰρ ἐς Σοῦσα ἀποσωθέντες 43.4
but those from Egypt for to Susa having-got-away-safe
τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς Καμβύσεω καὶ οἱ παρὰ Πτολεμαίου
of-the army — of-Cambyses and those from Ptolemy
τοῦ Λάγου παρὰ Σέλευκον τὸν Νικάτορα σταλέντες
the (son)-of-Lagus to Seleucus the Nicator sent
ἐς Βαβυλῶνα διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίης χώρης ἰσθμόν τινα
to Babylon through the Arabian country isthmus some
διαπορευθέντες ἐν ἡμέρῃσιν ὀκτὼ τῇσι πάσῃσιν ἄνυδρον καὶ
having-traveled in days eight the all waterless and
ἐρήμην χώρην ἐπῆλθον ἐπὶ καμήλων σπουδῇ ἐλαύνοντες ὕδωρ
desert country went-over on camels with-haste driving water
τέ σφισιν ἐπὶ τῶν καμήλων φέροντες καὶ νυκτοπορέοντες·
both for-them on the camels carrying and traveling-by-night
τὰς γὰρ ἡμέρας ὑπαίθριοι ἀνέχεσθαι διὰ καῦμα 43.5
the for days in-the-open to-endure because-of heat
ἀδύνατοι ἦσαν.
unable they-were
τοσούτου δέει τά γε ἐπέκεινα ταύτης τῆς χώρης, 43.6
so-much fall-short the-parts at-least beyond this the country
ἥντινα ἰσθμὸν ἀπεφαίνομεν ἐκ τοῦ κόλπου τοῦ Ἀραβίου
which isthmus we-showed from the gulf the Arabian
κατήκοντα ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν οἰκεόμενα εἶναι,
reaching to the Red sea inhabited to-be
ὁκότε τὰ πρὸς ἄρκτον μᾶλλον αὐτῶν ἀνέχοντα ἔρημά
since the-parts toward north more of-them projecting deserted
τέ ἐστι καὶ ψαμμώδεα.
both are and sandy
ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου τοῦ κατ᾽ Αἴγυπτον 43.7
but for from the Arabian gulf the by Egypt
ὁρμηθέντες ἄνθρωποι, ἐκπεριπλώσαντες τὴν πολλὴν
having-set-out men having-sailed-round the most

Ἀραβίην τοῦ ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὴν κατὰ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Πέρσας
Arabia for-the to-come into the by Susa both and Persians
θάλασσαν, ἐς τοσόνδε ἄρα παραπλώσαντες τῆς Ἀραβίης,
sea to so-far then having-coasted — of-Arabia
ἐς ὅσον σφίσι τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπήρκεσε τὸ ἐμβληθὲν ἐς τὰς
as-far as for-them the water sufficed the put-aboard into the
νέας, ἔπειτα ὀπίσω ἀπενόστησαν.
ships then back returned

43.8 ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος δὲ οὕστινας ἔστειλεν Ἀλέξανδρος, ὡς
from Babylon and whom sent Alexander as
ἐπὶ μήκιστον πλώοντας ἐν δεξιῇ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης
for farthest sailing on right of-the Red sea
τοῦ γνῶναι τοὺς ταύτῃ χώρους, οὗτοι νήσους μέν τινας
for-the to-learn the there places these islands indeed some
κατεσκέψαντο ἐν τῷ παραπλόῳ κειμένας,
explored in the coasting-voyage lying

43.9 καὶ κου καὶ τῇ ἠπείρῳ τῆς Ἀραβίης προσέσχον, τὴν δὲ
and perhaps also to-the mainland — of-Arabia put-in the but
ἄκρην, ἥντινα καταντικρὺ τῆς Καρμανίης ἀνέχουσαν λέγει
cape which opposite — of-Carmania projecting says
φανῆναι σφίσι Νέαρχος, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅστις ὑπερβαλὼν
to-have-appeared to-them Nearchus not there-is whoever having-passed
ἐπικάμψαι ἐς τὸ ἐπὶ θάτερα δυνατὸς ἐγένετο.
to-turn into the on the-other-side able was

43.10 δοκέω δὲ ὡς εἴπερ πλωτά τε ἦν καὶ βαδιστὰ ταύτῃ,
I-think and that if navigable both it-was and walkable here
ὑπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἂν τῆς πολυπραγμοσύνης ἐξελήλεγκτο
by of-Alexander — the restless-enterprise would-have-been-proved
πλωτά τε καὶ βαδιστὰ ἐόντα.
navigable both and walkable being

Ἄννων δὲ ὁ Λίβυς ἐκ Καρχηδόνος ὁρμηθεὶς ὑπὲρ 43.11
Hanno and the Libyan from Carthage having-set-out beyond
μὲν Ἡρακληίας στήλας ἐξέπλωσεν ἐς τὸν ἔξω πόντον,
indeed of-Heracles pillars sailed-out into the outer sea
ἐν ἀριστερῇ τὴν Λιβύην ἔχων· καὶ ἔστε μὲν πρὸς
on left — Libya having and as-far-as indeed toward
ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ὁ πλόος αὐτῷ ἐγένετο τὰς πάσας πέντε
rising sun the voyage for-him was the all five
καὶ τριήκοντα ἡμέρας·
and thirty days
ὡς δὲ δὴ ἐς μεσαμβρίην ἐξετράπετο, πολλῇσιν 43.12
when and indeed to south he-turned-aside with-many
ἀμηχανίῃσιν ἐνετύγχανεν ὕδατός τε ἀπορίῃ καὶ καύματι
difficulties he-met of-water both by-lack and by-heat
ἐπιφλέγοντι καὶ ῥύαξι πυρὸς ἐς τὸν πόντον ἐμβάλλουσιν.
blazing and by-streams of-fire into the sea emptying
ἀλλὰ ἡ Κυρήνη γὰρ τῆς Λιβύης ἐν τοῖσι ἐρημοτέροισι 43.13
but — Cyrene for — of-Libya in the more-desert-parts
πεπολισμένη ποιώδης τέ ἐστι καὶ εὔυδρος καὶ καρπῶν
founded grassy both is and well-watered and of-fruits
παντοίων καὶ κτηνέων πάμφορος ἔστε ἐπὶ τοῦ σιλφίου
of-all-kinds and of-cattle all-bearing as-far to the silphium
τὰς ἐκφύσιας· ὑπὲρ δὲ τὸ σίλφιον τὰ ἄνω αὐτῆς
the growths beyond and the silphium the-parts upper of-it
ἔρημα καὶ ψαμμώδεα.
desert and sandy
οὗτός μοι ὁ λόγος ἀναγεγράφθω, φέρων καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς 43.14
this to-me the account let-have-been-recorded tending also itself to
Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Φιλίππου, τὸν Μακεδόνα.
Alexander the (son)-of-Philip the Macedonian